RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS

OF

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an Editio Princeps; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

Rolls House,
December 1857.

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS,

MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI,

HISTORIA ANGLORUM,

SIVE, UT VULGO DICITUR,

HISTORIA MINOR.

ITEM, EJUSDEM

ABBREVIATIO CHRONICORUM ANGLIÆ.

EDITED

BY

SIR FREDERIC MADDEN, K.H., F.R.S.,

LATE KEEPER OF THE DEPARTMENT OF MANUSCRIPTS, BRITISH MUSEUM.

VOL. III.

A.D. 1246–1253.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

1869.

Printed by
Eyre and Spottiswoode, Her Majesty's Printers.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

CONTENTS.

PREFACE.

PREFACE.

HAVING already, in the Preface to the first volume of the present work, sufficiently discussed its literary history, it is now proposed to collect together the scanty biographical notices we possess of the author, and then add such particulars and remarks as may contribute to demonstrate the historical value of his writings. Scope of the present Preface.

It is uncertain whence Matthew Paris derived his name. In his various works he invariably writes it *Matheus*[1] *Parisiensis*, except in two or three instances, where we find the form *de Parisius;*[2] whilst by his Name of Matthew Paris, whence derived?

[1] Underneath his portrait in MS. Reg. 14 C. vii., he wrote his name at first MATHIAS, but afterwards corrected it. See Preface to vol. i. p. xlvii. The printed text of the *Chronica Majora*, p. 846, ed. Wats, has the form *Matthias* three times, but without any authority, since the original MS. (C. C. C. C. xvi., fol. 262) has in every case only the initial letter M. The name appears as *Matthias* also in a Chronicle of Ramsey, compiled before 1267, MS. Cott. Otho D. VIII., fol. 214 *b*. Matthew Paris must not be confounded with a *Matthias Parisiensis*, a Bohemian by birth, but who derived his name from having studied at Paris, and wrote a work, "De regulis Veteris et Novi Testamenti." See Lambecii *Comm. de Bibl. Cæs. Vind.*, 1669, lib. ii. p. 805.

[2] MS. C. C. C. C. xvi., fol. 1, and MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 1 (but partly cut off by the binder); also on the Map of the World in MS. C. C. C. C. xxvi., p. 284, which, on the later copy in MS. Cott. Nero D. v., fol. 1 *b*, is written *de Parisio;* and once in the text of the *Chron. Maj.* (C. C. C. C. xvi., fol. 222, and Nero D. v., fol. 374) as *Matheus Parisius*, where the *de* has been probably omitted by accident. It must be observed that *Parisius* is, in general, indeclinable. A later chronicler, Thomas Wikes, has *Matheus de Parysius*, MS. Cott. Tit. A. XIV., fol. 1.

contemporary, John of Wallingford, he is called *Matheus Parisiacensis*.[1] That he was of English origin is evident, as proved by the uniform tone of his language when speaking of foreigners, especially of the French, but whether his surname came to him from his family as a patronymic, or arose from his having been born, resided in, or studied at Paris, is difficult to decide. Leland and Pits are in favour of the former supposition,[2] and it is corroborated by the numerous instances of persons of this name living in England (particularly in Lincolnshire) during the thirteenth century.[3] On the other hand, the

---

[1] MS. Cott. Julius D. VII., ff. 96, 98.

[2] Leland writes, "Nostratem fuisse, quamvis Parisius dictus sit, mihi quidem constat, nam Parisiorum cognomen olim apud Anglos erat, quemadmodum et nunc, celebre," *Comm. de Scriptt. Brit.*, ii. 269; and Pits, "sic cognominatum lego à familia, non à patria, uti et Joannes Paris, fuit enim uterque natione Anglus," *De illustr. Angl. Scriptt.*, p. 337.

[3] Thus we meet with Hugo de Paris, in Lincolnshire, in 1194, *Rot. Cur. Reg.*, i. 130; and Petrus de Parisius, of Lincoln, in 1200, *ib.* ii. 253, *Rot. Chart.*, i. 53; also Johannes de Parisius, of Lincoln, in 1200–1, *Abbrev. Plac.*, p. 26; Robertus de Parisius, who held land in Wrangle, same county, 1201–2, *ib.*, p. 40; and Walterus de Paris, about 1200, co. Salop., *Cart. Sloan.*, xxxiii. 3. In 1202, 1203, Magister Reginaldus de Parisius, clerk to the king, held the church of Chesterton, co. Cambr., *Rot. de Oblat.*, p. 189, *Rot. de Liberate*, p. 41. Willelmus de Paris or Parisiensis, co. Oxon., occurs in 1206, 1216, 1217, *Abbr. Plac.*, p. 51, *Rot. litt. pat.*, p. 167, *Rot. litt. claus.*, i. 315; Thomas de Parisius, of Lincoln, and Martin his son, 1217, 1225, *Rot. litt. claus.*, i. 297, ii. 28, 31; and Willelmus, son of Thomas de Paris, of Lincoln, middle of thirteenth century, *Harl. Chart.*, 58 B. 45. In 1242 the heirship of Petrus de Paris, of Lincoln, is claimed against Willelmus de Paris, *Abbr. Plac.*, p. 120. We meet with Johannes de Paris and Alicia his wife, in 1252, *Excerpt. e Rot. Fin.*, ii. 131; Willelmus de Parys, co. Oxon., 1255–6, *Inq. p. mort.*, i. 15, 46, *Exc. e Rot. Fin.*, ii. 222, 226; and Robertus Paris and Susanna his wife, co. Leic., 1260, *ib.*, ii. 342. There are many others of later date, among whom may be noticed Johannes, son and heir of Johannes de Parysius, of Lincoln, late Hen. III., *Harl. Chart.*, 57 A. 25; Willelmus de Parys, miles, dominus de Martone, juxta Horncastre, co. Linc., at the close of Hen. III.'s reign, *Cott. Chart.* xxviii. 46; Petrus de Parys and Willelmus de Parys, of Glentworth, co. Linc., 1280–1, *Plac. de quo War.*, p. 425; and Willelmus de Parys, archdeacon of St. Alban's, 1290, *Gest. Abbat.*, ii. 7. In the Chetham MS. of the

probability of his having been some time at Paris is considerably strengthened by the fact of his knowledge of French, evinced not only by his having occasionally written in that language, but also by the frequent introduction and explanation of many French words in his writings.[1] His familiarity also with the localities of Paris,[2] and the interest he takes in its university, are remarkable, yet his silence on the subject, supposing him to have been a student or resident there, is equally so.

Date of his assuming the monastic habit.

Leaving this question, therefore, as doubtful, the earliest positive notice we find of Matthew Paris is a note in his own handwriting, recording his having assumed the monastic habit at St. Alban's on the 21st January 1217. His words are, "Hoc anno ego frater Matheus Parisiensis habitum suscepi religionis, die sanctæ Agnetis."[3] He does not tell us whether he assumed the habit as a novice, or on making his profession, nor is any information given as to his age at that time. We are told, however, by him in another

---

Flores Historiarum, fol. 230, is noticed the death of Richard, (son of Richard, king of the Romans,) 5 Aug. 1261, at Winchelsea, who was buried at Cologne, "cognominatus *de Parys*, eo quod Parisius natus erat."—The local knowledge of the city of Leicester shown by our author, would seem to point out his connexion with that locality. See *Hist. Angl.*, i. 378.

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 240, 248, 360, 386, ii. 59; *Chron. Maj.*, pp. 847, 829, 870. French documents are also introduced in 1247, *ibid.*, p. 719, and 1249, *Additament.*, p. 178. With such evidence before us, it is amusing to read the following passage in Whitelocke's "Notes uppon the King's writ for choosing Members of Parliament," 1766, p. 62: "There are but few acts of the time of Henry the Third in the French language, although it prevailed so much in ordinary life, that Matthew Paris, a contemporary, writes *that he was in danger of losing his livelihood, because he did not understand it!*" Yet this unaccountable assertion is gravely repeated by Luders, in his "Essay on the use of the French language in our ancient laws," [1807] p. 62.

[2] See the account of the quarrel at St. Geneviève, in 1146, between the *Marguilliers* and the pope's clerks, *Hist. Angl.*, i. 278; the grant of a house to the Jacobite preachers in 1198, *ibid.*, ii. 66; the tumult at St. Marcel in 1229, *ibid.*, ii. 308; and the narrative of the visit of Henry III. to Paris in 1254, *Chron. Maj.*, pp. 899, 900.

[3] MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 165 *b.*

Age of admission to St. Alban's.

place,[1] that abbat Warin of St. Alban's (A.D. 1183–1195) had made a regulation that when a novice received the tonsure he should at the same time assume the monastic habit, and not defer doing so till his profession was made; and this rule, in all probability, remained in force. The age of a novice, on admission, seems to have varied in different monasteries. At the Benedictine monastery of St. Augustine's, Canterbury, the monks obtained a papal bull in 1180, not to admit under the age of fifteen,[2] and this may have been in general the practice at St. Alban's, until by the revision of the statutes of the Benedictine Order in 1238 (by pope Gregory IX.), the age of probation was fixed at nineteen, and of profession at twenty years of age.[3] Under the rule of abbat Robert (in 1158), a scholar of Montreuil "ætate juvenis," took the habit (*habitum religionis suscepit*), at St. Alban's, and remained three years afterwards "in disciplina novitiali;"[4] but a subsequent abbat, John de Cella (A.D. 1195–1214), on being applied to by one of the monks to admit his nephew, then a boy at school, refused to do so, "quia impubes erat, nec adhuc tantæ ætatis ut esset idoneus."[5] If Matthew Paris was received as a novice in 1217 (as appears probable), it is difficult to reconcile the fact with his mention of occurrences in the monastery some years previously. Thus, he tells us he recollected the wonderful memory of abbat John de Cella,[6] in reference to the Psalter, so that he

His notice of previous occurrences connected with the abbey.

---

[1] *De Gest. Abbatum*, i. 214, ed. Riley.

[2] *Hist. Monast. S. Aug. Cant.*, p. 427, ed. Hardwicke.

[3] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 475. Cf. *Additument.*, pp. 174, 228.

[4] *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 180.

[5] *Ibid.*, i. 223. Yet the abbat of Peterborough made no difficulty of admitting the boy at once.

[6] This is the abbat who was previously prior of Wallingford, and hence misnamed *John of Wallingford* by Gale, whose blunder in confounding him with the real person of that name (who compiled the Chronicles in MS. Cott. Julius D. VII. near half a century later) has since been a constant source of error. The abbat John de Cella studied at Paris, and is praised as a grammarian, a poet, and a physician, but not as an historian. See *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 217.

could repeat the whole of it backwards, verse by verse.[1] He also enters under the year 1213 the singular story of king John's mission to Mohammed Al Nassir, the Emir Al-Mumenin, as related in his hearing by Robert of London, the secular custos of St. Alban's, to certain inmates of the abbey.[2] But there is some confusion in the chronology here, for if the mission took place at all, it must have been after the landing of Mohammed in Spain in 1210, and previous to the battle of Navas de Tolosa, fought in July 1212. Now, as the custody of the abbey was granted by king John to Robert of London and Matthew Mantell, sheriff of Hertfordshire, on 29th March 1208,[3] he could not, as asserted by Paris, have been made custodian in reward for his services in this mission, nor could the event have taken place after the death of Geoffrey Fitz-Peter, the justiciary, in October 1213, as stated by him. It will be, however, reasonable to conclude from the above that Matthew Paris was attached to the abbey several years before he assumed the monastic habit, perhaps as a scholar, or in some other capacity.

Other events referred to, of earlier date.

But there are some events of still earlier date referred to by Paris, which cause perplexity. Under the year 1192 he narrates a story on the authority of Ranulph Besace, physician of king Richard, who became

[1] *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 232.

[2] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 243, and thence copied by the chroniclers, John of Oxnede, John of Tinmouth, the author of the Scalachronica, and Thomas Rudborne; and inserted by Walsingham in the text of the *Gesta Abbatum*, i. 236. The truth of this story has been questioned, but it is credited by Tyrrell, Sharon Turner, Milman, and Lingard. It was certainly not invented by Matthew Paris, and some of the persons who heard the story were probably living at the time when he wrote it down. The most curious feature of it is the degraded character given of John by his own confidential clerk! Robert told the Emir that the king was "quinquagenarius" in age. If this is to be accepted strictly, it would fix the date of the occurrence to 1206, since John was born in 1166; but at this time Mohammed was at Fez or Morocco.

[3] *Rot. litt. pat.*, p. 81. Robert of London had previously (23 Jan.) been appointed custos of Christ Church, Canterbury, and the archiepiscopal manors, *ib.*

afterwards canon of St. Paul's;[1] and in 1194 he specifies the presents sent by abbat Warin to Richard, after his return from captivity, from the information given to him by Geoffrey Hackesalt, the abbat's messenger.[2] Again, under 1195, in reference to the Apologue of Vitalis the Venetian, related by Richard,[3] he makes the following note, "Apologus Ricardi regis, quam abbati Sancti Albani Guarino, et *ipse nobis enarravit*."[4] In the first of these instances Paris probably heard the story from Besace many years after the event,[5] and this may have been the case also with Geoffrey Hackesalt, but with regard to king Richard's Apologue, if we are to interpret the words literally, Paris must have heard it before the death of abbat Warin, which took place in April 1195.[6] This would throw back the birth of Matthew Paris at least to the year 1185, and make him seventy-four at his death in 1259—no very extraordinary age—but the difficulty of reconciling this with the date of his taking the monastic habit in 1217 is so great, that it will be preferable to understand the words "nobis enarravit" as applying to the monks of the abbey in general, or else as writing in the name of Wendover, to whose text the whole story is an addition. On the whole, therefore, it will be safer to fix the birth of our historian about the year 1200, or a few years earlier, and this will make him upwards of sixty at his decease, which is well borne out by the appearance of his portrait drawn at the time.[7]

Probable date of the birth of Matthew Paris.

The information we possess of a personal character,

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 37; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 813.

[2] *Ibid.*, ii. 47. In the *Chr. Maj.*, p. 175, the presents are mentioned more briefly.

[3] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 129.

[4] See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 55, and compare "nobis narravit," ii. 266.

[5] The compiler of the Cecil MS. informs us that Besace lived more than sixty years afterwards, and this is confirmed by the notices found of him as canon in 1213, 1217, and 1243. See Newcourt's *Repertorium*, 1708, i. 103, 187.

[6] *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 217.

[7] See Preface to vol. i. p. lii.

after Matthew Paris became an inmate of St. Alban's, is gleaned wholly from incidental notices in his own writings, and it will be best to take them in order of time.

He was present at the translation of St. Thomas at Canterbury, 1220,

To judge from the language employed, he was present in 1220 at the ceremonial of the translation of the body of St. Thomas at Canterbury. In Wendover and the *Chronica Majora* the occurrence is described only in general terms,[1] but in the *Historia Anglorum* we learn that the artists, Walter of Colchester, sacrist of St. Alban's, and Elyas of Derham, canon of Salisbury, were there, by whose admirable skill and contrivance the shrine of gold and gems was fashioned, and the appliances for raising the saint's remains from the crypt carried out. The remarks seem those of an eye-witness.[2] Paris must have been again at Canterbury a few years later, since he notices having seen there four great sapphires offered at the tomb of St. Thomas by John de Brienne, king of Jerusalem.[3]

and at the visit of the Armenian archbishop to St. Alban's, 1228.

In 1228 occurred the visit of the archbishop of Armenia and his suite to the abbey of St. Alban's, of which Wendover has left us an account.[4] He tells us that the replies of the archbishop to the questions addressed to him respecting Joseph Cartaphilus (the Wandering Jew [5]) and the ark of Noah were interpreted in French by a knight of his household, and in the *Chronica Majora* Paris adds, that he was of Antioch, and known to

[1] Wendover, iv. 65; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 310.

[2] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 242 (where the name is mis-printed *Durham*). This is a short but fair specimen of the peculiar value of this work, when compared with the Greater Chronicle. The death of Elyas of Derham is noticed in 1245 in the latter, p. 658.

[3] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 260.

[4] Wend., iv. 176.

[5] It is interesting to note, that in the nearly contemporary rhyming Chronicle of Philip Mouskes, (afterwards bishop of Tournay,) we find a similar account of the Wandering Jew, derived from the same Armenian prelate, who, after visiting the shrine of St. Thomas at Canterbury, went to Cologne, to see the reliques of the three kings. See "Curious

a servant of the abbat.[1] There is every reason to infer that Paris was present at this conversation, and that he refers modestly to himself when he states that a question was asked of the archbishop "ab *uno* qui fuit ei assidens collateralis, *monacho*," touching the observance of the feast of the Conception in the East.[2]

Death of abbat William of Trumpington, 1235.

On the 24th February 1235 the death of abbat William of Trumpington took place, who had ruled the abbey of St. Alban's since 1214, and whose merits are highly lauded by our historian.[3] The proceedings consequent on the election of his successor, John of Hertford, are given by him at great length, and the fact is only noticed here in consequence of an extraordinary statement made by the Rev. Peter Newcome, in his History of the abbey, in reference to Matthew Paris, of whom he says, "He came early into the house, and *might have been placed in the abbatic chair when John was elected, had he not declined the honour, through fear that it would involve him in care and trouble, and prevent him from writing his Great History*."[4] The whole of this statement appears to be mere invention, and does not rest on the semblance of any authority.

Unfounded statement in reference to the election of Matth. Paris as abbat.

He attended the nuptials of Henry III. at Westminster, 1236,

In 1236 Paris appears to have accompanied the new abbat to London, to attend the splendid ceremony of the nuptials of Henry III. to Alienor of Provence; and he describes with the zest of one who thoroughly enjoyed

---

Myths of the Middle Ages," by E. Baring Gould, 1866, pp. 10, 23. The story was confirmed by some Armenians who again visited St. Alban's in 1252. *Chr. Maj.*, p. 854.

[1] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 351.

[2] Although French was the ordinary language of persons of rank and the superior clergy at this time, we can hardly suppose that it was used generally by the inmates of a monastery, who would converse either in Latin or English. It is not unlikely, therefore, that Matthew Paris may have assisted in the interpretation of the archbishop's replies to the monks.

[3] *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 300.

[4] *Hist. of the Abbey of St. Alban's*, 1795, p. 172.

it, the pompous procession of the citizens of London, and the rest of the pageantry.[1] At the same time he notices the overflow of the Thames to such an extent, that the palace at Westminster was flooded, so that people were rowed in boats into the Hall.[2] It was then, also, probably his inquisitive eye was attracted to the remains of the original foundations of the Hall, as planned by William Rufus, which, he informs us, extended from the Thames to the public highway.[3]

and again at the feast of St. Edward the Confessor, 1247.

In October 1247 Matthew Paris was again at Westminster, to witness the solemn celebration of the feast of St. Edward the Confessor, on which occasion the king walked on foot from St. Paul's to the abbey, carrying as an offering a vase containing a portion of the blood of Christ.[4] The bishop of Norwich preached on the occasion, and as some of the clergy expressed doubts of the genuineness of the relique, the bishop of Lincoln (Grosseteste) undertook to convince them, and his discourse was noted down at the time by the attentive historian.[5] The king was seated on his throne, attired in royal robes, and recognizing Paris, caused him to sit on the middle step between the throne and the floor, and expressly directed him to write an account of the proceedings. As a proof of his satisfaction, he afterwards invited Paris and his three companions to dinner.[6]

Origin of his mission to Norway.

About two years or less previous to this date the services of Matthew Paris had been sought in an affair which resulted in his mission to Norway—the most important event in his otherwise tranquil and un-

[1] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 420.

[2] *Ibid.*, p. 421. A similar occurrence took place in 1242, *ibid.*, p. 596; *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 467.

[3] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 165. It is to Westminster Hall, and not to the Tower, that Malmesbury alludes, vol. ii. p. 504, ed. Hardy.

[4] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 735; *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 29, where a drawing of the vase is given; *Abbr. Chron.*, iii. 302.

[5] *Additament.*, p. 161 [MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 91].

[6] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 736.

chequered life. The origin of this business may be gathered from his own narrative, and corroborated by the notices found in the Scandinavian Annals. The Benedictine monastery of Holm in Norway had been founded by king Cnut about the year 1030,[1] and was situated on an island subsequently named Munkholm or Niderholm, in the diocese of Nidaros (Drontheim). It was the most ancient foundation of the kind in Norway, and at the head of all the other religious houses there,[2] but by the ill-government of the abbat Rita-Biorn had been greatly impoverished, and the abbat at length excommunicated by archbishop Sigurd.[3] Instead, however, of submitting to the sentence, he went off furtively to Rome in the year 1240, accompanied by the sacrist, and there, by means of the abbey seal (brought away surreptitiously), he contrived to borrow the sum of 500 marks from the Lombard usurers, for which the possessions of the monastery were placed in pledge.[4] Having by this means gained his suit against the archbishop, he returned in 1244 to Norway, but on his way back to Holm he died at the abbey of St. Alban, in Seljoe, near Stadtland, in the district of Nordfiord.[5] During the abbat's absence affairs fell into much greater

---

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 41; *Abbr. Chron.*, iii. 163. See Suhm's note in *Scriptt. rerum Danicarum*, tom. iv. p. 415. Hafn., 1776.

[2] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 756; *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 41. The whole island on which the monastery stood belonged to the monks, *ibid.* Its position was in the bay opposite the city of Drontheim (the ancient capital of Norway), from which it lay distant about a mile and half. The monastery was in later times converted into a state fortress. See "Bescrivelse over kongeriget Norge, af Lars H. Bing," 8°, Kiob., 1796, pp. 433–436; and Dr. Edward Clarke's account in 1819, *ap.* Forester's Norway, p. 274.

[3] Rita-Biorn succeeded as abbat in 1232, *Ann. Isl.*, iii. 84. See the note in *Diplomatarium Islandicum*, 1862, pp. 525–531.

[4] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 755.

[5] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 756. This abbey is mentioned also by Matthew Paris in *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 41. For an account of it, see *Scriptt. rer. Dan.*, iv. 6, 13, 418. The French translator of Paris has made a great mistake in placing Seljoe at Zell, one of the Shetland islands, and Holm opposite to it! tom. vi. p. 440.

disorder at Holm, and the monastery was taken by the archbishop into his own hands, so that, after an ineffectual journey to Rome by the prior Clement, a new abbat was elected by the monks, and the further sum of 300 marks having been collected, the prior was again despatched to England with letters of king Hacon addressed to Matthew Paris,[1] requesting him to undertake the office of freeing the monastery of Holm from the claims of the usurers in London, into whose hands the bonds given by Rita-Biorn had passed.[2] This must have taken place in 1245, or, at latest, in 1246. The good monk therefore having succeeded in effecting the object of this application, the prior returned home; but although the temporal affairs of Holm were amended, their spiritual position was worse, and the monks were threatened with expulsion by the archbishop, as ignorant and void of discipline. Just at this juncture it was (in June 1247) that the papal legate William, bishop of Sabina, landed at Bergen, for the purpose of crowning Hacon;[3] and the ceremony having taken place on St. Olaf's festival[4] (29th July), the monks of Holm appealed to him for protection. He advised them to send to the pope with-

[1] How Hacon was first brought into communication with Paris is not clear, except from the report of his abilities. The writer of the note in *Diplomat. Island.*, p. 53, says that Paris had been previously in Norway on some commercial business, and was on that account known to the king, but no evidence of this exists. There certainly seems to have been some communication between the king and his abbey, for on 15 July, 1238, Richard of St. Alban's received letters of protection as the king's "nuncius." *Fœdera*, i. 236.

[2] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 756. See also Lange, "De Norske Klosters Historie," 1867, p. 325.

[3] The date of the legate's arrival is assigned by Sturla Thordson to 1246, but this is erroneous, since the pope's brief for the coronation is dated as late as 3 Nov. 1246 (*Diplomat. Norweg.*, p. 26), and the landing of the legate in England *en route* is noticed by Matthew Paris about Easter, 1247 (*Chr. Maj.*, p. 731). He proceeded to Lynn, where he remained nearly three months before he sailed for Bergen. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 23; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 300.

[4] *Saga Hákonar Konungs*, Hafn., 1810, cap. 260; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 740.

out delay, and ask for a visitor to reform the rule of their Order.[1] The abbot accordingly, with one of the monks, proceeded to the papal court at Lyons, and having been favourably received by Innocent IV., they made choice of Matthew Paris as visitor, not only on account of their previous experience of his prudence and integrity, but also from his being on the most friendly footing with their sovereign.[2] The pope at once acceded to their wishes, and gave them a mandate addressed to the abbot of St. Alban's, dated 27 November 1247, directing him to send brother Matthew for that purpose to Norway.[3] In obedience to this mandate Paris, "licet invitus," embarked in the following summer (from Lynn probably, or Yarmouth), and arrived at Bergen at the time[4] a fearful conflagration was raging in the city, which destroyed the whole of it, with the exception of the king's palace and four religious houses.[5] On the

Matth. Paris is chosen visitor of the Benedictine Order in Norway.

His arrival at Bergen, 1248.

[1] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 756; *Abbr. Chron.*, iii. 300.

[2] They say, "Petimus igitur de domo illa [S. Albani] quendam monachum, Matheum nomine, nobis reformatorem et instructorem; cujus prudentiam experti sumus et fidelitatem; præterea familiarissimus regi nostro et amicissimus." *Chr. Maj.*, p. 756.

[3] This mandate is printed in *Chr. Maj.*, p. 756, and in *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 40; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 304. To the copy entered in the *Liber Additamentorum* [Nero D. I., fol. 92 *b*] is prefixed the following rubric by Paris: "*Auctenticum papale, quo dominus Matheus Parisiensis, qui et scripsit hæc, destinatus est et constitutus, licet invitus, reformator Ordinis Sancti Benedicti, et visitator Nigrorum abbatum et monachorum eorumdem in regno Norwagiæ.*"

[4] The exact day is uncertain. Some copies of Hacon's Saga say a fortnight after St. John's day [24th June], which would fix it to 8th July; whilst others, with Torfæus, say fourteen days previous, namely, 10th June. Munch, in his "Norske Folks Historie," 1858, vol. iv. p. 100, gives the date as 4th July.

[5] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 753; *Saga Hákonar Konungs*, cap. 260. The king was on the spot, and is said to have endeavoured to arrest the progress of the flames, by causing large cauldrons to be filled with sea-water. This is curious, as it would imply the absence of springs or wells. In the *Diplomatarium Norwegicum*, p. 21, 8°, 1849, edited by Lange and Unger, there is a brief of pope Gregory IX., addressed to archbishop Sigurd of Nideros (Drontheim), stating that as the infants in his country "propter aquæ penuriam" were accustomed

following day a terrific thunderstorm took place, and the ship was struck by lightning on board of which Paris had arrived, the mast was shivered in pieces, one man killed, and the rest of the crew seriously injured. Matthew Paris himself escaped only by having been occupied in saying a mass for his safe arrival in a church near the shore.[1] Previous to his leaving England, the king of France—Louis IX., then preparing for his crusade—wrote to him, to ask him to convey letters to king Hacon,[2] which he did, and delivered them at Bergen, for which service he received the king's thanks, accompanied by some valuable presents.[3] After this he proceeded to Holm, and successfully accomplished in that monastery the object of his mission. He gives us no details of his journey, but the difficulties of the land route (a distance of above 400 miles) are so great, even at a recent period,[4] that it is probable he went by sea in one of the coasting *jagts* of the country, used for commerce, and returned in the same manner to Bergen.[5]

He delivers letters to king Hacon from Louis IX.,

and proceeds to Holm.

---

to be baptized in beer (*cervisia*), contrary to the command of the Gospel, he is informed that such baptism in future is to be considered of no avail (*non debent reportari rite baptizati, qui cervisia baptizantur*).

[1] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 753. The king supplied the ship with a new mast, "pro amore ipsius, qui in ipsa navi fuerat."

[2] *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 304. The Duc de Luynes, in his Introduction to the French translation of Matthew Paris, p. li, asserts that he was at this time with Louis at St. Germain-en-Laye, but this is evidently an error, as proved by the passage referred to above. For these letters of Louis, see *Chr. Maj.*, p. 741, and *Abbr. Chr.*, p. 304. In the latter the letters patent are dated incorrectly 1247, instead of 1248.

[3] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 741.

[4] See Forester's Norway, pp. 25, 178, 242.

[5] In the *Liber Benefactorum*, compiled by Walsingham in 1380 (MS. Cott. Nero D. VII., fol. 50 *b*), the mission of Matthew Paris to Norway is thus mentioned: "Matheus Parisiensis, religiosus monachus, incomparabilis cronographus et pictor peroptimus, deputatus est per dompnum papam Innocentium ad regendum Holmense monasterium in Norwegia, spectans ad regimen archipræsulis Nidrosiensis, cujus religio emarcuerat, fama viluerat, bona dissipata fuerant, ipsius loci desidia monachorum. Cujus religionem reflorere fecit, famam sua

His return to England, 1249.

The return of Matthew Paris to England could scarcely have taken place before 1249, and the next matter of a personal nature occurs in the following year, when he tells us he remonstrated boldly with king Henry III. for having made a grant of free-warren contrary to the charters of the abbey of St. Alban's.[1] The remonstrance itself, however, was probably made on the occasion of the king's visit to the abbey at Easter, 1251. Not long after this, namely, in the following July, Paris was at Winchester with the king (who had gone there to meet his half-brother the bishop elect), and heard the account of the proceedings of the Pastoureaux in France related by a monk of Sherborne, all which he diligently noted down.[2] In November also of the same year he appears to have been present at the dedication of the church of Hayles, in Gloucestershire, on the foundation of which house earl Richard of Cornwall had expended above 10,000 marks, as he himself informed our historian.[3]

He remonstrates with the king, on account of a grant of free-warren.

Goes to Winchester, July 1251.

Probably at the dedication of the church of Hayles, Nov. 1251,

and at the marriage of Alexander II. at York, Christmas, 1251–2.

At Christmas, 1251–2, the marriage of the king's daughter to Alexander II. of Scotland was celebrated with great magnificence at York, and Paris, from the details he gives, would seem to have been a spectator.[4] This is confirmed by a passage on another occasion, in which he speaks of a personal conference held by him with the Jew Aaron, who lived at York.[5]

Favour shown him by the king, 1257.

In March 1257 the king came again on a visit to St. Alban's, and remained there a week, during which

sanctitate extulit, possessiones prudenter auxit, adeo ut nulli monasterio regionis illius inferior putaretur." This passage is not in the *Liber de Benefactoribus*, printed at the end of Trokelowe by Mr. Riley.

[1] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 783; *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 62. The king is said to have defended himself by citing the example of the Pope, but afterwards added, "Well, well, we will consider about it." But the promise came to nothing!

[2] *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 820, 825; Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 112.

[3] *Ibid.*, p. 827; *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 115; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 311.

[4] *Ibid.*, p. 829.

[5] *Ibid.*, p. 785. "Aaron nomine, de Eboraco oriundus, et *in eadem civitate continuans mansionem.*"

time he particularly distinguished the historian by having him at his table and in his chamber, where he communicated to him in a familiar manner his knowledge of various historical matters, such as the names of the electors of Germany, the sovereigns of England who had been canonized, and the titles of the English baronies, which the king's memory enabled him to enumerate to the number of 250; a creditable specimen of royal acquirements, which but few of his successors in the two following centuries could have surpassed.[1] Shortly afterwards a deputation of Masters of Arts came from Oxford to St. Alban's to complain to the king of the oppression of the bishop of Lincoln, and Paris took the opportunity of privately beseeching the king to protect the university, which he promised to do. This is the latest mention made of himself by the historian.

His declining health. For some years previous to this—to judge from the unequal and altered character of the handwriting in his original manuscripts—the infirmities of age or a declining state of health had gradually affected him, so that he was obliged at intervals to make use of the friendly aid of a fellow-monk to write the concluding portions of his works. This aid so lent to him appears in the *Historia Anglorum* from the close of the year 1252 to the end of 1253 (where it terminates); in the *Abbreviatio Chronicorum* for the years 1253, 1254, 1255, and in the *Chronica Majora* for the years 1258 and 1259.

His death, 1259. The death of the historian must have taken place shortly after May 1259,[2] as we are informed by the same fellow-monk who lent the aid of his pen, and drew the portrait of Matthew Paris reclining on his couch after his eyes had closed for ever.[3] Besides this portrait we

---

[1] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 945.

[2] It is scarcely worth while to notice the careless mistake of Dr. Giles, the English translator of Matthew Paris, who places his death in 1273; but errors like these, in books intended for popular reading, are sure to be repeated.

[3] MS. Reg. 14 C. vii., fol. 218 *b*.

have another from his own hand, drawn some nine years previously, and both exhibit features of an ordinary cast, but indicative of honesty and intelligence.[1]

No record of the place of his interment.

Tradition has preserved no trace of the spot where the remains of Matthew Paris were deposited. In the previous century abbat Warin had directed that the bodies of deceased monks, hitherto laid under the turf of mother earth, should in future be placed in stone coffins,[2] but none now exist. In the time also of abbat Whethamstede (about A.D. 1400) the gravestones in the cemetery were cleaned, and an account written of those which had names inscribed on them.[3] No mention, however, is found of the historians of St. Alban's, although many others, with less claim to remembrance, are recorded. In this respect, indeed, Paris fared no worse than Malmesbury, whose tomb, when inquired for by Leland, was not only ignored by the monks, but the very name of the chronicler was unknown, except to one or two individuals![4]

---

[1] The engraved portrait prefixed to Wats's edition, 1640, is taken from the above, but the artist has taken great liberty with the original. There is a third portrait, very coarsely executed, and of no authority, drawn by Alan Strayler, the illuminator of the *Liber Benefactorum*, in MS. Cott. Nero D. VII., fol. 50 *b*. Paris was well intitled to a place among the benefactors of his abbey. His gifts, as recorded by Walsingham in the MS. just referred to, consisted of two silver cups; a gold "monile," to which was suspended a fragment of the Cross; and a plain silver-gilt cup for the refectory; but besides these, Paris himself, at the end of his *Libellus de Anulis et Gemmis et Pallis* (MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 146 *b*), mentions his having bestowed, at various times, four silken cloths, to hang over the great beam on which the apostles and prophets were carved; a cloth of baldekin, embroidered with eagles, out of which a choral cope was made, fringed with gold; the cloth was given to him by queen Alienor, and the fringe by king Hacon of Norway; a silk cloth to make a chasuble, alb, stole, and maniple, bound with gold fringe, of the gift of king Henry III.; and another red silk striped cloth, with a blue orbicular border, given him by the abbat of Ramsey.

[2] *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 198.

[3] This curious record is preserved in MS. Harl. 1775, and portions of it have been very ignorantly translated by Newcome, in his History of the Abbey.

[4] *Comment. de Scriptt. Brit.*, i. 196.

It is now time to speak of the literary labours of Matthew Paris. On the death of Roger of Wendover, in May 1236, he was, no doubt, directed by the abbat John of Hertford (elected only the year previous) to continue and enlarge his historical work, a task for which he had probably been previously prepared. As already remarked, it is uncertain at what time Wendover began to compile his *Flores Historiarum*, but there are good grounds for believing that it was not until after his deposition from Belvoir and return to St. Alban's, about the year 1219.[1] At all events, the text of the year 1179 could not have been written by him till after 1215, from the reference made in it to the council held in the latter year.[2] It is obvious, moreover, that the chief authorities used by Wendover in the compilation of his Chronicle, namely, Bede, Geoffrey of Monmouth, Sigebert, Florence of Worcester, Simeon of Durham, Malmesbury, Huntingdon, Robert de Monte, William of Tyre, Diceto, Benedictus Abbas, Hoveden,[3] and Coggeshale, were not likely to be found in the library of a small cell like Belvoir, whereas at St. Alban's they were ready to his hands. Whether brother Matthew gave him any assistance in his work may admit of question, but it certainly appears highly probable. At times the style of Wendover's text is very similar to that of Paris, and this appears the more as we approach its termination. This is particularly the case in the three chapters relative to Peter de Rivaux and others in 1234, which it is difficult to believe were not written by Paris;[4] and in the original

Continuation of Wendover by Matthew Paris.

Did Paris assist him previously?

---

[1] See Preface to vol. i. p. xiv.

[2] Wendover, ii. 402, ed. Coxe.

[3] The assertion of Mr. Stubbs (Pref. to *Chronica Rog. de Hoveden*, p. lxxii), that Hoveden was unknown to Wendover and Paris, appears to be a mistake, as will be evident to any one on comparing the text of Hoveden from 1196 to 1201 with Wendover.

[4] Wend. iv. 311–314. It is remarkable that in the Cotton MS. Nero D. v., the conclusion of Wendover's work is noted *just before these chapters.*

manuscript of the *Chronica Majora* these chapters are marked by him "*Offendiculum*," as likely to give offence. However this may be, in continuing and making additions to Wendover's work, Matthew Paris, according to the usual practice of monastic writers, adopted it as his own,[1] yet did not scruple occasionally to express opinions which differed widely from those of his predecessor.[2]

His additions to Wendover.

Previous to the Conquest these additions are but few in number, and it is only about the year 1100 that they become more frequent and important. How admirably Paris was qualified for the task it is needless to point out, and the eulogium bestowed on him by the earlier continuator of his work *De Gestis Abbatum* (in all probability, Rishanger), will best prove the estimation in which he was held by those who followed in his footsteps.[3]

---

[1] Passages in which the *first person* (as used by Wendover) is retained by Paris, occur in the *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 98, 136, 152, 173. In 1236 he refers back to the year 620 for an account of Mahomet as if a part of his own work, *ibid.*, p. 423.

[2] An instance of this will be found in the account of the tumult at London in 1196, headed by William Fitz-Osbert, *alias* with the Beard. This man is represented by Wendover (copying Diceto) as a murderer and revolutionist; whilst, according to Paris, he suffered as a martyr, in defending the rights of the poor. Cf. Wend. iii. 94, and *Chr. Maj.*, p. 181; *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 57.

[3] "Eodem quoque tempore floruit et obiit dominus Matheus Parisiensis, monachus ecclesiæ Beati Albani, vir quidem eloquens et famosus, innumeris virtutibus plenus, *historiographus et cronographus magnificus*, dictator egregius, corde frequenter revolvens 'Osiositas inimica est animæ;' quem quidem, ubi nunquam fuerat præsentia cognitum, partibus remotis fama reddiderat divulgata commendatum. Hic vero, a multis retroactis temporibus usque ad finem vitæ suæ Cronica diligenter colligens, gesta magnatum tam secularium quam ecclesiasticorum, necnon casus et eventus varios et mirabiles, in scriptis plenarie redegit, mirabilemque ad posterorum notitiam præteritorum reliquit certificationem." MS. Cott. Claud. E. iv., fol. 156 *b*. Walsingham, also, in his later continuation of the same work, after mentioning Wendover, writes, "Ex post Matheus Parisiensis claruit, qui Rogeri prædicti Cronicas necessarie ampliavit. . . . . . . cujus laudes si omnino vellem perstringere, opus attemptarem interminabile," *ibid.*, fol. 332 *b*.

It was no doubt the original intention of Matthew Paris to finish the *Chronica Majora* at the end of the year 1250, and he appears to have then suspended his labour on it for a few years;[1] but he subsequently resumed it, and added the years from 1251 to 1259 inclusive. To the same period of 1250 he had also at first brought down the *Gesta Abbatum*[2] (afterwards continued to 1255), and also the *Liber Additamentorum* or *Supplementorum*, containing copies of documents illustrative of the Greater Chronicle.[3] But during the intervals of cessation from his larger work Paris employed himself with unwearied industry in the compilation or supervision of others. He had previously superintended an abridgment of the *Chronica Majora* under the original title of *Flores Historiarum*,[4] and wrote the portion between 1241 and 1249 with his own hand; and immediately following on the Greater Chronicle, he commenced in 1250 the *Historia Anglorum*,[5] which he brought down to 1253. Two years afterwards he compiled, in addition, a third but briefer work, which he intitled *Abbreviatio Chronicorum* (printed in the present volume), from A.D. 1100 to 1255. Besides these laborious undertakings, he directed a transcript of the second portion of the *Chronica Majora*, from the year 1189 to 1250[6] (to which he added a few notes and drawings), and wrote and illustrated the smaller pieces contained in the MSS. at Cam-

The *Chronica Majora*.

Other historical works of Paris.

---

[1] It is referred to as ending in 1250 by John of Wallingford and John of Oxnede, both of whom abridged the *Chronica Majora*, and afterwards availed themselves of the continuation to 1259.

[2] *Vitæ Offarum*, p. 31, ed. Wats.

[3] These documents extend from 1235 to 1250 (continued to 1253). Only two are earlier, of the years 1215 and 1219. The work appears to have been left unfinished, and after the death of Paris some later pieces were added, in 1259 and 1260. See Preface to vol. i. p. xxiii, *n*.

[4] This is the work so mischievously ascribed to "Matthew of Westminster." See Preface, vol. i. pp. xxi–xxiii. After the decease of Paris, the text of his *Abbreviatio Chronicorum*, from 1250 to 1255, was transcribed literally into it.

[5] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 9.

[6] MS. Cott. Nero D. v.

bridge, C. C. C. C. xxvi. and xvi., and MS. Cott. Nero D. I. There is, probably, no other instance on record of an historian of this or a later period having left so large a mass of materials (the greater part in his own handwriting), or which have been so fortunately preserved.

The *Historia Anglorum*.

The *Historia Anglorum* was intended, as stated by the author, to illustrate chiefly the state of English affairs[1] from the period of the Conquest;[2] and in abridging the larger work he omits nearly everything relating to foreign events (with the exception of the Crusade, for which he specially pleads[3]), as also the religious legends given by Wendover, and various letters and lengthy documents. But although the *Chronica Majora* are more diffuse, the *Historia Anglorum*, on the other hand, abounds more in details, and adds a large amount of personal anecdote, as well as many minute facts and circumstances, which would be sought for in vain elsewhere, and which throw so much light on contemporary usages and the state of society. In this respect there is a great resemblance between Matthew Paris and Ordericus Vitalis,[4] who wrote a century earlier. Both were monks of the same Order; their studies and discipline were alike, with the same turn of mind; both were diligent collectors of information; both were fond of gossip and the marvellous, particularly when brought from distant countries; and both were special retailers of anecdote, which occasionally might be liable to the charge of exaggeration.

Authorities followed by Matthew Paris.

The authorities followed by Matthew Paris, exclusive of Wendover, are chiefly the same as those of his

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 342.

[2] It commences really in the year 1067, but has a *resumé* prefixed of the events which led to the Norman invasion.

[3] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 79. He follows in this respect the example set him by Ordericus Vitalis, Malmesbury, Huntingdon, and Wendover.

[4] See the excellent "Notice sur Orderic Vital, par L. Delisle," at the end of Prevost's edition of that writer, 1838–1855.

predecessor,[1] but, in addition, he had access to numerous contemporary documents,[2] of which he preserved copies; whilst the frequency of the royal visits to St. Alban's, as well as the constant resort there of pilgrims from the East, papal agents, and others, largely contributed to his stores of information. He refers also to several middle-age writers, namely, the Sentences of Peter Lombard,[3] the Latin translation of Aristotle "De Meteoribus,"[4] the *Nova Poetria* of Geoffrey de Vinesauf,[5] the *Cosmographia* of Bernardus Silvester,[6] and others, which serve to show the extent of his reading. His classical quotations are on a par with those of other writers of the thirteenth and previous centuries, and comprise Ovid, Horace, Claudian, Lucan, Statius, Juvenal, Seneca, and Æsop.[7]

His friends and acquaintances.

But apart from these written authorities, Matthew Paris had the advantage of a large circle of friends and acquaintances among the higher ranks of the clergy and laity, from whom he received valuable oral information.

---

[1] The old Royal MS. 13 D. v. contains copies of Geoffrey of Monmouth, Gildas [Nennius], Malmesbury, and Ailred of Rivaux, with rubrics and notes in the hand of Paris. A copy of Diceto, read by him, is also in MS. Reg. 13 E. vi. See Preface to vol. i. p. x, *n*. In reference to the succession of Urban III. in 1185, he adds, "secundum quandam Historiam," *Chr. Maj.*, p. 143; and again, in 1204, respecting the foundation of Beaulieu abbey, *ib.*, p. 211, the Cotton MS. Nero D. v. adds, "secundum unum Ystoriographum," which proves, as Wats remarks, that Paris consulted various authorities besides Wendover.

[2] Besides official documents, such as decrees of councils, papal bulls, letters, &c., he refers expressly to the Exchequer Rolls under the years 1110, 1215, and 1216, *Chr. Maj.*, p. 64; *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 162, 182; as also to the "Rotuli Vicecomitum," in 1232, *ibid.*, ii. 349, and the "Rotuli clericorum regis," in 1249, *ibid.*, ii. 47.

[3] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 402; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 471.

[4] *Ibid.*, i. 70.

[5] *Ibid.*, ii. 215, *n.*, 276; iii. 83.

[6] *Ibid.*, ii. 392; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 832.

[7] From the repetition of certain quotations in various writers, one might suspect that they were taken from a sort of Manual, and not from the authors themselves. A work of the kind, compiled as early as 1200, actually exists in MS. Cott. Julius A. vii.

His intimacy with king Henry III., as also with earl Richard of Cornwall, the king's brother, has been already noticed.[1] He refers also by name to the following persons:—Ranulph Besace,[2] canon of St. Paul's; Alexander de Suereford,[3] clerk of the Exchequer; Thomas of St. Alban's,[4] physician of the Earl of Arundel, and afterwards prior of Wimundham; John of Basingstoke,[5] archdeacon of Leicester; Alexander de Stavensby,[6] bishop of Chester; Eustace de Fauconberge,[7] bishop of London; Peter des Roches,[8] bishop of Winchester; Hubert de Burgh,[9] earl of Kent; John,[10] bishop of Ardfert; Sir John de Gatesdene,[11] clerk; Richard de Clare,[12] earl of Gloucester; Nicholas de Farnham,[13] bishop of Durham;

[1] See *ante*, pp. xv, xxi. In 1241 the king told Paris that he had expended more than 100,000 marks on the shrine of Edward the Confessor, *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 455; and in 1246 he again refers to the king, in relation to the homage of the count of Savoy, *ibid.*, iii. 8.

[2] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 37; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 814.

[3] *Ibid.*, ii. 162, 182. Alexander de Suereford became baron of the Exchequer in 1234. He compiled the Red Book of the Exchequer, and died in 1246. See Foss's "English Judges," ii. 479. In MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 104, is a note by Paris concerning king Offa, "secundum assertionem magistri Alexandri de Suereford, in historiis periti et excercitati."

[4] *Ibid.*, ii. 237, 249. He was made prior in 1224, and died in 1248. See *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 275, and MS. Cott. Jul. D. VII., fol. 112 *b*; *Monasticon*, iii. 323.

[5] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 255; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 835. He had studied at Athens, and brought thence to England a system of numeration by figures, which are given by Paris in C. C. C. C. xvi., fol. 257. He died in 1252.

[6] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 265.

[7] *Ibid.*, ii. 266.

[8] *Ibid.*, i. 163. Matthew Paris obtained from him, after his return from Palestine in 1231, a copy of a work translated by William of Tyre from the Arabic, relative to the Marvels of the East. The bishop died in 1238.

[9] *Ibid.*, ii. 359, *n.*

[10] *Ibid.*, ii. 511; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 690. He died in 1245, after a residence in the abbey of St. Alban's of thirty years, and bequeathed his MSS. to the library, one of which, the "*Versarius*" of William de Montibus, chancellor of Lincoln, I purchased for the British Museum in 1846 (*Addit.*, 16,164). See the "*Liber Benefactorum*," MS. Cott. Nero D. VII., fol. 87.

[11] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 420. He was knighted in 1245.

[12] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 391; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 431.

[13] *Ibid.*, ii. 90; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 206. He became bishop in 1240.

Waleran,[1] bishop of Beirout; the prior of Westacre;[2] Robert Grosseteste,[3] bishop of Lincoln, and Master John Cratchale,[4] his clerk; William Button,[5] bishop of Bath; the bishop of Tortosa;[6] Walter de St. Martin,[7] Friar Preacher; Thomas,[8] monk of Sherborne; Ralph,[9] abbat of Ramsey; Sir Roger de Thurkeby or Thurkelby,[10] justiciary; Richard de Wiz or Wich,[11] bishop of Chichester; Robert Bacun,[12] Friar Preacher; Sir John de Lexintone,[13] justiciary; John,[13] prior of Newburgh; Richard,[14] bishop of Bangor, and others.

It is obvious that information collected from so many quarters would sometimes be liable to error, or partially coloured by the views of the narrator. Whatever Matthew Paris recorded was doubtless written in good faith, and had he rejected all such stories as are now judged of doubtful authority, we should be greatly the losers. He has been accused, most unjustly, of a censorious disposition, whereas on several occasions he manifests clearly a candid and indulgent spirit.[15] As he

His good faith in his writings.

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 483; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 633.

[2] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 662.

[3] See Pref. to vol. i. p. xii, *n.*

[4] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 877.

[5] *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 42, 305; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 756.

[6] *Ibid.*, iii. 50; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 765. Cf. MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 89 *b.*

[7] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 819.

[8] *Ibid.*, p. 825.

[9] MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 146 *b.* He was abbat from 1231 to 1252, *Monast.*, ii. 548.

[10] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 846. He became justiciary in 1241. See Foss's "Judges of England," ii. 483.

[11] *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 135; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 864.

[12] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 869. See Foss, ii. 383. He died in 1257.

[13] *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 334; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 886. He died in 1256.

[14] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 940.

[15] Thus he says, in reference to the sinister rumours against the emperor Frederic II., "It is the part of a malignant mind to interpret in a bad sense things that are doubtful," *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 303; and again, concerning the motives of Henry III. for taking the Cross, in 1250, "It is the part of a good mind to presume the best in doubtful matters, until proof is given to the contrary, for who can know the thoughts of man but God?" *Chr. Maj.*, p. 774. So also, *ibid.*, p. 335, when speaking of the reports against queen Blanche.

himself remarks, "the case of historical writers is hard, for if they tell the truth they provoke men, and if they write what is false they offend God;"[1] and on another occasion, in a graver tone, "Here," he says, at the end of the year 1250, "brother Matthew proposed to end his Chronicles, on account of certain impending dangers. For if things concerning those in power are truly stated and committed to writing, the author incurs their enmity; and if, on the contrary, they are omitted, or favourable statements made instead of unfavourable, the work will be incomplete, and the whole condemned for its flatteries and lies."[2] It is not probable that a man who could utter such sentiments would seek for calumnies as a matter of private gratification; nor, on the other hand, would he be likely to suppress the truth.

A denouncer of papal and regal oppression. It is, however, as a strenuous denouncer of the oppressions suffered from papal and regal exactions by his monastery, by the English clergy, and by the people at large, that we find Matthew Paris always in the foreground,[3] and his energetic and uncompromising language expresses the feelings, not only of himself as an individual, but of the religious community of which he was a member.[4] The scandalous and unceasing grievances inflicted by the papal see and its agents, against which remonstrances were of no avail, excited his indignant animadversion and anger.[5] Among these grievances,

---

[1] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 896. Compare Malmesbury's sentiments, in Preface to Book iv. of his History, p. 483.

[2] *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 319. This passage is transcribed literally into the pseudonymous "Matthew of Westminster."

[3] Hallam particularly notices this instance of public spirit, in contrast with the tone of previous writers. *Middle Ages*, iii. 329, ed. 1855.

[4] The Romanists of the 17th century, Baronius, Bellarmin, and Coiffeteau, had the hardihood to assert that these passages were interpolated by the *heretic* editors of the monk of St. Alban's. Casaubon replied to the charge; and it is sufficiently refuted by the original manuscripts still existing.

[5] "Throughout the long reign of Henry III. (writes Dean Milman),

and the one most sorely felt, was the demand for "Provisions,"[1] that is to say, for benefices of value to be *provided* for needy, ignorant, and worthless Italians, often the relations of the pope or his agents. The abbey of St. Alban's had suffered greatly in this respect, and several instances are given by Paris of this nefarious usage.[2] His statements are fully borne out by the complaints of the English clergy laid before the Council of Lyons in 1245,[3] and also by the letter of bishop Grosseteste to the Parliament in 1252,[4] so that, as Hallam remarks, the English church "seemed to have been so richly endowed only as the *pasture of Italian priests*."[5] Not less energetic is the language used by Paris in blaming the vexatious tallages and extortions of money imposed by the king, as also the extravagance and favouritism shown by him to foreigners, particularly to the Poitevin and Provençal relatives of himself and the queen.[6]

England was held by successive popes as a province of the papal territory, in which papal avarice levied the most enormous sums, and drained the wealth of the country." *Hist. of Latin Christianity*, iv. 307. The taxation of the bishops in 1246 amounted to 6,000 marks, as we learn from a note of Paris in his *Additamenta*, Nero D. I., fol. 125 *b*, and he adds in the margin, "Lege, sed lecta tege, quia probrosum."

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 58, 92; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 309; *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 699, 802.

[2] *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 107; *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 815, 817, 826, 947; MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 121 *b*; Tit. A. XIX. 33. The legates assumed the same power of disposing of English benefices, and an amusing story is told by Paris in the *Abbreviatio Chronicorum*, under the year 1214, of the legate Nicholas, who had promised, on leaving Italy, a living to a "muliercula," his relative, then pregnant, for her child, if it should prove a boy; but to their great disappointment, instead of a boy she was delivered of a girl, and this proved the case three or four times afterwards in succession! He tells us this, he says, to let his readers know "quam indifferenter redditus *Ytalicis indignis et aliquibus nascituris* conferuntur."

[3] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 502; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 294; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 666.

[4] Ep. 131, p. 442, ed. Luard. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 128; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 859.

[5] *Middle Ages*, ii. 213.

[6] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 353; iii. 30, 104; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 336; *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 384, 445, 816, 890, 948. How far the king's indulgence was carried in this latter respect, may be judged by the account given by Paris of

Modification of his language in the *Historia Anglorum*.

These passages form so prominent a feature in the *Chronica Majora*, that some powerful motive must have influenced Matthew Paris to modify and soften, or omit some of them in the *Historia Anglorum*. The erasures and alterations in the text of the latter work [1] would seem to have been made after the year 1252, and the evident object in altering the text was to avoid giving personal offence to the king. It seems very probable that Henry's friendly and condescending notice of the historian, combined with the liberality shown by him in gifts to the abbey of St. Alban's, might have caused Paris to judge him less unfavourably; added to which, it seems a reasonable conjecture that Paris intended to present his work to the king, or cause a copy of it to be made for him. This would sufficiently account for the removal of expressions that might properly be judged *offendicula* in the copy intended for the king's perusal. It would appear also, that as the text of the *Majora Chronica* was left untouched, the alterations made in the *Historia Anglorum* will account for the suppression of all references in it to the former work, which are in nearly every instance erased, and others substituted, some of which are extremely vague.

Passages erased, altered, or omitted.

Thus, several passages and sentences reflecting on the tyranny and duplicity of the king's father, John, are erased or marked for omission,[2] and with the same

---

the visit of the court to St. Alban's in 1252, on which occasion he saw a person, who acted as chaplain and buffoon to Geoffrey de Lusignan, (the king's half-brother,) pelt the king and the nobles, when walking in the abbey orchard, with lumps of turf, stones, and apples, and squeeze the juice of unripe grapes into their eyes, with indecent jocularity. Yet on this worthless fellow the king had a short time previously bestowed a living worth 100*l.* a year! *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 847, 850.—This scene in the orchard would furnish a good subject for an historical painter.

[1] See Preface to vol. i. p. xlix.

[2] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 98, 103, 106, 108, 114, 118, 119, 120, 122, 167, 185. The French prognostic lines on the children of Henry II. are also marked as *offendiculum*, ii. 191, *n.*

object many expressions and passages likely to offend Henry are similarly treated, or are re-written in a milder tone.[1] Some passages also directed against earl Richard, the king's brother, are erased;[2] and others condemning in strong terms the conduct of archbishop Boniface of Savoy, the queen's uncle, are erased and re-written.[3] The exactions of the papal court and rapacity of the legates and nuncios are frequently modified or marked for omission, no doubt on account of the censures passed on them, and reflecting on the king, for permitting or sharing in the spoil.[4] The passage relative to the burning of the pope's chamber at Lyons in 1245, ascribed by his enemies to himself as a pretence for exacting money, is replaced by another, in which the blame is laid on the agents of the emperor.[5] Some passages also hostile to the mendicant Orders are re-written.[6] This change of sentiment seems to have been brought about in consequence of certain Minorites, agents of the pope, having offered to protect the exempt monasteries (among which St. Alban's was one of the chief) against the encroachment of episcopal authority, and henceforth these Orders were regarded as friends instead of rivals.

Errors of Wendover retained.

In transcribing from Wendover many errors as to names of persons and other circumstances (many of which are due to earlier writers) are retained by Matthew Paris,[7] to which are added others of his own. All these have been pointed out and corrected in the

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 268, 309, 315, 328, 329, 417, 421, 445, 461; iii. 62, 81, 82, 98, 99.

[2] *Ibid.*, ii. 296, 357; iii. 35, 51.

[3] *Ibid.*, ii. 449, 490, 499; iii. 4, 87, 94, 127. It is curious to compare the original narrative of this man's outrageous conduct at his visitation in London with the milder account in *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 78, 79; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 313.

[4] *Ibid.*, ii. 225, 276, 284, 322, 425, 492; iii. 5, 20, 45, 69, 92, 94, 100.

[5] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 501.

[6] *Ibid.*, iii. 18, 19, 51, 93.

[7] Matthew Paris is constantly referred to, instead of Wendover, by historical writers (Tyrrell, Sharon Turner, Hallam, Milman, and many others), and not unfrequently blamed for him. The unfairness of Lingard towards our historian is markedly shown in this respect, for

footnotes of the present edition, or in the additional notes at the end of the third volume, and need not therefore be more particularly alluded to.

Chronology.

In regard also to chronology, some errors exist. Paris commences the year on Christmas Day,[1] but he regards those events which happened on the confines of the two years as belonging to either. He expressly states in the *Abbreviatio Chronicorum*, under the year 1157, "Quædam horum in confinio annorum evenerunt, unde quidam discordant Historiographi, sicut inquam in locis consimilibus;[2] sed inde non est in narrationibus difficultas. *Quod in confinio est, utriuslibet est.*"[3] Hence may be explained some of the discrepancies in date which occur in his writings. At the commencement of the reign of Henry III. is a curious note as to the computation of his regnal years.[4] He was crowned on the feast of St. Simon and St. Jude [28 Oct.], 1216, and the interval between that day and the 24th December inclusive is reckoned as the first year of his reign, and the second year consequently began on Christmas Day, 1216. This computation is continued to the eighteenth year of his reign, as appears by another note at the beginning of 1234,[5] when the fractional por-

---

in nearly every instance where he finds fault with or vilifies Paris, the narrative is taken *totidem verbis* from Wendover. See *Hist. Angl.*, vol. i. p. 146; ii. pp. 393, 394, 405, 406, ed. 1849, and compare the original passages in Wendover, ii. 255; iv. 84, 132, 139, 204, 227. Lingard is so careless that he quotes Paris for events *after his death*, and due to his anonymous continuator; he also refers to "Matthew of Westminster" constantly instead of Wendover or Paris, and this is a fault committed by many recent writers.

[1] "All the ancient historians," says Mr. Hardy, "commence the new year on Christmas day, consequently every transaction between 25 December and 1 January is attributed by them to the Dominical year following." Pref. to *Pat. Rolls*, p. xlv.

[2] See *Hist. Angl.*, under the years 1116, i. 220; 1157, i. 307; 1185, i. 435; and cf. *Chr. Maj.*, p. 143.

[3] Vol. iii. 193.

[4] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 196.

[5] *Ibid.*, ii. 363. This note is copied by John of Oxnede, p. 147; by Bartholomew Cotton, p. 117; and by other Chroniclers who compiled from Matthew Paris.

tion of 1216 was omitted or included in the first regnal year, and the year from 25 December 1234 to 24 December 1235 is computed as the eighteenth and not the nineteenth year of his reign.

Character and style of his additions. The original text of Wendover is not merely abridged by Paris, but he infuses into it a life and colouring throughout.[1] In his own additions and continuation a rhetorical or dramatic character is often given to them, by speeches or dialogue, which, even if sometimes due to the invention of the writer, contribute greatly to the force of the narrative, and place the events and circumstances more vividly before our eyes. The limits of the present preface will not admit of these additions (not only to Wendover, but to the *Chronica Majora*) being dwelt on in detail;[2] but their historical value is undoubted, and it may be useful to point out briefly the more important under each reign.

William I.

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora*.

A.D. 1068. The English adopt the Norman fashion of shaving the beard and cutting the hair.[3]
—— 1071. Usage of suspending arms outside the houses in the provinces, for the purpose of defence.[4]
—— 1072. Submission of Malcolm of Scotland.[5]
—— 1087. Dispositions of William on his death-bed,[6] and curious anecdote as to his confession.[7]

[1] Examples of this may be found in the descriptions of the battle of Antioch in 1098 (*Hist. Angl.*, i. 124); of Bremule, in 1119 (*ibid.*, i. 227); and of Hittin, in 1187 (*ibid.*, i. 441).

[2] Such detail is the less required since the additions are marked throughout by *marginal dots*, and a full analysis is also given in the Index.

[3] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 11. Cf. *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 42, where the custom is said to have been forced on the English.

[4] *Ibid.*, i. 14.

[5] *Ibid.*, i. 16; and again in 1090, *ib.*, i. 39.

[6] *Ibid.*, i. 34, 164, 203; iii. 173.

[7] *Ibid.*, i. 34, *n.* William is said to have founded the abbey of Selby to atone for his having caused a

William II.

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora.*

Surnamed the "Red Dragon," from his red hair. Paris calls him "capite et mente rufus et vulpinus," and strongly reprobates his tyranny.[1]

A.D. 1094. The king's unorthodox language in reference to the pope's interference in temporal affairs.[2]

—— 1096. Chapter relative to duke Robert's visit to his brothers, to solicit pecuniary aid.[3]

—— 1099. Chapter on the flight of Corbarau, and the combat of Richard de Chaumont with two Turks;[4] miraculous election of duke Robert as king of Jerusalem, and attempt of his brother Henry to supplant him;[5] news of the siege of Le Mans brought to the king when dining in Westminster Hall, and his proceedings thereon.[6]

Henry I.

A.D. 1100. Reply to the objections raised by the Normans to his election;[7] and particulars re-

relative to be poisoned. [The person alluded to was Conan II. of Britanny, as related by William of Jumièges, lib. viii. c. 33, and Ordericus Vitalis, lib. ii. c. 79.] When he lay on his death-bed his confessor [Gilbert Maminot, who was also his physician] could by no means induce him to repent of the crime. The bishop—who was not over strict in religious matters—at length persuaded him to say "he was sorry he was not able to repent," on which the confessor brightened up, and not only comforted the dying monarch, but at once administered the *Viaticum*. A somewhat similar story is told in one of Dr. Donne's sermons, vol. v. p. 16, of the mother of Gratian, who, being warned by her confessor to repent of her adultery, said she could not. "At least," said he, "be sorry that thou canst not be sorry!"

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 97, 131, 167.

[2] *Ibid.*, i. 50.

[3] *Ibid.*, i. 74. Copied by Thomas Rudborne into his Chronicle, MS. Cott. Nero A. xvii.

[4] *Ibid.*, i. 133.

[5] *Ibid.*, i. 149, 156, 163.

[6] *Ibid.*, i. 165. All the other historians say he received the news when hunting in the New Forest, and so in Wendover.

[7] *Ibid.*, i. 177.

specting his marriage with Matilda of Scotland.[1]

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora.*

A.D. 1106. His address to the English nobles at London.[2]

—— 1107, 1109, 1134. Details as to the imprisonment of duke Robert, his release, rebellious conduct, and re-capture; and anecdote respecting the torn robe sent to him.[3]

—— 1113. The king breaks his Great Seal, in order to annul his charter of liberties.[4]

—— 1126. Chapter relating to the emperor Henry V. and the deacon Arnulph; also the rumours after his death.[5]

—— 1127. Foundation of Fountains abbey.[6]

—— 1150. Defamatory reports of Alienor, queen of Louis VII.[7]

STEPHEN.

A.D. 1153. Singular story of the intrigue of the ex-empress Matilda with Stephen of Blois, by whom she is said to have had a son, afterwards Henry II., and her subsequent confession, and reconciliation of the father and son.[8] This piece of scandal seems to rest on the misinterpretation of a phrase in the Saxon Chronicle and Henry of

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 188. See Stevenson's remarks on this, in Notes to the *Scalacronica*, 1836, p. 235.

[2] *Ibid.*, i. 202; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 62.

[3] *Ibid.*, i. 206, 212, 247; and partly in *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 63, 73.

[4] *Ibid.*, i. 217.

[5] *Ibid.*, i. 236. In Malmesbury, i. 325, and Diceto, col. 370, a similar story is told of the emperor Henry III. under the year 1030.

[6] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 240, and partly in *Chr. Maj.*, p. 71.

[7] *Ibid.*, i. 288. These reports are borne out by the French historians. See "Rec. des Hist. de France," xi. 220, 229, 231, 286.

[8] *Ibid.*, i. 244 *n.*, 295, 296, 301; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 192. The story is copied by Rudborne (MS. Cott. Nero A. XVII., fol. 151 *b*), and may be found also in Polydore Vergil, *Anglica Historia*, 1555, p. 208.

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora.*

Huntingdon.[1] Matilda was betrothed to Geoffrey of Anjou in 1127, but the marriage did not take place till 1129,[2] and not without repugnance on her part,[3] to be sacrificed to a boy not sixteen years of age, and of rank so far inferior to her own. On her going over to be betrothed she was accompanied by her half-brother, Robert, earl of Gloucester, and Brian Fitz-Count;[4] and the author of the "Gesta Stephani" hints at an intimacy then or subsequently existing between the latter and Matilda.[5] Perhaps the rumour of such an intrigue was afterwards transferred to Stephen, but the best evidence against the story (in other respects by no means improbable) are the dates of the transaction. Matilda was repudiated by Geoffrey not long after her marriage,[6] and at the council of Northampton, held 8 Sept. 1131,[7] it was resolved, on Geoffrey's demand, that she should return to him. Wendover and Paris place her return in 1130, and the subsequent birth of her son Henry in 1132,[8] but in the MSS. of the *Chronica Majora* it is entered

[1] "And he helde him for fader, and he him for sune," Sax. Chron., p. 385, ed. Thorpe; "ipsum rex in filium suscepit adoptivum et hæredem," Hen. Hunt., p. 398.

[2] Ord. Vit., lib. xii. c. 48; "Rec. des Hist. de France," xii. 521.

[3] Will. Gemetic., lib. viii. c. 25.

[4] Sax. Chron., ann. 1127.

[5] P. 85, ed. Sewell. There is some obscurity about Brian Fitz-Count. In Mr. Hardy's Index to Malmesbury he is called son of earl Robert of Gloucester, an error incautiously followed in my own Index. According to the Saxon Chronicle, he was son of Alan of Britanny; while Dugdale, *Baron.*, p. 468, makes him son of Baldwin, earl of Devon.

[6] Simeon of Durham, col. 256.

[7] Hen. Hunt., p. 384; Malmesb., p. 698; Hoveden, p. 186.

[8] Wendover, ii. 211, 212; *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 244, 246; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 72.

again under 1133, which seems most correct, as agreeing with Ordericus Vitalis and Diceto.[1] His birth, therefore, could not be the result of an intrigue stated to have taken place in September 1130, or even in 1131, and to render it at all credible, the return of the empress should be deferred till about June 1132.

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora*.

HENRY II.

A.D. 1161. Marriage of Mary, abbess of Rumsey, to Matthew, count of Boulogne.[2]

—— 1162, 1163, 1164, 1166, 1170, 1171. Interesting particulars and anecdotes relative to St. Thomas, archbishop of Canterbury.[3]

—— 1163. Translation of St. Edward the Confessor,[4] and treason of Henry de Esexe.[5]

—— 1166. Sinister rumours of prince John before his birth and at his baptism.[6]

—— 1170. Interesting account of the coronation feast of the young king Henry.[7]

—— 1171, 1174. The king's behaviour on hearing of Becket's murder, and his subsequent penance in the church of Canterbury.[8]

---

[1] 25 March 1133. Ord. Vit., lib. x. c. 1; Diceto, col. 505; "Rec. des Hist. de France," xii. 553.

[2] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 314; and partly in *Chr. Maj.*, under the year 1160, p. 97.

[3] *Ibid.*, i. 316, 317, 329, 330, 339, 341, 358–62, 364, 421, 436; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 197. A portion only of the new matter is in the *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 123, 124.

[4] *Ibid.*, i. 320.

[5] *Ibid.*, i. 321.

[6] *Ibid.*, i. 340. In MS. C.C.C.C. xvi., fol. 31 *b*, is the following marginal note by Paris (which has been copied into MS. Cott. Nero D. v., fol. 192 *b*), "¶ Nunc verificatum est nomen ejus pronosticum, scilicet Johannes Extorris, secundum prima circa eum prophetia, postquam illud turpe accidit significativum, quod baptizatus in baptisterio exgessit."

[7] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 353.

[8] *Ibid.*, i. 367, 386. The king's prayer is said to have been made in *French*.

Chief additions to Wendover and the Chronica Majora.

A.D. 1173. Particulars of the siege of Leicester, and proceedings of the earl of Leicester and his Flemish troops.[1] It is on this occasion that Matthew Paris gives a specimen of the popular songs of the Flemings, which was copied by Lambarde,[2] and from him by Ritson, in his "Ancient Songs,"[3] as the "earliest specimen of *English* song," which it certainly is not.

—— 1177. Submission of the emperor Frederic II. to the pope, on account of a miracle performed by the latter![4]

—— 1189. Anger of earl Richard against cardinal John of Anagni.[5]

RICHARD I.

A.D. 1189. His vow to build a chapel to St. Thomas.[6]

—— 1190. Gifts received by him from Saladin.[7]

—— 1192. Affront offered to the duke of Austria;[8] chapter relative to Saladin's beheading of a captive said to be prince of Antioch;[9] and cure of Philip of France at Acre by his English physician.[10]

---

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 378, 381.

[2] *Dict. Angl. Topogr.*, p. 36. See Preface to vol. i. p. xliv.

[3] Dissert., p. xxviii, ed. 1790. The resemblance of this rude Flemish ballad to another of the same period, in the popular dialect, recently printed, is remarkable. The latter begins,—

"Naer Oostland willen wy ryden,
Naer Oostland willen wy mee."

See "Hist. des Colonies Belges en Allemagne," 1866.

[4] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 399; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 133.

[5] *Ibid.*, i. 458. This is one of the passages not in the MSS. of the *Chron. Maj.*, but interpolated by Parker from the Cecil MS.

[6] *Ibid.*, ii. 13. The same remark here again applies, and so also in 1190.

[7] *Ibid.*, ii. 18.

[8] *Ibid.*, ii. 30, and *Chr. Maj.*, p. 168.

[9] *Ibid.*, ii. 37; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 170.

[10] *Ibid.*, ii. 38.

A.D. 1196. Account of the tumultuous rising at London headed by William with the Beard;[1] bequest of the emperor Henry VI. to the Cistercians;[2] and fuller account of the capture of the bishop of Beauvais.[3] Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora.*

—— 1197. Notice of the preacher Fulk.[4]

—— 1198. Personal bravery of Walter de Hamme of Trumpington;[5] and fraud practised in making a new Great Seal.[6]

JOHN.

A.D. 1199. Speech of archbishop Hubert at his coronation.[7] This speech has been much criticised, and its authenticity questioned,[8] but it is distinctly referred to by prince Louis of France in 1216, in a public document printed in Rymer's *Fœdera.*[9]

—— 1201. Account of Simon de Thurnay.[10]

—— 1203. Rumours respecting the death of Arthur of Britanny.[11]

—— 1207. Reception of the emperor Otho in London;[12] particulars respecting the Order of Friars

---

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 57, 69. See *ante*, p. xxiv, *n.*

[2] *Ibid.*, ii. 58.

[3] *Ibid.*, ii. 59. Cf. *Chr. Maj.*, p. 182.

[4] *Ibid.*, ii. 62; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 191.

[5] *Ibid.*, ii. 70.

[6] *Ibid.*, ii. 75; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 218; interpolated in *Chr. Maj.*, p. 156, from the Cecil MS., under the year 1189.

[7] *Ibid.*, ii. 80, and shorter in *Chr. Maj.*, p. 197.

[8] See Carte, *Hist. Engl.*, 1748, vol. i. p. 784. Mr. Freeman, in his valuable History of the Norman Conquest, says, "Whether the speech is Hubert's or Matthew's matters little, or rather, if it be Matthew's own, it is the more valuable, as carrying on the ancient tradition still later," vol. i. p. 118.

[9] Vol. i. p. 140, ed. 1816. The words are, "propter quod Hubertus, quondam Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, in coronatione ipsius Johannis publice dixit, quod non ratione successionis, sed per electionem ipsum in regem coronabat."

[10] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 90; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 206.

[11] *Ibid.*, ii. 95; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 221.

[12] *Ibid.*, ii. 109.

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora.*

Minors;[1] and proceedings of the monks of Canterbury, in reference to the election of the archbishop of Canterbury.[2]

A.D. 1212. Fire in Southwark, and burning of London bridge.[3]

—— 1212, 1215, 1217, 1223–1226. Account of Faukes de Breaute, and his nefarious proceedings, particularly at St. Alban's; his dream and absolution (obtained by pretended penitence); and other curious anecdotes respecting him.[4]

—— 1213, 1214, 1215. John's proceedings to coerce the nobles; reproaches made to him by Savary de Mauleon after the battle of Bovines, and his duplicity.[5]

—— 1216. John's march to the north, capture of Berwick, and joke on the "little red fox" [Alexander II.];[6] extortion of money by the pope from the prelates at the General Council;[7] and animated account of the legate's interview with Philip VIII., in reference to John's cession of England to the pope.[8] Details of the ravages of John's forces at Peterborough and Croyland;[9] narrative of the king's illness and last journey;[10] his behaviour on his death-bed,

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 110.

[2] *Ibid.*, ii. 111; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 222.

[3] *Ibid.*, ii. 131; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 233.

[4] *Ibid.*, ii. 131, 167, 170, 171, 203, 204, 254, 265, 266, 272, 276, 291. Much briefer in *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 233, 292, 321.

[5] *Ibid.*, ii. 142, 151, 159, 162; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 228, 230.

[6] *Ibid.*, ii. 172; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 276.

[7] *Ibid.*, ii. 174.

[8] *Ibid.*, ii. 176.

[9] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 189.

[10] *Ibid.*, ii. 191. The king when at Swineshead had brought on an access of fever by indulging immoderately in peaches and new cider. On the following morning he proceeded towards Sleaford, but had not gone above three or four miles, groaning with pain, before the malady increased to such a degree that he was obliged to alight, and order a litter to be made. The peo-

and other particulars,[1] with certain good works alleged in his favour, among which is his reception of some Greek philosophers, told more at length under the year 1249.[2]

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora*.

HENRY III.

A.D. 1216. His favour with the barons, on account of his personal appearance and education;[3] and a much fuller narrative of the attempt of prince Louis to induce Hubert de Burgh to surrender Dover castle.[4]

—— 1217. Flight of the French forces from Lincoln;[5] and conduct of Hubert de Burgh on the approach of the French fleet under Eustace the Monk, and naval victory.[6]

—— 1218. Dedication of the church of St. Mary, Worcester, and departure of the legate Walo.[7]

—— 1219. Epitaph of William Mareschal, Senior, by Gervase de Melckeley;[8] chapter respect-

---

ple about him, not having a workman at hand or proper materials, drew their swords and knives, and constructed from the willows growing near such a makeshift litter as they were able, which was covered roughly with the housings of a charger. When the king placed himself on it, as there were no cushions nor mattrass, nor even straw for a couch, the swinging of the litter to and fro—and the more so because they had no draught horses—soon shook him to pieces. Having endured this mortal agony for some time, the king was compelled to get down, saying, "This wretched, nay, this cursed litter has broken all my bones, and almost killed me!" And indeed, as the historian adds, it was believed that it was by this litter that John was brought to the pains of death. With great difficulty the sufferer was brought on to Sleaford, on the back of an easy-paced nag.

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 192, 193.

[2] *Ibid.*, ii. 194; iii. 64; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 288.

[3] *Ibid.*, ii. 196.

[4] *Ibid.*, ii. 197–199. These details are not in Parker's printed text of *Chr. Maj.*, but a portion exists in the MSS. B. C.

[5] *Ibid.*, ii. 214.

[6] *Ibid.*, ii. 217–221. Not in Parker's text, but great part in B. C.

[7] *Ibid.*, ii. 230, 231. Not in Parker's text, but in B. C.

[8] *Ibid.*, ii. 232. Cf. *Chr. Maj.*, p. 304. The Latin name of Melckeley was *de Saltu-Lacteo*, (mistaken

Chief additions to Wendover and the *Chronica Majora.*

ing St. Elizabeth of Hungary;[1] the earl of Arundel's opposition of the legate at Damietta:[2] and the epitaph of Simon de Montfort by Roger de l'Isle.[3]

A.D. 1220. Foundation of the chapel of the Virgin at Westminster.[4]

—— 1221. Marriage of Alexander II. of Scotland to the princess Joanna.[5]

—— 1223. Story of the apostate deacon of Coventry, put to death by Faukes:[6] remarks on the treasure left by Philip II. in aid of the Holy Land: and visit of John de Brienne to England.[7]

—— 1229. Quarrel of the scholars of Paris at St. Marceel:[8] account of the treachery of the Templars, in order to betray the emperor into the hands of the Soldan:[9] simoniacal conduct of Stephen de Segrave;[10] and completion of the church of Salisbury by Robert de Bingham, bishop elect.[11]

---

by Bale and his copyists for the title of his work,) and copies of his treatise, "De Arte Versificatoria." are in Bailliol College, Oxford, No. cclxiii. 9; cclxxvi. 5. He is referred to by Paris for information respecting archbishop Stephen de Langtone, in 1216 and 1219. See MS. Cott. Vesp. B. xiii., fol. 133 *b*.

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 233. Not in Parker's text, but in B. C. This amphibological sentence seems to have been hence borrowed by Adam de Orletone, bishop of Hereford, in reference to Edward II. See De la More's Chronicle, p. 602, ed. Camden.

[2] *Ibid.*, ii. 237.

[3] *Ibid.*, ii. 240. In the text he is spoken of as among "quidam *chorici* geomantici," but in MS. C. C. C. C. xvi. fol. 56, the reading is, "quidam *clerici* geomantici." See the Glossary.

[4] *Hist Angl.*, ii. 242; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 310.

[5] *Ibid.*, ii. 248; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 313.

[6] *Ibid.*, ii. 254. This story is alluded to by Bracton, *De legibus Angliæ*, ed. 1569, fol. 124. He says that the deacon was burnt.

[7] *Ibid.*, ii. 259.

[8] *Ibid.*, ii. 308. *Chr. Maj.*, p. 354.

[9] *Ibid.*, ii. 312–314; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 358. These chapters are marked, "Vacat, quia offendiculum Templariorum," and in *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 259, Paris takes their part.

[10] *Ibid.*, ii. 316. *Chr. Maj.*, p. 362.

[11] *Ibid.*, ii. 318; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 260; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 363.

Chief additions to Wendover and the Chronica Majora.

A.D. 1231. Attempt to plunder the tomb of archbishop Richard.[1]

—— 1232, 1233. Details respecting Hubert de Burgh, and his escape from the castle of Devises.[2]

—— 1233. Robbery of the bishop of London at Parma;[3] the building of a church for converted Jews by the king, at London, and a hospital at Oxford.[4]

—— 1234. Capture of Majorca by the king of Arragon.[5]

—— 1235. Election of Robert Grosseteste as bishop of Lincoln, and commendation of him;[6] privileges obtained by the Jews from the pope, to keep Christian nurses;[7] and additional particulars as to the marriage of Isabel to the emperor.[8]

Continuation of Wendover.

In the middle of a paragraph of this year, 1235, the text of Wendover ends, and the *Historia Anglorum* follows onwards the order of events in the Greater Chronicle, but with frequent interesting additions, many of which relate to individuals, and are of a personal character. Among these may be noticed the anecdotes of Robert Fitz-Walter, when dying;[9] archbishop Edmund;[10] Stephen de Segrave;[11] Ranulph le Breton;[12] archdeacon Alan de Beccles;[13] and Roger, son of John de Bailloil;[14] also the behaviour of the servants of archbishop Boniface

---

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 336; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 370.

[2] *Ibid.*, ii. 346–348, 350, 351, 359–361; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 264, 267. Derived from the information of Hubert himself. Only a portion is in the *Chr. Maj.*, pp. 378–380, 388.

[3] *Ibid.*, ii. 352.

[4] *Ibid.*, ii. 363, 364; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 393.

[5] *Ibid.*, ii. 374; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 409.

[6] *Ibid.*, ii. 376.

[7] *Ibid.*, ii. 378. See Sharon Turner's Note on the Jews, in *Hist. of Engl.*, ii. 122–125.

[8] *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 380. Cf. *Chr. Maj.*, p. 416.

[9] *Ibid.*, ii. 385.

[10] *Ibid.*, ii. 402, 410, 411, 435, 448; iii. 27.

[11] *Ibid.*, ii. 417.

[12] *Ibid.*, ii. 423.

[13] *Ibid.*, ii. 432. Cf. *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 330.

[14] *Ibid.*, iii. 867. In *Chr. Maj.*, p. 771, called Roger Fitz-John.

at Fulham palace.[1] Other remarkable insertions refer to the new coinage in 1247, of which a drawing is given;[2] the intention of Henry the Third in 1251 to banish the Jews;[3] and the negotiation relative to the offer of Apulia to earl Richard of Cornwall, in 1252.[4]

Matthew Paris accused of credulity.

Matthew Paris has been accused by M. Michaud of credulity, in admitting more incredible legends into his work than any other writer of the thirteenth century;[5] but this censure is not well founded, for Paris was certainly not so credulous as some of his contemporaries, and far less so than Malmesbury. In regard to the religious legends, they are nearly all copied from Wendover, and were of a character which but few of that age would venture to question.[6] His belief on certain subjects would by many be termed piety, even in the present day; and in everything that tended to the fame of St. Alban, the patron saint of his monastery, or to the glory of other English saints, he was certainly an enthusiast.[7] As a diligent observer and recorder of natural phenomena he also deserves commendation, although, in the spirit of the age, he sees in

---

[1] *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 78.

[2] *Ibid.*, iii. 27. Ruding gives a legend RIC. R. ON LVND. See also the Trans. Numism. Soc., 1865, pp. 253, 270.

[3] *Ibid.*, iii. 103.

[4] *Ibid.*, iii. 126, 127; *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 323.

[5] *Hist. des Croisades*, tom. iv. p. 332, ed. 1857.

[6] In MS. Reg. 13 D. v., written at St. Alban's early in the 13th century, is a copy of the Vision of Turchill, in 1206 (in Wendover, iii. 190–209), and another "Visio quæ contigit cuidam in Estsexia," to which is prefixed a prologue referring to similar legends, particularly to those of Owen (*Audoenus*), the Irish knight (A.D. 1153, Wend., ii. 257–271); another in Ireland (Tundale, A.D. 1149); and a third at Eineshan (Evesham ?), in 1196 (Wend., iii. 97–117), written by the subprior Adam, chaplain of Hugh, bishop of Lincoln. The writer of this prologue was assured by Thomas, prior of Binham (before 1214), that there was no more doubt of the truth of this last Vision than of the Crucifixion!

[7] He regarded Roger Niger, bishop of London, Robert Grosseteste, bishop of Lincoln, and Thomas of Hertford, archdeacon of Northumberland, as saints, *although not canonized.* See *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 284, 318, 329.

them prognostics of evil,[1] particularly in the case of comets, earthquakes, eclipses, and other unusual disturbances of the order of nature. His inquiring mind does not, of course, take a philosophical view of such occurrences, but its scope is sufficiently apparent in his remarks on the effects produced by them.[2]

His belief in prognostics from natural phenomena.

On subjects of natural history, too, Paris was much interested, as appears by his observations on the structure of the camel's neck;[3] the nature of the leopard;[4] the appearance of flocks of crossbills in 1251;[5] the first introduction of buffaloes in England in 1252;[6] the whale thrown up at Norwich in 1255;[7] and by the long description he has drawn up (according to the middle-age notions) of the first elephant seen in England,[8] which was brought from Egypt by Louis IX., and presented to Henry III. in 1255.[9]

His interest in natural history.

---

[1] This belief was not confined to the Western nations. Paris mentions an eclipse of the moon in 1218, which the Crusaders interpreted to mean the defeat of the Saracens, whilst the Saracens, on their side, regarded it as adverse to the Christians. *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 227. In 1113 Paris quotes Claudian, on the baleful influence of comets, *ibid.*, i. 218.

[2] See his account of the great frost in 1094, *Hist. Angl.*, i. 44, and again in 1150, when the Thames was frozen, i. 287; the earthquakes in Norfolk and Suffolk, in 1165, i. 338; at Lincoln, in 1185, i. 434; at London (called by the Saxon name of *Erhdune*), in 1247, iii. 20; and in the Chilterns, in 1250, iii. 87; the great snow in 1178, i. 401; the parhelion seen in 1233, on the borders of Herefordshire, *Chr. Maj.*, p. 385, (of which a drawing on a larger scale is in MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 185); the thunderstorms at St. Paul's, London, in 1236, *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 320, and St. Peter's church at St. Alban's, in 1254, *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 337. Nearly all the above notices are additions to Wendover, and are mostly given in fuller detail than in the Greater Chronicle.

[3] *Hist. Angl.*, i. 184.

[4] *Ibid.*, ii. 392.

[5] *Chr. Maj.*, p. 825.

[6] *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 119; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 832.

[7] *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 343; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 903. Confirmed by the Close Rolls, 39 Hen. III., m. 4.

[8] See Preface to vol. i. p. lix, and Brayley's "Graphic Illustrator," 1834, pp. 335, 352.

[9] *Abbr. Chr.*, iii. 344; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 903. The keeper's name was Henry of Florence. An elephant had previously been sent over to the emperor Frederic II., in 1229, by the Soldan of Egypt, and a drawing of it, by Paris, is in MS. C. C. C. C., xvi., fol. 151 *b*.

His talent as an artist.

We have yet to consider Matthew Paris in his character of artist and cartographer, in both of which pursuits he attained a very remarkable degree of proficiency. Testimony to his great skill as a draughtsman, and also as a worker in metal, is given by the first continuator of the *Liber de Gestis Abbatum*,[1] and also by Walsingham in the *Liber de Benefactoribus*, in which he is called "pictor peroptimus;" and the writer adds, "Providit præterea libros multos, scriptos tam manu propria quam externa, in quibus quam excellens in doctrina et *pictura* fuit, satis claret."[2] Many of these books so admirably illustrated by his drawings and embellishments are fortunately still preserved, and testify amply to his artistic skill. Among them are the original manuscripts of his historical writings,[3] as well as some others to which his pen and pencil contributed.[4] To these must also be added the "Liber de Anulis et Gemmis et Pallis,

---

[1] "Inerat ei tanta subtilitas in auro et argento ceteroque metallo insculpendo, et *in picturas depingendo*, ut nullum post se in Latino orbe creditur reliquisse secundum." *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 394.

[2] MS. Cott. Nero D. VII., fol. 50 *b*. See also Claud. E. IV., fol. 332 *b*.

[3] MSS. C.C.C.C. xxvi. and xvi.; Cott. Nero D. I.; Reg. 14 C. vii.; Cott. Claud. B. VI. Many of the drawings in these volumes are not only of much artistic merit, but archæologically valuable, from the illustrations they afford of costume, and the state of English art at that period (A.D. 1237–1255). Among them may be noticed:—in C.C.C.C. xxvi., the sacrifice of Brutus to Diana, p. 7; Leir and his daughters, p. 11; martyrdom of St. Alban, p. 116; death of archbishop Thomas of Canterbury, p. 263; battle of Saladin with king Guy, p. 279; and the heads of the Virgin and Child, p. 283. In C. C. C. C. xvi., the battle of Bovines, f. 37; shipwreck of the bishops going to the General Council, 1215, f. 43 *b*; naval victory of Hubert de Burgh, f. 52 (repeated in MS. Cott. Nero D. v., f. 213); Council held at London in 1237, f. 107; naval combat between the Pisans and Genoese, f. 146; Henry III. carrying the blood of Christ to Westminster abbey, f. 214. There are likewise several drawings in the *Vitæ Offarum* (MS. Cott. Nero D. I.) deserving of mention, some of which have been poorly engraved by Strutt.

[4] To the Chronicle of his contemporary, John of Wallingford, he contributed a full length portrait of the author, after he had been *Infirmarius* (therefore after 1253, as appears from Nero D. I., fol. 122); a seated figure of Jesus Christ; and a slight sketch of the elephant which arrived in 1255. In a Psal-

quæ sunt de thesauro hujus ecclesiæ [S. Albani],"[1] written in 1252, and accompanied by drawings of the gems, among which is the large and curious cameo bearing a figure of Æsculapius, presented to the church by king Ethelred. It is not improbable that Matthew Paris owed much of his knowledge of art and proficiency to the example and advice of Walter of Colchester, the sacrist of St. Alban's in the time of abbat William of Trumpington (A.D. 1214–1235), whose wonderful talent as a sculptor and painter we find so frequently noticed.[2] Paris also mentions with great commendation a painter named Master Richard, son of Simon, a monk of the abbey,[3] and we find inserted in the often-mentioned Cottonian MS. Nero D. I. a magnificent semi-transparent drawing of the full-length figure of Christ, executed by a Friar Minor named William, of English birth;[4] and in one of the Cambridge MSS. of the Greater Chronicle, Paris has drawn a portrait of the artist.[5]

Also as a herald.

In a minor branch of art, the heraldic blazon of shields of arms, we find brother Matthew thoroughly versed, and he has not only drawn the arms of the English

ter also, presented to the abbey by brother John de Dalling (MS. Reg. 2 B. vi.), there are several drawings by Paris, including a full length figure of the Virgin. In all probability other drawings by him will be found in a MS. preserved in Trinity College, Dublin, numbered E. i. 40.

[1] MS. Cott. Nero D. I., ff. 145, 146 *b*. This treatise is referred to in the *Chronica Majora*, p. 903.

[2] See *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 233, 279, 281, 283, 286; *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 242. Paris calls him "pictor et sculptor incomparabilis." He appears to have died in 1248, from an entry under that year in Nero D. I., fol. 145 *b*, "iiii. non. Sept. magister Walterus, pictor præelectus."

[3] *Gest. Abbat.*, i. 233, 314. In Nero D. I., fol. 185, we have a brief note of his pictorial works, intitled "Opera Ricardi pictoris, usque ad annum Domini MCCL., infra ix. annos et dimidium."

[4] Fol. 155. Above the figure is written in red letters, by Paris, "*Hoc opus fecit frater Willelmus de Ordine Minorum, socius beati Francisci, secundus in Ordine ipso, conversatione sanctus, natione Anglus.*"

[5] C. C. C. C. xvi., fol. 67. He is in his monastic habit, and above is written, "Frater Willelmus, nacione Anglus, socius sancti Francisci."

sovereigns and nobility in the margins of the *Historia Anglorum* and *Chronica Majora*, but also those of several foreign potentates and nobles; and in the Cottonian MS. referred to above, there is a large collection of shields in colours, with the proper terms of blazon attached to each.[1] The value of such a collection to heralds and genealogists is considerable, for although rolls of arms exist attributed to the reign of Henry the Third, yet in the works of Paris we have the earliest *dated* instances of the use of armorial distinctions. Among the shields drawn by him the escutcheon of the emperor of Germany always bears the *double-headed* eagle, whereas on the coins of Frederic II. the eagle invariably has a single head.[2] The shield of Scotland has in one place a lion rampant within a bordure flory counter-flory, and in another the lion is within a double tressure flory,[3] as on the first seal of Alexander II.[4]

And as a cartographer. As a cartographer Paris deserves more attention than has hitherto been accorded to him in this country. His Map of the World is certainly a bizarre performance (as might be expected from the existing state of geographical knowledge),[5] but he expressly informs us that it was a reduced copy of the maps of Robert de Melekeley and

---

[1] Nero D. i., ff. 170, 170 *b*.

[2] See Mr. Walford's remarks on the imperial shield in *Archæologia*, vol. xxxix. p. 378. In C. C. C. C. xvi., fol. 18, the emperor Otho is assigned two shields, the first, Or, a double-headed eagle displayed, or; the second, "Scutum mutatum pro amore regis Angliæ," on the dexter side, gules, three lions passant gardant or; on sinister, or, a double-headed eagle, displayed, sable, both dimidiated. But in Nero D. i., fol. 170, the imperial shield is thus blazoned, "Scutum aureum, aquila biceps vel moniceps, nigra."

[3] See *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 65; C.C.C.C. xvi., fol. 254, and Nero D. i., fol. 170. In the last the shield is blazoned, "Scutum de auro, leo reptans [de gules], et flores in bord' similiter."

[4] Laing's *Cat. of Scottish Seals*, 1856. The charter to which this seal is attached is dated 1235. See also an article in "Notes and Queries," 3rd Ser., vol. x. p. 316.

[5] See Preface to vol. i. pp. lvi, lxi, and M. de Santarem, "Essai sur l'Historie de la Cosmographie," 1849, tom. ii. p. 257.

the abbey of Waltham; and that an accurate copy of another map, preserved in the king's chamber at Westminster, had been made by him in his "Ordinale."[1] The latter is not now known to exist.

The oldest representation of Britain is said to appear in the *Tabulæ Peutingerianæ*, ascribed to the time of Theodosius (preserved in a copy made in the 13th century), which contain a *Routier* throughout the Roman empire;[2] next to which, in point of date, is the rude sketch by Paris of the Roman roads in Britain.[3] Following these are the maps of Britain, comprising England, Wales, and Scotland, drawn by Paris,[4] which, although deficient in the accurate determination of geographical position, and necessarily imperfect in the remoter districts, yet have the merit of being the earliest now extant,[5] and contain a great number of names from the south coast of England to the extreme north of Scotland. But the most remarkable monument of the geographical skill of our historian is the coloured Itinerary for the information of pilgrims going from London to Jerusa-

[1] The inscription on the map reads thus in C. C. C. C. xxvi. p. 284: "*Summatim facta est disposicio Mappa* (sic) *Mund*[*i*] *magistri Rob. de Melekeleia et Mappa Mundi de Waltham.* ¶ *Mappa Mundi Regis, quod* (sic) *est in camera sua apud Westmonasterium, figuratur in Ordinali Mathei de Parisius, verissimum autem figuratur in eodem Ordin̄, quod est quasi clamis extensa.*" The later copyist of this map in MS. Cott. Nero D. v., has written *Ordine* falsely for *Ordinali*, and this has given rise to much misconstruction. M. de Santarem renders the sentence, "figurée d'après le même système que celle de Matthieu Paris!" ii. 258. For the meaning of *Ordinale*, in its usual acceptation of Service Book, see the Glossary of Du Cange, *in v.*

[2] See Gough, *Brit. Topogr.*, i. 8; *de Santarem*, i. 176.

[3] In MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 186 *b*, and engraved in Gale's "Essay on the four Roman ways," *ap.* Leland, *Itinerary*, vi. 96, ed. Hearne, and in Gough, *Brit. Topogr.*, i. pl. i. fig. 2.

[4] See Preface to vol. i. pp. xlvii, lix; vol. iii. p. 156; and Gough, *u. s.*

[5] A map of Wales is known to have been drawn by Giraldus Cambrensis, and was extant in the time of Tanner, in the library of the dean and chapter of Westminster, but the MS. containing it has long since disappeared.

lem,[1] of which several copies by his own hand (more or less perfect) are preserved.[2] When it is remembered that nothing of the kind was accessible as a guide to Matthew Paris, and, indeed, that no similar Itinerary had been executed (so far as is known) since the fourth century,[3] it is matter of surprise how the monk of St. Alban's could have acquired sufficient information[4] to enable him to draw it up with so few inaccuracies. The descriptive text is in French, and is not confined to a mere list of names and distances, but includes an account of Rome, with plans of Rome, Acre, and Jerusalem, and long details of the countries and inhabitants of Syria and Palestine; also brief notices of the Caspian mountains, where Alexander shut up the Scythians, the ark in Armenia, and the Old Man of the Mountain.

Other works ascribed to Matthew Paris.

Besides the historical works of Matthew Paris referred to in the course of the preceding remarks and in the Preface to the first volume, he is known to have compiled or written the *Vitæ Regum Offarum*,[5] prefixed to his *Liber de Gestis Abbatum*, and also the Life of St. Edmund of Pontigni, archbishop of Canterbury.[6] These

---

[1] Bale described this Itinerary incorrectly, and was followed by Selden, Pits, Tanner, and others, none of whom had any notion of its real object, and mistook the commencement of it from Dover, instead of London.—It would be very desirable to have the whole of the maps relating to Britain photographed by the zincographic process of Sir Henry James, from the earliest period to the end of the 15th century.

[2] See Preface, vol. i. pp. xlvi, lv. The copy in Nero D. I. only goes as far as Naples.

[3] An Itinerary from Bordeaux to Jerusalem was composed about A.D. 333, and is described at length by M. Valckenaer in the Appendix to vol. i. of Michaud's *Histoire des Croisades*.

[4] Paris appears to have derived a part of his information from a friar who accompanied the bishop of Tortosa to England in 1249. See Nero D. I., fol. 89 *b*, and cf. *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 50.

[5] Printed in Wats, 1640, pp. 1–32. See Mr. Hardy's remarks on these Lives in "Cat. of Materials for Hist. of Gr. Britain," vol. i. p. 499.

[6] *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 135; *Chr. Maj.*, p. 864.—In addition to these, he composed a Life of Stephen le Langtone, archbishop of Canterbury, a fragment only of which,

are all his recognized writings, exclusive of some smaller tracts and historical fragments.[1] Bale and later bibliographers, to the time of Tanner, have attributed to him the lives of several saints and other treatises, but without authority.[2] Walsingham, however, says of him, "Vitas SS. Albani, Thomæ, et Edmundi, archiepiscoporum Cantuariæ, *conscripsit et depinxit* elegantissime."[3] Whether "conscripsit" here means *composed* or *transcribed* may admit of doubt, but it is worthy of note that Stowe in his "Annales,"[4] and archbishop Ussher[5] have ascribed to Matthew Paris a French metrical version of Ralph of Dunstable's *Passio SS. Albani et Amphibali.* They must both have derived this information from the same source, namely, a manuscript still fortunately preserved in the library of Trinity College, Dublin, which contains the French Life referred to, together with the Latin original, and other legends of the same saints.[6] It does not appear on what precise grounds Stowe and Ussher

containing three chapters or sections, is preserved on a leaf attached to MS. Cott. Vesp. B. XIII., fol. 133 *b*. This has hitherto escaped observation; and is not noticed in the Catalogue of Cottonian MSS.

[1] In C.C.C.C. xxvi. and xvi., and MS. Cott. Nero D. I.

[2] Cave and Placcius assign to Paris a *Liber de Sacramentis* and a *Liber de Virtutibus*, but have been misled by James, *Ecloga*, 1610, p. 15. Both are usually ascribed to William of Auvergne, bishop of Paris. See Coxe, *Cat. Codd. in Coll. Oxon.*; Nov. Coll., No. cxiv.; Merton, Nos. cxxxvi. and clv. Fabricius gives the first treatise to a later William, bishop of Paris.

[3] MS. Cott. Claud. E. IV., fol. 3 2 *b*.

[4] Annales, 1631, p. 43. His words are, "Matthew Paris, a munke of St. Alban, turned out of Latine prose into French verse the Life and Martyrdom of St. Alban and Amphibalus, *both of which bookes I have seen.*"

[5] *Hist. Eccles. Brit.*, 1639, 4to, pp. 159, 981.

[6] It is marked E. i. 40, and described in Hardy's "Cat. of Materials," vol. i. p. 14. I have not seen this MS., but think it probable that the portion from fol. 3 to fol. 50, including the drawings, is from the hand of Paris. This volume may be the very one noticed by Walsingham, but it is now mutilated and imperfect. Ussher says that this MS. was *presented* by Henry VI. to St. Alban's, but the memorandum on fol. 1 *b*, he refers to, seems only to mean that the volume was *shown* to Henry at a council held at Westminster.

gave the above statement, but it is certain it could not have been from mere conjecture. Granting that Paris was the author of this poem, there would be no difficulty in attributing also to him the satirical French song on the oppressed state of the church, written at St. Alban's in 1256, and inserted at the end of Wallingford's Chronicles.[1] Hence, Pits might perhaps be justified in speaking of Paris as a poet, but when he goes on to characterise him as an orator, a logician, a philosopher, a mathematician, and a theologian, he seems to draw largely on his imagination.[2]

Conclusion. Here these observations must close, although much more might be said to do full justice to the historian of St. Alban's. With one exception, all the modern English historical writers[3] have been unanimous in their praise of Matthew Paris. It is certain, that for a large portion of the reign of Henry the Third he is almost the sole authority, and on this account is fully intitled to the gratitude of posterity.

25, St. Stephen's Square, W.
15th January 1869.

---

[1] Jul. D. vii., fol. 133 *b*, and referred to in the text, fol. 105 *b*. It is printed in Wright's "Political Songs," 1839, p. 42 (Camden Society).

[2] He writes thus of him, "Manuarius scriptor, pictor non vulgaris, omnes denique mechanicas artes sufficienter didicit; artes autem liberales accurate calluit. *Poeta elegans*, orator facundus, dialecticus acutus, philosophus subtilis, mathematicus non condempnendus, theologus solidus." *De illustr. Angl. Scriptt.* One would suppose Pits had made some mistake, and that this panegyric belonged to somebody else; but it is followed by M. Weiss, in his article on Matthew Paris in the "Biographie Universelle," ed. 1820.

[3] Two of these may be particularly referred to: Berington (a Romanist) in his "Literary History of the Middle Ages," 1814, pp. 387, 389; and Kington, "Life of Frederick the Second," 1862, vol. ii. p. 229.

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS,

MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI,

HISTORIA ANGLORUM.

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS,

MONACHI SANCTI ALBANI,

HISTORIA ANGLORUM.

fol. 139 b. *Dominus rex fuit ad Natale Londoniis, lætus cum suis nobilibus.*

Anno gratiæ M°.CC°.XLVI°., qui est annus regni domini regis Henrici III. xxx^us^, fuit idem dominus rex ad Natale Domini Londoniis, ubi, convocatis multis regni nobilibus, quibus et dona exhibuit, una cum fratre suo, comite Ricardo, et regina, et comitissa Cornubiæ, multisque magnatibus, qui cum eodem rege in Wallia [guerræ][1] pondera et æstus sustinuerant, festa Natalicia gaudenter celebravit,[2] ut qui fuerunt in tribulatione consortes, participes fierent in exultatione. **A.D. 1246. Henry keeps Christmas at London.**

Impetratio archiepiscopi Cantuariensis B[onefacii.]

Per idem tempus tales literas impetravit dominus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis B[onefacius] a domino papa: "Innocentius episcopus, servus servorum [Dei],[3] venerabilibus fratribus episcopis, et dilectis filiis abbatibus, prioribus, archidiaconis, decanis, presbiteris, et aliis **The archbishop of Canterbury obtains papal letters, directing the**

[1] *guerræ*] Supplied from E. and the so-called "Matth. Westm." In B. C., *pondera et æstus dierum*.

[2] *celebravit*] The last syllable is on an erasure, and also corr. in marg.

[3] *Dei*] Supplied from B.

... clericis per Cantuariensem civi- ... provinciam constitutis, salutem et ...dictionem." Respice in Originali.[1] ...: "Damus venerabili fratri nostro ...piscopo in mandatis, ut ipse per septen- ...itra, omnium beneficiorum ecclesiasti- ...ineeps in civitate, diocesi et provincia ... vacabunt, primi anni proventus, usque ad ...um marcarum summam,[2] quæ si ante dictum ... haberi poterit, nil amplius exigatur, necnon ... marcarum de ipsius archiepiscopi redditibus ... annuatim, et convertat fideliter in solutione ...ium ecclesiæ memoratæ." In hujus mandati ...pio, quia novum fuit et grave, omnes Angliæ ...i et clerici obstupuerunt supra quod dici posset. ... etiam usque ad spiritus amaritudinem angebatur, ...[3] quod tot argumentis suum regnum contemplabatur ...s bonis esse spoliatum. Insuper considerabat domi-...us rex, quod hæc omnia in dedecus beati Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, cujus amator specialis esse inceperat, [redundare videbantur];[4] quia sic dilapida-tor et suffator[5] suæ ecclesiæ datum est satis intelligi et sciri planius extitisse. Quod constat non tantum domino regi, sed omnibus sanæ conscientiæ quamplu-rimum displicuisse, propter dicti confessoris sanctita-tem.[6]

---

[1] *Respice in Originali*] Written on an erasure. These letters are at length in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 692), dat. Lyons, "vi. kal. Sept. [27 Aug.] pont. anno iii°."

[2] *summam*] In the margin have been added (but subsequently erased) the following words, *colligat ad usus Cantuariensis archiepiscopi.*

[3] ...] Supplied from E.

[4] *redundare videbantur*] Supplied from E.

[5] *suffator*] In E., *extirpator.*

[6] *suum regnum . . . sanctitatem*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, which is partly erased, but can still be read, as follows, *excogitatis per Romanam curiam, non jam annuatim sed diatim regnum Angliæ depauperabatur. Sed versutia Romanorum, quæ in hoc callet, studiose imperiis omnium contradicentium [animos?] enervavit. Quia revera, clerus generaliter*

De parlamento in Quadragesima.[1] A.D. 1246.

Medio vero Quadragesimæ, videlicet die qua cantatur "Lætare Jerusalem," edicto regio convocata convenit ad parlamentum generalissimum regni Anglicani totalis nobilitas, tam prælatorum quam militum, ut de statu regni jam vacillantis, prout urgens exegit necessitas, contrectarent. Angebat enim eos gravamen intolerabile, a curia Romana incessanter illis irrogatum. Quo anxius sauciabantur, quod multotiens querimoniam coram Deo et Romana ecclesia lacrimabiliter reponentes, non exaudiebantur, dicentibus nonnullis et affirmantibus, dominum papam ad tuitionem[2] universalis ecclesiæ multis multorum indigere præsidiis, ut omnes ecclesiæ filios tanquam pater tueatur.[3] Sed quia hæc omnia finem pusillanimem sunt sortita, tædium retinet calamum illa recitantem:

18 Mar. Parliament summoned in Lent.

Intolerable grievances suffered from the court of Rome.

"Amphora cœpit
"Institui; currente rota nunc urceus exit."[4]

¶ *Oracius.*

Verumtamen in eodem parlamento conditæ sunt leges cum rigoris incremento, super hiis qui furtive dampna fecerint in alienis parcis vel vivariis. Cujus rei statutum

Laws made against the trespassers in parks or fisheries.

---

contradixisset, si in rege confidentiam habuisset. Et sic archiepiscopus in novitate sua, invitis colonis, messuit ubi non seminavit, non sine sanctorum prædecessorum suorum injuria et dedecore. Quos dilapidatores ecclesiæ Cantuariensis prodigos fuisse denotabat. In the margin also has been written with a plummet, *clerus contradixisset, si de regis constanti adjutorio confisi fuissent . . . sic Cant. archiepiscopi dilapidatores . . . . .*

[1] This rubric was originally written "*Magnum parlamentum medio xl*."

[2] *tuitionem*] tuicione, MS.

[3] *sauciabantur . . . . . tueatur*] With the exception of one line, this is written on a piece of vellum, pasted over the original text, which is partially erased, but can be thus deciphered, *sauciabantur, quod papa, promissionis suæ transgressor, gravius quam ante eorum querimoniam manum sensim aggravabat. Multa enim temperamenta in concilio promittebantur, quorum (?) dominus rex tantummodo (?) scripta penes se retinet. Quæ omnia in libris apud (?) . . . reperire.* The documents referred to are in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 696.)

[4] Horat. de Arte Poet. l. 21, but the text reads *cur* for *nunc*, as also in E.

A.D. 1246. plenius scribitur in libellis plurimorum.[1] Provisum est insuper[2] in dicto parlamento, ut adhuc scriberetur domino papæ efficaciter, ut ab oppressionibus cessaret consuetis. Scripserunt igitur per se episcopi. Scripserunt abbates et priores. Scripserunt comites et barones. Scripsit et ipse rex, ita ut omnium scripta corda ferina poterant emollire. Sed omnes litus arabant, et lateres abluebant. Scriptum est simili modo cardinalibus. Hæc omnia scripta in libris reperiuntur plurium Historiographorum.[3]

Letters of complaint written to the pope.

Fretherius causam suam intendebat justificare.

The emperor Frederic endeavours to justify himself.

Temporibus quoque sub eisdem Fretherius, quem nominare imperatorem prohibet ecclesia, ut suam famam, quæ longe lateque jam fœtorem teterrimum exhalavit,[4] in aliquo restauraret, præcipue quam de hæresi contraxerat infamiam redimendo, hanc epistolam nobilibus Angliæ[5] transmisit; quos omnes speraverat cum rege viriliter contra importunitates Romanæ ecclesiæ velle ac posse resistendo sui regni jura contueri: "Fretherius, etc., prælatis ecclesiarum, comitibus et baronibus, [et][6] universis per regnum Angliæ constitutis, quibus ostensæ fuerint literæ præsentes, salutem et omne

His letter to the prelates and nobles of England.

[1] *in libellis plurimorum*] Written on a slip of vellum pasted over the original reading, namely, *scribitur in libro Suplementorum.* In B. we read, "prout plenius scribitur *in libro literarum* (the three last words on erasure), post inquisitiones transgressionum de foresta, *ad tale signum* ⊙—m—;" and then, in red letters, "*Hoc invenies in libro Additamentorum.*" In C. the whole paragraph is omitted. This statute will be found in the "Liber Additamentorum" [MS. Cott. Nero, D. I. fol. 88], and in ed. Wats, p. 156.

[2] *insuper*] Added in marg.

[3] *Historiagraphorum*] Historiagraphorum, MS. This word with the two preceding are written on a slip of vellum pasted over the original text, which reads, *libro Additamentorum repericet sedulus indagator.* These letters are in B. C. (ed. Wats, pp. 699–701), but not in the "Liber Additamentorum."

[4] *exhalavit*] exalavit, MS.

[5] *Angliæ*] Added in marg.

[6] *et*] Supplied from B.C. Om. E.

bonum. Etsi causæ nostræ justitiam vulgaris famæ præloquium," etc. Quære residuum in libris Historiograforum, qui talia intendunt ad multorum futurorum instructionem perpetuare;[1] sed "vidi, vidi,[2] impium exaltatum et elevatum sicut cedros Libani, et transivi, et ecce non erat."[3] A.D. 1246.

Andegravius, qui in regem Alemanniæ jam eligitur, auxilio papæ valde roboratur.

The landgrave of Thuringia is aided by the pope with money.

Dominus igitur papa vigilanti sollicitudine causam suam contra Fretherieum cupiens promovere, et ipsum irremediabiliter conterere, procuravit ut Andegravius[4] Duringiæ, qui in regem, eo procurante, Alemanniæ exaltabatur, multo ditaretur thesauro, et multis præesset dominans optimatibus, præcipue prælatis, quibus de jure poterat dominari. Fretherieus igitur, positis insidiis, nitebatur bajulos thesauri papalis spoliare, opponens contra Andegravium Conradum, filium suum, regem videlicet Alemanniæ, ut impetus Andegravii,[5] novi regis, cui dominus papa cornua dederat, potenter fol. 140 a. refrænaret; unde guerra in Alemannia jam initum, cruentissimum cepit incrementum. Quadam vero die magni belli, dum idem rex Conradus cum Andegravio bellum consereret, magni viri Germaniæ, quos rex Conradus credebat habere fidelissimos, in ancipiti hora certaminis muneribus[6] corrupti terga dederunt, facti de amicis inimicissimi; unde a campo fugiens, ad patrem suum inglorius remeavit.

Conrad, son of the emperor, opposes him, but is deserted by his chiefs, and compelled to fly.

---

[1] The letter is in B. C. (ed. Wats, pp. 702–704). In B. it is dated at Turin, "prid. Aug. (*sic*) iii. indict."

[2] *vidi, vidi*] So in MS.

[3] *in libris . . . non erat*] Written over an erasure. The quotation is from Ps. xxxvi. 35, 36.

[4] *Andegravius*] Andraegravius, MS.

[5] *regem . . . . Andegravii*] On an erasure, and the words *novi . . . refrænaret* are added to the text, in the lower margin.

[6] *muneribus*] muneribiles, MS., but the last four letters are on an erasure, and *us* written in the margin. In B. C. *corrupti papali, ut dicitur, pecunia.*

A.D. 1246.

Maritata est junior filia comitis Provinciæ.

Marriage of the daughter of the count of Provence to Charles, brother of the king of France.

Diebus quoque sub eisdem Reimundi, comitis de Provincia jam defuncti, filia natu minor, procurante Beatrice, matre ejus, maritata est Karolo, fratri regis Francorum juniori, cum tota Provincia, rege Anglorum penitus experte et excluso. Quod tamen dominus rex Angliæ, qui tot honores in ipsam Beatricem congesserat, minime creditur[1] promeruisse.

Comes Sabaudiæ homagium facit domino regi Anglorum.

The count of Savoy does homage to Henry.

Sub eodem tempore comes Sabaudiæ Amideus, dominum regem Angliæ diligens, in præsentia domini archiepiscopi B[onefacii] et episcopi Herefordensis P[etri], et aliorum nobilium, qui absentiam regis supplebant,[2] fecit hominium et fidelitatem[3] domino regi Anglorum in manu archiepiscopi Cantuariensis B[onefacii], cum juramento et fidei interpositione. Sed et hæc et alia eo fiducialius scripsi, quo ex præcepto regis accepi.[4]

Haraldus rex Manniæ fit miles.

Harald, king of Man, is knighted.

Several Welsh nobles submit themselves.

Eodemque anno dominus rex Londoniis festa celebrans Paschalia, Haraldum, regem Manniæ, juvenem elegantem, baltheo cinxit militari. Et circa eadem tempora, quidam Walensium nobiles, necessariorum penuria cogente, ad pacem domini regis confugere cupientes, ea quæ pacis sunt humillima[5] voce rogitabant, et exaudiri meruerunt.

---

[1] *minime creditur*] Added in marg.

[2] *supplebant*] suplebant, MS.

[3] *et fidelitatem*] Written on a slip of vellum pasted over the original reading, *sive homagium*.

[4] *Sed et hæc . . . accepi*] Written on an erasure, and partly on a slip of vellum pasted over it.

[5] *humillima*] humilima, MS.

Restituitur baronia episcopo Cestrensi Rogero. A.D. 1246.

Per idem quoque tempus dominus rex, precibus amicabilibus mitigatus, episcopo Cestrensi Rogero baroniam suam, quam in manu sua idem rex seisitam tenuerat, benigne[1] restituit, et ipsum episcopum in gratiam recepit.

Henry restores to the bishop of Chester his baronies.

De mortibus quorumdam archidiaconorum; et de quodam novo statuto papæ.

Eodemque tempore, cum per quosdam vagos et susurrones audisset dominus papa, qualiter quidam in Anglia opulenti clerici indecenter a seculo, quasi rapti Deo irato, migraverunt, proposuit bona intestatorum sibi accipere.[2] Porro magister Robertus de Hailes, archidiaconus Lincolniensis, qui, paucis elapsis annis, obierat intestatus, plura milia marcarum, cum vasis multis argenteis, seculo et secularibus, oblitus animæ suæ, dimisit. Archidiaconus quoque Bedefordiæ Almaricus, qui pecunia abundans,[3] maxima post se indecenter relicta, subito obierat, morte præoccupatus[4] repentina. Nuper quoque magister Johannes de Hotoft,[5] archidiaconus Norhamtoniæ, morbo repentino correptus, circiter v. milia marcarum, quasi æmulus memorati Roberti, cum xxx. cuppis argenteis et aliquot aureis cumque[6] infinitis jocalibus, indecenter valedicens seculo expiravit. Dominus autem papa[7] salubre statutum contra talia mala providens, ne

Mandate of the pope to take the goods of the rich intestate clergy to his own use.

---

[1] *benigne*] beningne, MS.

[2] *proposuit . . . accipere*] Written on an erasure, and partly on a slip of vellum pasted over it. The original reading appears to have been, . . . *ideo* (?) *ex hoc succurrere ærario.*

[3] *abundans*] habundans, MS.

[4] *præocupatus*] preocupatus, MS.

[5] *Hotoft*] The two last letters are on an erasure. In B. C., *Hotosp.*

[6] *cumque*] *que* is interlined.

[7] *autem papa*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1246. animæ periclitarentur, statuit,[1] ut si quis finiret vitam exhalando[2] intestatus, bona defuncti cederet in usus ipsius.[3] Sed cum hoc ad aures regis perveniret et[4] magnatum, reclamarunt constanter, ne hæc novitas inaudita in ecclesia scandalum parturiret.[5]

Literæ domini regis missæ abbati de Sancto Albano prohibitoriæ, pro tallagio.

Letter of the king to the abbat of St. Alban's, forbidding tallage to be paid to the pope.

Dierum autem sub ipsorum curriculo dominus rex literas suas misit prohibitorias prælatis Angliæ, ne domino papæ tallagium contribuerent, in hæc verba: "H[enricus], Dei gratia," etc. Quære residuum in Originali.[6] Dominus autem papa hæc omnia contempnens, scripsit in contrarium, ut sibi scilicet contributio indistanter solveretur, constituens executores potentes episcopum Wintoniensem et[7] Norwicensem, et quosdam alios. Qui negotium papale celeriter, nullo contradicente, manciparunt effectui, literas papales adeo fulminantes prælatis deferentes, ut nec privilegium vel indulgentia papali voluntati opponeret repagulum contradictionis. Unde angustiæ undique prælatis circumdederunt,[8] et impositum est regi silentium, in quo confidebant, ne mutiret. Et quid juvat hos regis conatus frustratorios describendo recitare, qui tam frequenter finem tam flebilem sortiuntur?

Letters of the pope to the contrary enforced by some of the prelates.

[1] *statuit*] Added in marg.

[2] *exhalando*] exalando, MS.

[3] *ipsius*] On an erasure.

[4] *perveniret et*] Added on to the text.

[5] In the margin opposite to these last five lines is written in red, "*dubium.*"

[6] *Quære . . . Originali*] Written on a slip of vellum pasted over the original text, which reads, *Inquire librum Additamentorum.* The letter is not in the "Liber Additamentorum," but in B.C. (ed. Wats, p. 707), dated Westm., 1 Apr., anno r. 30.

[7] *Wintoniensem et*] Added to the text.

[8] *circumdederunt*] So corr. in marg. and written on a slip of vellum over the original text, namely, *miseros circumberunt* (*sic*).

Karleolensis episcopus Walterus resignat episcopatum suum.[1] A.D. 1246.

Die vero apostolorum Petri et Pauli Walterus, Karleolensis episcopus, apud Oxoniam seculum, quod diu et multum incoluerat, cum suis salutans secularibus, Prædicatorum fratrum habitum et Ordinem suscepit; eo forte quod timebat, ne legitimum, tanquam aulicus,[2] ingressum in episcopatum habuerat. Et sic alter Joseph[3] pallium suum Egiptiacæ[4] reliquit fugitivus.

29 June. Resignation of the bishop of Carlisle, who assumes the habit of a friar Preacher.

Literæ missæ a Soldano Babiloniæ domino papæ.

Temporibus quoque sub eisdem, domino papæ petenti pacem vel saltem treugas inter Christianos et Sarracenos a Soldano Babiloniæ, donec videlicet per regem Francorum melior status reformaretur, rescripsit idem Soldanus sic: "Præsentiæ papæ subscriptio nobilis, magni," etc. Require subsequentia in libris Historiograforum.[5] Translata fuit epistola de Arabico in Latinum, ideo non habet formam stili nostri.

Letter from the Soldan of Babylon to the pope.

fol. 140 b. ### *Qualiter Fretherícus laqueos conspirantium in necem suam evaserit.*

Et dum mortalium status rota mundialis sic variasset, Frethericus, quem imperatorem appellare quisque prohibetur, et quem universalis ecclesia a culmine

The emperor discovers a conspiracy

---

[1] In the margin is a drawing representing two arms stretched out, and holding a crosier.

[2] *tanquam aulicus*] On an erasure, and originally omitted.

[3] *sic alter Joseph*] Added to the text, and *sic* erased in the next line.

[4] *Egiptiacæ*] So also E., but here at first written *Egyptiæ*, as in B. C.

[5] *Historiograforum*] On an erasure, and in the margin is written *plurimorum*. The letter is in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 711).

A.D. 1246. imperiali præcipitavit, laqueos conspirantium in necem suam casualiter sive miraculose evasit occultatos. Super quo casu mirabili epistolam satis prolixam domino regi Anglorum transmisit, in qua totius series prosecutionis plenius continetur; quam in libris multorum[1] sedulus inspector poterit reperire. Similiter magister Walterus de Ocra, clericus Fretherici et consiliarius, ac nuncius specialis, de eodem scripsit domino regi. Quorum scriptorum summa est, quod dominus papa et ejus consilium conspiraverunt in necem ipsius Fretherici, quod absit, quia incredibile est.

formed against his life.

His letter to Henry on the subject, and letter of Walter de Ocra, the emperor's secretary.

Dominus papa novum mandatum nunciat in Angliam.[2]

Another mandate of the pope exacting money from the clergy.

Assumens igitur ex præteritis audaciam dominus papa, et confidentiam miseros Anglos apporriandi, solito imperiosius prælatis Angliæ demandavit, ut in Anglia omnes beneficiati in suis beneficiis residentiam facientes, tertiam partem bonorum suorum domino papæ per triennium conferrent; non facientes residentiam, dimidiam; multis adjectis dirissimis ac durissimis conditionibus[3] prædictum mandatum coartantibus, videlicet, "non obstante aliquo privilegio," etc. Ad quod exequendum, episcopum constituit Londoniensem.

---

[1] *libris multorum*] Originally written *libro Suplementorum*, but afterwards partially erased, and the correction made on a slip of vellum pasted above. In the margin is written *libris aliquorum*. The letter is in B. C. (ed. Wats, pp. 712–714), dated Salerno, 15 April, indict. 4; as also the letter of Walter de Ocra, which follows.

[2] This rubric is on an erasure, and was probably at first written, as in B. C., "*De tirannica et impudenti exigentia pecuniæ, quæ post hæc facta est in Anglia.*" In the margin, throughout the extent of this and the next chapter, is written in red letters the word *dubium*, probably to suggest their omission; but they may be found in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 716) in much the same words.

[3] *conditionibus*] The two first syllables are on an erasure.

Responsio regis et cleri huic mandato.

A.D. 1246.

Episcopus vero memoratus cum quibusdam aliis, quos ad hoc negotium exponendum convocarat, cum in ecclesia Sancti Pauli hoc in propatulo demonstrasset in crastino sancti Andreæ, supervenerunt missi ex parte domini regis, Johannes de Lexintona, miles elegans, facundus et strenuus, et magister Laurentius de Sancto Martino, vir eloquens et jurisperitus, domini regis clericus et consiliarius, districte ex parte domini regis prohibentes, ne illi contributioni inportabili aliquo modo consentirent. Quo autem mandato intellecto,[1] recesserunt omnes ibidem congregati. Cleri vero responsio, quæ bonis et multis fulta fuit rationibus, et prolixa, in libris plurimorum [2] plenius describitur.

The king forbids the clergy to consent to this exaction.

1 Dec.

Reply of the clergy to the pope.

Beatus Edmundus canonizatur.

Diebus quoque sub eisdem dominus papa timens ne canonizationem beati Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi et confessoris, quam indies sibilis obloquentium prorogaverat, idem sanctus signipotens ultione puniret manifesta, eundem sollempniter canonizatum Dominica proxima ante Natale Domini cathalogo sanctorum merito ascripsit.[3] Cujus canonizationis auctenticum elegantissimum in libro de vita ipsius[4] poterit qui curat reperire.

Canonization of St. Edmund.

23 Dec.

---

[1] *intellecto*] intellicto, MS.

[2] *libris plurimorum*] Originally written *libro Additamentorum*, but altered on a slip of vellum pasted above. The reply is not in the "Liber Additamentorum," but in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 716).

[3] *ascripsit*] asscripsit, MS.

[4] *de vita ipsius*] Originally written *Additamentorum*, but corrected on a slip of vellum pasted above. In the corresponding passage in B. the Bull of canonization is said to be written "in fine libri," and it will be found in the "Liber Additamentorum" [MS. Cott. Nero D. I. fol. 88], printed in ed. Wats, p. 156; dated Lyons, "iii°. id. Jan. [11 Jan.] pontif. anno iiii°."

A.D. 1246.

Willelmus de Eboraco eligitur in episcopum Saresbiriensem.

Election of William of York, provost of Beverley, as bishop of Salisbury.

Eisdemque temporibus canonici Saresbirienses, ne repagulum contradictionis invenirent in rege, Willelmum de Eboraco, domini regis clericum familiarissimum, Beverlaci præpositum, in episcopum et animarum suarum pastorem elegerunt; timuerunt enim minas regis, qui minabatur ecclesiam eorum ad locum pristinum revocare.[1]

Creatur abbas Westmonasterii.

Election of Richard de Crokesley as abbat of Westminster.

Eorundemque dierum circulo, defuncto piæ memoriæ Ricardo de Berkinge,[2] abbate Westmonasterii, conventus ejusdem loci Ricardum de Crokesle,[3] ipsius ecclesiæ monachum et archidiaconum, domino regi acceptum, elegit in abbatem.[4]

De mortibus quorumdam magnatum.

Deaths of various noble persons.

Eodem anno plures magnates regni Angliæ a seculo migraverunt, videlicet, circa initium[5] veris, David, princeps Northwalliæ, Johannes de Novilla, Angliæ prothoforestarius, Robertus de Bingham, episcopus Saresbiriensis. In parte Angliæ boreali, H[enricus] de Bailloil, miles. In Hoilandia, Lambertus de Muletuna, miles. Ranulphus Brito, quondam regis clericus, the-

---

1 *timuerunt . . . . . . revocare*] Added in marg.

2 *Berkinge*] Berkew', MS. Corr. from B.C. See Monasticon, i. 271.

3 *Crokesle*] Crokele, MS. Corr. from B. C.

4 *regi . . . abbatem*] Originally written *rege sic volente, elegerunt;* but corrected on a slip of vellum pasted above.

5 *initium*] medium, E.

saurarius,[1] et specialis consiliarius. Item, comitissa Marchiæ, mater domini regis Angliæ, quæ se reginam fecit appellari; quæ cum mortua esset, velum habuit religionis cum corona.[2] Item, comitissa Albemarliæ, filia scilicet Alani de Galeweia. A.D. 1246.

Annalis conclusio.

Transiit igitur annus ille satis frugifer et fructifer; Terræ Sanctæ formidolosus, Ecclesiæ universali nocivus; adversarius Imperio, regnis quoque Francorum et Anglorum deprædator; Romanæ curiæ inimicus et[3] turbulentus, Germaniæ bellicosus. Annual summary.

Dominus rex apud Wintoniam fuit ad Natale Domini.

Anno Domini M°.CC°.XL°.VII°., qui est annus regni domini H[enrici] III. regis xxxi^us^., tenuit idem dominus rex curiam suam apud Wintoniam, præsentibus multis electis regni magnatibus. Cui, cum illuc adveniret, occurrit episcopus Wintoniensis lætabundus, supplicans attentius, ut cum ipso suo episcopo prandere dignaretur, saltem in crastino Natalis Dominici, ut per hoc pateret omnibus manifeste, dominum regem omnes pristinas offensas exsufflasse,[4] et ipsum episcopum in præsentia omnium convivarum in consuetas amicitias revocasse. Quod secundum episcopale desiderium[5] est completum. A.D. 1247. Henry keeps Christmas at Winchester. He dines with the bishop, in token of reconciliation.

---

[1] *clericus, thesaurarius*] Added in marg.

[2] *quæ . . . . . corona*] Added in marg.

[3] *inimicus et*] imicus et, MS., and originally written *infamis et*, as in B. C., but corrected on a slip of vellum pasted above.

[4] *exsufflasse*] exsuflasse, MS.

[5] *desiderium*] desiderium, MS.

A.D. 1247.

De conspiratione quorumdam magnatum Franciæ contra papam.

Conspiracy of some French nobles against the pope.

Diebus autem sub eisdem tepuit devotio fidelium circa matrem ecclesiarum Romanam ecclesiam, propter injuriosas pecuniæ cotidianas extorsiones; unde quidam Francorum nobilissimi contra dominum papam et Romanam curiam, in periculum totius universalis ecclesiæ et fidei Christianæ, detestabilem fecerunt conspirationem, confœderationes, juramenta et epistolas mutuas inter se fol. 141 *a*. conficientes. Quæ vix per regis Francorum peritiam et papalis mitigationis certas promissiones et cleri moderamina, cujus etiam res agebatur, est sopita. Quorum, inquam, magnatum proposita conspirationes et scripta, tam contra clerum quam dominum papam, in libris Francigenarum[1] plenius conscribuntur. Quæ poterunt perlecta admirationem, immo novum stuporem, generare.

De parlamento habito Londoniis in Purificatione beatæ Virginis.

3 Feb.

Parliament held in London, and complaints made of the papal exactions.

In crastino vero Purificationis beatæ Virginis convenerat Londoniis totius regni Angliæ generalis nobilitas. Igitur coram domino rege reposita est querimonia lacrimabilis, cui pertinet rempublicam protegendo injurias[2] regno illatas propulsare, super continuas Romanæ ecclesiæ postulationes pecuniæ imperiosas.[3] Tandem de communi consilio provisum est, ut grava-

---

[1] *libris Francigenarum*] Written on a slip of vellum pasted over the original text, which reads, *libro Additamentorum*, and then, interlined, *et Cronicorum S. Albani.* None of the documents referred to are in the "Liber Additamentorum," but two of them (one of which is in *French*) are inserted in B. C. (ed. Wats, pp. 719, 720).

[2] *injurias*] In E. is added, *omnes.*

[3] *Romanæ . . . . . . imperiosas*] Originally written, *Romanæ ecclesiæ* (*vel tibus* / *vel ibus*) *aviditates et pecuniæ extorsiones*, but corrected on a slip of vellum pasted above.

mina sacræ domini papæ servitium nominatim, ad ipsam Romanam curiam nuncii directi destinarentur. [A.D. 1247.] has epistolas [illegible] [illegible] domino papæ et cardinalibus ex parte totius communitatis cleri et populi regni Anglicani [illegible] [illegible]: "Sanctissimo patri in Christo ac domino Innocentio, Dei providentia summo pontifici, universitas[1] cleri et populi per provinciam Cantuariensem constituti, devota pedum oscula beatorum. Cum Anglicana ecclesia," etc. Require in Rotulo curiæ.[2] In fine vero epistolæ: "Latores igitur præsentium cum supplicatione nostra ad præsentiam sanctitatis vestræ destinamus, ut pericula vobis exponant et incommoda[3] quæ in promptu[4] sequerentur ex præmissis, et quæ nulla possumus ratione portare; licet simus in omni vinculo caritatis, obedientiæ et devotionis vobis obligati. Et quia communitas nostra sigillum non habet, præsentes literas signo communitatis civitatis Londoniarum vestræ sanctitati mittimus consignatas."[5] Item, cardinalibus similiter humiliter scriptum est.[6]

[Letter to the pope from the province of Canterbury.]

[Letter to the cardinals.]

Adducuntur ultramarinæ puellæ maritandæ nobilibus Angliæ.

Et dum nec adhuc memoratum concilium solveretur, Petrus de Sabaudia, comes Richemundiæ, domini regis secretissimus consiliarius, ad curiam regis, scilicet Londoniis, perveniens, secum de partibus suis longinquis

[Peter of Savoy brings foreign ladies over to be mar-]

---

[1] *universitas*] uiversitas, MS.

[2] *Require in Rotulo curiæ*] Written on a slip of vellum pasted over an erasure of the original text, the first words of which appear to be *In rotulis* . . . . The letter is in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 721).

[3] *incommoda*] incomoda, MS.

[4] *promptu*] promtu, MS.

[5] *consignatas*] The last syllable is on an erasure.

[6] *similiter . . . est*] On a slip of vellum pasted above the original text, which reads, *similiter. In prædicto libro reperietur*, and in the margin is added, *epistola eis missa*. The letter is in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 721.)

A.D. 1247. ried to the English nobles.

incognitas[1] Anglis genere et loco nationis puellas, nobilibus Angliæ, quos in custodia sua dominus rex educaverat,[2] adduxit maritandas. Quod multis Angliæ naturalibus et indigenis, qui se spretos censuerunt, molestum videbatur, et absurdum.

Mittuntur duo fratres de Ordine Minorum in Angliam.

Two Minorite brethren are sent into England by the pope, to collect money.

Circa eadem tempora duo fratres de Ordine Minorum, videlicet frater Johannes, de Cancia oriundus, et A[lexander], de præcepto domini papæ, urgente virtute obedientiæ, ad negotium suum de subventione pecuniari eidem,[3] a domino papa [potestatem][4] optinentes, ad opus ejusdem destinantur in Angliam. Qui ad dominum regem primo profecti, humiliter per regnum pergendi licentiam postulabant, auxilium ad opus domini papæ caritative petituri, nullam se coertionem[5] facturos asserentes. Ex licentia igitur domini regis et benivolentia profecti sunt fratres memorati, et, prout eis injunctum a summo pontifice fuerat, diligenter exequebatur officium ac fideliter. Et cum ad Sanctum Albanum pervenissent, modeste exigebant auxilium domino papæ exhiberi, asserentes hoc monachis fore expediens, ut sic episcoporum oppressio vitaretur.[6]

---

[1] *incognitas*] incongnitas, MS.

[2] *educaverat*] educacaverat, MS.

[3] *Circa eadem .... eidem*] These lines, together with the rubric, are written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, which is partly erased, but reads as follows:

Duo fratres Minores mittuntur in Angliam a Romana curia.

Cum vero fortuna præstigiosa mundo talibus alludere [read *illuderet*] *mutationibus, duo fratres de Ordine Minorum, Johannes scilicet, et cum ipso Alexander, natione Anglici ....* nearly as in C. (ed. Wats, p. 722). In B. this chapter has been erased, and subsequently written over by a hand of the 16th century (as in some other instances).

[4] *potestatem*] Supplied from C.

[5] *coertionem*] cohercionem, MS.

[6] *et benivolentia .... vitaretur*] Written over an erasure. Some words in the margin have also been erased.

Pro[illegible] [illegible] A.D. [illegible].

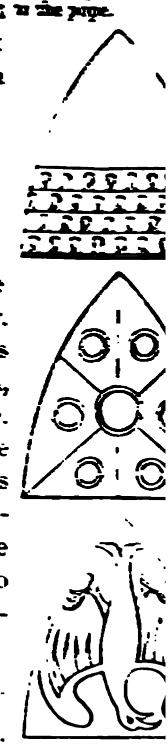
Post [illegible] tres [illegible] redigere [illegible] papali [illegible] erecta [illegible] in [illegible] papæ in [illegible] exemptis.

A [illegible] of [illegible] by the clergy to the pope.

Qualiter protecti [illegible] exempti[4] *ab arbitrio episcoporum.*

The exempt religious houses are protected by the papal authority against the bishops.

Memoratus igitur frater J[ohannes] omnia[5] pacifice cupiens ordinare, postquam dicti exempti obedienter, ut prætactum est, postulatis consenserant, contra impetus episcoporum,[6] ne eos ad suum contrectarent[7] arbitrium, papali protexit, qua præpotens fuerat, auctoritate. Unde post illud tempus, tam alii exempti quam ipse abbas[8] et conventus Sancti Albani, omnibus fratribus grati existentes, amicitiores[9] extiterant, et in necessitatibus favorabiliores: et merito, cum ecclesiæ Romanæ immediate sint subjecti. Et, ut elementa mundano statui concordarent, tunc temporis hoc accidit mirabile.[10]



[1] *disceptationes*] In the text *deceptationes*, but interlined is *vel dis*, i.e., *disceptationes*.

[2] *prælati*] The last syllable is on an erasure.

[3] *voluntati*] On an erasure.

[4] *exempti*] exepti, MS.

[5] *omnia*] On a slip of vellum pasted over the word *omni*.

[6] *episcoporum*] episcorum, MS.

[7] *contrectarent*] contretarent, MS.

[8] *abbas*] Added in marg.

[9] *amicitiores*] amiciores, MS.

[10] *Memoratus . . . mirabile*] The whole of this chapter, with the rubric, is written over an erasure of the original text. In the margin, after the word *mirabile*, is added (also on an erasure) the following note, "¶ Nota hic terræmotum in Anglia,

A.D. 1247.

De terræmotu in Anglia.

13 Feb. Unusual earthquake in England.

Anno quoque sub eodem, idus Februarii, factus est in Anglia per diversa loca terræmotus, qui ædificia multa concutiens dampnosus[1] fuit et terribilis, eo quod insolitus. Quapropter significativus credebatur. Mare etiam, contra suum morem consuetum, non ascendit vel refluxit per duos dies, et tertio solitas metas transiens dampna finitimas irrogavit non minima.

De dampnis quæ terræmotus fecit, et maris ascensus insolitus.

Injuries inflicted by the earthquake and floods.

Per idem tempus, ut prætactum est, terræmotus memoratus cum quodam subterraneo[2] reboatu, quem Anglici patria lingua *Erhdune* vocant, structuras tam lapideas quam ligneas[3] concutiens, easdem a fundamentis fol. 141 *b*. dissipavit. Tonitrus insuper terræmotui associatus, robora miræ magnitudinis vel radicitus avulsit, vel cortice subrepto excoriavit, vel ad similitudinem plectarum vel foliorum palmarum quassata diffidit. Pastores insuper quosdam, bubulcos et agricolas, ad mortem vel

quæ non est cavernosa." There can be little doubt, that the text, as at first written, mentioned here the deaths of Fulk of Newcastle and of the landgrave of Thuringia (ed. Wats, pp. 724, 726), since in the lower margin we find three shields of arms drawn reversed, one of Fulk of Newcastle, *viz.*, party per fess, vaire and gules, beneath which is written in red letters, "¶ *Obiit Fulco de Castro Novo, in Purificatione beatæ Mariæ, Londoniis, domini regis consobrinus, et sepultus in ecclesia Westmonasterii*;" and two of the landgrave Henry, *viz.*, 1, gyronny of six or and azure, in each division a torteau, and a sixth in the fess point; 2, azure, an eagle displayed or. Beneath is written in red, "¶ *Obiit Andegravius Duringiæ, ad cujus promotionem, ut imperaret, dominus papa infinitam effudit pecuniam. Hic Henricus Raspe dicitur.*" The deaths of these personages are now noticed at the end of the year. See p. 31.

[1] *dampnosus*] dapnosus, MS.

[2] *subterraneo*] subteraneo, MS.

[3] *ligneas*] lingneas, MS.

membrorum mutilationem fulmen illud pestiferum;[1] necnon et torrentes agros suffocarunt.[2] A.D. 1247.

Timuit sibi papa de vita sua, et latuit.

Diebus sub eisdem, missi sunt subdoli et multis muneribus et amplioribus promissis corrupti, ut, more Assessinorum, alterum vel utrumque, scilicet Frethericum vel papam, interfectum veneno vel sicha raperent de medio. Unde dominus papa sibi timens, latuit inclusus apud Lugdunum in camera, quasi in carcere, multis armatis nocte dieque custoditus, vix ausus in populo verbum Domini seminare.[3]

Emissaries are bribed to kill the emperor and pope.

The pope conceals himself at Lyons.

De constantia regis Francorum.[4]

Eodem anno, circa medium Quadragesimæ, dominus rex Francorum omnes nobiles regni sui fecit convocari;

Parliament convened in France,

---

[1] A verb is here wanting.

[2] *Per idem tempus . . . suffocarunt*] This chapter, with the rubric, is rewritten on two pieces of vellum fastened down over the original text, which, although partially erased, can be read as follows:

Revocata est in irritum nova (?) constitutio de intestatis.

Per idem quoque tempus, propter scandalum indecenter exinde ventilatum, propter contradictionem principum [these three last words added in marg.] *revocatum est, quod paulo ante a domino papa, instigante manifesta avaritia, fuerat constitutum, et ad quod fratres Prædicatores et Minores, in da[m]pnum et scandalum ipsorum, et læsionem Ordinis eorundem, exequendum procuratores constituerat; ut videlicet bona decedentium intestatorum in proprios usus papa sibi vendicaret, maxime* [this word interlined] *tamen propter istam iniquissimam adjectionem, quæ contra omnem pietatem illi statuto addebatur, quæ scilicet talis extitit, "Quod si infirmus testamentum conditurus imbecillitate repentina præoc[c]upatus, non posset expresse verba testamenti sui exprimere, et aliquem de amicis constitueret expressorem et executorem, non staret illud testamentum, sed pro nullo haberetur." Et omnia bona talis intestati caribdis papalis deglutiret;* almost verbally as in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 724.)

[3] *vix ausus . . . seminare*] On an erasure.

[4] This rubric is on an erasure.

A.D. 1247.

and the king urged to resign the cross which he had assumed.

ubi cum convenirent, dixit episcopus Parisiensis, de cujus manu idem rex, cum de infirmitate[1] sua convaluisset a portis mortis revocatus, crucem susceperat manifeste,[2] "Domine rex, resigna crucem, ne tota Francia pro tua absentia induat confusionem; eras enim tunc in extasi positus, tui impos ipsius." Cum igitur ad hoc instarent mater ejus et fratres, et etiam carta papalis persuasoria, quam adquisierant, ait rex, "Fiat voluntas vestra," et crucem in manu dicti episcopi resignavit.

He does so, but only to again assume it.

Ipsis igitur ob hoc lætantibus, post paululum dixit rex, quasi iratus, "Nunc sum compos mei et sensus integerrimi; reddite mihi crucem Domini mei Jhesu Christi. Vivit Dominus, nunquam cibum accipiam, donec cruce resigner;"[3] et reaccepit crucem, omnibus invitis et frustra reclamantibus. Ex tunc autem juravit transitum peregrinationis suæ dominus rex, et omnes optimates ejus, videntes per hoc[4] quoniam digitus [Dei][5] est. Hoc quoque anno facta est amicabilis compositio inter ecclesiam Dunelmensem et ecclesiam Sancti Albani, super visitationem ab episcopo facienda in ecclesia parrochiali, quæ est in monasterio cellæ de Thinemua. Tandem sic conquievit lis, quod in ipsa episcopus visitationis officium exercebit[6] sine onere procurationis. Hæc autem compositio plenius scribitur in thesauris utrobique depositis.[7]

---

1 *infirmitate*] imfirmitate, MS.

2 *manifeste*] On an erasure.

3 *resigner*] resingner, MS.

4 *hoc*] Interlined. In the margin also *hoc* is added after *est*, but superfluously.

5 *Dei*] Supplied from B. C.

6 *exercebit*] excercebit, MS.

7 *Hoc quoque . . . . . depositis*] Added in marg., and the last four words are on an erasure, instead of which seems originally to have been written, *in libro Additamentorum . . . . . .* The instrument of agreement is given in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 727), dated May, 1247.

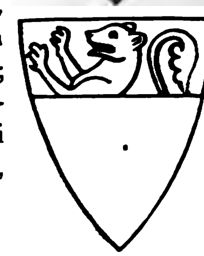
A.D. 1247.

Fredericus fecit omnes de Calabria et Apulia jurare fidelitatem Henrico, filio suo.[1]

The emperor causes the Calabrians and Apulians to swear fealty to his son Henry.

Dum autem horum temporum curricula volverentur, Fretbericus fecit omnes Apulos, Siculos[2] et Calabres jurare fidelitatem et facere homagium et liganciam dilectissimo filio suo Henrico, scilicet[3] nepoti domini regis Angliæ. Quod et ipse, nec mirum, nimium acceptavit.





Willelmus, comes Holandiæ, eligitur in regem Alemanniæ.[4]

Eisdemque temporibus ira inter papam et Fretbericum in tantum odium est induratum et confirmatum, quod idem papa vigilanter ad ejusdem F[retherici] confusionem ignominiosam intenderet. Electus est igitur, ipso procurante, Willelmus, comes Holandiæ, in regem Alemanniæ, quia Andegravius Duringiæ jam obierat; in cujus promotione ecclesia infinitam pecuniam effuderat. Insuper in promotionem Willelmi, novi electi in regem Alemanniæ, et in imperatorem promovendi, inæstimabilem pecuniam promittebat.

Applicat in Anglia episcopus Sabinensis, cardinalis.

The cardinal bishop of Sabina lands in England, on his

Tempore quoque sub eodem applicuit in Anglia, de licentia domini regis, episcopus Sabinensis, Romanæ curiæ cardinalis, iturus in partes boreales, videlicet in Norwagiam, ut ibidem officio legationis fungeretur, et

---

[1] In the margin, opposite this chapter is written *dubium*, in red letters.

[2] *Siculos*] Siclos, MS.

[3] *scilicet*] On an erasure.

[4] In the lower margin are drawn two shields of arms, *viz.*, 1. or, a lion rampant gules; 2, azure, on a chief gules, a demi-lion rampant or; and beneath is written in red letters, "¶ *Scutum Willelmi comitis. Primum scutum ejusdem de Holandia. aspirantis ad imperium.*"

A.D. 1247. route to Norway. in regem ungeret Hachonem, ipsius terræ regem, atque sollempniter coronaret; et apud Len prosperum ventum expectabat. Et cum tempus aptum vidisset, illuc perveniens, propositum suum ad votum consummavit.

Tres quoque fratres uterini domini regis applicuerunt.

The three uterine brothers of king Henry arrive in England. Applicuerunt etiam tunc temporis cum eodem legato in Anglia domini regis tres fratres uterini, ex mandato ejusdem, ut de divitiis et possessionibus Angliæ uberrime ditarentur; videlicet Guido de Lizinnun, primogenitus, Willelmus de Valencia, juvenis, et Athelmarus, clericus, ætate adolescens.

Applicuit B[aldewinus,] imperator Constantinopolitanus.

Baldwin, emperor of Constantinople, comes to England. Tempore quoque sub eodem applicuerint in Anglia vacui et esurientes, et æri regio improbe[1] inhiantes, quidam magnates advenæ et longinqui, videlicet Baldewinus, dictus imperator Constantinopolitanus, qui se finxit domini regis caute consanguineum, cum quibusdam suis fautoribus, a Græcorum finibus violenter expulsus. Qui, paucis annis ante elapsis, omnibus sacris reliquiis, quas habere potuit, in Francia venditis, et undecunque mendicata pecunia et mutuo accepta, victus, pauper et profugus, et omnibus bonis inde aufugit spoliatus, licet ipsum dominus papa fovere incepisset, et de thesauris suis ditasset. Cujus mali seminarium et causa fuit Vastagius[2] Græcus. Idem igitur imperator

His fall was caused by Vataces.

---

[1] *improbe*] On an erasure. In B. C. *patulis rictibus.*

[2] *Vastagius*] Otherwise, Vataces. See *ante*, vol. ii., p. 487.

in hiis partibus occidentis[1] accepit[2] et juvamen a domino rege Angliæ, cujus munificentiam prægustaverat, ratione consanguinitatis licet longinquissimæ, egenus postulare. A.D. 1247.

Maritatæ sunt quædam advenæ puellæ quibusdam[3] nobilibus Angliæ.

Et eodem anno, mense Maio, domino rege propter hoc a festo sancti Vitalis usque in crastinum[4] apostolorum[5] Philippi et Jacobi apud Wudestoc commorante, maritatæ sunt illæ puellæ alienigenæ, quas adduxerat Petrus de Sabaudia, Edmundo, comiti Lincolniæ, et Ricardo de Burgo, adolescentibus nobilibus valde, quos dominus rex in regia sua per aliquot annos educaverat.

fol. 142 a.

Marriage of some foreign ladies to English nobles.

28 April.
2 May.

Maritata est Aelisia, soror domini regis, J[ohanni], comiti Warranniæ. Et Johanna, filia Warini de Muntcheinsil, W[illelmo] de Valencia, fratri domini regis uterino.

Maritata est insuper Aelesia Pictavensis,[6] soror uterina domini regis, quæ nuper cum fratribus suis in Angliam venerat, Johanni de Warannia comiti, adolescentulo.

Marriage of Alice, the king's sister, to John, earl

---

[1] *thesauris . . . occidentis*] With the exception of the two first syllables of *thesauris*, this is written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, now partly erased, but which appears to read, *thesauro . . . . uto, et multiplici prædicatione et indulgentia juvisset contra Vastagium, generum Fretherici, inaniter dimicantem. Egere quippe.* In the lower margin, also, are two lines (one of which has been partly cut off by the binder) which seem to have reference to this passage, namely, *auxilium impendisset; et hoc fecit Vastagius scismaticus in dampnum . . . . . . Constantinopol . . .* Cf. ed. Wats, p. 731.

[2] *accepit*] The original and better reading is *cepit*, as in B. C., but *ac* is added on the slip of vellum.

[3] *quibusdam*] quibus, MS.

[4] *crastinum*] So also B. C. It has been altered to *crastino*, but unnecessarily.

[5] *apostolorum*] apostorum, MS.

[6] *Pictavensis*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1247. Warren, and of Joanna de Muntcheini to William de Valence. Munificence of Henry to his uterine brothers.

Maritata est insuper Johanna, filia Warini de Muntcheinsillo, Willelmo de Valentia, fratri domini regis uterino, cui cito postea contulit dominus rex[1] Hertfordiam, cum castro et honore. Fratri vero suo Athelmaro, clerico, tot procuravit dominus rex conferri beneficia ecclesiastica et de prælatorum cameris,[2] fraterno affectu, ut ad episcopales, immo potius archiepiscopales, divitias ascendisse videretur.[3] Guidoni vero, fratri suo, ab Anglia recedenti, contulit dominus rex denariorum renovatorum pecuniam numerosam; similique ratione Gaufridus de Lezinun multis meruit divitiis saginari.[4]

Multi nobiles de Anglia crucesignantur.

Many English nobles take the cross.

Eodem quoque anno episcopus Wigorniensis, Willelmus Longa-spata, et Galfridus de Luci, cum multis aliis nobilibus Angliæ, exemplo regis Francorum Christianissimi et aliorum Francorum animati, cruce consignantur.

Transfertur beatus Edmundus confessor.

9 July. Translation of the body of St. Edmund, archbishop of Canterbury, at Pontigni.

Ejusdemque[5] anni sub profluvio, videlicet vii°. idus Julii, quo die translatum est nostris temporibus corpus beati Wlstani, episcopi et confessoris, non sine Dei nutu, translatum est et corpus beati Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi et confessoris, apud Pontiniacum, in præsentia christianissimi regis Francorum Ludowici multorumque prælatorum autenticorum. Sciendumque est, immo toti mundo prædicandum, quod totum corpus ejus integrum inventum est, incorruptum et odoriferum; et, quod mirabilius est in mortuo, cum omnibus membris

---

[1] *dominus rex*] Interlined.
[2] *et de prælatorum cameris*] Added in marg.
[3] *videretur*] viderentur, E.
[4] *similique . . . saginari*] Added in marg.
[5] *Ejusdemque*] *que* is interlined.

flexibile. Capilli[1] ejus et vestimentum inviolatum colore et substantia. Et, cum vellent monachi Pontiniacenses aliquam partem sacri corporis regi dare transfretaturo, respondit rex, "Non placeat Christo, ut quod integrum tanto tempore reservavit Deus, per me peccatorem aliquo modo mutiletur.[2] Quæ autem circa eandem translationem facta sunt, quia specialem tractatum exigunt, in libris multorum[3] plenius annotantur. A.D. 1247.

De tonsura monetæ, et ejusdem renovatione.

Design for a new coinage, to prevent the clipping of the coin.

Eodem tempore moneta Anglicana, propter sui materiam desiderabilem, detestabili circumcisione intolerabiliter cœpit deteriorari; unde cœpit dominus rex de remedio cogitare. Inventa est igitur novi cunei impressio, scilicet talis, ut, manente materia et pondere, crucis brachia duplicia extenderentur.[4] In cujus denarii



---

[1] *Capilli*] Capll'i, MS.

[2] *Et, cum vellent . . . mutiletur*] Added in marg.

[3] *in libris multorum*] On an erasure, and originally written *in libro Additamentorum*, as in B. C. The detail is printed in ed. Wats, p. 161, from the "Liber Additamentorum" [MS. Cott. Nero D. I. fol. 91]. In the lower margin is written also the following addition, in reference to this Translation :

"*Compositaque sunt hæc ad missam dicenda in beati Edmundi confessoris translatione.*

Augeat in nobis, quæsumus Domine, beati confessoris tui atque pontificis Edmundi translatio gloriosa sanctæ devotionis affectum, ut quod devote petimus, de tua pietate confisi celerius impetramus, per.

Sec. Oblata, Domine, sanctus pontifex tuus Edmundus hæc tuæ pietati commendat libamina, et translationis ejus insignia recolentes, tuæ conciliet majestati, per.

Post com. Divina, Domine Deus, quæ ob translationem beati pontificis tui Edmundi supplicando libavimus, et vivis prosint ad veniam, et defunctis fidelibus ad levamen, per Dominum nostrum Jesum Christum."

[4] In the margin is a drawing of the obverse of the new coin, and by the side is written in red letters, "¶ *Altera denarii pars pristinam retinet impressionem.*" In B. the coin is rudely drawn, without inscription, and so also in the Chronicle of John of Oxnede, p. 160, and in the Chetham MS. of the "Flores Historiarum." In C. it is omitted. In E. the coin is again copied by Matthew Paris, but the inscription is carelessly given thus, ROI ƆON LON ONT. It is remarkable, that in the Chronicle of John of Wallingford, (which was abridged from the larger Chronicle

A.D. 1247. rotunditate si quid de cruce illa fuisset violatum, pro retonso haberetur et inacceptabilis.

Chorosminorum fortitudo in Terra Sancta dissipata est.

The Chorasmians are utterly destroyed in the Holy Land.

Anno quoque sub eodem Chorosminorum in Terra Sancta fortitudo numerosa, Deo ultore, dissipata penitus expiravit.

Fretherieus Parmam obsedit.[1]

The emperor lays siege to Parma.

Sub eisdem diebus, cum sol ad equinoctium descenderet autumpnale, Fretherieus cisalpinans versus partes festinavit Lugduni,[2] cum exercitu[3] copiosissimo; unde vehementer timebatur, ne in[4] ipsam personam papalem et cardinales, tanquam obstinatus propter induratum odium quod inter eos inveteraverat, hostiliter irrueret, cum prudenter, procurante eodem[5] domino papa, civitas Parmensis cœpit hostiliter recalcitrare, et se contra F[rethericum] communire. Quod cum audisset F[rethericus], omnes vires suas regressus contra Parmenses congregavit, et civitatem eorum hostiliter obsedit; et ædificavit in circuitu civitatem tam magnam et populosam, sicut et ipsa civitas Parmensis obsessa,[6] proponens certe eam quocunque fine occupare, sed ipsi se viriliter defendebant.

---

under the eye of Matthew Paris,) a drawing is given of this coin with a striking variation in the legend, namely, RIC. BVO ON LON. See MS. Cott. Jul. D. VII. fol. 96.

[1] In the margin has been written "Nobilis urbs," but afterwards erased.

[2] *Lugduni*] Lugdunenses, E.

[3] *exercitu*] excercitu, MS., throughout.

[4] *in*] Interlined.

[5] *eodem*] Added to the text.

[6] *obsessa*] Interlined.

Magnates Alemanniæ Willelmo, quem elegerunt in regem, homagium faciunt. A.D. 1247.

In crastino vero sancti Michaelis magnates Alemanniæ, ad quos jus electionis spectat, electo suo Willelmo, comiti Holandiæ, fecerunt homagium et ligantiam; et omnem adhibuerunt diligentiam, ut apud Aquisgranum[1] coronaretur, sed ipsi, qui partem foverunt Fretherici, prohibuerunt.

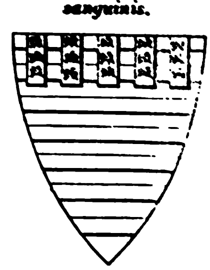
30 Sept. The electors of Germany do homage to William, count of Holland.

De sanguine Christi Londonias allato.[2]

Eodem anno, festo scilicet[3] sancti Edwardi, quod est in quindena sancti Michaelis, collatus est sanguis Christi domino regi Angliæ, et allatus usque ad Westmonasterium, ipso rege bajulante. De cujus rei veritate plenissime per literas domini patriarchæ Jerosolimitani et magistrorum militiæ Templi et Hospitalis, et archiepiscoporum et episcoporum Terræ Sanctæ testimoniales certificamur. Collata est igitur omnibus festo illo illum sacratissimum sanguinem venerantibus sex annorum et centum et sexdecim dierum[4] indulgentia. Eodemque die dominus rex fratrem suum Willelmum baltheo cinxit militari.[5]



Vasculum sanguinis.



Scutum Willelmi de Valentia.

[1] *Aquisgranum*] Aquisgrani, MS.

[2] *allato*] alleto, MS. In the margin is a drawing of the vessel ("in quodam vase cristallino venustissimo," B. C.) in which the sacred blood was carried, and above is this rubric: "¶ *Sanguis Christi allatus est et datus ecclesiæ Westmonasterii, die sancti Edwardi, a rege Henrico, et cito post, passus Christi.*"

[3] *scilicet*] Interlined.

[4] *dierum*] On an erasure.

[5] In the margin is drawn his shield of arms, *viz.*, barry of 13, azure and argent, a label of five points gules, and on each point three lions passant or.

A.D. 1247.

Electus Karleolensis in episcopum consecratur.[1]

5 Feb. Consecration of the bishop elect of Carlisle.

Eodemque tempore electus Karleolensis, dominus Silvester, videlicet die sanctæ Agathæ, in episcopum consecratur.

Rediit comes Ricardus de partibus transmarinis.

28 Oct. Return of earl Richard from foreign parts.

Die vero Apostolorum Simonis et Judæ rediit[2] comes Ricardus[3] sanus et incolumis de partibus transmarinis.

Magister Thomas eligitur in episcopum Menevensem.[4]

Thomas, archdeacon of Lincoln, elected bp. of St. David's.

Vacante eodem tempore sede Menevensi, electus est in eundem episcopatum magister Thomas, Walensis, Lincolniensis ecclesiæ archidiaconus.

Quomodo dominus rex fratres suos uterinos egregie ditaverit.[5]

Generosity of Henry to his uterine brothers.

Eodem quoque tempore, recedente Guidone fratre suo ad horam[6] ab Anglia, jussit dominus rex clitellas suas adeo impleri, ut eundem G[uidonem] equorum clitellariorum[7] necessario oportuit numerum[8] ampliare. Alteri vero fratri suo, scilicet Willelmo de Valentia, cui contulerat fol. castrum de Hertfordia, cum honore illud contingente, addidit alias terras et possessiones amplissimas, cum

[1] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier, with the word "*Consecratio*" in red.

[2] *rediit*] Written at first *redit*, but *i* inserted above.

[3] *Ricardus*] Interlined.

[4] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier, with the word "*Electio*" in red.

[5] This chapter is nearly a repetition of what has been stated previously, at p. 26.

[6] *fratre . . . horam*] Added in marg.

[7] *clitellariorum*] Afterwards altered to *clitellariarum*, but erroneously.

[8] *numerum*] On an erasure.

thesauris impretiabilibus. Tertio autem, scilicet Athelmaro, clerico, tot adquisivit et contulit redditus et præbendas, ut episcopales divitias excedere videretur. A.D. 1247.

Rex Norwagiæ Haco coronatur.

Eodem anno Norwagiæ dominus rex Haco in regem coronatus est et inunctus apud Bergas, per manum Willelmi,[1] Sabinensis episcopi cardinalis, in ipsas partes destinati ad hoc, et ut ibidem legationis officio fungeretur. **Coronation of Haco, king of Norway.**

Obitus quorundam nobilium.

Anno sub eodem obierunt quidam nobiles, videlicet, Andegravius Duringiæ, qui, procurante papa, electus fuit in regem Alemanniæ. Obiit etiam Fulco de Castronovo, miles, domini regis Angliæ consobrinus.[2] Die vero sanctæ Katerinæ obiit comes de Ferrariis Willelmus, vir quidem justus et pacificus, ætate centenarius, morbo podagrico longo tempore fatigatus. Eodemque mense obiit uxor ejus comitissa M[argareta] de Ferariis, ejusdem[3] ætatis, famæ ac civilitatis. Obiit quoque episcopus Menevensis, natione Walensis, pro tribulatione Walliæ morte præventus lamentabili. Obierunt insuper alii nobiles, scilicet Ricardus de Burgo [et][4] Willelmus filius-Hamonis. **Deaths of personages of rank.** 25 Nov.

Annalis conclusio.

Transiit igitur annus ille frugibus et fructibus uberrimus; Angliæ nocivus, Walliæ exterminator; Terræ Sanctæ inimicus, Ecclesiæ spoliator; Ytaliæ cruentus, Alemanniæ turbulentus. **Annual summary.**

---

[1] *Willelmi*] Interlined.

[2] See the shields of arms of the Landgrave and of Fulk of Newcastle, *ante*, p. 19.

[3] *ejusdem*] The last syllable is interlined.

[4] *et*] Supplied from E.

Dominus rex fuit Wintoniæ.

A.D. 1248. Henry keeps Christmas at Winchester. 25 Dec.

Anno Domini M°.CC°.XL°.VIII°., qui est annus regni domini regis H[enrici] III. xxxii^us^, fuit dominus rex ad Natale Domini Wintoniæ, multis magnatibus convivantibus. In crastino autem, videlicet die sancti Stephani, cum ipsius civitatis episcopo W[illelmo] prandebat requisitus.

Multi nobiles crucesignantur.

Many nobles assume the cross.

Eodemque tempore comes Legrecestriæ Simon, et multi alii nobiles de regno Francorum et Anglorum, exemplo Christianissimi regis Francorum animati, crucem assumpserunt. Dicebatur enim passim, quod non frustra suscitavit eundem regem Dominus noster Jhesus Christus, immo ut hereditatem ejus potenter adquireret, inimicos crucis conterendo.

Ricardus Suard languet ad mortem.

Death of Richard Suard.

Diebus sub eisdem Ricardus Suard, de quo multa prædicuntur, paralisi percussus, irremediabiliter ad mortem infirmabatur.

Beatrix, mater reginæ, venit in Angliam.

Arrival of Beatrice, the queen's mother, in England.

Anno quoque sub eodem Beatrix, relicta comitis Provinciæ Reimundi, comitante Thoma de Sabaudia, quandoque comite Flandriæ,[1] ut filias suas visitaret, venit honorifice[2] in Angliam, sed[3] ante tempus vernale recessura.

[1] *Flandriæ*] The two last letters are on an erasure.

[2] *honorifice*] honorife, MS.

[3] *venit . . . sed*] Written over an erasure, which is continued partially over the top line of the next column, which line can still be read thus, *renovando impregnaret, venit in Angliam.*

Obit episcopus Bathoniensis.[1]

A.D. 1248.

Tempore quoque sub eodem, scilicet circa festum sancti Hyllarii, obiit episcopus Bathoniensis Robertus.[2]

13 Jan. Death of the bishop of Bath.

Magnum fuit parlamentum Londoniis in octavis Purificationis.

Sub illius anni curriculo, in octavis videlicet Purificationis, edicto regio convocata totius regni Angliæ nobilitas convenit Londoniis. Et cum dominus rex auxilium pecuniare postularet, reprehensus est non mediocriter ab universitate de tam frequenti exactione, et indiscreta pecuniæ suæ et thesauri regii, in quo magna spes totius regni reposita est, dispersione et rerum dilapidatione, sine sui emendatione vel regni augmentatione.[3] In aliis quamplurimis articulis graviter redargutus est, qui Rotulis multorum[4] possunt reperiri. Ultimo autem calumpniatus est, eo quod, sicut magnifici reges prædecessores sui habuerunt, non habet dominus rex qui præsens est, justiciarium, cancellarium, nec thesaurarium per commune consilium regni, prout deceret et expediret ipsi regi et regno. Hæc autem omnia promisit dominus rex se certissime emendaturum, cum magna modestia et humilitate, per quam omnium corda mitigavit. Et respondit universitas, "Hoc videbitur infra breve tempus. Expectabimus adhuc patienter, et prout se geret dominus rex et se habebit adversus nos, et nos ei in omnibus obtemperabimur."[5] Dilata sunt

9 Feb. Parliament held at London. The king is reproved for his exactions and extravagance.

Complaints that no chief justice, chancellor or treasurer had been appointed by the council of the kingdom.

The business is postponed.

---

[1] In the margin is drawn a small crosier, reversed.

[2] *Robertus*] So also in B. C. and Edd., but an error for *Rogerus*. See previously, vol. ii. p. 495. He died 20 or 21 Dec., 1247. See "Fasti Eccl. Angl.," i. 131.

[3] *augmentatione*] aucmentatione, MS.

[4] *rotulis multorum*] Originally written *in libro Additamentorum*, but corrected partly on a slip of vellum pasted over, and by altering *mentorum* into *multorum*. These proceedings are not in the "Liber Additamentorum," but in B.C. (ed. Wats, p. 744).

[5] *obtemperabimur*] So also B. E., but in the margin is written *vel mus*, i.e. *obtemperabimus*, which is also in C.

A.D. 1248. 24 June. igitur omnia usque ad quindenam Nativitatis sancti Johannis Baptistæ. Sed[1] res effectu et successu[2] caruit usque in præsentem diem, secundum illud Philosophi, "Qui diu distulit, diu noluit."[3]

Confuso Fretherico, triumpharunt Parmenses.

The citizens of Parma obtain a victory over the emperor.

Anno nempe sub eodem Parmenses obsessi comperientes Fredericum, qui eos obsederit, ad[4] ulteriora se contulisse, exierunt subito cum impetu magno, invenientesque et invadentes exercitum[5] Fretherici, qui sibi non tantum castra sed etiam civitatem sibi ædificaverat, quam Victoriam appellabat, ipsum totaliter in ore gladii dissiparunt, multosque trucidantes, reliquos in fugam compulerunt. Diruta[6] igitur ipsa nova civitate, asportantes arma, utensilia et thesaurum ipsius Fretherici, occisoque ejusdem speciali consiliario Thadæo, cives cum triumpho in civitatem suam lætantes remearunt. Hæc cum audisset Frethericus, non se præ dolore capiens, argumentose cogitavit sese vindicare, et infra breve tempus exercitu revocato, obsidionem continuavit. Hujus rei[7] eventus series, Deo disponente, ad decus ecclesiæ et dedecus F[retherici] terminum est sortitus.[8]

Thaddeus [of Sessa] killed.

[1] *Sed*] Set, MS. throughout.

[2] *successu*] sucessu, MS.

[3] *Sed res . . . . noluit*] Written over an erasure, and in the lower margin is a note, which appears to refer to this passage: *Sed res cum effectu usque in tempus modernum cepit dilationem.* This was written previous to the correction in the text. The authority referred to is Seneca, but the quotation, as usual, is not exact. His words are: "Qui tarde fecit, diu noluit." De Beneficiis, lib. i. cap. 1, p. 161. Cf. lib. ii. cap. 1.

[4] *ad*] al, MS.

[5] *exercitum*] excercitum, MS. throughout.

[6] *Diruta*] Dirruta, MS.

[7] *rei*] Interlined.

[8] *Deo . . . . sortitus*] Written over an erasure, the first words of which appear to have been *in libro Additamentorum.* In B. C. and ed. Wats, p. 747, the same reference is made; and at p. 164 the Letter is printed, describing the victory, from the "Liber Additamentorum." [MS. Cott. Nero D. I. f. 92.] It is also inserted in the *Flores Hist.*, falsely called "Matth. Westm."

Universitas populi pro reformatione monetæ nimis depauperatur. A.D. 1248.

Diebus quoque sub eisdem universitas regni popularis pro reformatione monetæ per tonsores corruptæ misera- fol. 143 a. biliter dampnificatur,[1] dum pro libra impudenter re- tonsa et quolibet denario usque ad inferiorem [2] circulum circumcisa, pro [3] libra vix de mensa nummulariorum marca reportaretur.[4]

The people are impoverished on account of the new coinage.

Fretherieus ducit uxorem, et dat nuptui filiam suam Thomæ de Sabaudia.

Eodemque anno Fretherieus, ut partem suam magis contra papam roboraret, uxorem ducit filiam cujusdam præpotentis; et Conradus, filius suus, similiter. Qui per hoc multis nobilibus sunt confœderati. Memoratusque F[retherieus] filiam suam nuptui dedit Thomæ de Sabaudia,[5] quondam comiti Flandrensi, tum quia miles erat strenuus, tum ut genus suum et Sabaudienses sibi jungeret universos.

The emperor marries again. Marriage of his son Conrad, and of his daughter.

De novis nundinis apud Westmonasterium constitutis.[6]

Eodemque anno, celebrato sancti Eduuardi festo, jussit dominus rex denunciari et voce præconia acclamari,[7]

13 Oct. Establishment of a

[1] *dampnificatur*] dapnificatur, MS.

[2] *inferiorem*] imferiorem, MS.

[3] *pro*] At first written *vix pro*, but *vix* erased.

[4] *impudenter . . . . reportaretur*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, partially erased, but which can be read, *vix marca de mensa nummulariorum poterat reportari. Comes autem Ricardus, optento a domino rege cunei emolumento, domino papæ crucesignatorum . . . . do thesaurum non modicum sibi (?) . . . s est.* Cf. ed. Wats, p. 748. The words *vix marca de mensa nummulariorum poterat reportari* are also written with a plummet on the lower margin.

[5] In B. C. this marriage is noticed under the preceding year, but it never took place.

[6] In the MS. this chapter is written after the next, but marked to be transposed by the letters A. B. in the margin.

[7] *acclamari*] aclamari, MS.

A.D. 1248. 24 June. igitur omnia usque ad quindenam ... ri[1] apud Johannis Baptistæ. Sed[1] res eff... uod est in usque in præsentem diem, secun... dies com- "Qui diu distulit, diu noluit." ... rum merca-

Confuso Fretherico, ... ctus ibidem

The citizens of Parma obtain a victory over the emperor.

Anno nempe sub eod... ubi ab antiquo rientes Fredericum, ... rem promovendi se contulisse, exierunt ... mari et coronari, venientesque et inva... sultus et famem sibi non tantum cast... Conradus liberare ficaverat, quam Vic... Et in cathedra[3] in ore gladii dissip... Willelmus, comes in fugam compul... Coloniensis archiepi- tate, asportante... Fretherici, occi... cives cum tri... runt. Hac ... capiens, ... breve t... Hujus ... ecclesia...

Thaddeus [of Sessa] killed.

... insolito.

... videlicet kalendas ... num spatium terminos ... intulit irrestaurabilia; ... mare ter ascendit turgi- ...

... ensis episcopus.

... Michaelis episcopus Nor- ... am Romanam, nescitur pro ... eisdem diebus, inundationes

... are on an erasure, and the word is repeated in marg.

[4] *dampna*] dapna, MS.

[5] *Norwicensis*] Norwicensi, MS.

pluviarum spem agriculturæ et exercitium[1] suspenderunt. Civesque, qui apud monasterium inviti in suis tentoriis Londonienses commorabantur, molestias pertulerunt.[2] A.D. 1248.

Iteratio parlamenti in quindena Nativitatis sancti Johannis Baptistæ.

Adveniente autem quindena Nativitatis sancti Johannis Baptistæ, convenit Londoniis totius Angliæ cum multis incommodis[3] nobilitas, domini regis expectans promissionem. Congregatis igitur universis, tale a domino rege dicitur responsio profluxisse: "Voluistis ad arbitrium vestrum parum civile dominum vestrum regem incurvare, eidemque satis servilem imponere conditionem, dum, quod licet unicuique vestrum, illi denegaretur. Porro licet cuilibet cujus et quolibet uti consilio. Ceterum, licet cuilibet patrifamilias quemcunque de domo sua illi vel illi officio præponere, postponere, vel deponere, quod utique domino vestro et regi temere præsumpsistis denegare. Quapropter nec cancellarium, nec justiciarium, nec thesaurarium, nisi ad beneplacitum suum, creabit vel constituet." Similiter quoque ad alios articulos,[4] super quibus increpatus fuerat, negative[5] responsum fuerat. Tandem instanter postulavit auxilium pecuniare ad jura regni requirenda, sed omnes

8 July. The parliament re-assembles.

Refusal of the king to grant their demand, touching the appointment of a chancellor and others.

Pecuniary aid is refused.

---

[1] *exercitium*] excercicium, MS.

[2] *Romanam . . . . . pertulerunt*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, which has been almost wholly defaced, so that only a few words can be deciphered, "*consideravit . . . quod . . . . . multum imperialium (?) . . . et Deo in . . . papa (?) . . auxilia . . . . designatis . . Anglia reddet . . . . quæ sine sp . . . . . tionis est aggressus.*"

[3] *incommodis*] incomodis, MS. This word and the two preceding are written on two small pieces of vellum pasted over an erasure.

[4] *articulos*] Written at first *arculos*, but corrected by a later hand.

[5] *negative*] Originally written *cavillatorie*, as in B.C., but corrected on a slip of vellum pasted over.

A.D. ...
new...
at W...
min...

Soluto [1] igitur ...
... remeavit. Et
... thesaurum suum.
... pretiosa et deaurata,
... quod nimis indecens

... ...e.

C...
A...

...dias Junii, luna passa est
... cessum.

... Hispania, scilicet Sibilla.

... nobilis civitas Hispaniae Si-
... victoriosissimo rege Castellae,
... ad honorem Domini Jhesu

...sa in partibus Sabaudiae.

... in partibus Sabaudiae, videlicet in
... quam villae cum suis inhabitantibus,
... e sunt, montibus per particularem
... as cadentibus; unde circiter vii.
... es domus religiosorum miserabiliter

...rum venerant ad papam.

... videlicet in aestate, venerunt duo
... nuncii, ad dominum papam destinati,
... principis eorum secretissima defe-

... but cor... written ... Anno Dni. | m°.ccc°.xl°.iii. ..." but this event is entered under the present year also in B. C.

[3] *eodem*] eo, MS.

rentes. Adventus autem eorum causa multos latebat; verumtamen ex sequentibus colligitur, quod memoratus rex vel princeps sacramentum baptismi et gratiam conversionis et informationis[1] in lege Domini nostri Jhesu Christi postulabat; quibusdam tamen adjectis conditionibus, quæ ad notitiam nostram nondum pervenerunt. Dominus autem papa serenissimum vultum eisdem[2] nunciis ostendit, et munera contulit pretiosa, et ipsos escarleto et cisimis[3] decenter vestivit. Dicebatur quoque, quod domini papæ propositum fuit, inde quoque tractatum fuit[4] secretius, ut si Christianismi titulo insigniretur rex ille Tartarorum, ipsum mitteret cum omnibus viris et viribus suis super Vastagium[5] Græcum, generum Fretherici, scismaticum[6] Christianæ fidei,[7] domino papæ et imperatori Baldeuuino rebellem, et postea super ipsum Frethericum, contra Romanam curiam recalcitrantem. Ad quod nuncii mutuum odium Christianorum detestantes, per interpretes, quos plures habebant intermedios, responderunt, quod non erat suum imponere domino suo talem[8] conditionem. Sed vehementer formidabant, ne et hoc dominus eorum graviter, cum audiret, acciperet exasperatus.[9]

A.D. 1248.

fol. 143 b.

Object of the pope in receiving these messengers favourably.

De mortibus multorum virorum nobilium.[10]

Hoc autem anno mortuus est in Anglia Robertus,[11] episcopus Bathoniensis, circa festum sancti Hillarii. Ricardus vero Suard letifera[12] paralisi tempore vernali

13 Jan.

Deaths of many noble personages.

---

[1] *informationis*] imformacionis, MS.

[2] *eisdem*] The last syllable added in marg.

[3] *cisimis*] cisiminis. E. In B. C. *de pellibus variis cisimorum.*

[4] *fuit*] Added in marg.

[5] *Vastagium*] Vastigium, MS., Battatium, C.

[6] *scismaticum*] cismaticum, MS.

[7] *Christianæ fidei*] Added in marg.

[8] *talem*] On an erasure.

[9] From the words *Dicebatur quoque* to the end of the chapter is marked in the margin, in red letters, "*dubium.*"

[10] In the margin are drawn two mitres and crosiers, reversed.

[11] *Robertus*] Read *Rogerus*, as in a previous passage, p. 33.

[12] *letifera*] litifera, MS.

A.D. 1248. percussus est. Episcopus Dunelmensis Nicholaus episcopatum suum resignavit;[1] et sic tanquam mortuus[2] factus est, et vacavit sedes episcopalis. Et circa festum apostolorum Simonis et Judæ obiit[3] Walterus Mauclerc, quondam episcopus Karleolensis. Obiit quoque abbas de Waltham[4] Ricardus, vir quidem eximiæ sanctitatis et religionis expertæ. Obiit quoque magister Sÿmon de Langetuna, archidiaconus Cantuariensis, frater archiepiscopi Cantuariensis. Qui quandoque Lodowico specialissimus cancellarius extitit et consiliarius.[5] Obiit quoque comes Patricius de regno Scociæ, ecclesiæ Sancti Albani perturbator cavillosus. Eodemque anno obierunt tres theologi, quibus non erant majores, immo nec pares, in omni, ut creditur, mundi latitudine, videlicet, magister Johannes Blundus, canonicus ecclesiæ Eboracensis, et magister Robertus Bacun, et magister Ricardus de Fishakele,[6] de Ordine Prædicatorum, egregii prædicatores et lectores. Eodemque anno frater Matheus, hujus opusculi compositor, ex præcepto domini papæ missus est in Norwegiam, ad reformandum Ordinem sancti Benedicti in cœnobiis monachorum Nigri Ordinis; hoc ductus auctentico.

28 Oct.

Deaths of three famous theologians of the Order of Preachers.

Mission of Matthew Paris to Norway to reform the monasteries there.

Letter of pope Innocent IV. to the abbat of St. Alban's.

"Innocentius, etc., dilecto filio, abbati Sancti Albani in Anglia, Ordinis sancti Benedicti, etc. Cum, sicut ex parte dilecti filii . . . . ,[7] abbatis monasterii de Holm, Ordinis sancti Benedicti, Nidrosiensis diocesis,[8] fuit propositum coram nobis, idem mo-

[1] In the margin is the word "*resignatio*," in red, with a small crosier falling down. Nicholas de Farnham resigned "Purificatione beatæ Mariæ [2 Feb.] imminente" 1249. (ed. Wats, p. 759.)

[2] *tanquam mortuus*] At first written *mortuus tanquam*, but marked to be transposed.

[3] *obiit*] Repeated by error, but underscored for omission.

[4] *Waltham*] Valtham, MS.

[5] *Cantuariensis . . . consiliarius*] Written over an erasure. In all probability the text stood originally as in B. C., *qui si ecclesiæ suæ, videlicet Cantuariensis, persecutor et perturbator fuisset, non est mirandum.*

[6] *Fishakele*] Fixacle, C., but in marg. *Fissacre.*

[7] A blank is left for the name, which is omitted also in B. C.

[8] In the margin is added this note: "Sciendum est, quod monachis subjecta est una optima insula juxta Thurndeñ [Throndheim] archiepiscopatum, et omnes domus religionis illius regionis illi domui subjacent."

nasterium, propter prædecessorum suorum negligentiam, sit in hiis, quæ ad monasticum ordinem pertinent, deformatum, nec inveniatur in partibus illis qui statuta et observantias ejusdem Ordinis bene sciat, nos, ad supplicationem ipsius abbatis, discretionem[1] tuam rogamus attentius et hortamur, per apostolica tibi scripta mandantes, quatinus dilectum filium, fratrem Matheum,[2] monachum tuum, qui dicitur probatæ vitæ ac religionis expertæ, ad idem monasterium, ut dictum abbatem et monachos suos in regularibus disciplinis et statutis, quæ ad eundem Ordinem pertinent, informet et instruat, transmittere, pro divina et apostolicæ sedis ac nostra reverentia, non postponas. Datum Lugduni, v. kalendas Decembris, pontificatus nostri anno v°."[3] A.D. 1248. 27 Nov.

Foundation of the abbey of Holm in Norway.

Sciendum quoque, quod in regno Norwagiæ [inter][4] omnes domus religiosorum Nigri Ordinis supereminet illa domus, quæ dicitur abbatia de Holm, et est de Sancto Benedicto. Et ipsam fundavit rex magnificus Angliæ, Daciæ et Norwagiæ Cnuto, qui et in Anglia quandam domum fundavit in honorem ejusdem sancti Benedicti, videlicet sic nominatam, Sancti Benedicti de Holm. Et idem rex abbatiam nobilissimam Sancti Edmundi instauravit,[5] ampliavit, et monachos instituit.[6]

Abbey of St. Alban's in Norway.

Sciendum insuper, quod in regno memorato, scilicet Norwagia, in monte Sellio est quædam abbatia de Sancto Albano, Anglorum prothomartire.[7]

---

[1] *discretionem*] discrescionem, MS.

[2] *Mathæum*] Written *Mathm* in the text, and *Matheum* in the margin above.

[3] This date of 27 Nov. 1247 (reckoning from the election of pope Innocent in June 1243) is not given in B. C. Another copy of this letter is entered in the handwriting of Matthew Paris in the "Liber Additamentorum," [MS. Cott. Nero D. I. f. 92 *b*,] but without date.

[4] *inter*] Omitted in MS.

[5] *instauravit*] On an erasure.

[6] *ampliavit . . . instituit*] Added in marg.

[7] From the words *Eodemque anno frater Mathæus* . . . to nearly the end of the chapter, a red line is drawn perpendicularly in the margin, connecting the syllables of the words "*Ne cu-re-tur;*" probably meant by the author to indicate that this portion should be omitted by the copyists of his work.

A.D. 1248.

Nota iterum terræmotum in Anglia.

Earthquake in England.

Eodemque anno, quarta die ante Natale Domini, factus est terræmotus in Anglia, ita ut, secundum domini episcopi Bathoniensis, in cujus diocesi magis evenit, assertionem, dissipatæ sunt maceriæ ædificiorum, et lapides de locis suis avulsi in muris hiatus patulos fecerunt et ruinas. Tolus quoque lapideus, magnæ quantitatis et ponderis, qui per diligentiam cæmentariorum in summitate ecclesiæ de Welles ad decorem ponebatur, raptus de loco suo, non sine dampno fabricæ culminis, cecidit ; et cum ab alto rueret, tumultum reddens horribilem, audientibus timorem incussit non minimum. In quo etiam terræmotu hoc accidit mirabile. Caminorum, propugnaculorum,[1] et columpnarum [2] capitella et summitates, cum epistiliis, commotæ sunt, bases vero et fundamenta, cum partibus inferioribus,[3] nequaquam ; cum contrarium potius naturaliter, ut videtur, debuit evenire, et[4] cum terra motum talem, non aer turbinem, pateretur. Et notandum, quia notabile est,[5] ille terræmotus tertius fuit, qui in hoc proximo evenit triennio, in partibus Cisalpinis; unus in partibus Sabaudiæ, duo in Anglia, quod a seculis est inauditum.

¶ *Nota mirabile inauditum.*

The third earthquake in the course of three years.

Annalis conclusio.

Annual summary.

Transiit igitur annus ille aere temperatus et serenus, horrea frugum replens abundantia,[6] et torcularia vinis reddens redundantia,[7] ita ut summa frumenti ad

1 *propugnaculorum*] propungnaculorum, MS.

2 *columpnarum*] The last syllable is on an erasure.

3 *cum partibus inferioribus*] On an erasure.

4 *et*] Interlined.

5 *notabile est*] On an erasure, except the first two syllables.

6 *abundantia*] habundantia, MS.

7 *redundantia*] The first two syllables are on an erasure.

duorum descenderet pretium solidorum. Verumtamen Terræ Sanctæ hostilis, Ytaliæ inimicus; Germaniæ letifer, Franciæ et Angliæ depredatorius; mundialis termini multiplicibus argumentis indicativus. Totaque hiems in vernam versa est temperiem; videres igitur arbores in Februario regerminare, et aviculas, velut in Aprili, canendo lascivire. A.D. 1248.

fol. 144 a.

Dominus rex Londoniis fuit ad Natale.

Anno Domini M°.CC°.XLIX°., qui est annus domini regis H[enrici] III. xxxiii^us^., fuit idem dominus rex ad Natale Domini Londoniis. In qua etiam sollempnitate comes Ricardus, frater ejus, fuit apud Walingeforde, cum copiosa magnatum[1] multitudine convivantium. Comes insuper Gloverniæ in partibus Walliæ conterminis, juxta Gloverniam, non minoris gloriæ secularis curiam suam eisdem diebus sollempniis serenavit. Et dum ibidem dominus rex moraretur, venit comes Legrecestriæ Simon, rediens de partibus Wasconiæ, illuc ad regem, enarrans ei, quomodo de Guastone, filio comitissæ Biardæ, et de aliis domini regis proditoribus gloriose triumpharat.

A.D. 1249. Henry keeps Christmas at London, and earl Richard at Walling-ford.

Return of Simon, earl of Leicester.

A civibus Londoniarum extorquetur pecunia.

Anno quoque sub eodem dominus rex a civibus[2] Londoniarum, non obstantibus piis[3] petitionibus vel libertatibus, duo milia librarum sub brevi termino persolvendarum exegit.[4] Ab abbatibus vero sigillatim juvamen pecuniare, et prioribus, precibus imperiosis postulavit,[5] harum literarum tenorem illis transmit-

The king extorts money from the citizens of London. He demands a loan from

[1] *magnatum*] mangnatum, MS.

[2] *civibus*] The last syllable is on an erasure.

[3] *obstantibus piis*] Partly on an erasure.

[4] *exegit*] On an erasure.

[5] *postulavit*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg.

A.D. 1249. the abbats and priors. tendo: "H[enricus], Dei gratia, etc. Universis abbatibus et prioribus constitutis in comitatu Esexiæ et Hertfordiæ, salutem." Respice quæ sequuntur in Rotulis super hoc confectis.[1]

Rex, accepto episcopatu Dunelmensi in manu sua, elaborat, ut Athelmarus, frater ejus, substituatur.

The king takes the bishopric of Durham into his own hands. He endeavours to secure the election of his brother Athelmar as bishop. Walter de Kirkeham, dean of York, is elected.

Resignato autem episcopatu Dunelmensi, ut prætactum est, rex episcopatum in manus suas ilico suscepit, et ab omnibus ipsius episcopatus hominibus magnam cepit[2] pecuniam. Et, misso ad conventum Dunelmensem magistro Laurentio de Sancto Martino, petiit instantissime et elaboravit vigilanter, ut Athelmarus, frater ejus, ibidem substitueretur, in episcopum electus Dunelmensem. Sed conventus ejusdem A[thelmari] considerans juventutem,[3] Walterum de Kirkeham, decanum Eboracensem, optenta eligendi licentia, unanimiter in episcopum et pastorem suarum elegit animarum. Assignata sunt igitur episcopo Nicholao, ad sui sustentationem,[4] tria maneria, Hovedene videlicet, cum pertinentiis, Stoctuna, et Esintona. Rex autem, ut fructus episcopatus colligeret,[5] electo de die in diem in funiculo pendentis spei favorem protraxit, moleste ferens[6] quod frater ejus non eligebatur, ut quamplures opinabantur. Erat namque[7] electus memoratus vir idoneus per omnia, et multa merito domino regi familiaritate conjunctus, et qui eidem in arduis nego-

[1] *Respice . . . confectis*] Written on an erasure. The king's writ is in B.C. (ed. Wats, p. 759). E. reads, *in Rotulo Scaccarii.*

[2] *magnam cepit*] On an erasure, with the exception of the first two letters, but the corresponding correction in the margin is *magnam accepit.*

[3] *juventutem*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg.

[4] *sustentationem*] sustencionem, MS.

[5] *colligeret*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg.

[6] *moleste ferens*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg.

[7] *namque*] nanque, MS. throughout.

A.D. 1249.

tiis servierat. Nec erat in eo offendiculum reprobationis, nisi senium; et magna fuit quondam capitis reverentia cani.

Fretherici fama et potestas declinat.

The fame and power of the emperor decrease daily.

Marcellinus, bp. of Arezzo, hung, by order of Frederic.

His subsequent defeat.

The body of the bishop buried by the Minorites.

Ipsis quoque temporibus, Fretherici fama et potestas magnum diatim suscepit[1] decrementum; et merito. Desævit enim tirannice in personas ecclesiasticas,[2] nec pepercit viris religiosis, nec etiam episcopis. Inter quos suspendi jussit dominum Marcellinum, Arethimum episcopum,[3] apud Victoriam, ab eodem F[retherico] fundatam, sed titulis fidelium ascribendam. Hoc autem est[4] actum non sine stupendo miraculo, tertio videlicet die ante suum et loci illius exterminium. Et sequebatur tertio die sequenti magna Fretherici confusio. Exercitu[5] enim ejus turpiter dissipato, exturbato et aufugato, interemptus [est][6] magnus ejusdem Fretherici consiliarius Thadeus, qui in concilio Lugdunensi pro viribus nitebatur eundem F[rethericum] justificare. Fratres autem Ordinis Minorum corpus sancti martiris, videlicet de quo superius fecimus mentionem, episcopi, clanculo de loco pœnali pie de nocte rapuerunt. Et, factis pro eo sollempnibus pro posse exequiis, illud honorifice, quod eisdem versum in honorem et commodum,[7] intumularunt.[8]

---

[1] *suscepit*] Added in marg.

[2] *ecclesiasticas*] Added above the line.

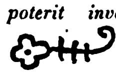
[3] See a fuller account of this, *postea*, p. 52.

[4] *est*] Interlined.

[5] *Exercitu*] Excercito, MS.

[6] *est*] Supplied to complete the sense.

[7] *commodum*] comodum, MS.

[8] *Et sequebatur . . . tumularunt*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, which, although partially erased, can be read as follows: *triumphale. Hujus autem eventus seriem in epistola elegantissima et prolixa in Majoribus Cronicis scripta sedulus indagator poterit invenire ad hoc signum*  * *Quæ epistola auditu*

* This epistle of Cardinal Reinerius of Viterbo to the pope is inserted in MS. B., fol. 229 *b*, with the same mark of reference annexed as above; also in C. (ed. Wats, p. 761).

A.D. 1249. *De maxima confusione, quæ contigit Wintoniensibus.*

Punishment of the robbers at Winchester and the neighbourhood.

Tempore autem instante Quadragesimali, cum apud Wintoniam et in[1] Wintoniæ[2] partibus supra modum latrones multiplicarentur, et Henricus de Mara, justiciarius itinerans, et socii ejus illuc destinati ad mundandum patriam a tali peste, nec, propter multitudinem latronum ad invicem confœderatorum, profecissent, contigit quod dominus rex illuc adventaturus,[3] præmitteret vina sua; quod cum latronibus memoratis innotuisset, positis insidiis, omnia rapuerunt, et duces ac veredarios[4] vulneraverunt et spoliaverunt, cachinnando et dicendo, cum de vinis usque ad ebrietatem biberent, "Bibite, amici, et inebriamini carissimi."[5] Eodemque tempore, duo mercatores de Brebancia, de ducentis marcis spoliati in eisdem partibus, querimoniam super tam enormi injuria coram domino rege lacrimabiliter ac clamose[6] reponentes, ipsum dominum regem usque ad cordis amaritudinem commoverunt. Dixit igitur rex, "Quid adhuc expectamus? Ecce jam latronibus invadimur multiplicatis!" Et venit in propria persona iratus nimis Wintoniam. Et, convo-

---

horribilis ad multos cum evenisset, medullas auditorum penetrando contra Frethericum hostiliter omnes erexisset, nisi curia Romana maculis symoniæ et usuræ, et aliorum vitiorum coinquinaretur. Sed heu! heu! quod sine lacrimis non possumus recitare, cruentissimus hominum adhuc favorem retinet, in odium curiæ memoratæ. Equinimius [sic pro *Æquanimius*] *enim laici deliramenta populus sustinet, quam ipsius, qui speculum morum esse universo mundo reveretur.* Cf. B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 763). In the margin also is added the following note, referring to the latter part of the passage, as corrected: *Fratres autem Minores corpus defuncti, quia sanctum, petierunt, et honorifice penes eos sepelierunt; et hoc in epistola scribitur.*

[1] *et in*] On an erasure.

[2] *Wintoniæ*] Vintonie, MS.

[3] *adventaturus*] At first written *adventurus.*

[4] *veredarios*] veradarios, MS.

[5] *Bibite . . . carissimi*] On an erasure.

[6] *clamose*] clammose, MS.

catis in castro Wintoniæ civibus[1] Wintoniæ et Suhantoniæ et partium adjacentium omnibus ballivis, jussit, postquam intrassent, valvas claudi[2] castri. Et, facta diligentissima et subtilissima inquisitione, cum minis et terribilibus juramentis, quod[3] veritatis archana usque ad plenam certificationem perscrutabitur, ita, ut de regis subtili astutia, omnes vehementer admirarentur. Cujus rei prudentissima executio prolixius ac manifestius [in][4] Rotulis clericorum domini regis poterit inveniri.[5] Sed, ut brevibus expediamus, circiter centum[6] convicti suspendio perierunt. Nec est ipsa curia regis munda inventa a latrocinii contagione.

A.D. 1249.

fol. 144 *b*.

De pugna[7] inter scolares et burgenses Cantebrugiæ.

Quarrel between the scholars and burgesses of Cambridge.

Per idem tempus, scilicet in Quadragesima, ex levi occasione orta est discordia apud Cantebrugiam inter scolares et burgenses. Ex qua post lites, pugnæ,[8] spoliationes, domorum confractiones, vulnera et homicidia sunt secuta. Ascendit igitur clamor querulus ad regis audientiam, cum gravi offensa; unde utrobique dampnum et scandalum ventilatum jacturam non minimam suscitavit. Hoc dignum non arbitror silentio, quia, instante humani generis inimico, qui scit de scolaribus nobiles ecclesiæ columpnas surrecturas, de more, in sancto tempore Quadragesimali inter clericos et laicos discordia suscitatur, ut simul cum sacro tempore personæ nobiles violentur.

[1] *civibus*] On an erasure.
[2] *claudi*] Added in marg.
[3] *quod*] Added in marg.
[4] *in*] Omitted in MS.
[5] *inveniri*] invenri, MS. From *Rotulis* to *inveniri* is written on a slip of vellum pasted over the original text, which, although much erased, may yet be deciphered thus, *in libro Additamentorum poterit inveniri.* A fuller detail of the affair is in B.C. (ed. Wats, pp. 760, 761), but it does not appear in the "Liber Additamentorum."
[6] *centum*] triginta, B. C.
[7] *pugna*] pungna, MS.
[8] *pugnæ*] pungne, MS.

A.D. 1249.

Quomodo Fretherieus potionem[1] *et balneum intoxicatum evasit.*

Escape of the emperor from a poisoned draught and bath.

Eodem tempore Fretherieus diversis et arduis causis exagitatus, qui citra montes in ira magna venerat, revocante eum urgentiori negotio, scilicet Parmensium[2] rebellione, cum confusione in Apuliam est reversus. Qui cum infirmaretur, purgatione indiguit medicinali et balneo. Sed, procurantibus Petro de Vineis, consiliario suo speciali, et ejus phisico, in quibus anima sua confidebat, intoxicata fuit medicina, similiter et balneum. Super quo præmunitus Frethericus, fecit duos[3] morti addictos[4] mortis haurire potionem et balneum intrare, et ilico expirarunt. Fecit igitur tam Petri quam phisici oculos erui. Et quia Pisani letaliter oderant Petrum, pro quibusdam[5] meritis, missus eis est ad eorum arbitrium occidendus. Quod cum Petro innotuit,[6] ait illud Senecæ, "Heu mihi! quia semivivus[7] arbitrio hostium meorum sum perimendus; quia arbitrio inimicorum mori, est bis mori."[8] Et statim ad columpnam, ad quam vinctus fuit, caput suum fortiter allidendo seipsum excerebravit.

Death of Peter de Vinea.

Rex Francorum in Cypro hiemans, penuriam patitur cibariorum, sed cito ei succuritur.

Louis IX. winters at Cyprus, and sends

Per idem tempus, cum dominus rex Francorum in[9] Cypro insula hiemans moraretur, et penuriam cibariorum pateretur, misit comitem de Bar et dominum de

[1] *potionem*] pocionacionem, MS. Corr. from B.C.

[2] *Parmensium*] In the text *ꝑmensium*, and *Par* afterwards written in the margin.

[3] *duos*] duos reos, E.

[4] *morti addictos*] Added in marg.

[5] *quibusdam*] The last syllable interlined.

[6] *innotuit*] In the text *innuit*, but corr. in marg.

[7] *semivivus*] semivius, MS.

[8] This quotation is not in Seneca's works, as published. See vol. ii. p. 220.

[9] *in*] Interlined.

Beugiu ad Venetos et alios vicinarum insularum, litorum et urbium incolas, petens obnixius,[1] ut sibi, qui pro ecclesia universali militavit, in cibariis saltem venalibus subvenirent. Cui Veneti miserentes et miserantes, sex magnas naves frumento, vino, carne, ficubus, amigdalis, uvis passis, et aliis victualium generibus onustas, liberaliter transmiserunt.[2] Quod autem Fretherieus cum audisset, ne inferior[3] civibus videretur, transmisit eidem uberiora; unde rex, ne ingratus videretur, supplicavit devotissime domino papæ, ut ipsum F[rethericum] in gratiam suam susciperet, acceptans aliquam pacis formam ab humiliato, ne paganismus de discordia tanta[4] lætaretur, et Christianitas perturbaretur, et ne peregrinationis suæ inceptum negotium præpediretur.

A.D. 1249. to the Venetians for provisions.

The emperor sends supplies to Louis.

Henricus, filius imperatricis Ysabellæ, supplicat pro rege Angliæ.

Et circa idem tempus sollicitavit Henricus, filius Fretherici et imperatricis Ysabellæ, regem Francorum precibus humillimis,[5] obsecrans pluries per plures, per quos pretiosissima munera eidem transmiserat, pro rege Angliæ, avunculo suo, quatinus pro salute animæ suæ, sic[6] pius ac justus peregrinus, jura reddat ipsum contingentia, ne peccatum patris, ira traduce, in in-

Henry, son of the empress Isabel, solicits Louis in behalf of the king of England.

[1] *obnixius*] obnoxius, MS., as elsewhere.

[2] Here is added in the margin the following note: "Ibi missi fuerunt ad eum nuncii Soldani Babilonis, qui optulerunt formam [pacis] Christianis valde utilem et honorabilem; obstitit autem infeliciter magister Odo, frater de Ordine Prædicatorum." It is marked for insertion in the text, but disturbs the narrative. It is omitted in B.C., but in E. is found in the text directly after the mention of the arrival of the king of France in Cyprus. According to Michaud, "Histoire des Crusades," iii. 136, this mission was not sent till after the capture of Damietta.

[3] *inferior*] imferior, MS.

[4] *tanta*] Interlined.

[5] *humillimis*] humilimis, MS.

[6] *sic*] So also B. C., but in Edd. altered to *sit*. Perhaps we should read *sicut*.

A.D. 1249. sontem filium transfunderetur truculenter, et negotium Crucis, Deo vindice, retardaretur. Jussitque tam Fretherieus quam filius ejusdem H[enricus] memoratus, eodem tempore, ne per Siciliam, Calabriam et Apuliam cibaria venalia domino regi Francorum negarentur; similiter pro rege Anglorum supplicando.[1] Prædictæ autem patris et filii petitioni sic dicitur pius rex Francorum respondisse, "Per sanctissimam[2] qua signor crucem, libenter vellem precibus et desiderio utriusque obsecundare, si consilium meum permitteret, et ipsum Henriotum mihi habere collateralem et adoptivum." Idem autem rex Francorum, in sua petitione prætacta, papam durum invenit et inexorabilem.

Reply of the king of France.

Venerunt in Angliam archiepiscopus Rothomagensis et episcopus de Tortosa.

Arrival of the archbp. of Rouen and bp. of Tortosa in England.

Et in Paschali sollempnitate archiepiscopus Rothomagensis, vir quidem sanctus et discretus et frater de Ordine Minorum,[3] natione Francus, venit in Angliam, ut quasdam terras, quæ in Anglia sunt et ecclesiæ Rothomagensi pertinere dinoscuntur, a quibus, cum a Normannis possessiones in Anglia nuper auferebantur, spoliabatur, ad suam revocaret, facto ob hoc domino regi Anglorum homagio, ditionem. Et, quod petiit a domino rege, liberaliter optinuit. Et eodem tempore episcopus de Tortosa, quæ est in Siria, natione Anglus, in Angliam venit, gratia natale solum et, si quos inveniret, parentes visitandi. Qui cum ad patriam suam, quæ juxta Radingum fuit, venisset,[4] nec domum nationis suæ nec parentes inveniret, dolens reversus est. Hic requisitus inquirentibus enarravit, quod qui residui

---

[1] *similiter . . . . . supplicando*] Added in marg.

[2] *sanctissimam*] sanctitissimam, MS.

[3] *Minorum*] In E. is added, *Riganus nomine.*

[4] *venisset*] Added in marg.

fuerant in Terra Sancta Chorosmini sese ad invicem, Deo ultore, cujus natale solum coinquinaverant, interfecerant. Principes quoque Sarracenorum, qui sese guerris mutuis infestaverant, contra regis Francorum adventum concordati sunt. Soldanus autem Babiloniæ, qui vel eorum præcipuus, vel de præcipuis esse dinoscitur, eidem regi significavit, quod Sarraceni ipsum L. 145 a. regem et ejus exercitum, si in decuplo major esset, alacres expectant, ut bellum conserant cum eodem campestre ac generale; et cui sors victoriam contulerit, optatam teneat monarchiam. A.D. 1249. News from the Holy Land.

De magnatibus Londoniis convenientibus.

Ad clausum Pascha convenerunt magnates Angliæ Londoniis, ut, quod dominus rex sæpe promiserat, saltem tunc benivolus adimpleret, videlicet de cancellario, justiciario et thesaurario per communam regni constituendis. Sed cum omnia postularentur, breve responsum reportarunt, videlicet, quod nimis cupiebant dominum suum in servitutem redigere, ut, quod cuilibet eorum licet facere, eidem facere non liceret. Et sic dominus rex ad ulteriora se[1] transtulit jam remotus. 11 April. Meeting of the nobles at London, whose demands are refused by the king.

De fratribus Prædicatoribus et Minoribus de Cruce prædicantibus.

Eisdemque temporibus, fratres Prædicatores et Minores prædicationibus suis intendentes,[2] necnon et alii in peritia prædicandi expediti et eruditi, prædicando

[1] *postularetur . . . . ulteriora se*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, which, although partially erased, can be read thus, *se certissime sperarent accepturos, comitis Ricardi absentia, qui se, ut dicebatur, gratis absentaverat, progressum negotii penitus impedivit. Ad partes enim Cornubiæ se ante hoc, quasi ex industria;* nearly as in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 765).

[2] *intendentes*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1249. et in agro Domini semina profutura spargentes, fructum fecerunt multiformem. Et, ut fideles Christi præmio tantæ veniæ, quam in negotio Crucis promittebant cruce signandis,[1] minime frustrarentur, secundum uniuscujusque possibilitatem redemptionem benigne susceperunt, ut penes Domini largam munificentiam prompta [2] voluntas pro facto reputaretur. Considerarunt namque, quod mulieres, parvuli, valitudinarii, ac plebei pauperes et inermes parum contra infidelium multitudinem proficerent communitam.[3]

Multiplicatur infamia Fretherici.[4]

The ill fame of the emperor Frederic increases in consequence of the execution of the bishop of Arezzo.

Diebus quoque sub eisdem Fretherici fama cœpit non mediocriter denigrari, dominum enim Marcellinum, episcopum Aretinum, irreverenter nimis, postposito Dei timore et contempta ecclesiæ sanctitate, viliter fecit trahi ad patibulum, in eo miserabiliter suspendendum. Positis vero custodibus, ac triduo episcopus furcis pendens miserum spectaculum et toti ecclesiæ probro-

---

[1] *cruce signandis*] Originally written after *frustrarentur* (and so copied in E.), but marked to be transposed.

[2] *prompta*] promta, MS.

[3] *suis intendentes . . . communitam*] Written on a piece of vellum fastened down over the original text, which has been partially erased, but can be thus deciphered, *diligenter jam questuosis intendentes, et pro negotiis Crucis multum laborantes, homines cujuscunque ætatis, sexus, vel conditionis, immo etiam valitudinarios, cruce signaverunt, prædicando et usque ad faucium raucitudinem clamitando. Sed in crastino, vel incontinenti pro quantocunque pretio crucem reaccipientes, signatos a voto peregrinationis absolvebant, et in ærarario* (sic) *alicujus potentis coacervabant. Quod simplicibus videbatur inconveniens et absurdum. Et exsuf[f]lata est multorum devotio, quia quasi oves pro velleribus venundabatur; unde non minimum scandalum est exortum;* very much as in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 766), but earl Richard is there named as the person here alluded to, who reaped the profit of this transaction.

[4] The two first words of this rubric are covered over by the piece of vellum on which the preceding correction has been made. In the margin also, opposite to this chapter, is written, " Vacat, quia hoc prius," namely, in fol. 144, but differently there related. See previously p. 45.

sum præbuit intuentibus. Minores tandem fratres sanctum[1] corpus intumularunt dampnati[2] episcopi, et[3] illud Fretherici carnifices de tumulo extrahentes, ac per lutum trahentes, iterum suspenderunt, non deponendum absque novi Pilati licentia speciali. Aliosque ecclesiæ eminentes personas, prælatos sanctos, adeo odibiliter persequebatur, ut multorum gratiam amittere cœpit et favorem. Hæc autem in epistola plenius conscripta in libro Additamentorum poterunt reperiri.[4] A.D. 1249.

De obitu archiepiscopi Maguntini, et de ampliationis potestatis archiepiscopi Coloniensis.

Death of the abp. of Mayence, and favour shown by the pope to the abp. of Cologne.

Temporibus quoque sub eisdem obiit archiepiscopus Maguntinus, vir in Germaniæ partibus auctoritatis maximæ, magnus et indefessus inimicus Fretherici. Sed ne de ejus morte idem F[rethericus] diu gratularetur, dominus papa tradidit ipsum archiepiscopatum jam vacantem potestati ac ordinationi archiepiscopi Coloniensis, Deo et ecclesiæ fideliter militantis. Et præterea, omnes proventus cujusdam nobilissimæ abbatiæ tunc vacantis, cujus abbas superstes tenetur obsequio imperatoris tria milia militum exhibere ; nomen illius cœnobii Volsa. Memoratus igitur archiepiscopus Coloniensis omnes thesauros utriusque ecclesiæ accepit,[5] et in negotiis expendit militaribus. Significavit insuper domino legato, qui in Alemannia negotia ecclesiæ procuravit, dominus papa, ut hanc suam gratiam et concessionem curaret observare inviolabiliter.

---

[1] *sanctum*] qui sanctum, MS.

[2] *dampnati*] dampni, MS. The words *qui . . . dampnati* are written over an erasure, partly on a slip of vellum pasted above and partly in the margin. The text at first stood thus, *furati sunt corpus ipsius*, as in B. C.

[3] *episcopi, et*] On an erasure.

[4] See note, *ante*, p. 45.

[5] *accepit*] Originally written *abrasit*, but corrected on a slip of vellum pasted above.

A.D. 1249.

Civitas Parmensis artatur.[1]

Ensius, son of the emperor, takes 200 soldiers of the city of Parma prisoners.

Sub eisdem diebus, dum Parmenses nimis iterum artati ad quoddam castellum, quod non longe a civitate sua construxerant, ad sui tuitionem ducentos milites transmitterent, Ensius, rex Sardiniæ, filius videlicet Fretherici naturalis, inde secreto præmunitus, paratis insidiis, incautos omnes occupavit. Quos cum vellet patibulis in conspectu civium suspendere, significaverunt ei cives, quod si ipsos suspenderet, ipsi cives quos detinebant captivos de exercitu Fretherici, talionem rependentes, patibulis præsentarent. Et sic suis captivis pepercit Ensius, ipsos reservans redimendos. Parmenses igitur et Bononienses diligentius solito ipsi Ensio insidias paraverunt, et, ut plus nocerent,[2] confœderati sunt indissolubiliter.

De inundationibus pluviarum in mense Junii.

Unusual rains and inundations, particularly near Abingdon.

Eodem anno, mense Junii, quando frumenta florere dicuntur, tanta pluviarum inundatio per omnes fines Angliæ, maxime tamen juxta[3] fines Habenduniæ et ubi fluviales ripæ fuerant, sese dilataverunt, quod salices et alias arbores et domos fluviis conterminas, immo etiam caulas cum ovibus, et unam capellam, non procul ab Habendunia, obruit et asportavit. Segetes vero tunc florentes et fructus pubescentes irrestaurabiliter deterioravit; unde fructus et fruges ipso anno, quæ spem promittebant, colonos fefellerunt.

De iterata translatione beati Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi et confessoris.

Second translation of St. Ed-

Eodemque anno, fabricato elegantissimo ex auro et argento et cristallo feretro, iterato translatum est

[1] The whole of this chapter is marked in the margin with a red line, and the word "*dubium.*"

[2] *et, ut plus nocerent*] On an erasure.

[3] *omnes . . . juxta*] On an erasure.

corpus beati Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi et confessoris, apud Pontiniacum, et honorifice ac sollempniter nimis collocatum est, assistente prælatorum et magnatum [1] copiosa multitudine. Inventum est et conservatum integrum et incorruptum, et flexibile ac odoriferum, ad honorem Dei et universalis ecclesiæ, maxime tamen ad gloriam regnorum Franciæ et Angliæ, fol. 145 b. die quo fuit de terra levatum, videlicet v°. idus Junii, qui est dies sanctorum Primi et Feliciani.

A.D. 1249. mund, abp. of Canterbury.

9 June.

Comes Legrecestriæ Simon inimicos domini regis in Wasconia viriliter expugnat.

Tempore sub eodem comes Legrecestriæ Symon, qui in omnibus studet patrissare, inimicos domini regis in Wasconia viriliter expugnavit; multos ex eis [2] capiens, et multos eorum cogens ad dicti domini regis redire fidelitatem.

Simon, earl of Leicester, defeats the king's enemies in Gascony.

Multi nobiles de regno Anglorum accinguntur ad iter Jerosolimitanum. [3]

Diebusque sub eisdem Willelmus Longa-spata considerans pii regis Francorum indigentiam, filio suo committens omnia, ad iter se accinxit Jerosolimitanum. [4] Similiter et multi nobiles in Anglia, et etiam prælati. Verumtamen idem W[illelmus] cito postea clitellas suas electo replens numismate, [5] adjunctis sibi aliis nobilibus, iter arripuit Jerosolimitanum, ut piissimo Francorum regi jungerentur in auxilium.

William Longespée assumes the cross, with many other nobles.

---

[1] *magnatum*] mangnatum, MS.

[2] *eis*] Interlined.

[3] This chapter has also been originally marked in the margin as "*dubium*," but the word afterwards erased.

[4] *considerans . . . . . Jerosolimitanum*] On an erasure.

[5] *numismate*] nummismate, MS.

A.D. 1249. *Multa adversa contigerunt Fretherico, nec immerito.*

Many adversities befall the emperor.

Circa eosdem dies, cum[1] Fredericus in multos tirannizans, impudenter nimis Arethinum episcopum, ut prædictum est, et irreverenter suspendisset, et multas alias personas ecclesiasticas turpiter tractasset, immo etiam[2] familiaribus suis et secretis consiliariis ultor fuerat immisericors et punitor, Thadeus insuper[3] sine redemptione interemptus fuerat, Petrus de Vinea et phisicus ejus exoculati, ipso sic jubente, iratus est Dominus, et factus est adversarius[4] eidem, juxta illud Augustini, super illum locum in Psalmo,[5] "Cum sancto sanctus eris:[6] Qualis homo Deo, talis Deus homini; et qualis homo proximo, talis Deus homini."

Capitur Ensius, filius Fretherici.[7]

Ensius is defeated and captured by the Bolognese.



Mense igitur Maio, dum Ensius, filius Fretherici naturalis, rex videlicet Sardaniæ, cum suis commilitonibus, adjunctis Cremonensibus, iter faceret per confinia Bononiæ suis insidiando adversariis, ipsi Bononienses per sagacissimos exploratores de proposito ipsius Ensii certificati et plenius præmuniti, paratis insidiis, subitum impetum fecerunt in ipsum et ejus exercitum, ad quendam pontem, qui dicitur pons Sancti Ambrosii, per quem fuerat transiturus, qui etiam est in medio itineris inter Bononiam et Cremonam. Et, facto congressu repente cruentissimo, captus est ipse Ensius, et de suo exercitu et Cremonensibus ad septem

---

[1] *cum*] On an erasure.

[2] *etiam*] Added on to the text.

[3] *insuper*] On an erasure.

[4] *adversarius*] In the text *adversus*, but corr. in marg.

[5] *Psalmo*] Salmo, MS.

[6] Ps. xvii. 26; but I do not find the words here quoted in the Commentary of Augustine on this passage, Opp. tom. iv. col. 76, ed. 1691.

[7] In the margin is drawn his shield of arms, *viz.*, party per pale, vert and or, a double eagle displayed sable, and beneath is written in red letters, "*Capitur Ensius, filius Fretherici, a Bononiensibus.*"

A.D. 1249.

milia armatorum; et ducti sunt Bononiam, vinculis et carceribus mancipandi. Et, ut haberent carcerem tolerabiliorem, coacti sunt dare xviii. milia librarum de moneta imperialium,[1] quæ fere valet monetam esterlingorum. Eodemque tempore obiit quidam alius filius[2] ipsius Fretherici. Alius quoque filius ejus, videlicet Conradus, jam de regno Alemanniæ præcipitatus, Martem in sua guerra sibi sensit adversantem. Ipse insuper Fretherícus in proprio corpore particulari paralisi vel lupo[3] percussus, non jam poterat equo vehi bellicoso, vel saltem palefrido, sed curru vel carpento. In Apulia etiam, Calabria et Sicilia, procurante domino papa non segniter, et legato ad easdem partes destinato, multi, qui ante steterant cum eo, sunt aversi.

Death of another son of Frederic. Conrad is deprived of the kingdom of Germany. The emperor himself afflicted with paralysis or 'lupus.'

De novo privilegio Cisterciensium.

Anno quoque sub eodem Cistercienses monachi, ne amplius essent contemptui Prædicatoribus et Minoribus, et secularibus literatis, præcipue decretistis et legistis, qui simplicitatem claustralem deridebant, a sede apostolica privilegium impetrabant, ut Parisius et alibi, ubi universitas foret scolarium, scolas licite exercerent;[4] et ad hoc mansiones[5] præparaverunt. Et, propter mundi nequitias, rigor est monastici ordinis in hoc[6] enervatus. Non enim legimus hoc a regula beati Benedicti emanasse. Quinimmo de ipso legimus et canimus, quod idem sanctus, relictis literarum studiis, deserta petere decreverat, ut liberius orationi vacaret et contemplationi.

Privilege granted to the Cistercians, to establish schools at Paris.

[1] *imperialium*] imperalium, MS.

[2] *filius*] filius naturalis, B. C. Probably, says Kington, "Hist. of Frederick II.," vol. ii., 503, Richard, Count of Chieti, vicar-general of Romagna.

[3] *lupo*] In B. C., *morbo qui dicitur lupus, vel sacer ignis.*

[4] *exercerent*] excercerent, MS.

[5] *mansiones*] mansionēs, MS.

[6] *in hoc*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1249. *Episcopus Norwicensis rediit a curia Romana.*

The bp. of Norwich returns from Rome. His complaints to the pope of the state of ecclesiastical benefices in England.

Eodem anno, videlicet in autumpno, rediit episcopus Norwicensis, vir quidem eleganter literatus et facundus, a curia Romana. Qui misertus ac miserans super variis Angliæ oppressionibus suggesserat, ut creditur, precibus ac lacrimis accumulatis, ut Deum habens præ oculis, paterna pietate regno Angliæ, sibi præ omnibus regnis devoto, parcendo misericorditer subveniret, et, quiete concessa qua valeret respirare, benigne[1] provideret. Provisionibus enim urgentibus jam innumerabilibus[2] diatim supervenientibus, vix valet aliquis prælatus tutus latitare,[3] ut possit alicui clerico pauperi perito, et ad curas animarum idoneo, in aliquo redditu, licet tenui, caritatis intuitu providere, cum constet, quod in ecclesiis, quæ ab incursionibus variis infestantur,[4] et dies mali sunt, necesse sit habere clericos fideles jurisperitos et opportunos[5] animarum pastores, et in patria lingua ad prædicandum peritos et facundos. Et cum humanum sit, indigentibus consanguineis et familiaribus et amicis omni honore dignis, aliquod vel exile non poterant conferre beneficium, cum dicat apostolus, "Qui suis non providet,[6] infidelis et infideli deterior."[7] Episcopus similiter Lincolniensis pro regno interpellavit coram summo pontifice.[8]

---

[1] *benigne*] beningne, MS.

[2] *innumerabilibus*] innumerabibus, MS.

[3] *tutus latitare*] At first, *latitare tutus*, but marked for transposition.

[4] *infestantur*] At first written *infestentur*.

[5] *opportunos*] oportunos, MS.

[6] *providet*] provide, MS.

[7] Altered from 1 Ep. Tim. v. 8.

[8] *episcopus Norwicensis, vir quidem . . . . . summo pontifice*] The whole of this, filling half a column, is written over an erasure so carefully made, that scarcely the trace of a letter is now visible.

Rediit archiepiscopus Cantuariensis a Romana curia. A.D. 1249.

Return of the abp. of Canterbury from Rome. Power given him to visit the exempt monasteries. Letter respecting the capture of Damietta.

Et circa idem tempus rediit a Romana curia archi- fol. 146 *a*. episcopus Cantuariensis,[1] jocundos deferens rumores de partibus ultramarinis [2] transmissos recenter, videlicet quod Christianissimus dominus rex Francorum, sine difficultate et mora, miraculose Damiatam occupaverat; et certam [3] domino regi super hoc ostendens epistolam. Magna siquidem armatus potestate venerat, visitandi ordinem monasticum, præcipue apud monasteria exempta. Epistola autem de captione Damiatæ in libris plurimorum [4] plenius annotatur.

De reformatione Ordinis inter Nigri Ordinis monachos, maxime tamen exemptos.

Meeting at Bermondsey for the reformation of the Benedictine Order. 14 Oct.

Circa idem tempus abbates Nigri Ordinis, malentes suos per se excessus corrigere, quam per aliquem alium visitatorem, apud Bermundesheie die sancti Kalixti convenerunt, super reformatione Ordinis sancti Benedicti diligentem tractatum habituri. Cujus reformationis capitula in multorum religiosorum libris plenius annotantur.[5]

---

[1] *Et circa . . . . Cantuariensis*] Also on an erasure.

[2] *ultramarinis*] Originally written *transmarinis*, but corrected on a piece of vellum pasted above.

[3] *certam*] At first written *hanc*, but corrected on a piece of vellum pasted above. After *epistolam* also a blank slip of vellum is fastened over an erasure of some letters.

[4] *libris plurimorum*] Originally written *libro Additamentorum*, but corrected on a slip of vellum pasted above. The same reference is given in B.C. (ed. Wats, p. 768), and three letters on the subject are found in the "Liber Additamentorum," [MS. Cott. Nero D. I. ff. 93, 94 *b*, 95 *b*,] and printed in ed. Wats, pp. 165–169.

[5] *reformationis . . . annotantur*] With the exception of the three first syllables of *reformationis*, this is written on a slip of vellum pasted over the original text, which reads, *reformationis capitula in libro Additamentorum plenius conscribuntur, ad hoc signum* . In the margin also is the correction, *libris multorum*. These Statutes are printed in ed. Wats, pp. 169–173, from MS. Cott. Nero D. I. f. 95 *b*, where they are found with the same mark of reference affixed.

A.D. 1249. *Walterus de Kirkeham benigne recipitur a rege in episcopatum Dunelmensem.*

Walter de Kirkeham is admitted by the king to the see of Durham.

Eodem tempore dominus rex exhilaratus de rumoribus, qui de Terra Sancta allati ipsum de captione Damiatæ certificaverunt, concessit gratiam suam, et acceptavit electionem de Waltero de Kirkeham, decano Eboracensi factam, ipsique serenum vultum ostendebat cum favore.

De passu Christi domino regi collato.[1]

The impression of the foot of Christ in marble given by the king to the abbey of Westminster.

Tempore quoque sub eodem fratres Prædicatores comperientes Christianissimi domini regis devotionem, sibi adquisierunt, nescio cujus industriæ argumento, quandam petram albi marmoris, in qua vestigium humani pedis, videlicet, ut a multis creditur et dicitur, Salvatoris, quasi in cera molli impressum apparebat. Quam asserunt Terræ Sanctæ incolæ fuisse vestigium in cœlum Domini[2] ascendentis, ut per tale signum memoriam discipulis relinqueret, quoniam ibi ipsum ultimo viderunt. Dominus autem rex illud ecclesiæ Westmonasterii contulit, sicut nuper sanguinem Christi contulerat, et sicut omne, quod poterat, nobile donativum.

De homullulo et gigantulo.

Prodigious births.

Temporibus quoque sub eisdem quidam homuncio, non autem nanus, quia membra habens sibi proportionalia, ætatisque habens circiter xviii. annorum,[3] inven-

[1] In the lower margin is a drawing representing the ascension of Christ to heaven. The upper portion of the figure is hidden by clouds, and the right foot is in the act of making an impression on the ground. Below is written in red letters, "*Christus ascendens relinquit suis discipulis pro memoriali ultimo passus sui impressionem in marmore candido, quam dominus rex Henricus III. contulit ecclesiæ Westmonasterii.*"

[2] *Domini*] Added in marg.

[3] *annorum*] Added in marg.

[illegible]

[1] In the margin are drawn a crosier and mitre.

[2] *libris Partium*? Originally written *libro Additamentorum*, then partially erased and altered to *libris*, and *Partium* added in the margin; and lastly corrected, as printed above, on a slip of vellum pasted over the line. In [illegible] a reference is also given to the "Liber Additamentorum" [illegible] no documents on the subject are now found in it.

A.D. 1249. *Walterus de Kirkeham benigne recipitur a rege in episcopatum Dunelmensem.*

Walter de Kirkeham is admitted by the king to the see of Durham.

Eodem tempore dominus rex exhilaratus de rumoribus, qui de Terra Sancta allati ipsum de captione Damiatæ certificaverunt, concessit gratiam suam, et acceptavit electionem de Waltero de Kirkeham, decano Eboracensi factam, ipsique serenum vultum ostendebat cum favore.

De passu Christi domino regi collato.[1]

The impression of the foot of Christ in marble given by the king to the abbey of Westminster.

Tempore quoque sub eodem fratres Prædicatores comperientes Christianissimi domini regis devotionem, sibi adquisierunt, nescio cujus industriæ argumento, quandam petram albi marmoris, in qua vestigium humani pedis, videlicet, ut a multis creditur et dicitur, Salvatoris, quasi in cera molli impressum apparebat. Quam asserunt Terræ Sanctæ incolæ fuisse vestigium in cœlum Domini[2] ascendentis, ut per tale signum memoriam discipulis relinqueret, quoniam ibi ipsum ultimo viderunt. Dominus autem rex illud ecclesiæ Westmonasterii contulit, sicut nuper sanguinem Christi contulerat, et sicut omne, quod poterat, nobile donativum.

De homullulo et gigantulo.

Prodigious births.

Temporibus quoque sub eisdem quidam homuncio, non autem nanus, quia membra habens sibi proportionalia, ætatisque habens circiter xviii. annorum,[3] inven-

[1] In the lower margin is a drawing representing the ascension of Christ to heaven. The upper portion of the figure is hidden by clouds, and the right foot is in the act of making an impression on the ground. Below is written in red letters, "*Christus ascendens relinquit suis discipulis pro memoriali ultimo passus sui impressionem in marmore candido, quam dominus rex Henricus III. contulit ecclesiæ Westmonasterii.*"

[2] *Domini*] Added in marg.

[3] *annorum*] Added in marg.

tus est in insula Vectæ, veluti non plus incrementi susceptururus, staturæque fuit vix tripedalis, nomine Johannes. Quem, quasi prodigium, regina secum circumduxit. Eodemque tempore quidem puer a quodam dæmone incuba, ut dicitur, generatus, in confinio Walliæ apparuit. Qui infra dimidium annum plene dentatus, ad staturam ascendit adolescentis xvi. annos habentis. Cujus mater in puerperio miserabiliter est exanimata. A.D. 1249.

Walterus, electus Dunelmensis, consecratur.[1]

Anno quoque sub eodem, prima Dominica Adventus Domini, Walterus de Kirkeham, electus Dunelmensis, consecratus est apud Eboracum ab archiepiscopo ejusdem civitatis Waltero, cujus idem episcopus dinoscitur esse suffraganeus. Consecration of the bishop of Durham. 5 Dec.

Orta est discordia inter abbatem Westmonasterii et ejus conventum, et abbatem de Burgo et ejus conventum.

Circa eosdem quoque dies orta est dissensio inter abbatem Westmonasterii et ejus conventum, in totius Ordinis Nigri scandalum et obprobrium. Cujus causa et series in libris Partium [2] plenius continetur. Tandem vero, procurante domino rege, qui specialis amator illius cœnobii esse dinoscitur, pax est inter eos reformata. Discord between the abbat of Westminster and his convent.

Eodemque tempore inter abbatem de Burgo Willelmum et ejus conventum orta est discordia. Idem enim abbas consanguineorum suorum, in dampnum ecclesiæ Also between the abbat of Peterborough and his convent.

[1] In the margin are drawn a crosier and mitre.

[2] *libris Partium*] Originally written *libro Additamentorum*, then partially erased and altered to *libris*, and *Partium* added in the margin; and lastly corrected, as printed above, on a slip of vellum pasted over the line. In B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 769) a reference is also given to the "Liber Additamentorum," but no documents on the subject are now found in it.

A.D. 1249. suæ, amator et ditator, accusatus de dilapidatione et convictus, depositus est. Cujus loco Johannes de Cadomo, prior ecclesiæ Sancti Suithuni Wintoniæ, domino rege procurante, subrogatur.

He is deposed, and replaced by the prior of St. Swithun's, Winchester.

Orta est discordia inter abbatem Westmonasterii et cives Londoniarum, et abbatem Sancti Albani et abbatem Westmonasterii.[1]

Quarrel between the abbat of Westminster and the citizens of London. Also between the abbat of St. Alban's and abbat of Westminster, relative to Aldenham.

Orta quoque est discordia inter prædictum abbatem Westmonasterii et cives Londoniarum. Vendicabat enim abbas quædam in dampnum et præjudicium civium, per novas cartas, quas abbas adquisierat a rege, cui nimis fuerat familiaris; sed per suorum magnatum sanius consilium, est abbatis propositum infirmatum.[2] Similiter est dissensio orta inter abbatem Sancti Albani et abbatem Westmonasterii sæpedictum, eo quod[3] idem abbas Westmonasterii nova et inaudita quædam in villa de Audenhamia[4] sibi, per quasdam novas sibi a rege adquisitas cartas, vendicavit, contra antiquas cartas Sancti Albani, ante conquestum Angliæ et post a piis regibus et viris apostolicis ecclesiæ ejus concessis et confirmatis.

Item.[5]

Geoffrey de Childewike obtains from the king a grant of

Eisdemque diebus quidam miles, nomine Galfridus de Childewike, infeodatus terris Sancti Albani et ejusdem martiris vassallus, rebellis, perjurus, infidelis et innaturalis, et de multis sibi et antecessoribus ejus[6]

---

[1] This claim of the abbat of Westminster against the citizens of London, and the injuries alleged by the abbat of St. Alban's, are noticed in the larger Chronicle under the year 1250 (ed. Wats, p. 783). See hereafter, p. 80.

[2] *infirmatum*] imfirmatum, MS.

[3] *quod*] Added in marg.

[4] *Audenhamia*] Audenhām, MS., and so in MS. Cott. Nero D. I. fol. 62 *b*. In B. C. *Aldenham*.

[5] Opposite to this chapter is written in the margin the word "*vacat*," in red letters.

[6] *ejus*] On an erasure.

impensis beneficiis immemor et ingratus, ope suffultus Johannis Mansel, domini regis consiliarii specialis, ejusdem Johannis sororii, novam a domino rege cartam adquisivit, in suæ fidei enormem læsionem, contra antiquas cartas beati Albani, Anglorum prothomartiris, a sanctis et autenticis regibus et prælatis ei datas, confirmatas, et usitatas, ante Angliæ et post conquestum; et etiam a nunc superstite et regnante rege Henrico III. optentas, de warenna habenda super terram Sancti Albani, qua infeodabatur. Insuper, in dedecus ejusdem domini sui abbatis, fecit ipsum abbatem sacramentum facere in propria persona.

A.D. 1249. warren on lands belonging to St. Alban's.

De Roberto Passelewe.

fol. 146 b. Feria vero v^ta^. ante festum beatæ Luciæ, Robertus Passelewe, de quo multa præscribuntur, curiæ volumina detestans, ad frugem melioris vitæ, quia jam senuit, convolavit, ad gradum promotus sacerdotii.

13 Dec. Robert Passelewe takes priest's orders.

De paagio de Gisnes.

Anno quoque sub eodem dominus rex Francorum relaxando paagium de Gisnes, gravamina injuriosa, pro magna parte,[1] transeuntium miserando multorum delevit.

The king of France abolishes the road-tax at Guisnes.

Ecclesia de Bello-loco dedicatur.

Eodemque anno abbas de Bello-loco, Ordinis Cisterciencis, ecclesiam suam, quam rex Johannes a fundamentis construxerat, præsentibus rege Henrico III. et comite Ricardo, fratre ejus, et multis aliis magnatibus cum prælatis,[2] sollempniter fecit dedicari. Cujus fundatio, simul cum alio memorabili, quod idem rex

Dedication of the abbey of Beaulieu.

---

[1] *pro magna parte*] Interlined. | [2] *cum prælatis*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1249. J[ohannes] fecisse commemoratur, facto, animæ suæ multum creditur subvenisse. Quod huic paginæ duximus annotandum.

Nota factum laudabile regis Johannis.[1]

Praiseworthy act of king John, in reference to some Greek philosophers.

Quidam philosophi Græci, vultu et gestu severi et venerabiles, tertio vel quarto anno regni ejusdem regis J[ohannis] in Angliam ab Athenis venientes, curiam regis adierunt, sperantes eum, et alios per consequens occidentales, in arcum pravum in articulis fidei convertisse. Senescallo quoque regis dixerunt, "Habemus sermonem domino regi, ad utilitatem totius ecclesiæ, et regni sui utilitatem declarandum. Latini enim Christiani a tramite veritatis in articulis fidei hactenus exorbitantes, enormiter periclitantur, quos desideramus ad cognitionem veritatis salubriter irrefragabilibus rationibus revocare, ut salventur." Quod cum domino regi plenius intimaretur, Spiritu Sancto, ut creditur, edoctus, respondit, "Multorum sanctorum, de quorum sanctitate et auctoritate toti mundo miraculis constat evidentibus, fides, quam suscepimus, roboratur; nolo, ut eorum disputationibus ullatenus discussa vacillet, nec certa pro incertis commutemus. Possent enim cito multos, etiam in fide stabiles, suis ambagibus et dubiis deceptionibus a statu certitudinis concutere, et aliquam novitatem, qua gaudent moderni, persuadere. Recedant igitur confestim, nec amplius in terra mea videantur, vel audiantur." Et sic, imposito eis silentio, vacui recesserunt et confusi.

---

[1] See a previous notice of this event under the year 1216, in vol. ii. p. 194.

Instauratur domus Ordinis Cisterciensis, a comite Ricardo nuper fundata. A.D. 1249.

Dedicata igitur ecclesia de Bello-loco, ut supradictum est, abbas illius loci, qui in festo dedicationis quingentas marcas exposuerat, ad instantiam comitis Ricardi, domum Cisterciensis Ordinis novam, scilicet Hales,[1] quam idem comes, secundum votum quod in periculis agitatus fecerat marinis, xx. monachis et xxx. fratribus, et quibusdam ad eosdem necessariis, instauravit.

The Cistercian house of Hales is supplied with monks by the abbat of Beaulieu.

Obiit Alexander rex Scotorum.[2]

Sub ejusdem anni circulo, v°. nonas Julii, obiit Alexander, rex Scotorum; et infirmatus jam[3] usque ad mortem languit rex Daciæ Henricus.[4] Modus autem, qualiter scilicet obierat rex Scotorum A[lexander], in aliquibus Aquilonarium Rotulis[5] plenius annotatur. Regnaverat autem rex sanctus et pacificus annis[6] .



Scutum regis Scociæ.

---

[1] *scilicet Hales*] Interlined.

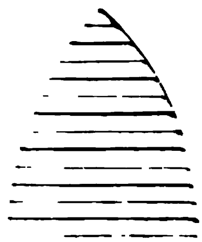
[2] In the lower margin is drawn his shield of arms, reversed, *viz.*, or, a lion rampant gules; a bordure of the first, flory counter-flory of the second.

[3] *jam*] Originally written *est, unde*, but corrected on a small piece of vellum pasted above.

[4] *Henricus*] An error again for *Ericus*, as in vol. ii. p. 447. Eric VI. was treacherously slain by an emissary of his brother Abel, in August 1250.

[5] *in aliquibus . . . Rotulis*] Written on a slip of vellum pasted over the original text, which, although partially erased, reads thus, *in Magnis Cronicis Sancti Albani.* The account is in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 770).

[6] *annis*] After this word a mark of reference is added, as if the number was supplied in the margin, but if so, it has been afterwards effaced. Alexander II. reigned nearly 35 years, having been crowned 5 Dec., 1214. He died 8 July 1249.



[illegible] *Marchia,*[1] *et multi* [illegible] — A.D. 124[illegible]

[illegible] cognomento[2] Brun, [illegible] III. victricus, [illegible] humanis ex- [illegible][3] ejus cito post ibi- [illegible][4] [illegible] anno, tam in [illegible] regno Franciæ, [illegible][5] [illegible], de hoc [illegible] nomina longum [illegible] huic paginæ [illegible] libro vitæ in- [illegible] autem Anglorum [illegible]

Deaths of Hugh Brun, count of March, and other nobles.

Scutum comitis de Marchia, sed non proprium.



[illegible][7]

[illegible] Geneure, [illegible] nimis [illegible] puellam [illegible] terris et pos- [illegible][8] [illegible] P[etrus] [illegible][9] [illegible]

Death of Peter de Geneure.



Scutum Petri de Geneure.

---

[1] In the lower margin is his shield of arms reversed, viz. barry of [illegible], argent and azure.

[2] *cognomento*] cognomento, MS.

[3] *premagnanimus*] [illegible] MS.

[4] *et filius . . . remansit*] Added on to the text.

[5] [illegible] On an erasure.

[6] *peregrinarentur*] Interlined in red [illegible]

[7] In the lower margin is drawn a shield of arms reversed, viz. azure, a lion rampant gules, impaling or, a cross cercelée sable, both [illegible], and below is written in red, "*Per unum istud scutum accipe [illegible] nobilium [illegible].*"

[8] In the lower margin is his shield of arms reversed, viz. sable, a lion rampant argent; but below is a smaller shield with the colours changed, viz. argent a lion rampant sable.

[9] [illegible] Partly on an erasure.

[10] [illegible] Added to the text.

Obiit magister Simon Normannus.

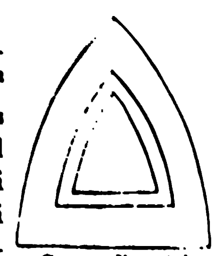
A.D. 1249.

Anno quoque sub eodem obiit magister Simon Normannus, præcipuus quondam domini regis consiliarius, et sigilli regii bajulus, vices agens cancellarii. In quo suam fortuna experta est volubilitatem: fecit enim de eo, quem sullimaverat, exulem et egenum. Eodemque tempore obiit magister Willelmus de Dunelmo apud Rothomagum, rediens a Romana curia, eminentissime literatus, quondam electus Rothomagensis.[1] Quo mortuo, ilico procuravit rex ecclesiam ejus de Wermue uberrimam conferri fratri suo Athelmaro.

Death of Simon le Norman, and of William of Durham.

Obiit Rogerus, filius Johannis de Bailloil.[2]

Eodemque tempore obiit Rogerus de Bailloil, nobilissimus de partibus borealibus Angliæ miles et baro,[3] ætate adolescens, in re strenuus militari, conculcatus in quodam torneamento in partibus Franciæ, apud Argenciam. Cujus terræ custodiam rex incontinenti contulit Willelmo de Valentia, fratri suo, cum nobili castro de Werewurthe, et multis aliis terris ac possessionibus ad prædictum nobilem Rogerum pertinentibus.



Scutum Rogeri de Bailloil.

Annalis conclusio.

Fluxit igitur annus ille minus fructifer, licet arbores floribus præoperirentur, frugifer tamen abundanter;[4] in autumpno tamen[5] imbres inundantes segetes suffocarunt et denigrarunt. Annus quoque iste Romanæ curiæ inimicus, Ecclesiæ turbulentus; Terræ Sanctæ suspectus, Franciæ, Angliæ, Ytaliæ et Germaniæ im-

Annual summary.

[1] *quondam electus Rothomagensis*] Added in marg.

[2] In the lower margin is his shield of arms reversed, *viz.*, gules, an inescutcheon voided argent.

[3] *et baro*] Added in marg.

[4] *abundanter*] habundanter, MS.

[5] *tamen*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1249. misericors deprædator et perturbator: nam in partibus Germaniæ victus est Willelmus de Hoilande, quem dominus papa, profuso thesauro non minimo, antea sustinuerat, et ad imperium sullimare proposuerat. fol. 147

Dominus rex fuit ad Natale Domini apud Wintoniam; et in crastino comedit cum episcopo ejusdem civitatis[1] W[illelmo].

A.D. 1250. Henry keeps Christmas at Winchester. He goes thence to London. 5 Jan.

Anno Domini MCCL., qui est annus Domini regis Henrici III. xxxiiii^{us}, fuit idem rex apud Wintoniam ad Natale Domini, ubi festa Natalicia, ut moris est, magnifice celebravit. Et in crastino cum ipsius civitatis episcopo W[illelmo] magnus conviva dominus rex[2] prandebat. Deinde versus Londonias iter festinus maturavit, ut festum beati Edwardi ibidem magnifice consummaret.

Comitissa Cornubiæ peperit filium.

A son born to the countess of Cornwall, and christened Edmund.

Eodemque tempore, infra[3] videlicet dies Natalicios, comitissa Cornubiæ Cincia, uxor comitis Ricardi, peperit ei filium apud Berkamestude. Ad quem baptizandum comes vocavit archiepiscopum Cantuariensem, infantis avunculum, qui ilico gaudens advenit. Et quia comes amator fuit sancti Edmundi,[4] vocatum est nomen ejus Edmundus, ob honorem sancti Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi et confessoris.

Citantur coram episcopo Lincolniensi omnes religiosi diocesis suæ.

Robert, bp. of Lincoln, summons

Tempore quoque sub eodem episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus omnes suæ diocesis religiosos fecit citari, ut

[1] *civitatis*] civivitatis, MS.

[2] *dominus rex*] On an erasure. In B. C. *et jam assuetus*.

[3] *infra*] imfra, MS., throughout.

[4] *qui ilico . . . Edmundi*] On an erasure.

in festo sancti Hilarii apud Legrecestriam convenirent, mandatum domini papæ ibidem audituri. Ad hoc enim idem episcopus summo conamine anhelabat,[1] ut religiosorum per suam diocesim constitutorum ecclesias et redditus, de quibus iidem[2] assensum capituli et super hoc instrumenta testimonium evidens perhibentia non haberent, in suam revocaret potestatem. Et hoc a summo pontifice, non sine multarum expensarum effusione, impetraverat, sed inaniter, ut rei exitus comprobavit. Papa enim cum eis, qui gravamina sua intimarunt, benigne dispensavit.[3]

A.D. 1250. the clergy of his diocese. 13 Jan.

Transfretant multi nobiles Angliæ.

Tempore quoque sub eodem transfretarunt multi Angliæ nobiles, nec patuit causa alicui de populo, videlicet, comes Ricardus, comes Glovorniæ, Henricus de Hastingo, baro, Rogerus de Thurkebi, et multi alii nobiles cum illis. Præterea de prælatis, Lincolniensis, Londoniensis et Wigorniensis episcopi, et de episcopatu Lincolniensi, Oxoniensi et Bedefordensi archidiaconi, et multi alii clerici. Comes autem Ricardus cum maxima gloria et honore[4] inter omnes et præ omnibus, comitante Henrico, filio suo primogenito, Franciam pertransiens, Lugdunum[5] pervenit; et venienti omnes fere cardinales occurrerunt, honorem maximum eidem exibentes. Causa autem solius episcopi Lincolniensis, quare scilicet transfretavit, omnibus patuit manifesta. Sed in fine, cum sese multi versus papam redemissent pe-

Many English nobles and prelates go abroad.

Earl Richard received with much honour in France.

[1] *anhelabat*] hanelabat, MS.

[2] *iidem*] At first written *idem*, as in B. C.

[3] *Papa enim . . . . dispensavit*] On an erasure. In the lower margin are some lines written with a plummet, of which the only words legible are, *Ipsis (?) autem contra impetum episcopi Lincolniensis ad præsentiam domini papæ appellantibus, causa solius episcopi Lincoln. quia scilicet transire . . . . . .*

[4] *gloria et honore*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg.

[5] *Lugdunum*] Lugdonum, MS.

A.D. 1250 cunia,[1] venit idem episcopus querulus ad papam, dicens, "Domine, credidi ut, auxiliante consilio vestro, omnes, de quibus conquestus sum, suppeditarem, castigarem, et ab errore potenter revocarem.[2] Ipsi vero de Prato-monstrato[3] et quidam alii[4] sibi pacem, data pecunia, proh pudor![5] redimerunt." Cui papa, "Frater, liberasti animam tuam; quid ad te de gratia mea? Fecimus eis gratiam. Nunquid oculus tuus[6] nequam est, quia bonus sum?" Et sic, de consilio cardinalis Johannis, quem vulgariter[7] Album dicunt cardinalem,[8] vacuus recessit episcopus Lincolniensis, a suo proposito fraudatus et confusus, multorum evacuatis crumenis, et, ipso episcopo sene et infirmo, cum multis aliis frustra fatigatis.

The bishop of Lincoln is foiled in his complaint to the pope.

Multi nobiles vendunt et impignorant terras suas.

Many nobles sell and pledge their lands, to go to the Holy Land.

Eodem quoque tempore multi nobiles Angliæ crucesignati terras et possessiones suas, in præparationem suæ peregrinationis peragendæ, vendunt et impignorant. Multi autem in cordibus suis secreto propositum pium conceperunt peregrinandi, ut Christi vestigia in Terra Sancta adorarent, sed noluerunt crucem in humeris palam bajulare, piam tamen intentionem retinentes.[9]

---

[1] *pecunia*] This word is underscored with red, for omission.

[2] *castigarem . . . . . revocarem*] Added in marg.

[3] *de Prato-monstrato*] Probably the Premonstratensian monastery of Newhus is here referred to.

[4] *alii*] Added in marg.

[5] *data . . . pudor*] These words are underscored with red, for omission.

[6] *tuus*] Added in marg.

[7] *vulgariter*] uulgariter, MS.

[8] *cardinalem*] The cardinal alluded to was John de Toleto, otherwise Johannes Anglicus (so called from his English origin), who having been a Cistercian, was named *Albus* from the habit of his Order. See the larger Chronicle of Matthew Paris, ed. Wats, pp. 636, 842; and Ciacconius, *Vitæ Pontif.* ii. 118.

[9] *piam . . . retinentes*] On an erasure. In B. C., *muscipulas Romanæ curiæ formidantes.*

Fretherieus de multis suis triumphat adversariis. A.D. 1250.

Ipsis quoque diebus, devicto et affugato Willelmo de Holande, nuper in regem Alemanniæ promoto, et multum per papam ditato et elevato prius, sed in fine confuso, et multis aliis adversariis suis contritis, Fretherieus in Parmenses et alios Ytalicos desævit et debacchatur,[1] et in multos tirannizat[2] vehementer. The emperor Frederic triumphs over many of his enemies.

Dominus rex Angliæ cruce signatur.[3]

Tempore quoque sub eodem dominus rex crucem accepit de manu archiepiscopi Cantuariensis B[onefacii],[4] et postea ipse archiepiscopus, Willelmus de Valentia, frater domini regis, Radulfus filius-Nicholai, domini regis senescallus, Paulinus Peivre, domini regis consiliarius specialis, et multi alii nobiles et aulici; clerici quoque, domini regis consiliarii, Johannes Mansel, Ædwardus, Philippus Luvel, et multi alii, regis vestigia sequi cupientes. Solus autem abbas Sancti Edmundi, nomine Edmundus, licet monachus, spiritu tamen pio admonitus,[5] cruce signatus est. Henry assumes the cross, with many of the nobility. The abbat of St. Edmund's alone imitates their example.

De unanimi concilio magnatum Angliæ crucesignatorum.[6]

Eodem etiam tempore dominus rex omnes cives Londoniarum apud Westmonasterium fecit convocari. The king asks forgiveness of

[1] *debacchatur*] debacatur, MS.

[2] *et in multos tirannizat*] On an erasure.

[3] In the margin is drawn a crown surmounted by a cross, and this note is added: "Dubium a quo recepit crucem, creditur tamen quod de manu Norwicensis episcopi."

[4] *B[onefacii]* At first written *archiepiscopi B.*, but *archiepiscopi* afterwards expuncted.

[5] *licet . . . . admonitus*] On an erasure.

[6] This rubric applies only to a portion of the chapter, beginning with the words, "Magnates autem interim." The previous portion is entered in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 774),

A.D. 1250. The citizens of London, on account of the taxes imposed on them. Quibus ex parte domini regis supplicatum est, ut pro Deo remitterent ei omnes offensas, injurias et peccata, quibus ipse[1] se timebat irretiri, eorum pecuniam multotiens et multipliciter accipiendo[2] per tallias, per injuriosas extorsiones, tam mercimoniorum quam victualium, quas Prisas vocant, contra civium voluntatem et libertatem. Rex tamen in illa supplicatione læsis vel spoliatis nihil satisfecit. Cives tamen videntes aliud sibi fol. 147 b.
He sends to the pope to obtain authority to prevent the English crusaders from embarking. non expedire, omnia benigne remiserunt. Rex igitur incontinenti ad dominum papam nuncios destinavit expeditos, ad impediendum progressum magnatum Angliæ crucesignatorum, ut potius regis transitum expectarent. Cui dominus papa, immemor, ut dicitur,[3] regis Francorum Deo in Terra Sancta militantis, et impetus Sarracenorum cotidianos sustinentis, assensum præbuit
27 April. Meeting of those who had taken the cross at Bermondsey. repentinum. Magnates autem interim hoc nescientes, v°. kalendas Maii Londoniis apud Bermundeshei de communi assensu convenerunt, de sua peregrinatione tractaturi. Non mediocriter enim condolebant Francorum regi et exercitui[4] Christiano, sese pro ecclesia universali mortis periculis exponenti. The bp. of Worcester appointed their head. Hujus congregationis et concilii capitaneus constituebatur episcopus Wigorniensis Walterus, crucesignatus. Et cum constituissent sibi terminum suæ communis motionis, festum sancti
24 June. The papal prohibition is made known to them, and they return home. Johannis Baptistæ, ecce, tam regalis quam papalis urgens prohibitio, ne scilicet ante regis transitum se ullatenus movere præsumerent, sicut terras et possessiones suas diligebant et excommunicationis sententiam devitare. Quod cum intelligeretur, tristes ad propria remearunt, turpiter decepti, quod suas terras et possessiones inaniter in armorum et equorum atque viatico-

before the last chapter, and has this heading, "*Dominus rex petit veniam a civibus Londoniarum.*"

[1] *ipse*] On an erasure.

[2] *accipiendo*] In the text, *acceperat*, on an erasure, which is evidently wrong; and in the margin we have *precipiendo*, half erased.

[3] *immemor, ut dicitur*] On an erasure.

[4] *exercitui*] excercitui, MS., as elsewhere.

rum præparationes vendiderant, vel impignoraverant.[1] Verum licet hoc ad laudem impedientium non sit ascribendum,[2] hoc feliciter evenit, quia per idem tempus infeliciter accidit regi Francorum et ejus exercitui, sicut in sequentibus plenius declarabitur. A.D. 1250.

Wasconienses regi rebelles edomantur.

Eodem quoque anno Guasto de Biarde,[3] in quem dominus rex, quando fuerat in Wasconia[4] multa congesserat beneficia, et Burdegalenses et alii Wasconenses, domino regi Anglorum ingrati et rebelles, per comitem Legrecestriæ Simonem edomantur, et suppeditantur, atque depauperantur. Unde creditur, Burdegalenses hoc promeruisse, proditionem enormem domino suo regi, cum ad ipsos confidenter confugisset declinans persecutionem Francorum, facientes. Dicuntur enim ipsum violenter retinuisse repatriare proponentem, donec, ad voluntatem eorum, cartam de multa pecunia ipsis, ut fertur, persolvenda,[5] extorsissent. Guasto autem, proditor convictus, captus est, et domino regi præsentatus, sed precibus amicorum[6] in pace dimissus. Sed postea cito, in arcum versus deteriorem, multa domino regi dampna irrogavit.[7]

The rebels in Gascony are subdued by Simon, earl of Leicester.

Gaston of Bearn brought to the king, and pardoned.

[1] *impignoraverant*] impugnoraverant, MS.

[2] *ascribendum*] asscribendum, MS.

[3] *Biarde*] Biardo, MS.

[4] *in Wasconia*] Interlined.

[5] *ipsis . . . persolvenda*] On an erasure.

[6] *amicorum*] On an erasure. In B. C., *intercedente regina.*

[7] *multa . . . irrogavit*] On an erasure. In the margin the last four lines relative to Gaston were marked in red "*vacat*," to be omitted, but the word has afterwards been erased.

A.D. 1250. *Franci apud Damiatam commorantes, impetum faciunt in hostes, primo quidem bene, sed crastino adverse contigit.*

The French forces at Damietta attack the enemy.

Anno quoque sub eodem Franci in castris commorantes juxta Damiatam, convocatis ipsis qui in civitate commorabantur, impetum fecerunt in hostes, qui vias et convalles obsidentes, victualia arcebant. Invaluerat enim fames vehementer in Christi exercitu. Quibus

9 Feb.

prima die, scilicet Cinerum, prospere accidit, sed in crastino, in idipsum redeuntes, deteriorem calculum

Famine in the camp, and many apostatize.

reportarunt; unde tanta fames in exercitu, Deo irato, invaluit, ut confecti fame, equos suos in Quadragesima comedere cogerentur. Unde multi exeuntes et hostibus additi apostatarunt, et plus aliis nobis nocuerunt.

The Soldan offers terms of peace, but the French require the cities of Cairo, Babylon, and Alexandria to be given up.

Verumtamen Soldanus Babiloniæ, omnium regum famosissimum regem Francorum formidans, maxime quia Damiatam tam cito et leviter subjugarat, pacem optulit honestissimam, ut videlicet Terra Sancta et quæcunque aliquando Christianorum fuerat, Christianis restitueretur. Et multa alia ad commodum[1] et honorem Christianorum optulit profutura, ad quæ superbia Francorum minime potuit inclinari, nisi dictus Soldanus Cairum, Babiloniam et Alexandriam Christianis resignaret. Super quo cum postulasset Soldanus tempus aliquot dierum, ut, convocatis suis magnatibus, super hoc deliberaret, ventilatus est rumor vanus per diversa Christianorum climata, quod memoratæ tres

The Saracen chiefs refuse.

civitates redderentur ditioni Christianæ. Sed cum congregarentur nobiles Sarracenorum coram domino suo Soldano, et audissent avaritiam et superbiam Francorum, nullatenus adquieverunt. Quinimmo dixerunt, "Christiani nimis improbi et superbi exigunt quod injustum est, et nobis intolerabile. Ut quid impetunt nos, nisi ratione Terræ Sanctæ? Quid eis cum Damiata? quid cum Cairo, Babilonia vel Alexandria?

[1] *commodum*] comodum, MS.

Jesus, Deus eorum, odio habens super omnia arrogantiam, qui humillimus[1] fuit, et præbens eis exemplum omnimodæ humilitatis et mansuetudinis, confundet eos in hac eorum improba exactione et superbia intolerabili!" Ex tunc igitur, meritis eorum exigentibus, cœpit Francorum conditio non mediocriter deteriorari, maxime, cum secreta eorum inedia per apostatas, qui ad Soldanum se contulerunt, patuit revelata. Tempore sub eodem obiit ille Soldanus, et alius, Christianis nocivior, est loco ejus substitutus.

A.D. 1250.

The condition of the French army becomes worse.

Death of the Soldan.

De maximo honore, quem exhibuit Blanchia, et postea papa, comiti Ricardo.

Temporibus sub eisdem regina Francorum Blanchia tot et tantos congessit honores in comitem Ricardum, et in eos qui in comitatu ipsius[2] erant, ut omnes videntes et audientes merito poterant admirari. Et Lugdunum venienti, occurrit fere tota curia papalis. Et ipse sereno vultu illi applaudens dominus papa,[3] ipsum ad mensam invitavit, et coepulabantur immediate, scilicet octavis Paschæ. Eadem die captus est rex Francorum, ut dicetur in sequentibus.[4] Et, facto negotio pro quo ierat, occulto tamen, rediit per Sanctum Dionisium. Et comparavit sibi quoddam manerium ab abbate, quod idem abbas habuit in Anglia, satis opulentum, cum pertinentiis, non procul existens a Glovernia, Derhurst[5] appellatum.[6] Die vero Lunæ proxima ante dies Rogationum venit prospere in Angliam. Remansit autem in partibus transmarinis per fol. 148 *a.* aliquot dies, ut sibi parceret perendinaturus episcopus Wintoniensis Willelmus, qui comitis Ricardi vestigia secutus fuerat irrediturus.

Great honours paid to earl Richard by queen Blanche of France and the pope.

Earl Richard purchases the manor of Deerhurst from the abbat of St. Denys.

He returns to England, 25 April.

William, bp. of Winchester, remains abroad.

[1] *humillimus*] humilimus, MS.

[2] *ipsius*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg.

[3] *dominus papa*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg.

[4] *scilicet . . . sequentibus*] Added in marg.

[5] *Derhurst*] In C. *Hurst*, but incorrectly. See Monasticon, iv. 665.

[6] *appellatum*] apelatum, MS.

A.D. 1250. *De brachio sancti Edmundi confessoris absciso.*[1]

The arm of St. Edmund is cut off by the monks of Pontigni, and miracles cease then.

Anno sub eodem monachi Pontiniacenses ausu temerario brachium beati corporis sancti Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi et confessoris, nescitur qua consideratione, quod Deus conservarat incorruptum, absciderunt. Deo igitur proinde irato, cessarunt miracula ibidem ut prius celebrari.

De horribilibus et variis tempestatibus.[2]

Horrible thunderstorms.

Tempore quoque sub eodem dampnosa in diversis locis mugierunt tonitrua; fulgura muros turrium et robora maxima dissiparunt, et inundationes pluviales vias invias reddiderunt,

Judæorum pecunia ab illis extorquetur.

The Jews are heavily mulcted, but pitied by no one.

Diebus quoque sub eisdem tota fere, quam habuerunt Judæi, pecunia ab eisdem est extorta. Verumtamen ipsi nulli miserabiles extiterunt, quia de falsitate cartarum, sigillorum et monetæ crebro convinci probatum est ipsos fuisse,[3] atque manifestum. Quorum facinora tractatus exigunt diffusiores.[4]

De quodam Armenio, qui apud Sanctum Yvonem obiit.

Death of an Armenian bishop at St. Ives.

Anno quoque sub eodem tres fratres Armenii, exterminio Tartarorum effugati de partibus natalibus, vene-

[1] *absciso*] abciso, MS.

[2] This rubric, with the entire chapter (with the exception of the first four words), is written over an erasure. In the lower margin is a plummet note, "Dapsilitas regiæ mensæ abbreviatur;" and it is probable that the text originally referred to this subject, as related in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 778).

[3] *fuisse*] Added in marg.

[4] *tractatus exigunt diffusiores*] On an erasure. Fuller detail is given in B. C.

runt ad Sanctum Yvonem ibidem oraturi; fuerat enim beatus Yvo natione orientalis. Erantque facie barbata, et gestu ac sanctitate viri venerabiles. Ibidem quoque unus eorum, qui videbatur eorum summus, infirmitate præreptus est, et sanctissime migravit ibidem a seculo, nomine Georgius; et quia episcopus fuisse credebatur, prout a sociis suis, qui barbari erant, elici potuit, juxta ecclesiam est veneranter sepultus, ubi et miraculis cœpit choruscare.[1] A.D. 1250.

Remansit in curia Romana episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus, proposito[2] suo exequendo.[3]

Redeuntibus[4] a partibus transmarinis magnatibus memoratis anno eodem, circa Pentecosten, remansit in curia Romana Lincolniensis episcopus, ut propositum conceptum effectui manciparet. Sed cum foret in enorme dampnum religiosorum, multi sibi pacem redimerunt, ut prædictum est.[5] Unde episcopus, circa festum sancti Michaelis, spe frustratus[6] ad propria[7] remeavit.

15 May. The bishop of Lincoln fails in his suit at Rome.

29 Sept.

Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis B[onefacius] venit Londoniam, visitationem facturus.

Quarto vero idus Maii, videlicet die sancti Pancratii sociorumque ejus, venit archiepiscopus B[onefacius] Londoniam, ut ibidem episcopum Londoniensem et ejus capitulum, necnon et religiosos civitatis visitaret, sicut jam abbatiam de Feversham et prioratum Rofensem, ubi procurationes opimas,—numerosam enim

12 May. Boniface, archbishop of Canterbury, holds his visitation at London.

[1] *choruscare*] In the margin is added this note, "in [et ?] postea, in ecclesia est sepultus."

[2] *proposito*] proprosito, MS.

[3] *Robertus . . . exequendo*] On an erasure. This chapter is marked in the margin "*vacat.*"

[4] *Redeuntibus*] Rediuntibus, MS.

[5] *est*] Interlined. See *ante*, p. 70.

[6] *frustratus*] frustatus, MS.

[7] *propria*] pripria, MS.

A.D. 1250. habuit familiam, et, ut archiepiscopum decuit, honorabilem comitatum,—recepit ab illis ecclesiis, non sine earum gravamine non modico.[1]

Qualiter archiepiscopus visitandus receptus sit ab episcopo Londoniensi.

How the abp. was received by the bishop of London at Fulham.

Cum igitur archiepiscopus Cantuariensis Londonias appropinquasset, ut ecclesiam Sancti Pauli et alias ecclesias religiosorum, quæ in civitate Londoniarum sunt, visitaret, episcopus Londoniensis Fulco, vir quidem moribus, literatura et sanguine spectabilis, occurrit eidem adventanti, et apud Fulham,[2] manerium suum, quod non multum distat a Londoniis, ducens enim, splendide serenoque vultu procuravit quicquid ei necessarium videbatur. Necnon in munusculis, quæ etiam nobiles munera cara poterant appellare,[3] ipsum archiepiscopum et suos clericos, et milites ac servientes gratanter respexit ac munifice. Quæ omnia cum servientes non nobiles sed vulgares archiepiscopi obliquis oculis ingratanter respexissent, dixerunt hæc non de gratia, sed debito et uberiora sibi exhibenda. Nesciente igitur domino suo archiepiscopo, prout credendum est, fecerunt ferros a suorum equorum pedibus, licet bonos, avelli, novosque apponendos sibi incontinenti exhiberi, comminantes et improbe tumultuantes. Unde tam canonici Sancti Pauli et alii de civitate Londoniarum, quam ipse episcopus, talibus angariis adhibere remedia procurarunt, videntes quod plus pro oppressionibus quam moram reformationibus talis fieret, ut censebant, visitatio.

Shameful conduct of the abp.'s servants.

---

[1] *modico*] medico, MS. The whole passage, from *ubi procurationes* to *modico*, is written on an erasure.

[2] *Cum igitur . . . Fulham*] On an erasure. Some words also have been added in the margin, and then erased, but which can be deciphered as follows: *Sciens se, asportata favore papali et regali, efficaciter auxiliari.*

[3] *appellare*] apelare, MS.

Ut archiepiscopus receptus sit apud Sanctum Paulum. A.D. 1250.

Veniens inde archiepiscopus ad ecclesiam Sancti Pauli, cum ibidem visitaturus non admitteretur, excommunicavit decanum cum quibusdam aliis ecclesiæ personis dignioribus. Similiter ad ecclesiam canonicorum Sanctæ Trinitatis. Inde ad Sanctum Bartholomæum, nec hic nec ibi admissus, ipsos excommunicavit. Deinde venire ad Herwes,[1] manerium suum, quod non multum a cœnobio Sancti Albani distat, properavit, ut ad idem cœnobium veniens, abbatem et monachos visitaret. Sed cum audisset, magistro Hugone de

The abp. excommunicates the dean of St. Paul's and others.

He proceeds to his manor of Harrow, in order to visit St.

---

[1] *Herwes*] From the beginning of the previous chapter, "Cum igitur," to this word, the whole of the original text has been partially or entirely erased, and re-written, partly over the erasure, and partly on a piece of vellum pasted above. The first seven lines are totally erased, and five others only in part to be deciphered. The rest is tolerably clear, as follows: . . . . *cum visitasset sua* . . . . . *visitaret. Ubi cum non admitteretur, excommunicavit decanum et quosdam alios canonicos digniores ecclesiæ Sancti Pauli* . . . . *Et confestim veniens ad prioratum Sanctæ Trinitatis, ubi non admissus, venit ad* . . . . . . *ad prioratum Sancti Bartholomæi, ut ibi canonicos visitaret. Et cum non admitteretur, iratus est valde, et in verba abusiva et contumeliosa prorumpens, ipsos canonicos multam passos* (?) *injuriam indecenter nimis tractavit; ejusque ministri catervatim irreverenter ruentes sanguinem, ut dicitur, fuderunt. Tanti igitur patris excessus in factis et dictis, suæ obliti conditionis, longum esset et probrosum recitare. Et quia multi ipsum in archiepiscopatu præcesserunt viri sanctissimi, tam martires quam confessores, factum istud enorme enormius videbatur, cum contraria juxta se posita magis apparent. Omnes igitur eos, qui visitationem suam non admiserunt, et episcopum de consensu excommunicavit. Decanus autem et canonici appellantes dominum papam adierunt, super talibus conquesturi. Et cito post ipse archiepiscopus transfretavit, se ipsum justificaturus. Et secum deferens literas domini regis et reginæ, quam dominus papa suam dixit* (?) *consanguineam, ab ipso papa favorabiliter receptus est et exauditus, sicut actus sequentes protestantur. Sed hæc in sequentibus plenius describentur.*

Archiepiscopus veniens apud Herues, et ibi pernoctans, reversus est.

Archiepiscopus vero adhuc ira vehementi pertumescens, in crastino, postquam apud Londonias tam irreverenter quam impetuose se gesserat, ad Herewes. Cf. B. C. (ed. Wats, pp. 780, 781.)

A.D. 1250. Alban's, but turns back. The bp. of London appeals to the pope.

Mortuo-mari, officiali suo, suggerente,[1] quod ipsa Beati Albani ecclesia supra omnia Angliæ cœnobia privilegiata fuisset, ne forte novissimus error pejor priore esset, reversus est. Episcopus autem Londoniensis non mediocriter perturbatus, petens consilium et auxilium ab amicis in jure peritis, appellavit ad summum pontificem pro enormi gravamine. Quia si ab pauperibus domibus procuraretur, omnes miserabiliter depauperaret.[2]

De capitulo fratrum Prædicatorum generalissimo.

General chapter held of the Friars Preachers. 24 June.

Diebus autem sub eisdem, videlicet circa festum Nativitatis sancti Johannis Baptistæ, communi vocatione congregati sunt de universis terris Christianitatis, etiam de Terra Sancta, fratres de Ordine Prædicatorum apud domum suam de Holeburne Londoniis, ut de statu Ordinis sui et eorum officio diligenter contractarent. Et quia proprias non habebant facul- fol. 148 *b.* tates, magnates et prælati ex liberalitate sua eis per aliquot dies victualia invenerunt. Erant autem fratres quadringenti et amplius. Rex autem prima die capituli venit illuc, orationum suffragia petiturus ab eisdem; et pavit eos eadem die. Postea in crastino, regina; deinde episcopus Londoniensis. Postea Johannes Mansel. Deinde alii, utpote abbas Sancti Albani, abbas de Wautham, et alii prælati circumdegentes, quibus et ipsi literatorie supplicabant.

The king and others supply them with provisions.

De perturbatione Londoniensium.

Claim of certain liberties

Diebus sub eisdem cives Londonienses perturbati sunt[3] vehementer, eo quod dominus rex quasdam

[1] *magistro . . . suggerente*] Added in marg.

[2] *ab amicis . . . . depauperaret*] On an erasure.

[3] *sunt*] On an erasure, as also the first syllable of the next word.

exegit libertates ad opus abbatis Westmonasterii, in enorme dampnum[1] eorum, et contra libertates civitatis eorumdem.[2] Rex autem a magnatibus suis super hoc correptus, saniori usus consilio, civibus Londoniarum sua jura, tam per aquam quam per terram, præcepit restitui. Quod cum vidisset abbas, ab incepta lite, quam moverat, benigne cessavit.[3]

A.D. 1250. made on the Londoners in behalf of the abbat of Westminster.

Commissum est sigillum regium magistro Willelmo de Kilkenni.

Tempore quoque sub eodem dominus rex, sano fretus consilio, custodiam sigilli sui magistro Willelmo de Kilkenni, viro prudenti et circumspecto ac juris perito commendavit.[4]

The custody of the Great Seal given to William de Kilkenni.

Rex Francorum a Damiata recedens, versus plagam tendit orientalem.

Per idem tempus, postquam dominus rex Francorum exierat a castris Damiatæ, apposita diligenti ac fideli custodia in civitate, ducis videlicet Burgundiæ et quamplurimorum magnatum cum eo, militum ac manus pedestris numerosæ; simulque legato et quibusdam cum ipso prælatis, regina quoque, et multis nobilibus dominabus cum suis familiis; versus plagam orientalem infelici sidere cum exercitu suo iter direxit et vexilla. Secutusque est eum Deo devotus Willelmus Longa-spata, licet in exercitu Francorum multas

The king of France leaves Damietta, and proceeds eastward.

He is followed by William Longespée.

---

[1] *dampnum*] Interlined.

[2] *eorumdem*] On an erasure.

[3] *consilio . . . cessavit*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, in great measure erased, but still to be deciphered thus, *consilio a proposito resilivit, abbate, qui ad hoc dominum regem inclinaverat* (?), *graviter* [*a*] *multis redarguto. Similiter autem per quasdam cartas de novo a domino rege impetratas . . . . avit abbas memoratus abbatem et conventum de Sancto Albano,* [*contra*] *cartas regum antiquorum.*

[4] *ac . . . commendavit*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1250. antea injurias tolerasset, exercitu suo ipsum consequente. Et sic divisus est exercitus[1] Christianus in plures partes, et ideo nimis enervatus; magna enim pars remansit ad classem tuendam, et major ad custodiam civitatis, ut prænotatur.

Galfridus de Langeleia, miles, constitutus justiciarius de foresta, pecuniam adquirit[2] infinitam.

Large sums of money exacted for the king's use by Geoffrey de Langeley.

Sub eisdem itaque temporibus quidam miles, domini regis ballivus et de foresta justiciarius, inquisitor argumentosus nimis transgressionum factarum in eadem, nomine Galfridus, cognomento[3] de Langeleia, plures Angliæ partes peragrans, adeo in pecuniam, ad opus regis, de forestis, præcipue in partibus Angliæ borealibus, intendit adquirendam,[4] ut quantitas thesauri collecti fidem in auditorum cordibus excederet, vel stuporem generaret. Respectu autem hujus quilibet præcedens, Robertus etiam Passeleuue, piissimus censebatur. In transgressionibus enim compertis, licet minimis, pœna culpæ minime valuit respondere.[5]

Transfretat archiepiscopus B[onefacius].

The abp. of Canterbury goes to Rome.

Tempore quoque sub eodem archiepiscopus Cantuariensis B[onefacius], comperiens quod decanus Sancti Pauli, concomitantibus quibusdam ejusdem ecclesiæ canonicis, et eorum, quos læserat, procuratoribus,[6] consilio legistarum animatus, et regiis literis armatus, necnon et generis sui potentiæ confisus, curiam Roma-

---

[1] *exercitus*] excercitus, MS. throughout.

[2] *adquirit*] On an erasure.

[3] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[4] *in pecuniam . . . adquirendam*] On an erasure.

[5] From the words *ut quantitas* to *respondere*, the text is marked in the margin for omission by the word "*vacat*," in red letters.

[6] Some words appear to be here wanting, but B. C. agree with the text.

nam aditurus in magno[1] apparatu transfretavit. Consideravit perspicaciter, quod si ecclesiam Londoniensem posset subpeditare, nulla ei in Anglia resistere præsumeret. A.D. 1250.

Obiit Robertus de Lexintona.

Eodemque anno, iiii°. kalendas Junii, obiit Robertus de Lexintona, clericus, qui in justiciariæ officio diu commoratus, nomen famosum et amplas sibi adquisierat possessiones. De quo etiam multa in hoc libro præscribuntur. 29 May. Death of Robert de Lexington.

Fretherícus Parmenses et multos rebelles oppressit.

Diebus quoque sub eisdem rumores jocundissimi aures Occidentalium vanis demulcebant consolationibus, videlicet de captione Kairi, Babiloniæ et Alexandriæ. Quorum causam prætermitto, quia, False rumours of the capture of Cairo and Alexandria.

"Tota trahit series ex turpi fine pudorem."[2]

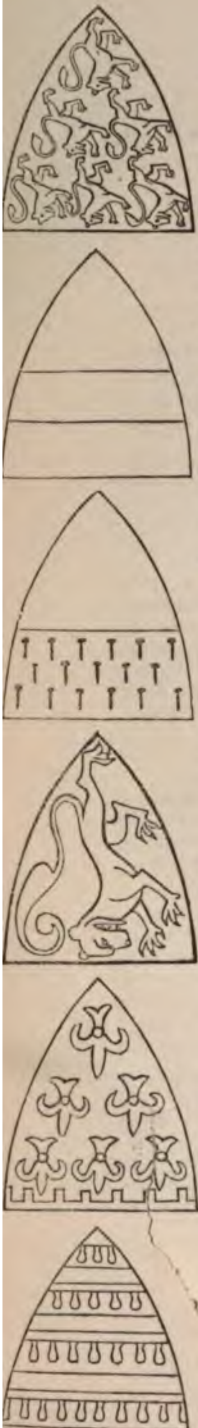
Et per idem tempus Fretherícus Parmenses et alios Ytalicos sibi rebelles vehementer, victo Willelmo de Holandia, oppressit. Oppression of the Parmesans by the emperor.

Mandatum flebile transmissum de Terra Sancta comiti Ricardo.

Die vero beati Kenelmi, videlicet kalendis Augusti, comite Ricardo existente Londoniis, et ad scaccarium sedente, venit ad ipsum nuncius quidam festinus et tristis, rumorum et literarum bajulus teterrimarum, hujus sententiæ tenorem continentium: "Totus exercitus Christianus in Terra Sancta, constans ex exercitu 1 Aug. News brought to earl Richard from the Holy Land of the defeat of the

[1] *magno*] On an erasure. In the margin is added *et pompa*. In B.C., *in magna pompa et apparatu*.

[2] From the "Nova Poetria" of Geoffrey de Vinesauf. Cf. vol. ii. p. 276.



regis Francorum et quorumdam Anglorum, Templariorum, Hospitalariorum, Theutonicorum et fratrum Sancti Lazari, confusus, triumphantibus Crucis hostibus, devictus occubuit.[1] Cujus ruinæ causa comes Atrabatensis Robertus, infelix et superbus, fuisse perhibetur. Hujus autem infortunii plena enarratio in carta missa domino regi prolixius enarratur.[2] Quod autem lugubrius erat, multi Christiani apostatarunt et fides titubavit Christiana, et Damiata restituta est Sarracenis; et dominus rex Francorum, quod nunquam antea evenerat, a Sarracenis captus est, et pro multis[3] milibus marcarum redemptus; unde tota Francia, immo etiam tota Christianitas, induit dolorem et cum diffidentia confusionem.

A.D. 1250 Christian army, and capture of Louis. The cause of this disaster ascribed to Robert, count o Artois.

Rex Francorum remittit fratres suos in Franciam, pro succursu.

fol. 149 *a.*

Rex igitur Francorum sub conductu Sarracenorum Acon perductus, post solutionem redemptionis suæ, misit duos fratres suos superstites, quia comes Atraba-

Louis send his brothers hom to raise

[1] In the lower margin are drawn six shields of arms reversed of nobles who were slain in the conflict with the Saracens, with inscriptions in red letters beneath each shield, namely, 1, azure six lioncels, 3, 2, 1, rampant or; above the shield are two hands issuing from the clouds, holding a dove, as the emblem of the Holy Spirit; and beneath, "*Comitis Willelmi Longæspatæ;*" 2, azure a fess argent, "*Castellani de S. Ædemaro;*" 3, party per fess, ermine and sable, "*Castellani de Gant;*" 4, gules, a lion rampant argent, "*Comitis Boloniæ;*" 5, azure, six fleurs-de-lis, 3, 2, 1, or, a bend of 8 points gules, "*Comitis Atrabatensis Roberti,*" by the side of which is drawn a black bird, as the symbol of the Evil Spirit; 6, barry of eight, argent and vaire gules, "*Engelrami de Cusci.*" Below these inscriptions is written in red, "*Multique alii de nobilitate Franciæ ceciderunt, quorum nec scuta nec nomina nobis innotuerunt. Præter eos, militia Templi et Hospitalis confusa est.*" There are also two lines written below with a plummet, but so indistinct that only the following words are legible . . . . *cia confusionem, et . . . . si placuit, plus animarum quam corporum lucra s . . ti.*

[2] *in carta . . . enarratur*] Written on an erasure. The letter is in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 796.) See also *postea*, p. 102.

[3] *multis*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg.

tensis Robertus, tertius frater, in Nilo submersus perierat, in Franciam, ad matrem suam Blanchiam et magnates terræ, supplicans attentius, quatinus ei in arcto posito succursum mitterent, in ultionem tantæ, quam perpessus est,[1] pro Christo confusionis. Et cum desideraret domino regi Anglorum[2] omnia jura ultramarina reddere, ea conditione, ut ei efficaciter succurreret, et hoc suis nobilibus Franciæ significaret per fratres suos memoratos, scilicet Pictaviæ et Provinciæ comites, non adquieverunt primates Francorum, ne Franciæ prosperitas penitus expiraret.[3]

A.D. 1250. forces to aid him.

He proposes to restore to Henry his continental territories, but the French nobles refuse to sanction it.

De insolita maris commotione.

Sub eisdem temporibus, mense videlicet Octobris, luna existente prima, die mensis quoque prima, cœpit mare densa caligine perturbari, et perturbatum fines solitos pertransire, occupans partes litoreas, quas nunquam se meminit aliquis prævidisse.

Unusual inundation of the sea.

Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis B[onefacius] multorum constantiam enervavit.

Diebus quoque sub eisdem archiepiscopus Cantuariensis B[onefacius] adeo per suum officialem et alios suos[4] ministeriales canonicos de Sancto Bartholomæo[5] perterruit, quod causam suam non sunt ausi, licet enormiter læsi, ventilare, nec querimoniam coram papa vel aliquo alio reponere; unde, quia pauper ubique jacet,[6] siluerunt, nec sunt jus suum, ut ultio debita sequeretur, prosecuti, sed causam suam Deo et patrono suo beato Bartholomæo commendarunt.

The canons of St. Bartholomew's abandon their suit against the archbishop of Canterbury.

---

[1] *est*] Interlined.

[2] *Anglorum*] The last syllable is on an erasure.

[3] *Et cum . . . . expiraret*] The whole of this is marked in the margin "*dubium*," in red letters.

[4] *suos*] Repeated superfluously after *ministeriales*.

[5] *canonicos . . . . Bartholomæo*] Added in marg.

[6] *jacet*] Interlined.

A.D. 1250.

De obitu episcopi Wintoniensis Willelmi.[1]

21 Sept. Death of William de Rale, bp. of Winchester.

Eodemque anno, circiter festum sancti Mathæi, obiit episcopus Wintoniæ Willelmus de Rale, apud Turonim. Qui, ut sibi parceret in expensis, ibidem circiter xi. mensibus moram cum castigata familia continuarat. Obligabatur enim episcopatus ejus debitis inæstimabilibus. Exposuerat enim non minimam pecuniam, tam in primitiis sui præsulatus ac relegatione.[2]

Monachi Wintonienses coacti sunt postulare Æthelmarum, fratrem regis.

The monks of Winchester are compelled to elect Æthelmar as their bishop.

Monachi igitur Wintonienses ex tunc[3] in arcto constituti, inter se[4] hoc[5] diligenter conferentes, pristinas tribulationes, quas pro Willelmo, electo[6] Valentino, graves, et graviores pro postulatione Willelmi, episcopi Norwicensis jam defuncti, perpessi sunt, memoriter recitarunt. Elegerunt igitur vel postularunt ipsum Æthelmarum, secundum domini regis urgentem[7] petitionem, in episcopum et pastorem animarum suarum,[8] licet ætate tenerum et scientia erudiendum.[9] Rex autem ilico nuncios sollempnes ad curiam Romanam destinavit, ut idem Æ[thelmarus], frater suus,[10] confirmaretur.

---

[1] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier, reversed.

[2] *Exposuerat . . . . relegatione*] Written on an erasure, and the sense seems incomplete. Cf. ed. Wats, p. 800.

[3] *ex tunc*] On an erasure.

[4] *inter se*] On an erasure.

[5] *hoc*] Added in marg.

[6] *electo*] elicto, MS.

[7] *urgentem*] On an erasure.

[8] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier.

[9] *tenerum . . . erudiendum*] On an erasure.

[10] *frater suus*] Written above the line.

Obiit Rofensis episcopus. Eligitur magister Laurentius de Sancto Martino.[1]

A.D. 1250.

Eodemque anni tempore, circa festum videlicet sancti Michaelis, obiit episcopus Rofensis, et, procurante domino rege, sepultum est corpus ejus apud Westmonasterium. Cujus loco monachi Rofenses elegerunt magistrum Laurentium de Sancto Martino in episcopum suum, domini regis clericum et consiliarium specialem, et in curia Romana efficacem procuratorem, natione Anglicum, et eleganter literatum. Archiepiscopus autem Cantuariensis B[onefacius], malens jure[2] magistrum Hugonem de Mortuo mari, officialem suum, in eundem episcopatum promovere, electionem illam nitebatur enervare.[3]

Death of [Richard de Wendene,] bishop of Rochester. 29 Sept. Laurence de S. Martino elected to succeed him. The abp. of Canterbury endeavours to make the election void.

Redit episcopus Lincolniensis a curia Romana, frustratus a desiderio suo.

Et circa idem festum, beati scilicet Michaelis, episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus, cum in curia Romana infinitam pecuniam et dies plurimos frustra[4] expendisset, et conceptum propositum ad votum [perficere][5] minime[6] valuisset, tristis et vacuus, cum multos religiosos multipliciter fatigasset, ad propria remeavit.

Return of the bp. of Lincoln from Rome.

De terræmotu in Anglia, scilicet in Ciltria.

Anno quoque sub eodem, die videlicet sanctæ Luciæ, circa horam tertiam, factus est terræmotus in Ciltria,

13 Dec. Unusual earthquake in the Chilterns.

[1] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier, reversed, and in the lower margin another mitre and crosier, erect, with these words in red, "*Magister Laurentius de Sancto Martino creatur in episcopum Rofensem.*" By the side of this appear a second mitre and crosier, with some words in red, now erased.

[2] *jure*] On an erasure.

[3] *Archiepiscopus . . . . enervare*] This passage is marked "*vacat*" in the margin in red letters, and some additional words have been added, but afterwards wholly erased.

[4] *frustra*] On an erasure.

[5] *perficere*] Supplied from B. C.

[6] *minime*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1250. ubi a tempore, cujus non extat memoria, nullatenus visum est tale quid evenisse. Ipsa enim patria solida est et cretosa, nullatenus cavernosa. Unde talis eventus insolitus et innaturalis admiratione dignus censebatur, licet in ædificiis non dampnosus.[1] Factus est etiam cum ipso terræmotu tanquam terribilis tonitrus et mugitus subterraneus. Significare igitur dicebantur vel futuram pestem non minimam, vel regnorum immutationem, vel mortem alicujus principis famosissimi.[2]

At the end of this year twenty-five quinquagenaries of years had

Finito hoc anno, consummatæ sunt viginti quinque quinquagenæ ex tempore gratiæ.

Completo igitur hoc anno, jam fluxerunt ex tempore gratiæ viginti quinque quinquagenæ amorum, id est, mille ducenti et quinquaginta. Notandum autem est, et non leviter attendendum, quod in nulla xx^{ti}iiii^{or}.

---

[1] *dampnosus*] dapnosus, MS.

[2] At the end of this chapter another has been added in the margin, relative to the death of the emperor Frederic, but the latter and larger portion of it subsequently erased, so that only the following fragment can be read:

"*De morte Fretherici.*

Obiit igitur eodem die maximus principum, mundi stupor, Fretherieus, in Apulia, absolutus a sententia qua innodebatur, et . . . . habitu Cisterciensium . . . . . . condidit nobilissimum testamentum, quo . . . per ipsum dam . . ." Cf. B. C. and ed. Wats, p. 804. In the margin, also, is a drawing of the imperial shield, reversed, *viz.*, or, a double-headed eagle displayed sable, with the words beneath, "*Scutum imperatoris F*[*retherici*]," in red. On each side of the shield is a crown reversed, inscribed "*Corona Jerusalem*," and "*Corona Siciliæ*," with the addition, "*Hee* [sic pro *Hæ*] *sunt adeptæ*." Lower down, are three other crowns, also reversed, with the following long rubric: ¶ *Triplici corona coronatur imperator Romanorum. Aurea, ratione imperii Romani; quod quasi aurum toti mundo. Argentea, ratione Alemanniæ, quæ nummismate argenteo ditatur, et habundat commerciis. Necnon est famosa, unde vulgariter dicitur imperator Alemaniæ. Argentum enim sonorum est. Ferrea, ratione Ytaliæ, quæ armis et commu* (sic) *urbibus roboratur; ferrum namque pro armis accipitur, scilicet materia pro materiato.*" Beneath this again is written in red, "¶ *Rex autem Angliæ tres in scuto suo gerit leopardos, quia rex, dux et comes est.*"



quinquagenarum antecedentium tot evenerunt mirabilia et insolitæ novitates, sicut in hac ultima quinquagena, scilicet vicesima quinta. Et sunt nonnulli historiographi qui asserunt, quod nec in omnibus aliis quinquagenis visa sunt tot prodigia aut novitates admirandæ, sicut in hac jam terminata. **A.D. 1250. elapsed since the æra of Grace.**

Nota mirabilia, quæ in hac quinquagena annorum contigerunt.

In hac enim quinquagena Tartari de suis longinquis et occultis sedibus exeuntes, multa Orientalium climata[1] tam fidelium quam infidelium ferali exterminio vastaverunt. Admiralius Murmelinus, Affricanorum et Hispanorum rex potentissimus incredulorum, cum toto suo exercitu a Christianis dissipato, victus est in Hispania, et vexillum ejus captum, et primogenitus ejus, eo elapso, peremptus est.[2] Prædicante magistro Olivero in partibus Germaniæ, apparuit omnibus manifeste in aere crucifixus Dominus[3] noster Jhesus Christus. Recessit Græca ecclesia a subjectione Romanæ, Battacio scismatizante.[4] Damiata, civitas Ægipti famosissima, bis capta est a Christianis, et bis amissa. Anglia interdictum passa est per annos circiter vii., et tantundem fere temporis guerram intestinam, et a rege Francorum procuratam et illatam, toleravit. Ipsa autem tandem facta est tributaria. Rex Anglorum Johannes Normanniam et multas alias terras[5] ultramarinas cum jam amiserat, et[6] Angliam papæ Innocentio III. subjugaverat, in extremis laborans, nihil[7] terræ pacifice possedit. Unde, juxta multorum

fol. 149 b.

Marvellous events in this half-century, *viz.*: Incursion of the Tartars. Defeat of the Moors in Spain. Appearance of a Crucifix in the air. Schism of the Greek church. Damietta twice captured and lost. Interdict and civil war in England. King John loses his continental dominions.

[1] *climata*] climita, MS.

[2] *et vexillum . . . peremptus est*] On an erasure.

[3] *crucifixus Dominus*] At first written *Dominus* only.

[4] *scismatizante*] Written on a small slip of vellum pasted over an erasure.

[5] *terras*] Added to the text.

[6] *et*] On an erasure.

[7] *nihil*] nichil, MS.

A.D. 1250. prænostica, mortuus est[1] in summa cordis amaritudine.

Ordeal of fire and water forbidden. Prohibitum est judicium, quod solebat fieri per ignem et aquam. Several bishoprics held by a person not a bishop. Permissum est impudenter uni personæ fructus plurium episcopatuum recipere, et tamen episcopum non esse.[2] Usurers allowed in England. Permissum est, ut in Anglia, et maxime Londoniis, ut[3] habitent Christiani usurarii, et sub nomine mercatorum papalium palliari; quos populos Caursinos appellant. No rector permitted to succeed to his father, or hold two benefices. Prohibitum est, ne quis ecclesiæ rector patri suo, rectori ecclesiæ, succedat immediate; et ne quis duos redditus possideat. Sed papa cum multis talibus non patrissantibus[4] dispensavit. Illegitimi quoque simili modo legitimantur. Louis of France elected king of England. Electus est ab Anglis in regem et dominum, filius regis Francorum Philippi, Ludowicus, patris sui primogenitus[5] et heres; sed in superbiam erectus, a pactis resilivit fere optinens.[6] Ludouuicus tamen, fidei et promissorum transgressor, inglorius recessit. The emperors Otho and Frederic excommunicated. Otto et Fretharicus, imperatores Romanorum, papæ rebelles, excommunicantur et cassantur, et turpiter obierunt.[7] The Templars and Hospitallers defeated. Capti,[8] occisi sunt et dissipati conventus Templi, Hospitalis, Sanctæ Mariæ Theutonicorum, et Sancti Lazari, bis. Jerusalem twice destroyed. Et civitas sancta Jerusalem, cum suis ecclesiis et locis, Christi præsentia consecratis, bis destructa, nunc a Chorosminis, nunc a Babiloniæ Soldano exterminata. Two eclipses of the sun, and other atmospheric phenomenon. Eclipsis solis bis contigit per triennium; et aliud mirabile signum apparuit, prout evidenter describitur in hoc libro, anno gratiæ M°.CC°.XXX°III°. Frequent earthquakes. Terræmotus in Anglia pluries. In partibus Sabaudiæ v. villæ, cum suis

[1] *multorum . . . mortuus est*] On an erasure.

[2] *Permissum est . . . non esse*] This paragraph is marked "*vacat*" in the margin, in red letters.

[3] *ut*] Interlined.

[4] *non patrissantibus*] Written on a slip of vellum pasted over an erasure in the original text.

[5] *primogenitus*] promogenitus, MS.

[6] *Sed in . . . optinens*] On an erasure. The sense seems imperfect.

[7] *et turpiter obierunt*] The first and third of these words are on an erasure, and the second added in marg.

[8] *Capti*] On an erasure.

ecclesiis, domibus et incolis, montibus conglomeratis sunt subversæ. Maris ascensus factus est insolitus et dampnosus, qualis non est prævisus. Una noctium visæ sunt stellæ cadere, ita quod semel x. vel amplius. Item, in bello commisso apud Bovenas, die vii. Dormientium, scilicet Dominica, imperator Otho prostratus de equo et iterum vix insellatus, victus fugit, cum omnibus suis. Et Hugo de Boves, cum omnibus suis ex alia parte, et cito post submersus in mari. Rex quoque Francorum Philippus, equo prostratus, vix a mortis discrimine liberatus est; victor tamen et voti compos a campo recessit. Capti vero ibidem sunt Saresbiriæ, Flandriæ et Bononiæ comites præclari; et omnes complices regis Anglorum J[ohannis] confusi. Comes quoque Pelu, et omnes qui venerant cum imperatore, vel victi vel capti fuerunt ignominiose.[1] Concilium generale bis celebratum est, Romæ scilicet[2] et Lugduni. In ultimo cassatus est imperator Fretherieus. In mari, non procul a Janua, captus est Otto cardinalis, quondam legatus in Anglia, cum pluribus archiepiscopis, episcopis, abbatibus, prælatis et clericis quamplurimis, necnon et Januensibus multis ducatum prestituris. Wallia quoque,[3] Leolino, principe suo, viduata, et postea duobus filiis suis, legitimo David[4] et naturali Griffino, præmatura morte occumbentibus, legibus Angliæ et dominatui regis incurvatur. Wasconia quoque recalcitrans, per comitem Legrecestriæ Simonem edomatur. Rex Henricus III. bis, ut jura sua ultramarina adquireret, transfretavit; sed Fretherici falsis promissionibus delusus, nihil profecit in suo proposito, scilicet, ut ea[5] in manu forti reposceret, cum exercitu

A.D. 1250.

Inundations of the sea. Falling stars.

Battle of Bovines. 27 July.

A General Council twice celebrated.

Cardinal Otho and other prelates captured at sea.

Wales subjected to the English rule.

Gascony subdued.

Henry III. fails to recover his continental territories.

---

[1] *Item in bello . . . ignominiose*] Added on to the text in the lower margin.

[2] *scilicet*] silicet, MS.

[3] *Wallia quoque*] On an erasure.

[4] *David*] On an erasure.

[5] *adquireret . . . ut ea*] Written over an erasure. After *sed*, the words *per imperato[rem]* were at first written, but subsequently expuncted.

A.D. 1250. Great part of Spain subdued by the king of Castille. Friesland and Russia conquered by the king of Denmark. The pope exiled from Rome. The Templars accused of treachery. The papal chair vacant a year and nine months. Three popes filled the see within two years. Cardinal Robert de Sumercote poisoned. Innocent IV. excommunicates the emperor. General Council held at Lyons, where Frederic is deposed. The Landgrave of Thuringia and William count of Holland elected in his place. Prelates compelled to provide

bis transfretavit, et bis inglorius remeavit. Magna pars Hispaniæ, cum suis nobilibus civitatibus Corduba et Sibilla, et multis aliis urbibus et insulis, cultui Christiano et regi Castellæ mancipatur. In partibus autem aquilonaribus, ampla pars Frisiæ et Rusciæ per regem Daciæ Æthelmarum Christianis inhabitatur, expulsis infidelibus. Papa velut exul et profugus, persequente imperatore Fretherico, et expulsus ab urbe, latitans nunc Agnaniæ, nunc Perusii,[1] nunc aliis commoratur civitatibus. Imposuit enim ipse[2] imperator F[rethericus] papæ, quod cum Deo in Terra Sancta militaret, sibi imperium niteretur subjugare. Templarios quoque, de proditione accusatos,[3] idem imperator persequebatur. Post obitum Gregorii, papæ, vacavit sedes papalis per annum et ix. menses. Tres apostolici viri sederunt infra duos annos. Unus quoque cardinalis, omnibus præstantior, Anglicus natione, magister scilicet Robertus de Sumercote, dum de[4] electione tractaretur in palatio, quod dicitur Regia Solis, obiit, ut dicitur, potionatus; cœptis tamen residui insistebant.[5] Tandem electus Sinebaldus cardinalis, qui et dictus Innocentius IIII.; sequens sui prædecessoris vestigia, ipsum imperatorem F[rethericum] excommunicavit et persequebatur; fugiensque de loco ad locum, tandem Lugdunum pervenit, ubi, concilio generali celebrato, ipsum deposuit. Et, post ejusdem F[retherici] depositionem elegit ecclesia dominum[6] Andegravium de Duringia, et postea Willelmum, comitem Holandiæ, nitebatur subrogare; sed uno mortuo, alio victo, minime adhuc[7] profecit in proposito. Suspenduntur prælati a collatione beneficiorum, donec satisfiant illis pro quibus

[1] *Perusii*] Perisii, MS.

[2] *ipse*] Repeated by error, but underscored for omission in the second instance.

[3] *accusatos*] acusatos, MS.

[4] *de*] Interlined.

[5] *dum de . . . . insistebant*] On an erasure.

[6] *post ejusdem . . . dominum*] On an erasure, and no doubt written at first, as in B. C., *extorta ab ecclesiæ prælatis impudenter infinita pecunia.*

[7] *adhuc*] Added to the text.

papa scribit, ut illis in beneficiis uberibus provideatur, A.D. 1250
ita quod ad tantam pecuniæ quantitatem ascenderunt, benefices for the pope's nominees.
fol. 150 *a.* ut regii redditus creduntur æstimari.[1] Fratres Prædicatores et Minores, ex præcepto domini papæ urgente et obedientia cogente, officium subeunt in negotiis papalibus peragendis. Quibus a domino papa conceditur potestas supra præcellentes ecclesiarum, tam cathedralium quam conventualium, prælatos. Quod, paucis elapsis annis, videlicet triginta, non credidimus posse evenire. Multi[2] sancti in Anglia, et præcipue sanctus Edmundus,[3] archiepiscopus[4] et confessor, sollempniter canonizatus, apud Pontiniacum choruscat miraculis. Sanctus Robertus heremita apud Knareburc virtutibus claret manifestis. Episcopus quoque Londoniensis Rogerus, et alii plures in Anglia, et sancta Elizabeth in Alemannia, filia regis Hungariæ, vidua; necnon et sancta Hildegardis, prophetissa, signis insignibus decorantur. Insuper in eisdem partibus ecclesia militans sanctas novæ religionis quasdam mulieres producit, quas

The Orders of Preachers and Minorites favoured by the pope.

Many Saints in England.

St. Elizabeth and St. Hildegardis in Germany.

---

[1] *illis . . . æstimari*] On an erasure. Instead of *ut* (inserted by a recent hand) before *regii*, the word *quantitatem* was at first repeated, and then erased. After this sentence, in the lower margin is written with a plummet, " Plurimorum Ordinum fratres floruerunt, Prædicatores, Minores, Cruciferi, Carmeliani, Begewini."

[2] *Multi*] The small capital letter has been omitted to be filled in.

[3] *Fratres . . . Edmundus*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, half erased, and partly added in the margin, which reads thus: *Papa de ipsis, licet aliquibus invitis, suos facit theo[l]oneareos et legatos transformatos et nuncios secretos, atque moriturorum vel mortuorum in testamentis executores. Insuper collectarum in negotio Crucis potentes executores, et in prædicationibus quæstores, et pecuniarum multiformes exactores. Unde in pluribus sanctitas et fama primitiva videret expirare, nisi violentia obedientiæ ipsos excusaret, qui propter obedientiam optemperarunt. Sanctus Ædmundus, Cantuariensis archi.* Cf. ed. Wats, p. 805. In the lower margin five lines have also been written with a plummet, but only a part can now be read, as follows: *nobilis sedes Cant. in qua sederunt sancti prælecti, ut Alphegus, Anselmus, Lanfrancus, Ricardus, Edmundus, viri sanctissimi, ad libitum regis aliis prioribus dissimilibus contradix . . . . electoribus . . . . possidenda.*

[4] *archiepiscopus*] episcopus, MS., as now left.

A.D. 1250. Rise of the Beguines. The church of Westminster rebuilt by Henry III. Gifts made to the church. Various heresies are put down in Italy. The Cistercians found a school at Paris.

populus nominat Beguinas, continentiæ, orationum et jejuniorum virtutibus insignitas. Reædificatur ecclesia Westmonasterii, sumptibus domini regis Henrici III.; et feretrum aureum, ad opus sancti Edwardi, gemmis et artificio pretiosissimum, ejusdem regis sumptibus fabricatur. Vasa autem carissima et admiratione digna, olosericis et gemmis, cum novis cartis et libertatibus, necnon et nundinis,[1] ab eodem rege eidem ecclesiæ conferuntur. Albigensium, Jovinianorum, et multorum Ytalicorum hæreses, quæ pullulaverunt, diligentia vigilantissima prælatorum, fratrum Prædicatorum et Minorum, necnon et[2] miraculis, quibus choruscabant, qui in hac diligentia prædicando, disputando, convertendo et docendo fideliter decertarunt, et pro eadem causa feliciter occubuerunt, exsufflantur.[3] Monachi Ordinis Cisterciensis, ne propter eorum simplicitatem contemptui a viris literatis et scolas exercentibus[4] haberentur, qui in eosdem probra congesserunt, ita ut ipsos bubulcos et ovium tonsores appellarent, salubre sibi[5] remedium procurarunt. Procurante enim abbate Clarevallis, natione Anglico, constructa est Parisius nobilissima mansio, ubi ipsi monachi decenter et honeste conversari possunt et studere, ita ut confluant ad ipsos scolarium numerosa multitudo, qui in theologia, decretis[6] et libris moralibus non minimum profecerunt, de re publica sustentati; licet legamus de sancto Benedicto, quod[7] relictis literarum studiis, ut[8] liberius orationi et con-

[1] *necnon et nundinis*] On a slip of vellum pasted over the original text, which reads, *utinam non in aliorum læsionem.*

[2] *et*] Added in marg.

[3] *exsufflantur*] exuflantur, MS., added in marg.

[4] *exercentibus*] excercentibus, MS.

[5] *sibi*] In the text *si*, but corr. in marg.

[6] *decretis*] decreti, MS.

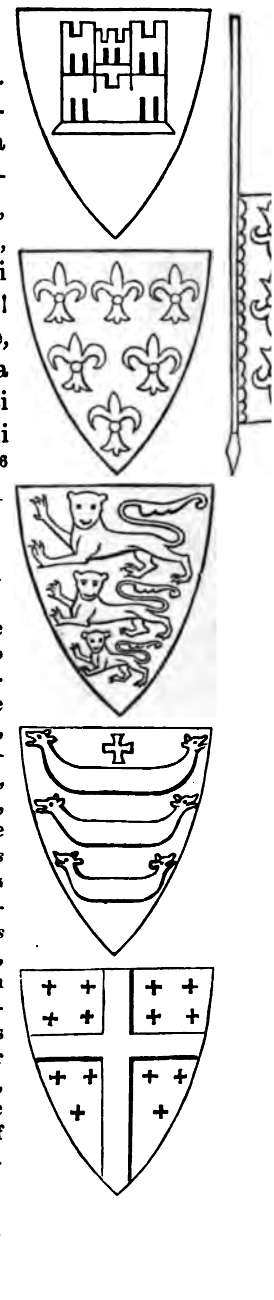
[7] *quod*] Added in marg.

[8] *diligentia vigilantissima . . . . studiis, ut*] The whole of this is written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, which has been partly erased, but can still be read, as follows: *destruuntur. Tepuit fidelium omnium tam cleri quam populi devotio, immo potius exasperatum est odium contra Romanam ecclesiam, adeo quod Fretherieus,*

.D. 1250. templationi vacaret, [deserta][1] petere decrevisset. Hæc autem novitas adinventa[2] est propter moderni temporis malitiam, ut obstruatur[3] os iniqua loquentium.[4] Sarracenis ad votum multotiens triumphantibus, Christianorum generalis exercitus, videlicet Francorum, rege præsente, Templariorum, Hospitaliarorum, Theutonicorum, fratrum Sancti Lazari et incolarum Terræ Sanctæ, proh dolor! vincitur, captivatur, trucidatur. Rex Angliæ, H[enricus] III., crucesignatur, et multi in Anglia nobiles cum illo; in Francia in multo plures. Multi quoque reges crucesignantur[5] in diversis mundi partibus, rex scilicet Hispaniæ, et rex Norwagiæ.[6]

...feat of the French ...y by the ...racens.

...any sovereigns and ...les take the cross.



---

licet suspecta in fide persona, omnium fere Christianorum favorem habuerit, in odium Romanæ curiæ. Rex Norwagiæ Haco, antea princeps, in regem unctus coronatur. Monachi Cisterciences, ex dispensatione papali, constructis competentibus ædificiis Parisius et alibi, ubi viget scolarium universitas, student; et hoc factum est, ne amplius Prædicatoribus, de sua scientia jactantibus, contemptui habeantur. Nobilis sedes Cantuariensis, suorum prædecessorum archipræsulum illustrata sanctitate, viluit omnibus odiosa, eo quod causa vel occasio fuisse videbatur multorum et magnorum malorum in Anglia, videlicet, interdicti generalis, tributi et guerræ, et ultimo, quod, spretis viris sanctis et indigenis, alienigenam insufficientem, Bonefacium, sibi in pastorem suarum animarum, in archipræsulem Cantuariensem, et totius Angliæ primatem incircumspectius sibi monachi elegerunt. Unde idem archiepiscopus . . . . to factus est flagellum totius . . . . . . Cf. ed. Wats, p. 806.

[1] *deserta*] Supplied from a previous passage in p. 57.

[2] *adinventa*] adinvenita, MS.

[3] *obstruatur*] obstrua, MS.

[4] *liberius . . . loquentium*] Written on an erasure.

[5] In the margin are drawn five shields of arms of sovereigns who had taken the cross, in the following order: 1, gules, a castle or triple tower argent, with the inscription, "*Scutum regis Castellæ, cruce signati;*" 2, azure, six fleurs-de-lis, 3, 2, 1, or, with a banner reversed, by the side, bearing azure, three fleurs-de-lis or, "*Scutum regis Francorum, sed vexillum prostratum in bello;*" 3, gules, three lions passant gardant or, "*Scutum regis Anglorum, cruce signati;*" 4, gules, three gallies or, the first of which bears a cross, "*Scutum regis Norwagiæ, cruce signati;*" 5, or, a cross argent between fourteen smaller crosses, "*Scutum regis Jerusalem, cognomento Bresne.*" All these shields have a crown by the side of each, and each is surmounted by a red cross.

[6] *in diversis . . . Norwagiæ*] On an erasure. Some words by the side are also erased.

A.D. 1250. Siege of Antioch. Deaths of many noble crusaders.

Antiochia artatur, quam Turci obsident, facto usque ad muros exterminio. Migraverunt autem ad Christum hoc anno nimis letali, pro Dei hereditate adquirenda decertantes fideliter, relictis natali patria, uxoribus et liberis, consanguineis et amicis, nobiles infiniti, præcipue autem de Francorum regione, quos constat esse martires gloriosos, et eorum nomina, quæ propter sui multitudinem hoc volumine scribi nequeunt, in libro vitæ titulo indelebili suis profecto meritis annotantur. Hæc autem mirabilia et novitates, quæ nec visa nec audita, immo nec scripta [1] reperiuntur a cunctis patrum nostrorum retroactis temporibus, in hujus ultimæ annorum quadragenæ [2] tempore contigerunt.[3]

Operis hujus finalis conclusio.

Proposed termination of the Chronicles of Matthew Paris.

Hic terminantur fratris Mathei Parisiensis, monachi Sancti Albani, Cronica. Quæ pro utilitate posteritatis subsecuturæ, et amore Dei, et beati Albani, Anglorum prothomartiris, honore, ne memoriam eventuum modernorum vetustas aut oblivio deleret, literis commendavit. Creditur quoque non vacare a significatione, quod omnia hoc ultimo anno elementa insolitum et irregulare passa sunt detrimentum. Ignis, quia nuper, transacta nocte Natalis Domini, fulgur, quod est ignis, terribiliter emicuit, contra naturæ cursum consuetum. Aer, quia innaturalis tonitrus et intempestivus reboavit [4] eadem nocte in episcopatu Norwicensi, et in [5] confiniis audientes perterruit aera perturbando. Mare, quia solitas metas transgrediens, loca contermina de-

Disturbance of all the elements in this last year.

¶ *Ignis.* ¶ *Aer.* ¶ *Aqua.*

---

[1] *immo nec scripta*] On an erasure.

[2] *quadragenæ*] So also B. C. In Edd. altered to *quinquagenæ*.

[3] In the margin is here added the following note: "Pascha in suo loco anno quinquagesimo evenit. Hoc nunquam ante." On which the bishop of Lincoln [John Russell] remarks, "Mentiris!"

[4] *reboavit*] On an erasure.

[5] *in*] Supplied from B. C.

vastavit. Terra, quia in Anglia, immo etiam in Ciltria, quæ cretosa est et solida, pluries contigit terræmotus. A.D. 1250 ¶ *Terra.*

Versus.

Virginis a partu jam mille volumina Phœbus,
Cum bis centenis et quinquaginta peregit
Annua; sed visum [1] non est sub tempore tanto,
Aprilis sexto fuerit quod Pascha kalendas,
Dum quinquagenus orbem percurreret annus,
Hoc tamen evenit anno, cui terminus hic est.

fol. 150 *b.* Terminantur hic Mathei
Cronica, nam Jubilei
Anni dispensatio
Tempus spondet requiei;
Detur ergo quies [2] ei,
Hic, et cœli solio.

Hucusque scripsit frater Matheus Parisiensis.[3]

Siste tui metas studii, Mathee, quietas,
Nec ventura petas, quæ postea proferet ætas.[4]

---

[1] On this word the bishop of Lincoln has made the following note: "Erras, Mathee, erras nimis, quia is idem casus accidit a°. d¹. clxxxvi. et a°. d¹. DCCXVIII. et a°. d¹. DCCLXV. et a°. d¹. DCCCXCVII. et multis aliis annis. Mirum est, quod Matheus ita volebat scribere, quia, inspecto kalendario in mense Marcii, patet quod quociensoumque *b.* est litera dominicalis, et luna currit per xvi., per v., per xiii., aut ii., oportet ut Pascha cadat vi^to^. kalendas Aprilis, ubi scribitur *Resurrectio Domini*, per hanc regulam,

'Post nonas Martis, ubi sit nova luna requiras,
Inde dies Domini tercia Pascha tenet.'

Jo. LINCOLN."

This censure is ill-founded (as proved by Selden in his *Notæ*, in ed. Wats, for Matthew Paris does not say that Easter had never fallen on the 6 kal. Apr. [27 March], but that in no quinquagenary year (such as 1050, 1150, etc.) since the birth of Christ had Easter fallen on that day.

[2] *quies*] ques, MS.

[3] *Parisiensis*] Pariensis, MS.

[4] Here ends the Cottonian MS. Nero D. V. (marked C.)

A.D. 1251.

Dominus rex fuit apud Wintoniam ad Natale Domini. De tonitru hiemali intempestivo.

Henry keeps Christmas at Winchester.

Anno Domini M°.CC°.LI°., qui est annus regni domini regis Henrici III. xxx^{us}v^{us}., fuit idem dominus rex ad Natale Domini apud Wintoniam. Et quia sedes episcopalis vacabat, et ad eandem promovendus erat[1] Æthelmarus, frater ejus, cohibuit manus suas,[2] ne bona distraheret episcopatus, ut solebat; verumtamen, quia ægre dediscitur usus, partem silvarum[3] præcepit abscidi et vendi, et inde pecuniam ærario suo addi accumulandam, licet satis ei diceretur, quod peregrinaturis et Deo militaturis talis rapina nullatenus fuerat profutura.

His conduct in regard to the vacant see.

Pronosticum.

A thunderstorm on Christmas day prognosticates evil.

Nocte autem Natalis, in signum, ut timebatur, iræ Domini, tonitrua horribilia nimis, per episcopatum præcipue Norwicensem et confinia, reboarunt, choruscationes terribiles emicuerunt, et intempestiva aeris perturbatio auribus audientium et cordibus intelligentium maximum timorem incussit pariter et horrorem. Dicebantque augurantes, hoc in triste pronosticum secundum plebeiam[4] opinionem evenisse.[5]

Rex solito parcior effectus in distribuendis[6] festivis indumentis. Factusque est rex amator auri.[7]

He omits to give festive gar-

Eisdemque diebus dominus rex de peregrinationis suæ viaticis sollicitus et solito parcior effectus, prout

[1] *promovendus erat*] On an erasure.

[2] *manus suas*] On an erasure.

[3] *partem silvarum*] On an erasure.

[4] *plebeiam*] plebeam, MS.

[5] *secundum . . . . evenisse*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over an erasure.

[6] *distribuendis*] distribuendiis, MS.

[7] This chapter, and the one following, are written on a piece of vellum pasted down over the original text, much erased, but still legible, as follows: (*Rubric totally erased.*) *Eodemque celeber-*

consueverat, festiva indumenta in Nataliciis sollempnitatibus minime distribuit. Et qui videbantur in regia diariis cotidianis refici superflue, tam milites quam servientes, jussit ad tempus, ut sic thesaurus suus susciperet incrementum, subtractos amoveri. Et quia noverat se iturum in partes orientales, ubi aurum cedit in monetam, mercimonia et præmia stipendiariorum in expeditione militantium, aureos cœpit desiderare et colligere. Unde magnates regia gratia indigentes, jam tam in aureis quam argenteis sibi xenia pretiosa facere studuerunt. A.D. 1251. ments at Christmas, and diminishes his household. He collects gold from the nobles.

De quibusdam factis in imperio.[1]

Tempore quoque sub eodem tres vel iiii^or. ad minus de qualibet civitate Ytaliæ, et aliqui de civitatibus Apuliæ Fretherico adversantibus, in carceribus sunt[2] detenti, quos omnes proditores suos et rebelles vocare solebat. Mortuoque[3] Fretherico, missi sunt omnes ad The prisoners taken by the emperor are sent to Palermo.

---

rimo festo, licet omnes prædecessores sui indumenta regalia et jocalia pretiosa soliti fuissent distribuere, ipse tamen rex, forte de sua peregrinatione sollicitus, et iccirco factus parcus, nulla penitus distribuit. Immo cum abbatibus et clericis et viris humilibus hospitia quæsivit et prandia, moraturus et munera postulaturus. Nec jam civilis habebatur, qui regi et regalibus hospitia et prandia ministraret, licet sumptuosa, nisi muneribus nobilibus et magnis regem ipsum et aulicos suos respectos honoraret. Immo nec erubuit ipsa quasi debita postulare. Cum Roberto quoque Passelowe, quem nuper obprobriis in capella sua apud Westmonasterium turpibus lacessivit, prandens dominus rex, amplis est respectus muneribus. Nec appretiebantur (sic) *aulici et regales donativa, nisi pretiosa et sumptuosa, utpote palefridos desiderabiles, cup[p]as aureas vel argenteas deauratas, monilia cum gemmis prælectis, et zonis imperialibus, et consimilia. Et facta est curia regalis Romanæ consimilis, in quæstu pro meretrice sedens vel prostans veracius;* nearly as in B. and ed. Wats, p. 807.

[1] This is the rubric prefixed, but at the lower corner of the slip of vellum, on which the two last chapters are written, another rubric is added, *De statu imperii*, which is superfluous.

[2] *carceribus sunt*] The second word and last two syllables of the first are on an erasure.

[3] *que*] Added in marg.

A.D. 1251. Palernam, civitatem Siciliæ, ut ibi tutius custodirentur, a Conrado, filio F[retherici]. Et hoc de consilio patris, dum in extremis ageret. Aliqui tamen captivorum dati sunt Henrico,[1] filio F[retherici] et nepoti domini regis Angliæ, quos tradidit Conrado custodiendos. Inter quos incarceratos fuit filius marchisii Montis-Ferrati, qui commutabilis fuit pro Ensio, filio F[retherici], quem Bononienses adhuc captivum retinebant. Cœperunt igitur filii et amici F[retherici] roborari, et roborati calcaneum contra papam levare; et sic, amputato uno capite, more Ydræ, quam Hercules occidisse dicitur, multa capita succreverunt. Erat autem Conradus, quia filius fuit filiæ regis Jerusalem, Johannis de Bresne, militis invictissimi, et ipse Conradus[2] miles strenuissimus, omnibus de imperio formidabilis. Et Henricus, frater ejus,[3] quia filius fuit imperatricis[4] Ysabellæ, omnibus amabilis, et nepos Christianissimi regis Angliæ, universis imperialibus extitit carissimus. Erat insuper uterque elegans et[5] speciosus. Henricus autem, secundum suæ ætatis exigentiam, prudens et civilis, et nobilium amator specialis;[6] unde ecclesia, multiplicatis persecutoribus, non mediocriter periclitabatur, dampna multiformia tolerando. Eratque præteritorum infortuniorum recordatio quasi spina in oculo, omnibus papæ consentientibus. Henricus enim Raspe, Andegravius Duringiæ, quem papa proposuerat in imperatorem sullimare, et pro cujus promotione infinitam effuderat pecuniam, periit in mortem præcipitatus. Post mortem cujus, in loco

A son of the marquis of Monferrat is exchanged for Ensius, son of Frederic.

Characters of Conrad and Henry, sons of the emperor.

Ill success of the papal party in the election of an emperor.

---

[1] *Henrico*] Henrio, MS.

[2] *Conradus*] Superfluous, but so also in B.

[3] *frater ejus*] On an erasure.

[4] *imperatricis*] ymperatricis, MS.

[5] *elegans et*] After this word was added in the margin, *pro sua ætate*, but afterwards erased.

[6] *Henricus . . . specialis*] Written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, partially erased, which reads, *Papa vero, tum propter curiæ suæ (?) avaritiam, tum propter sui generis aviditatem, exosus omnibus habebatur*, nearly as in B. (ed. Wats, p. 807).

ejusdem H.[1] electus est comes Gelrensis; sed mortem ignominiosam prioris considerans, recusavit. Post hunc dux Brabantiæ, qui et Lotharingiæ, sed et ipse refutavit.[2] Post hunc comes Ricardus, frater domini regis Angliæ, qui et onus renuit et pericula. Post quem, elegit papa Willelmum, Holandiæ comitem. Qui temere consensit, et jam, omnibus amissis, ad suam terram, quam fratri suo reliquerat et dederat, est[3] repulsus; unde muscipulas et promissiones papales detestans, mendicare cogebatur. A.D. 1251.

Mota est discordia inter duos potentissimos Soldanos Sarracenorum.

Discord between the Soldans of Aleppo and Babylon.

Letter from the Master of the Hospital.

Diebus autem sub eisdem mota est discordia inter duos Sarracenorum potentissimos, scilicet Alapiensium et Babiloniorum Soldanos, quæ discordia spem de sua tribulatione Christianis generavit. Super quo, ut melius certificaremur, literas a Magistro Hospitalis suscepimus, sub hac forma. Respice in libro Additamentorum, ad fol. 151 *a.* hoc signum ƆHC.[4] Qui enim Soldanum Babiloniæ interfecerat, in tantum elatus est superbiam, quod omnes ad iram commovit orientales. Ipse enim Soldanus vir fuerat discretus et modestus, et suæ legis zelator indefessus. Et cum graviter redargueretur super hoc, quod regem Francorum vivum et redemptum abire permisisset, sic dicitur respondisse, "Amici, scitis quoniam omnium Christianorum nobilissimus est ille. Si igitur occideretur, consanguinei ejus et successores toto spiritu anhelarent[5] ad vindictam. Præterea, suam

The Soldan of Babylon blamed for allowing the king of France to be ransomed.

---

[1] *H.*] The count of Gueldres at this period was named *Otho.* His brother *Henry* was made bishop of Liege in 1247. See Pertz, "Monumenta Germanica," x. 396.

[2] *refutavit*] On an erasure.

[3] *est*] Interlined.

[4] *in libro Additamentorum*] The same reference is given in B. (ed. Wats, p. 808), and the Letter is printed by Wats, p. 191, from MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 121.

[5] *anhelarent*] hanelarent, MS.

A.D. 1251. penitus amisissem redemptionem. Sufficiat igitur nobis, Machometo propitio, tanta tanti regis confusio; victus est,[1] captus est, redemptus est, nec erat notabilis qui evaderet. Corporibus, armis eorum et equis gaudemus, et de victoria, quæ omnem thesaurum exsuperat,[2] gloriamur." Hæc autem responsio, cum non sufficeret protervientibus, immo magis accenderet, ut dicerent, "Mentiris! immo, si ipsum regem Francorum interfecisses, omnibus per sæcula occidentalibus formidini essemus et honori, sed avaritia excæcavit te." percussus Soldanus interiit. Hujus quoque mors significata est comiti Ricardo, ut præscriptum est,[3] sed modus mortis ipsum latuit atque causa. Et sic commovebantur Orientales universi. Rex autem Francorum omnia adversa patienter tolerans, cumque silentio[4] apud Acchon commorans, misericordiamque Dei præstolabatur, fratres suos, ut prætactum est, pro succursu in partes Cisalpinas destinando, precibus[5] pulsavit præcordialibus, ut, in solamen et succursum Terræ Sanctæ, collectioni armatorum et pecuniæ insisterent diligenter. Sed ipsi præteriti memores infortunii, et mandatum tepide exequebantur atque distulerunt, adeo ut nolle viderentur, secundum illud Philosophicum,[6] "Diu noluit, qui diu distulit."[7]

He is put to death.

The brothers of Louis, sent to obtain aid for the Holy Land, neglect to do so.

De peremptis. Nota numerum.[8]

Numerus interfectorum in exercitu Francorum per superbiam comitis Atrabatensis R[oberti], fratris regis Francorum, sexaginta milia armatorum, et viginti

[1] *victus est*] Added in marg.

[2] *exsuperat*] exuperat, MS.

[3] *est*] Interlined.

[4] *cumque silentio*] At first written, *cum silentio.*

[5] *precibus*] In the margin has been written with a plummet, *anxcios precibus sollicitavit.*

[6] *Philosophicum*] Philosoficum, MS. This quotation has occurred previously. See p. 34.

[7] *precibus . . . distulit*] Written over an erasure.

[8] This short chapter and the next are added in the lower margin, (as also in B.,) with a reference

milia et amplius, exceptis submersis, fugitivis, dispersis, A.D. 1251.
et eis qui se ultro hostibus reddiderunt, qui cito post apostatarunt, et plus aliis nocuerunt.[1]

Summa redemptionis.

Summa redemptionis regis Francorum, quasi Deo irato, non multum dissidet a numero interfectorum, scilicet sexaginta milia librarum auri primi et purissimi, exceptis aliis denariis communibus, scilicet sterlingis Turonensibus et Parisiensibus, qui ad infinitum numerum ascendunt. Occisio evenit anno gratiæ M°.CC°.L. Redemptio sequenti anno, scilicet, M°.CC°.LI°., est soluta, ita videlicet, quod satisfactum est inde.

Qualiter rex tunc prohibuit, ne Judæi comederent carnes feria vi^a., vel in Quadragesima.

The Jews are driven out of France.

Tempore quoque sub eodem, cum idem dominus rex Francorum, inter cetera proba quæ sustinuit, reprehensionem amaram audisset, ex eo quod[2] Christiani Judæos, qui Christum crucifixerunt, inter se conversari paterentur cum eisdem etiam communicando, præcepit Judæos a regno suo irrevocabiliter exulare, et a finibus suis amoveri remotius. Sed quia dictum fuit, quod non placet Domino nostro Jhesu Christo, ut penitus de sub cælo deleantur, sed sint in signum instar Caym

to the text after the words *Orientales universi*, but I have preferred inserting them here. In ed. Wats, p. 807, they are introduced into the text higher up, where they are certainly out of place, and the first no doubt refers to the defeat of the French in 1250. See *ante*, p. 84. A portion of the second of these chapters has been originally written in the margin, with a reference to the word *gloriamur*, and afterwards erased. In the MS. the authority is added on which they are given, namely, "Secundum assertionem Magistri Templi in Scocia," but this is omitted in B.

[1] *nocuerunt*] nocuerunt Christianis, B.

[2] *ex eo quod*] On an erasure.

A.D. 1251. maledicti, ne quandoque obliviscantur, nec omnino occidantur, jussit ut paucissimi sub solita captivitate reservarentur, ut eorum miseria toti mundo pateat continuata. Quod cum domino regi Anglorum innotuisset, vix se continuit, ne similia de ipsis imperasset. Sed cum diceretur ei, quod detestabilius erat falsos Christianos, scilicet Caursinos usurarios, qui de protectione domini papæ gratulantur impinguati, hos et illos ægra mente toleravit, ne videretur in Judæorum omnimoda exstirpatione Deum offendisse, et Caursinorum effugatione ipsum papam aliquatenus provocasse. Verumtamen districte jussit, ne quis Judæus extunc carnes in Quadragesima vel vi.[1] feria comedere præsumeret. Et si quis regale edictum ac præceptum generale transgrederetur, tam corporaliter quam pecunialiter[2] graviter puniretur.

Henry wishes to follow this example, but is dissuaded from it.

He orders that no Jew should eat meat on Friday or during Lent.

Rediens Guido, frater regis, venit in Angliam.

Return of Guy, uterine brother of the king, to England.

Et dum adhuc solempnitas dierum Nataliciorum[3] continuaretur,[4] advenit Guido, frater domini regis Angliæ, de partibus Terræ Sanctæ, festinus valde; nescitur si de prælio fugitivus. Honestius tamen dici potest, quod de custodia Damiatæ, post pacem formatam, prudenter et licenter est elapsus. Hic cum pauper in Anglia applicuisset, equos abbatis de Fevershamia, licet eodem abbate invito, ascendit, et veniens ad regem, fratrem suum, sacculos suos vacuos approbata moneta implevit. Si autem equos abbatis remiserit, novit abbas. In ipsum autem Guidonem et in alios fratres ditandos, tot congessit rex thesauros, quod

His conduct to the abbat of Evesham.

Prodigality of the king to his brothers.

---

[1] *vi.*] On an erasure, by a later hand.

[2] *tam . . . . pecunialiter*] Originally written *tam pecunialiter quam corporaliter*, but marked to be transposed.

[3] *Nataliciorum*] Natalicorum, MS.

[4] *continuaretur*] At first written, *continuarentur*, but the last two syllables partly erased.

suum ærarium penitus exinanivit,[1] hujus immemor versiculi, A.D. 1251.

"Tu quovis caro carior esto tibi."

Papa Perusium venit, et ibi moratur.

Papa a Mediolano recedens Perusiumque perveniens, ibidem morabatur, quia datum fuit illi intelligi, quod si Romam perveniret, Romani exigerent ab eo inæstimabilem pecuniam quasi debitam, quia immutabiliter steterant[2] cum eo contra Fredericum, et sic multum thesaurum exposuerant.

The pope remains at Perugia.

Insidiantur multi regi Francorum.

Pisani et Januenses insidiantur regi Francorum, quem credebant per mare in Franciam rediturum. Quia cum primo in Damiatam intrassent, et ejus magnam partem occupassent, Franci supervenientes eosdem occuparunt[3] et procaciter affugarunt, et quæ adquisierant violenter abstulerunt;[4] et sic adversitates diversæ regem afflixerunt. Insuper navis, quæ suum sibi thesaurum[5] apportavit, onusta non procul ab Achon in mari est submersa.

Conspiracy of the Pisans and Genoese against the king of France.

Accusatus[6] comes Legrecestriæ eleganter respondit.[7]

Comes Legrecestriæ rediens a Wasconia, a Wasconensibus graviter accusatur, quod, scilicet, quosdam nobiles terræ illius quasi pacifice sed in dolo ad se convocatos, incarcerat et interimit. Quibus verbis comes inficiando

Reply of the earl of Leicester to the accusations made

[1] *exinanivit*] exinnavit, MS.

[2] *steterant*] At first written *steterunt*.

[3] *occuparunt*] occupare, MS., but *e* erased, and a blank space of three letters left.

[4] *abstulerunt*] obstulerunt, MS.

[5] *thesaurum*] thesarum, MS.

[6] *Accusatus*] Acusatus, MS.

[7] *respondit*] respondet, MS.

A.D. 1251. respondit coram rege in propatulo, "Domine, istorum proditio vobis satis nota et experta reddit illos incredibiles." Et sic, confusis accusatoribus, fortior ad certamen remeavit.

against him.

De "non obstante."

The odious clause 'Non obstante,' borrowed from the Roman Court.

Hæc detestabilis[1] adjectio "Non obstante"[2] a curia Romana derivata, ad curias laicorum extenditur, et sic de fontis sulphure rivus olet. Aliqui igitur laicorum, fol. 151 b. sed infidelium, exemplo Romanorum cartas suorum cassarunt progenitorum.

Redimuntur quidam, qui mortui credebantur.

Redemption of some nobles in the Holy Land.

Liberantur quidam nobilium in Terra Sancta a vinculis infidelium et evadunt, qui mortui fuisse in prælio credebantur, videlicet, Magister Hospitalis, cujus bulla donec redimeretur fuerat suspensa.

Henricus de Bathonia accusatur.[3]

Henry de Bath, the justiciary, is accused of treachery.

Henricus de Bathonia graviter accusatur et diffamatur, quod proditiose nimis suum peregisset officium justiciariæ. Et cum ipsum regem et multos alios habuisset adversarios, tandem, intermeantibus amicis, videlicet episcopo Londoniensi F[ulcone] et aliis uxoris suæ consanguineis, necnon et muneribus, liberatus est.

Comitissa de Harundellia fundavit domum sanctimonialium.

Foundation of the nunnery of

Fundatur quædam domus religiosarum sanctimonialium ab Ysabella, comitissa Harundelliæ, relicta comi-

[1] *detestabilis*] Originally written *detestabiles*, but *es* erased, and corr. in marg.

[2] *obstante*] ostante, MS.

[3] *accusatur*] acussatur, MS.

tis Harundelliæ, non procul a Len, sumptibus propriis et de libero maritagio. Quæ Marram dicitur.

A.D. 1251. Marram by Isabel, countess of Arundel.

Scandalum per archiepiscopum B[onefacium], propter visitationem.

Scandal occasioned on account of the quarrel between the abp. of Canterbury and the bp. of London.

Ortum est scandalum in ecclesia Anglicana, dum orta discordia inter archiepiscopum Cantuariensem B[onefacium] et episcopum Londoniensem et ejus canonicos ex [1] altera parte, dum sese quasi relativo odio persequentes diffamantur, et nunc hii nunc alii denunciantur excommunicati. Rex autem, quia ipsum creaverat, et quia genus suum formidabat, et regina, quia ejus extitit avunculus, dissimulantes tacuerunt. Papa, qui persecutionem toleravit, noluit sibi plures inimicos suscitare. Et sic justitia detrimentum passa [est] [2] manifestum.

Confirmatur Ælmarus, frater regis, in episcopatum Wintoniensem.

Æthelmar is confirmed in the see of Winchester.

Confirmatus est in episcopum Wintoniensem Æthelmarus, frater regis, non obstante juventute vel alia insufficientia, papali indulgente paternitate; procurante tamen hæc omnia urgenter regis vigili diligentia. Sed ne videretur dominus papa in sterili litore sine messis utilitate seminasse, ilico exegit a rege provideri filio regis [3] Burgundiæ cuidam pueruło, in redditu marcarum quingentarum.

---

[1] *ex*] et, MS.

[2] *est*] Supplied to complete the sense.

[3] *regis*] A mistake for *comitis*, (as in B.). The person alluded to was Jean le Sage, Sire de Salins, who assumed the title of Count of Burgundy. In the "Liber Additamentorum" [MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 93 *b*] are Letters of Innocent IV. to the archbishop of Canterbury, to provide a benefice of 300 marks for Robert, clerk, son of this John, count of Burgundy. In the Transcripts from the Vatican in MS. Add. 15,356, fol. 355, these letters are dated Lyons, 4 Oct. [1250].

A.D. 1251.

Obiit Willelmus de Cantelupo.

Death of William de Cantelupe.

Tempore sub eodem obiit Willelmus de Cantelupo, vir quidam potens et miles strenuus, et regni fidelis amicus, frater episcopi Vigorniensis. Patri autem successit filius ejus Willelmus, cui rex nimis severus extitit, antequam hereditatis suæ plenitudinem valeret adipisci, licet ipse pater et avus diu domino regi famulatum diuturnum impendisset.

Facta est visitatio de religiosis per episcopum Lincolniensem Robertum.

Visitation made by Robert, bp. of Lincoln, in his diocese.

Diebus sub eisdem episcopus Lincolniensis R[obertus] visitationem [fecit][1] in domibus religiosis in sua diocesi[2] rigide nimis et severe.

Confirmantur Wintoniensis et Rofensis [electi.][3]

Confirmation of the bps. elect of Winchester and Rochester.

Confirmantur Romæ electi Wintoniensis et Rofensis.[4]

Death of John of Offintone.

Obiit magister Johannes de Offintona, canonicus Saresbiriensis, quo non erat in Anglia clericus celebrior.

Literæ papales oppressivæ.

Letters of pope Innocent IV. to the abbat of St. Alban's in favour of John de Camer-sana.

Tempore quoque sub eodem transmisit dominus papa abbati Sancti Albani literas sub hac forma:

"Innocentius IIII. episcopus, etc., dilectis filiis abbati et conventui Sancti Albani, Lincolniensis diocesis, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Cum dilectus filius Johannes de Camezana, nepos et capellanus noster, ecclesiam de Wengrave, in qua, sicut intelleximus, jus patronatus ad vos dinoscatur pertinere,[5] discretionem[6] vestram affectione paterna rogamus, per

[1] *fecit*] Supplied from B.

[2] *diocesi*] dioclsi, MS.

[3] *electi*] Supplied from B.

[4] *Rofensis*] Refensis, MS.

[5] *ad vos dinoscatur pertinere*] So also in B. over an erasure (but originally *optinere*), and ed. Wats, p. 818, but the text seems faulty. In the copy of these letters in the "Liber Additamentorum," fol. 63, the reading is given thus, *habetis, optinere noscatur.*

[6] *discretionem*] discrescõm, MS.

apostolica vobis scripta mandantes, quatinus eidem capellano dictam ecclesiam cum alia ecclesia primo vacatura, quæ ad præsentationem vestram spectare noscatur, quam etiam dictus capellanus, vel ejus procurator, duxerit acceptandam, commutetis, illam donationi nostræ nihilominus[1] reservando; inhibitione[2] seu reservatione qualibet non obstante, aut etiam indulgentia illa, quæ dicitur Anglicis esse concessa, ne beneficia clericorum Ytalicorum cedentium vel decedentium immediate alicui clerico Ytalico conferatur. Datum Lugduni, ii. idus Decembris." A.D. 1251.

Nota.

¶ Hæc vero huic libro duximus inserenda, ut legentibus innotescat, quot pressuris et angustiis et servitute Romana curia nos Anglos exagitat miserandos. Et qualiter corda multorum[3] a dilectione domini papæ, quem paterna caritate totis visceribus teneremur amplecti, discedant et longius amoveantur.

Oppression suffered from the court of Rome.

Recessit papa a Lugduno.

Eodem anno, arridente verna serenitate, dominus papa recessit a Lugduno, comitantibus cardinalibus et ejus familiaribus. Philippus quoque, Lugdunensis[4] electus, ipsum papam cum ingenti armatorum[5] comitatu salvo conduxit, propter Fretharicalium laqueos absconditos et insultus.

The pope leaves Lyons, escorted by Philip, the abp. elect.

Obiit Paulinus[6] Piper.

Anno sub eodem obiit domini regis dapifer et consiliarius specialis, Paulinus Piper.

Death of Paulin Piper.

---

[1] *nihilominus*] nichilominus, MS.
[2] *inhibitione*] inibicione, MS.
[3] *multorum*] At first written *multa*, but corr. in marg.
[4] *Lugdunensis*] Lugduñ, MS.
[5] *armatorum*] Written at first *armatura*, but the last three letters erased, and corr. in marg.
[6] *Paulinus*] Paulus, MS.

A.D. 1251.

Abbas Cluniacensis venit in Angliam.

The abbat of Cluny visits his Order in England.

Diebus sub eisdem abbas Cluniacensis venit in Angliam, monachorum suorum visitator, Ordinis reformator, et pecuniæ sedulus investigator. Et dum in Anglicanis partibus moraretur,[1] quidam confines sui in ultramarinis partibus sua quædam castra [cum][2] pertinentiis infestantes occuparunt; unde oportuit ipsum festinanter remeare.

Nota miraculum de ossibus mortuorum.

The bones of the deceased monks of St. Alban's are collected together and placed in a vault.

Sub ejusdem anni circulo, cum consummatum[3] fuisset quoddam opusculum structuræ lapideæ, juxta majus altare Sancti Albani, in parte scilicet australi, ossa fratrum mortuorum in cimiterio, qui ad xxx. æstimabantur ibidem, centum vel quater xx. annis in sarchofagis tumulatorum transactis, diligenter sunt collecta; fol. 152 *a*. et, facto quodam arcu in muro forinsecus, quasi thesaurus sunt reposita pretiosus. Quorumdam enim ossa inventa sunt instar eboris candentia, et in fragmentis candidiora, et quasi lita balsamo redolentia. Calciamentorum[4] insuper eorumdem soleæ integræ, ita ut viderentur adhuc pauperibus profuturæ. Quæ in anteriori parte, sicut in posteriori, rotundæ, et, corrigiis insutis, in circuitu circumseptæ; et calciamentorum superiora corrigiis circumligata. Et talia fuerant calciamenta, ut viderentur indifferenter tam uni quam alteri pedibus convenire; et aliquæ corrigiarum adhuc apparuerunt integræ, ac in substantia et colore, etsi[5] robur non retinuerint[6] primitivum, incorruptæ. Quod

Marvellous state of preservation of their shoes or sandals.

---

[1] *moraretur*] In the text *mora* . . ., with an erasure of some letters, but corr. in marg.

[2] *cum*] Supplied from B.

[3] *consummatum*] consumatum, MS.

[4] *Calciamentorum*] Repeated again after *insuper*, and then struck out in the first instance.

[5] *etsi*] etsi non, MS.

[6] *retinuerint*] retinerint, MS.

intuentibus omnibus non tantum admirationem, sed etiam stuporem suscitavit, cum tumbæ circiter centenariæ censerentur. Fratrum igitur superstitum aliqui hæc perpendentes ingemuerunt, et ab alto trahentes suspiria intra se, dixerunt, "O quam venerabiles extitere priores ac patres nostri præambuli, quorum sequi vestigia teneremur et voto obligamur, dum talibus uterentur, quæ indicia sunt sanctitatis, humilitatis et religionis. O qualiter, Deus, testimonia tua credibilia facta sunt nimis, ac bonitatis tuæ ac fidelitatis argumenta manifesta, præcipue in ossium[1] suorum[2] humiliatorum illorum candore et fragrantia! Tunc nimirum in spiritualibus et temporalibus religiosorum ecclesiæ felix susceperunt incrementum, quæ in præsentiarum, Deo vindice, contempnitur et impugnatur. Erubescant moderni mollibus, subtilibus et pretiosis vestiti, immo potius adornati, cum præcipiat sanctus Benedictus quod est vilius, non pretiosius, monachis induendum. O si hæc sanctus idem Benedictus[3] videret in præsenti, immo certe quia videt, qui adhuc in corpore universum mundum[4] sub solari radio collectum contemplabatur, qualiter offenderetur? O si cerneret hæc beatus Bernardus, qualiter obgrunniret? Dicebat namque et scripsit, "Monacho lautius pasto, decentius vestito, strictius[5] calciato, nihil Deo abominabilius, nam superbiæ sunt indicia."

A.D. 1251.

Superior sanctity of the ancient monks, in comparison with those then living.

Obiit Galfridus Dispensator. Crudelitas ad terrorem.

Et[6] eodem tempore obiit vir nobilis et strenuus, Galfridus Dispensator, in palatio regis consiliator specialis. Dominus papa excommunicavit die Cœnæ solempniter

Death of Geoffrey Despenser.

25 May.

[1] *ossium*] osium, MS.

[2] *suorum*] horum, B., omitting *illorum*.

[3] *idem Benedictus*] Written *Benedictus idem*, but marked to be transposed.

[4] *mundum*] The second syllable interlined by a late hand.

[5] *strictius*] st^icius, MS.

[6] *Et*] The letter *t* is on an erasure.

A.D. 1251. The pope excommunicates the emperor's son Conrad. Expenses incurred in escorting the pope from France. Increase of the Pastoureaux in France.

nimis et nominatum Conradum, filium Fretherici, et omnes ejusdem Fretherici fautores. Sciendumque, quod die Mercurii in ebdomada Paschali, expensæ papæ, quas adinvenit Philippus, electus Lugdunensis, ut sub manu armata tutius conduceretur, ad plus quam ad trium milium marcarum pretium ascenderunt. Recessus igitur papæ a Francorum finibus et absentia, cornua dederunt popello illi, qui Pastores in Francia dicebantur, in periculum fidei catholicæ, et ecclesiæ non minimam læsionem. Isti nempe jam adeo multiplicati et roborati sunt, ut plusquam quingenta signa, quæ vulgariter vexilla vel baneræ dicuntur, in suo deferent comitatu; et cuilibet signo xl[a]. vel l. ex ipsis intendebant. Civitates igitur et civitatum universitates ipsos jam mediocriter formidabant, ita ut viderentur Antichristi tempora suscitari. Accesserunt igitur Aurelianim, totum ibi clerum exturbarunt, et, consentientibus civibus, libros clericorum combusserunt; et, aliquibus ex clericis in Ligerim submersis, aliquibus aliter interfectis, fere omnes affugarunt. Tandem apud Biturim[1] magistro eorum interfecto, detunicata fuit fraus eorum. Et dicebatur fuisse idem impostor, qui, jam transactis circiter xl. annis, in Francia pueros processionaliter incedentes congregavit, et cantantes versus mare minavit Mediterraneum.[2] Sed tam isti Pastores quam dicti pueri perierunt. Non tamen, ut viri discreti asserebant, post tempora Machomethi tam metuenda pestis ingruebat, nec citra tempora Antichristi creditur affutura, maxime cum captio regis Francorum corda multorum in fide fecerat vacillare.

Excesses committed by them at Orleans. Death of their leaders at Bourges.

Damiata solo tenus complanatur.

Damietta is destroyed, by order of the Soldan.

Tempore quoque sub eodem Soldanus Babiloniæ comperiens quod Damiata bis jam præda, in obpro-

[1] *Biturim*] Butirim, MS. | [2] *Mediterraneum*] Mediteraneum, MS.

brium totius paganismi, et adquisitio extitisset [Christianorum],[1] jussit eam cum magna indignatione, ne iterum Christiani illuc causam haberent veniendi, solo tenus complanari.[2] A.D. 1251.

De quibusdam decretalibus.

Diebus quoque sub eisdem[3] dominus papa quasdam novas composuit decretales, quas sedulus indagator in libris Legistarum[4] poterit reperire.

New decretals made by the pope.

Episcopus Lincolniensis beneficiatis[5] cartas exigit castitatis.

Diebus sub eisdem episcopus Lincolniensis, facto scrutinio diligenti per suam diocesim, beneficiatos cogit esse continentes, et suspectas mulierculas ab ipsis longius amoveri. Transgressores autem per beneficiorum suorum privationem puniens, episcopatum suum a viciis studuit emundare; precibus quoque blandis et austeris persuasionsibus multos trahens et impellens, ad ordinem et officium subvexit sacerdotale.[6] Coegitque eos cartas conficere, ut cœlibem vitam ducerent; et si infames[7] se legitime non purgarent, fecit fustigari. Et si sic se non emendarent, ipsos privavit beneficio optento, et ab episcopatu studuit elongare. Improbos autem Romanos literas provisionis afferentes, quasi venenum respuit aspidale.

The bishop of Lincoln compels the beneficed clergy in his diocese to observe chastity.

---

[1] *Christianorum*] Supplied from B.

[2] *complanari*] fecit complanari, MS., but *fecit* is superfluous.

[3] *eisdem*] eidem, MS.

[4] *in libris Legistarum*] In B. the reference is, *in libro Additamentorum;* and in ed. Wats, p. 182, these Decretals are printed from MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 103.

[5] *beneficiatis*] benefiatis, MS.

[6] *sacerdotale*] sacerdale, MS.

[7] *infames*] imfames, MS.

[illegible] gentium regi. [illegible]
[illegible] ejusdem [illegible]
[illegible] regi. [illegible]
[illegible] et eju[illegible]
[illegible] quali[quali][1] [illegible]
[illegible] Dei misericordiam post [illegible]
[illegible] monstravit funesta [illegible] et
[illegible] inexorabili, mota inter Sarra-
[illegible] sese corrodentes. [illegible]
[illegible] Scripsit insuper idem rex
[illegible] subsidium humiliter tam pecu-
[illegible] Ipsi autem literas quas festinnati
[illegible] respexerunt, et [illegible] proximis
[illegible] matre, amici fortunales. Ipse
[illegible] apud Cæsaream, firmans eam
[illegible] et Hospitalariorum.[2]

[illegible] *apud Sanctum Albanum.*

[illegible] in octavis Nativitatis beatæ Vir-
[illegible] Angliæ venit apud Sanctum Alba-
[illegible] prout consuevit, primo ecclesiam,
[illegible] et tunc ipsa cum aliis prius ab
[illegible] computabantur. Eaque vice op-
[illegible] pretiosa valde, et jussit ea feretro
[illegible] liberaliter, ad memoriam sui, clavis
[illegible] eadem moram continuavit quad-
[illegible] vero sancti Lamberti tenebræ

[1] [illegible] | [2] *Hospitalariorum*] Templariorum. MS. Corr. from B.

factæ sunt palpabiles et horribiles, et facta tanta pluviarum inundatio, ut se viderentur nubes terris infundere perituris. A.D. 1251. and storm of rain.

Visitatio facta est apud Sanctum Albanum.

Facta est visitatio apud Sanctum Albanum per priorem de Hurle Theobaldum, et suppriorem Sancti Augustini Cantuariæ Jacobum. Sed antequam in capitulum intrassent, omnia reformanda prudenter reformabantur.[1] Visitation of St. Alban's.

Philippus [Luvel][2] *ad consilium regis adest.*

Philippus Luvel, clericus, vir prudens et circumspectus, a senescalcia[3] comitis Wintoniæ Rogeri translatus est ad servitium domini regis familiare. Et cito postea graviter accusatus, et se rite purgans, regali gratiæ est restitutus. Philip Luvel is taken into the king's service.

Ecclesia de Hales magnifice dedicatur.

Eodem anno, nonas Novembris, comes Ricardus solempniter nimis et magnifice[4] fecit dedicari ecclesiam suam de Hales, quam fundaverat, præsentibus rege et regina et omnibus fere Angliæ magnatibus. 5 Nov. Dedication of the church of Hales.

---

[1] In the lower margin is here added the following note, by a later hand: "Hic visitatus erat Johannes abbas II., sed antequam capitulum intraret, promisit conventui, quod generale suum et pitancias, quas primus omnium ad cameram suam attraxit, totaliter remitteret, nisi in refectorio vel aliis locis solatio deputatis cum fratribus reficeret, et quod pitancias, quas W[illelmus], prædecessor suus, a fratribus infirmis abstulerat, integraliter restitueret; sed, completa visitatione, cum nichil de præmissis sibi objectum fuerat, quod prius promisit, adimplere contempsit;" nearly as in B. *marg.* (by the same hand), and ed. Wats, p. 826.

[2] *Luvel*] Omitted in MS.

[3] *senescalcia*] senescaltia, MS.

[4] *magnifice*] magnife, MS.

A.D. 1251.

De fulgure.

Effects of a thunder-storm at Windsor and St. Alban's. 19 May.

Fulgur cecidit super thalamum reginæ, et totum caminum contrivit apud Windelshores, die sancti Dunstani, et multa robora in foresta de Windelshores, et homines et pecora dejecit. Et apud Sanctum Albanum in tribus locis pariter, sed non multum dampnum irrogavit, sed omnium corda perterruit[1] vehementer.

Inundation of the sea.

Iterum, eodem anno, tempore æquinoctiali, mare terminos transiens consuetos, dampna[2] finitimis non minima generavit; litora namque per sex pedum spatia, ultra quam unquam visum est præteritis temporibus quando etiam se dilatavit, terribiliter occupavit.

The queen of Scotland returns home.

Et tunc temporis[3] regina Scociæ, relicta videlicet regis Alexandri, repatriavit.

De quodam torneamento.

Tournament at Rochester.

Et eodem tempore[4] apud Rofam factum est torneamentum subdolum et aculeatum inter Anglos, quos alienigenæ jam deridentes contempserant, et ipsos alienos. In quo contriti sunt turpiter alienigenæ, dissipati et affugati,[5] ita ut probrose fugientes ad civitatem gratia refugii, armigeris obviam irruentibus iterum recepti, prostrati, spoliati, et egregie baculis et clavis palluerunt malleati. Et insequentes milites cum supra dorsa eorum fabricassent, ad votum ditati triumpharunt. Et sic ictus, quos injuriose in torneamento[6] receperant, multiplicato fœnore reddiderunt. Crevit igitur ira et odium inter Anglos et alienigenas, et diatim successive formidabile suscepit incrementum.

---

[1] *perterruit*] perturruit, MS.

[2] *dampna*] dapna, MS.

[3] In B., *circa festum sancti Michaelis* [29 Sept.].

[4] In B., *in festo Conceptionis beatæ Virginis* [8 Dec.].

[5] *affugati*] afugati, MS.

[6] *torneamento*] tornamento, MS. In B., *torneamento de Bracke*[*le*]. Cf. ed. Wats, p. 768 (under the year 1249).

Annalis conclusio.

A.D. 1251.

Annual summary.

Transiit ergo annus ille frugifer et fructifer usque ad sufficientiam et potius abundantiam,[1] quamvis procellosus et fulgure formidabilis. Domino vero papæ et curiæ Romanæ laboriosus, sumptuosus, et propter transmigrationem periculosus. Franciæ et Angliæ sub pace pendula suspiciosus. Romanis autem, Ytalicis, Germanicis, Siculis, Appulis et Calabribus adhuc acephalis, minime securus. Daciæ cruentus, fratres duos inimicos sustinendo, et fraternas acies alternaque regna prophanis decertata odiis. Scociæ quoque, cujus puer [rex][2] extitit, titubans,[3] exemplo Pompei Magni, prout Lucanus commemorat dicens,

"Ætas Niliaci nimium suspecta tiranni est,
Ardua nempe fides maturos exigit annos,
Sub ocillo tamen fortunali tremebundus."[4]

Margareta, filia regis, maritatur Alexandro, regi Scotorum.

A.D. 1252.

Henry keeps Christmas at York, to celebrate the marriage of his daughter with Alexander II., king of Scots.

Anno Domini M°.CC°.LII°., qui est annus domini regis H[enrici] III. xxxv^us., fuit idem dominus rex ad Natale Domini apud Eboracum, et regina, cum multitudine prælatorum et magnatum copiosa, ut filiam suam Margaretam Alexandro, regi Scociæ, matrimonialiter copularet, et ibidem nuptias, ut decuit, celebraret. Die igitur Natalis Domini rex Angliæ baltheo donavit militari ipsum regem Scociæ, et cum eo tirones xx. Qui omnes vestibus pretiosis et excogitatis, sicut in tam celebri tirocinio debuit et decuit,[5] ornabantur.

Fol. 153 *a*.

The king of Scots is

[1] *abundantiam*] habundanciam, MS.

[2] *rex*] Supplied from B.

[3] *titubans*] titubas, MS.

[4] Altered somewhat from Lucan, Pharsal., lib. viii. 281, ed. Oudendorp. In B. the last line reads, *Sub ocillo fortunæ tacitus et tremebundus.*

[5] *decuit*] In the text *debuit*, but corrected with a plummet.

A.D. 1252. 26 Dec. knighted, and does homage. The queen committed to the charge of Robert le Noreys.

In crastino autem, scilicet die sancti Stephani, rex Scociæ, ætate ,[1] filiam domini regis Angliæ, ætate ,[1] solempniter nimis desponsavit. Fecit igitur rex Scociæ domino regi Angliæ homagium. Commissa est igitur regina Scociæ tutelæ Roberti,[2] et regnum Scociæ cum rege, de consilio magnatum utriusque regni, quia integræ famæ et irreprehensibilis habebatur. Dictumque illi et præceptum, ne permitteret regem et reginam Scociæ condormire, propter eorum ætatis teneritudinem.

Obiit Nicholaus de Sanforde.[3]

Death of Nicholas de Sanford. 20 Jan.

Diebus sub eisdem obiit quidam miles strenuissimus, xiii°. kalendas Februarii, Nicholaus de Sanford. Qui quamvis non fuisset divitiis, fama tamen probitatis fuerat insignitus.

Extorquetur a Judæis pecunia.

The king extorts money from the Jews.

Rex, ut se instauret divitiis peregrinaturus, a miseris Judæis, quicquid habere videbantur, abradendo extorsit, et in aureis plurimis ærarium instauravit.

Creantur multi cardinales.

Creation of cardinals.

Verno quoque tempore imminente,[4] ut serenitate anni respiraret ipsa ecclesia, septem Perusii[5] creavit [papa][6] cardinales provisionibus inhiantes.

---

[1] Blanks are left here in the MS. Alexander was now nine years old, (Ann. Burton., p. 296, ed. Luard,) and Margaret was nearly eleven, having been born 5 Oct. 1240.

[2] *Roberti*] He is styled in B. "Robertus Norensis, domini regis hospicialis marescallus."

[3] *Sanforde*] Samforde, MS.

[4] *imminente*] iminente, MS.

[5] *Perusii*] Perisii, MS.

[6] *papa*] Supplied from B.

Depauperatur Willelmus de Holand.

A.D. 1252.

Eodemque tempore per varios Martis eventus minoratus et depauperatus est, tam fama quam pecunia, Willelmus de Holand, rex Alemanniæ.

William, count of Holland, loses both fame and money.

De primis bubalis in Angliam missis.

Missi sunt comiti Ricardo de partibus transmarinis bubali utriusque sexus, ut hujusmodi animalia in partibus nostris multiplicentur. Obiit magister Johannes de Basingestokes, archidiaconus Legrecestriæ, vir in trivio et quadrivio[1] ad plenum eruditus. Graviter accusatur comes Legrecestriæ Simon a Wasconensibus, sed probabiliter comes omnibus respondet. Et circa illud tempus electus est in episcopum Morefensem in Scocia, magister Radulfus, ecclesiæ Lincolniensis canonicus. Venit in Angliam archiepiscopus Burdegalensis, cum multis magnatibus Wasconiæ. Abbas Rameseiæ, cui pertinere ab antiquo constat nundinas sancti Yvonis, consilio Roberti Passelewe privatur, in suæ ecclesiæ dampnum et enormem læsionem. Nec profuerunt ei cartæ regum Edgari vel Edwardi, quas, inter alios, confirmaverat beatus Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus et martir. Simili quoque modo imminebat[2] jactura magna nobili ecclesiæ Sancti Edmundi, regis et martiris, cum ventilata fuisset causa inter abbatem et conventum ejusdem loci, ex una parte, et comitem Gloverniæ Ricardum, ex alia. Contentio mota est de donatione ecclesiæ de Flamstude, unde scandala mota sunt, et ecclesia ipsa longo tempore interdicta; ita ibidem cessarent divina, et mortuorum corpora alibi quam in cimiterio sepelirentur.

Buffaloes first sent into England.

Death of John of Basingstoke, archdeacon of Leicester.

Ralph, canon of Lincoln, elected bp. of Moray.

The abp. of Bordeaux comes to England.

The abbat of Ramsey is deprived of his fair at St. Ive's.

Suit between the church of St. Edmund's-bury and earl Richard.

Quarrel respecting the church of Flamstead.

---

[1] *quodrivio*] quadruvio, MS. | [2] *imminebat*] iminebat, MS.

A.D. 1252.

De mortibus quorumdam.

6 June. Deaths of Robert Passelewe, and of Richard de Wendovre, physician, canon of St. Paul's.

Eodemque anno, viii°. idus Junii, obiit apud Waltham Robertus Passelewe, archidiaconus Lewensis, de quo multa præscribuntur. Hic Robertus mundanis totus deditus, licet clericus opime beneficiatus, non est veritus regi adhærendo multos multiformiter depauperare, ut regem per fas et nefas[1] impinguaret. Sepultus est apud Waltham, sub insculpto marmore[2] tumulatus. Opera autem ejus sequuntur eum. Et sub eodem tempore obiit magister Ricardus de Wendovre, ecclesiæ Sancti Pauli canonicus, phisicus præelectus. Qui sibi providit et præcavit multo circumspectius quam Robertus memoratus. Nam ix. sacerdotibus necessaria providit, qui in perpetuum pro anima ipsius et omnium fidelium hostiam Christo cotidie offerent salutarem.

Ivory cross, with reliques, bequeathed by him to St. Alban's.

De quo in hoc libro specialem duximus facere mentionem, quia ecclesiæ Sancti Albani quandam crucem legavit et spontanea contulit devotione; in qua plures reliquiæ continentur, prout tituli earum protestantur. Hæc crux, quæ eburnea est, quandoque fuerat papæ Gregorii, et eidem carissima. Et cum memoratus magister R[icardus], ejus phisicus extitisset, papa moriturus carissimum sibi carissimo, scilicet illam crucem, duxerat conferendam.

Episcopus Lincolniensis auget portiones vicariorum.

The bp. of Lincoln increases the portions of the vicars in his diocese.

Episcopus Lincolniensis R[obertus] portiones vicariorum, in dampnum rectorum, adauget,[3] considerans quoniam ipsi fervores diei sustinent et labores.

---

[1] *nefas*] nephas, MS.

[2] *marmore*] Repeated in the text, erroneously.

[3] By authority of a Bull of pope Innocent IV., dated Lyons, "vii. cal. Oct. [25 Sept.], pont. anno viii. [1251], in ed. Wats, p. 840. See *ante*, p. 69.

A.D. 1252.

Concordes fiunt abbas Westmonasterii et ejus conventus.

Sopita est discordia, quæ per multos annos duraverat inter abbatem Westmonasterii et ejus conventum, procurante domino rege, qui ejusdem monasterii amator dinoscitur specialis.

Peace made between the abbat of Westminster and his convent.

Libertas eis est concessa.

Rex utique propter multa, quæ dicta ecclesia toleraverat gravamina, in recompensationem et consolationem concessit benigne eidem, ut, vacante abbatia Westmonasterii, disponatur libere de possessionibus ipsum conventum contingentibus, quas consuevit rex, qui pro tempore fuerat, in manu sua, in magnum dampnum domus, donec alius abbas substitueretur, temere retinere;[1] per quam retentionem, ut protelaretur, impedita fuerat electio, nugatoriis exceptionibus retardata. Hujus rei carta alibi, in domo Sancti Albani, Historiæ commendatur.[2]

Charter granted by the king to the church of Westminster.

Treugæ inter regem Francorum et soldanum Babiloniæ.

Captæ sunt treugæ inter regem Francorum et soldanum Babiloniæ, ex una parte, sibi confaventes, et Soldanum Halapiæ adversantem, ex alia. Et restitutæ sunt quædam terræ cum captivis regi Francorum. Oderant enim se ad invicem Babilonii et Halapenses.

Truce between the king of France and Soldan of Babylon.

---

[1] *retinere*] renere, MS.

[2] *commendatur*] comendatur, MS. This charter is in B., and in ed. Wats, p. 841, dated at St. Edmund's, a°. r. 36.

A.D. 1252.

Mortuus est rex Castellæ.

Death of Alphonso, king of Castille.

Eodemque tempore, ne læta tristibus veniant impermixta, rex Francorum non mediocriter turbabatur, audito rumore, quod illustris rex Castellæ Andefulsus, qui propter sui præeminentiam rex dicitur Hispaniæ, post præclara gesta sua et super infideles maximas conquisitiones, quæ diffusos et speciales tractatus exigerent, in fata concesserat. Et iccirco molestabatur vehementius, quia promiserat ei subsidium conferre efficax et festinum. Blanchia enim, mater regis, multiplicatis precibus, muneribus et promissis, hoc non muliebriter sed viriliter procuraverat. Verumtamen reliquit dictus rex A[ndefulsus] post se prolem nobilissimam, milites præclaros, strenuos et elegantes, qui Sarracenis protervientibus opponent potenter repagula contradictionis. Et dolorem conceptum hæc Dei misericordia temporavit. Insuper concessit Dominus regi Francorum de uxore sua regina Margarita prolem inclitam, videlicet filium et filiam elegantes. Sed, adversante fortuna, frater dicti regis Andefulsus, comes Pictaviæ, paralisi percussus, in dolorem tam fratris ejus regis quam matris B[lanchiæ] reginæ, irremediabiliter est infirmatus,[1] mortis dispendia protelando. Forte ultione divina sauciatus; fratri enim suo regi in arcto constituto, sicut promiserat, præstito cum fide juramento, renuit subvenire; "Qui enim diu distulit,[2] diu noluit."[3] Insuper in comitatum comitis Ricardi, fratris domini regis Angliæ, se injuste ingessit,[4] dum idem comes R[icardus] in Terra Sancta Deo militavit, et Francos liberavit incarceratos. Blanchia igitur talibus privata pignoribus, ex illo tempore nunquam recipere poterat consolationem. fol. 153 b.

A son and daughter born to Louis. His brother Alphonse, count of Poitou, dangerously ill.

Grief of queen Blanche.

---

[1] *infirmatus*] imfirmatus, MS.

[2] *distulit*] distillit, MS.

[3] This quotation occurs twice before. See pp. 34, 102.

[4] *ingessit*] On an erasure.

Wasconia donatur Edwardo, filio regis.

A.D. 1252.

Rex, congregatis Wasconensibus, qui tunc Londoniis erant, scilicet archiepiscopo Burdegalensi et aliis, [qui][1] cum ipso erant, contulit Edwardo, filio suo, Wasconiam, nulla facta mentione de comite Ricardo, fratre suo, vel Symone, comite Legrecestriæ; unde comes iratus ilico adiit Wasconiam[2] festinando. Et, congregata armata manu copiosa, Wasconensibus illuc occurrens hostiliter venientibus subsequenter, tam de ipsis, qui ipsum conviciis provocaverant mendacibus, quam de aliis,[3] quos ibi invenerat supplantatoribus, non sine multi sanguis effusione triumphavit. Inter quos divitem cepit, scilicet Rustandum de Solariis, quem regi præsentari fecerat moranti Londoniis compeditum.

Grant of Gascony to prince Edward.

Simon, earl of Leicester, returns to Gascony, and defeats his enemies.

Rustand de Solars taken prisoner.

Diuturna siccitas et calor.

Æstate sub eadem ariditas et calor intolerabilis mensibus Aprilis, Maii, Junii et Julii, sine pluviarum respersione vel roris refrigerio, continuatus, ita frugum, fructuum[4] et pascuorum spem suspendit, ut caristiam nimiam suscitaret, et infirmitates[5] varias generaret.

Intolerable drought and heat.

Quædam modificatio papalis rigoris.[6]

Tempore sub eodem concessit dominus papa hiis, qui dignitatibus gaudebant, et supra modum, in partibus maxime Transalpinis, opprimebantur, ut rite de ipsis dignitatibus ipsi, ad quos pertinebat electio, Deum

Papal letters relative to the filling up of ecclesiastical dignities.

[1] *qui*] Supplied from B.

[2] *Wasconiam*] Vasconiam, MS.

[3] *de aliis*] alios, MS. The last two letters have been partly erased, as if for correction, but replaced by a late hand.

[4] *fructuum*] fructum, MS.

[5] *infirmitates*] imfirmitates, MS.

[6] Before this rubric, at the bottom of the previous column, is written the word "*Temperantia*" in red letters, and was probably meant originally to stand in the place of *Quædam modificatio.*

A.D. 1252. habentes præ oculis, ut melius viderent expedire, sine moræ dispendio ordinarent. Literæ autem super hoc alibi poteris reperire.[1]

Ernaldus de Muntteinni interimitur.

Ernald de Munteinni killed in a joust.

Anno quoque sub eodem milites Angliæ, ut exercitio[2] militari peritiam suam et strenuitatem experirentur, constituerunt, non ut in hastiludio, quod Torneamentum dicitur, sed potius in illo ludo militari, qui Mensa Rotunda dicitur, vires suas attemptarent. Duo igitur milites electissimi, Ernaldus scilicet de Munteinni[3] et Rogerus de Lemburne, dum se lanceis mutuo impeterent, Ernaldus letaliter vulneratus, præceps cadens obiit interfectus, qui in militari exercitio nulli in Anglia secundus censebatur.

Obiit Willelmus de Haverulle.

23 Aug. Death of William de Haverulle, the king's treasurer.

In vigilia autem sancti Bartholomæi obiit Willelmus de Haverulle, clericus, domini regis thesaurarius.

Pestis animalium.

Murrain among the cattle.

Eodem æstate facta est pecudum pestifera mortalitas, ita ut quicunque de carnibus, vel homo, canis, vel volucris comederet, occubuit veluti toxicatus.

Dedicatur ecclesia Elyensis.

17 Sept. Dedication of the church of Ely.

Anno sub eodem, xv. kalendas Octobris, die videlicet sancti Lamberti, dedicata est magnifice ac solempniter nimis Elyensis ecclesia cathedralis; cujus presbi-

---

[1] In B. and ed. Wats, p. 846, a reference is here made to the "Liber Additamentorum," for these letters of pope Innocent IV., and they are printed by Wats, p. 184, from MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 118, and dated "iii°. non. Nov., pont. anno xi°."

[2] *exercitio*] excercicio, MS., here and below.

[3] *Munteinni*] Muteinni, MS.

terium elegantissimum, opere admirabili ac sumptuoso nimis, Hugo, ejusdem loci episcopus, propriis sumptibus usque ad perfectionem construxerat. Obiit[1] Margareta, comitissa de Insula, dicta de Ripariis, relicta scilicet Falcasii, de quo multa præscribuntur; de ipso enim multum fortuna lusit, ipsum tandem deludendo.

A.D. 1252.

Death of Margaret, countess de Rivers, widow of Faukes [de Breauté].

De magno parlamento, quod fuit Londoniis.

Festo autem beati Edwardi imminente,[2] edicto convocati regio, totius Angliæ prælati et magnates convenerunt. Protulit ergo rex in medium papale mandatum, quod videlicet contulerat regi peregrinaturo cruceque signato totam decimam proventuum ecclesiæ Anglicanæ, ad viatica sua honorifice invenienda. Quod cum auditum esset et diligenter pensatum, omnes[3] inæstimabili dolore sauciabantur, et constanter tantæ contributioni ac servituti contradicentes dicebant, quod si papa tot oppressionibus sciret Angliam fatigari, manum retraheret tantæ severitatis, sed, suggesta fal-
4 a. sitate et suppressa veritate, decipiebatur, ut certissime credebatur. Lincolniensis vero episcopus assertive protestabatur, quod papa ita ecclesiam, quam Dominus liberavit, nequaquam subderet[4] servituti, quia manifeste injustum est. Rex igitur humiliter postulavit, ut, nulla auctoritate papali vel alia compulsi districtione, sed tanquam domino suo supplicanti crucesignato, et pro honore universalis ecclesiæ Christo militaturo, conferrent subsidium pecuniare mera ac spontanea voluntate. Prælati igitur æquanimius se habentes responderunt, quod quicquid rex hactenus egerit, si de cetero Cartam Magnam de libertatibus regni, quam pater suus confecit et tenere juravit, et ipse rex præsens totiens promisit et tenere juravit,

13 Oct. Great parliament held at London.

Papal mandate read, demanding a tenth of the revenues of the church for the king's use.

It is refused.

Henry begs for a subsidy.

The prelates agree to it, if the king will faithfully observe the articles of the Great Charter.

[1] In B. the date of her death is given, "vi. non. [2d] Oct."

[2] *imminente*] iminente, MS.

[3] *omnes*] omnium, MS.

[4] *subderet*] subdere, MS.

A.D. 1252.

The meeting is dissolved, in consequence of the king's cavilling. He extorts money from the citizens of London. Reginald de Mohun appointed justiciary of the Forest. Death of the countess of Winchester. The bones of William Longespée brought to Acre.

inviolabiliter sine aliqua cavillatione tenere vellet, suæ subvenirent indigentiæ. Sed cum rex cavillationes, dilationes, et diverticula [1] quæsisset, cum omnium indignatione solutum est concilium. Tunc quoque rex a civibus Londoniarum extorsit pecuniam. Amoto Galfrido de Langeleia a justiciaria forestæ, substituitur Reginaldus de Moun. Obiit comitissa Wintoniæ sine liberis,[2] sicut alia præmortua, filia scilicet Alani de Galeweia. Ossa Willelmi Longæ-spatæ de loco ubi occubuit, propter sui nobilitatem et mortem pretiosam, Achon deportantur, et ibi veneranter tumulantur.

Venit magister Albertus in Angliam.

11 Nov. Albert, the papal notary, comes to England to offer the kingdom of Apulia to earl Richard.

Circa festum sancti Martini venit magister Albertus, papæ notarius, in Angliam; qui jam elapso biennio prævenerat, quando scilicet parabatur transfretare rex Francorum, ex parte domini papæ prohibiturus ne rex Angliæ terras regis Francorum peregrinantis impeteret.[3] Nunc autem venit, ut offerret comiti Ricardo regnum Apuliæ. Cui respondit comes, "Dominus papa mihi dat, quod optinere non valet. Nonne vivit Conradus, filius Fretherici, qui regnum illud optinet? Verumtamen, si papa me de thesauro suo juvet, exponens quantum ego expositurus forem, et mihi[4] conferat castrorum aliqua, præcipue de suis, ut ibi habeam receptacula et tuta refugia, et salvum conductum de rege Francorum, ut securus ego et mei omnes eundo et redeundo optineam, impetret, et super hiis omnibus me per salvos obsides securum faciat, faciam quod hortaris." Magister autem Albertus respondit, quod hæc omnia sine papæ assensu minime auderet[5] promittere, sed super hoc, misso festino nuncio, papam consuleret. Et dum nuncium idem magister expectaret, negotio proprio vigilanter intendebat, postulando

[1] *diverticula*] divercula, MS.

[2] *de liberis*] Repeated in the text, but expuncted.

[3] *impeteret*] impetere, MS.

[4] *mihi*] michi, MS.

[5] *auderet*] audere, MS.

redditus ecclesiasticos ab abbatibus maxime et religiosis aliis, ita ut qui macer venerat, parvo tempore abundavit[1] saginatus.

A.D. 1252. He enriches himself from the abbats and clergy.

Mandatum Conradi comiti Ricardo.

The emperor Conrad dissuades earl Richard from trusting the pope.

Interim Conradus, hujus rei non ignarus, literatorie comiti Ricardo significavit, ne permitteret se fallacibus promissis papæ vel papalium circumveniri, qui plus pecuniæ suæ quam honori inhiabant, nec se periculis, sterlingorum[2] confisus multitudini. Quia plus abundavit ipse Conradus aureis, quam comes argenteis, materia, numero et pondere præstantioribus, et colore rubicundis. Dicebantque comiti amici ejus, quod aer et cibaria nobis Occidentalibus sunt insoliti et nocivi; incolæ autem suspecti, poculis utentes venenatis, quibus Siculi et Apuli sunt infames.[3] Unde cor comitis penitus ab illis est aversum. Cum autem prædicta papæ nunciarentur, corrugans nares ait, "Nolo ipsum comitem thesaurum meum exponendo juvare, nec in aliquo de præmissis." Et sic remansit comes indempnis. Albertus vero, multis ditatus redditibus et refertis numismate[4] clitellis, recessit. Cogitavit autem extunc papa domini regis simplicitatem circumvenire, cum non poterat comitem circumspectum illaqueare. In octavis autem sancti Martini applicuit in Anglia archiepiscopus Cantuariensis B[onefacius], adventus cujus quosdam lætificavit, quosdam vero perturbavit. Quippe quia si sanctorum sit[5] sequens vestigia prædecessorum suorum, et[6] credebatur malos corripere, bonos vero veneranter confovere.[7]

The pope refuses to advance money.

Albert, the papal notary, returns with full money bags.

18 Nov. Arrival of Boniface, archbishop of Canterbury, in England.

---

[1] *abundavit*] habundavit, MS., and so below.

[2] *sterlingorum*] sterligorum, MS.

[3] *infames*] imfames, MS.

[4] *numismate*] nummismate, MS.

[5] *sit*] Interlined.

[6] *et*] Seems to be superfluous.

[7] *quosdam lætificavit . . confovere*] These lines are written over an erasure by the contemporary hand which here first appears, and which has continued the History at fol. 154 *b*. The passage as originally written, may be conjectured from the text of B. and ed. Wats, p. 857.

A.D. 1252. *Orta est gravis discordia inter archiepiscopum B[onefacium] et electum Wintoniensem A[thelmaruum].*

Quarrel between the abp. and Æthelmar, bp. of Winchester.

Anno quoque sub eodem orta est gravis discordia inter archiepiscopum Cantuariensem B[onefacium] et electum Wintoniensem Æ[thelmarum]. Captus enim erat magister Eustachius de Len, officialis archiepiscopi, apud Lamheth, et impositus vilissimo jumento, cujus loris uti non est permissus, usque Fernham,[1] tanquam ibi vel incarcerandus vel interficiendus. Evasit tamen solus, et pedes venit ad domum Ordinis Cisterciensis Waverle; ubi receptus humanitus, vix respiravit. Quod cum audisset archiepiscopus, convocatis quibusdam episcopis, omnes hujus temeritatis auctores excommunicavit. Rex autem, quia utrumque feliciter creaverat, vigilanter paci intendens tandem procuravit, quod electus juravit, tactis evangeliis,[2] quod illa captio prædicta non fuit facta per ipsum, immo potius ipso invito et nesciente perpetrata. Et sic sopita est discordia, prout dicetur.[3]

De morte Blanchiæ, matris regis Francorum.

1 Dec. Death of queen Blanche, mother of the king of France.

Circa idem tempus, scilicet prima Dominica Adventus, obiit nobilissima domina Blanchia regina, mater regis Francorum, [et][4] apud Pontem-Thesiæ, ubi[5] nobilem domum sanctimonialium fundaverat, est sepulta. fol. 154 b.

Computatum est et compertum, quod iste papa Innocentius IIII. plures redditus contulit quam omnes prædecessores sui.

The bp. of Lincoln proves that

Diebus sub eisdem, episcopo Lincolniensi computante, compertum et probatum est, quod iste papa, scilicet

---

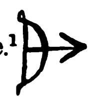
[1] *Fernham*] A verb is wanting, and we should probably supply *trahitur*.

[2] *evangeliis*] ewangeliis, MS.

[3] *prout dicetur*] On an erasure.

[4] *et*] Omitted in MS.

[5] *Pontem-Thesiæ, ubi*] On an erasure.

Innocentius IIII^us., plures redditus extortos ad suam contulit voluntatem, quam omnes ejus prædecessores, prout manifeste patet in lugubri querimonia quam reposuerunt Franci coram papa, pro suis intolerabilibus oppressionibus, quæ redacta est in scriptum epistolæ admodum prolixæ; quæ sic incipit, "Dicturus quod injunctum est mihi," etc. Quære epistolam ad signum arcus et sagittæ.[1] 

A.D. 1252. pope Innocent IV. had extorted more money than all his predecessors.

Rex pro accepta pecunia multis warennam concedit.

Multi religiosi, maxime Cisterciensis Ordinis, non propter fugationem, quod pro certo constat, sed ut pace gauderent a venatoribus, warennam sibi comparant, data non minima regi pecuniæ quantitate; ad quam recipiendam rex sinum gaudenter aperuit,[2] transgressores enim pecunialiter puniturus, thesaurum suum non mediocriter sciens taliter accumulare.[3] Sed quod concesserat et cartis confirmaverat, non, ut decuit, warantizavit. Quod experti sunt monachi Waredoniæ, qui infestante eos Willelmo de Bello-campo, suasu uxoris Ydæ, dampna inæstimabilia sunt perpessi. Modo quoque consimili Petrus de Sabaudia, cui regis maxima familiaritas cornua præstitit præsumptionis, non est veritus sanctam domum Girivallensium decennalibus persecutionibus perturbare, et perturbatam continue multipliciter dampnificare.

The king grants rights of warren to the Cistercians, on payment of money.

Oppression of the monks of Wardon abbey by William de Beauchamp.

Peter of Savoy persecutes the monastery of Jervaux.

[1] This very important letter is inserted by Matthew Paris in the "Liber Additamentorum," MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 126, but without the mark of reference noted in the text. At the end Matthew Paris remarks, "Hec [*sic pro* Hæ] literæ multos moverunt, sed commotio nondum pervenit ad effectum." It is surprising that so remarkable a document should have been omitted by Wats.

[2] *gaudenter aperuit*] In the text, *apperuit gaudenter*, but marked to be transposed.

[3] *accumulare*] accumalare, MS.

A.D. 1252.

Annalis conclusio.

Annual summary.

Transiit annus ille frugibus et fructibus mediocriter instauratus, pecudum peste mortifera toxicatus, omni hominum generi turbulentus. Cujus perturbationis, [captio regis Francorum,] [1] licet Christianis deploranda, Orientalibus causa fuit exterminii. Sicut enim os projectum in medio canum protervorum, quod cum quilibet nititur apprehendere, alter in alterum nititur desævire, et sese mutuo pro osse corrodendo corrodunt, sic pro optinendo tanto captivo sese Sarraceni infestarunt; [2] ita quod Soldanus Babiloniæ peremptus est, nec est diu de præda sua prædo permissus gratulari. Imperator Romanorum quasi ratis gubernaculo vacillat viduata. Regnum Francorum fama, baronibus, armis et equis, quæ omnia hostes optinent, se deplorat spoliatum. Anglia ab alienigenis [conculcatur]; [3] Flandria inquietatur; Alemannia perturbatur; Ecclesia multipliciter dampnificatur.

Rex ad Natale fuit Wintoniæ.

A.D. 1253. Henry keeps Christmas at Winchester. A Friar Preacher killed at Milan, and canonized.

Anno Domini M°CC°LIII°., qui est annus regni regis Henrici III. xxxvii^us^., fuit idem rex ad Natale Domini apud Wintoniam. Et tunc temporis quidam frater de Ordine Prædicatorum, dum prædicasset Mediolani, et civium non palpando redarguisset errores,[4] præventus ipsorum Mediolanensium insidiis peremptus est. Qui quoniam martir extitit,[5] testificantibus miraculis manifestis, canonizatus est.

[1] *captio regis Francorum*] Supplied from B.

[2] *infestarunt*] infestarunt, MS.

[3] *conculcatur*] Supplied from B., which reads, *ab alienigenis conculcata.*

[4] *errores*] Added in marg. by a contemporary hand.

[5] *extitit*] exitit, MS.

Romani constituunt sibi senatorem triennalem.

A.D. 1253

Romani quendam civem Bononiensem sibi elegerunt in senatorem. Qui noluit consentire, nisi constitueretur triennalis, contra Romanorum antiquam consuetudinem, et secundum rigorem justitiæ puniret delinquentes. Et hoc ut[1] ratum haberet, exegit obsides frugales a nobilioribus urbis. Quæ omnia concessa sunt illi. Senator igitur constitutus est. Nomen autem illi Brancaleo. Ipso non fuit aliquis senator nostris temporibus justior, aut in executione[2] ultionis in sontes rigidior.[3]

The Romans elect a triennial senator.

De xenio[4] Wintoniensi.

Regi autem pransuro festo memorati Natalis, fecerunt cives Wintonienses xenium[5] nobilissimum. Rex vero eosdem in ducentas marcas obligans, Natalis solempnitatem in lugubrem eis convertit lamentationem.

Henry receives a present from the citizens of Winchester.

Facta est concordia inter archiepiscopum et electum Wintoniensem.[6]

13 Jan.

In octabis vero Epiphaniæ,[7] rege et regina diligenter procurantibus, rege pro fratre suo electo, regina pro avunculo suo archiepiscopo, plene restitutus est gratiæ et paci electus prædictus cum archiepiscopo, et in osculo pacis restitutus. Juravit enim in publico electus, quod nunquam consenserat illi violentiæ, pro qua

Peace made between the abp. of Canterbury and bp. elect of Winchester.

---

[1] *ut*] Interlined.

[2] *executione*] excucōne, MS.

[3] Here ends the handwriting of the author Matthew Paris, and the remainder of this year is written in a different but contemporary hand, which has also completed the fuller Chronicle in the years 1258 and 1259. See Preface to vol. i. p. l.

[4] *xenio*] zenio, MS.

[5] *xenium*] zenium, MS.

[6] *Wintoniensem*] Vintoniensem, MS.

[7] *Epiphaniæ*] Ephiph'e, MS.

[illegible] averat, nec illi unquam [illegible]
[illegible] et invito, fuerat temere
[illegible] electus.

[illegible] Carta.

[illegible] de concessione memo-
[illegible] Magnae observatione,
[illegible] Tandem ad hoc incli-
[illegible] regi præstarent et ultro-
[illegible] injuriis, quibus ecclesiam
[illegible] multotiens promiserat, cessare
[illegible] favorabiliter respondit, quod
[illegible] scriberent articulos offensionis
[illegible] emendaret emendanda.[2]
[illegible] pronunciandi, unde eos
[illegible] tam sæpius iterata

[illegible] Romam rediit.

[illegible] mandatum domini papæ.
[illegible] Non enim prævaluit
[illegible] Ricardum expedire, nec
[illegible] satisfacere ad hoc quod
[illegible]

[illegible]

autem volens festinanter contravenire, præcentorem suum sibi elegit in abbatem, finem faciens cum rege difficilem.

A.D. 1253. of St. Augustine, Canterbury.

Judæi effugantur a Francia.

Sub eisdem diebus direxit rex Francorum mandatum de Terra Sancta in Franciam, ut omnes Judæi a regno suo expellerentur.[1] Improperatum enim fuit eidem regi a Sarracenis, quod parum nos Christiani Christum nostrum diligimus, qui peremptores ejus Judæos inter nos degere toleramus.

The Jews are banished from France.

Filius comitis Gloverniæ desponsavit uxorem.

Anno eodem, procurante rege, desponsavit filius comitis Gloverniæ Ricardi neptem ejusdem regis, de Pictavia oriundam, filiam videlicet Guidonis, comitis Engolismi, fratris prædicti regis uterini. Cui idem rex cum prædicta puella in maritagio magnifice largitus est v. milia marcarum. In quarum solutione, supplicavit abbatibus de Sancto Albano, de Radingo, et de Wautham, ut fidejuberent pro eo versus comitem, sed minime potuit eorum ad hoc optinere consensum.

Marriage of the son of the earl of Gloucester to the king's niece. The abbats of St. Alban's, Reading, and Waltham, refuse to be sureties for her dowry.

Rex Hispaniæ vendicavit Wasconiam.

Postquam comes Legrecestriæ S[imon] a Wasconia recesserat, et cartam de custodia ejus resignaverat, ilico rex Hispaniæ sibi vendicavit Wasconiam,[2] sibi prius per cartas et confirmationes regum præcedentium collatam. Volente igitur rege prædictum comitem iterum ad eandem inducere custodiendam, idem comes secessit in Franciam; quem vehementer affectabant[3]

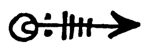
The king of Spain lays claim to Gascony. Simon, earl of Leicester, retires to France.

[1] See before, p. 103.
[2] *Wasconiam*] Hispaniam, MS.
[3] *affectabant*] afftābāt, MS.

A.D. 1253. Gallici retinere pro senescallo Franciæ, sed, ne proditor videretur regi Angliæ fuisse, eisdem renuit consentire.

Moderatio de visitationibus faciendis.

Mandate of the pope respecting visitations.

Tunc temporis dominus papa providit et decrevit, ut archiepiscopi et alii prælati, ad quos spectat visitatio, visitationem facerent in suos subditos debitam et consuetam, ita tamen, ut visitati non gravarentur in procurationibus; et ad hoc taxavit pretium cujuscumque visitationis, prout litteræ plenius declarant, ad hoc signum .[1]

Provisiones novæ regis, sed non servatæ.

New provisions made for Gascony, but not carried out.

Audiens rex quod Wasconenses sibi et verbis et factis injuriarentur, et, captis quibusdam castris in Wasconia, timens ne sic tota pateret Wasconia discrimini, constituit et generaliter acclamari præcepit, ut, secundum antiquam consuetudinem, arma cuilibet assignata monstrarentur, ut, cum necesse fuerit, competentia et parata habeantur. Et quicumque xv. libratas terræ haberet, miles fieret. Præterea, ut excubantes vigiles in qualibet civitate constituerentur, qui vicos et plateas, exitus et introitus diligenter custodirent. Præterea providit, de consilio Sabaudiensium,[2] ut si quis obiter spoliaretur vel dampnificaretur, ipsi quibus patriæ[3] imminebat custodia, læso satisfacerent, et amissa restituerent. Sed, superorto murmure, cepit res dila-

[1] In B. a reference is here made with the same sign to the "Liber Additamentorum;" and in ed. Wats, p. 188, are printed letters of William, bishop of Norwich, [from MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 110 *b*,] reciting a mandate of the bishops of Lincoln, London, and Bath, touching procurations, dated "iii°. non. Feb. [2 Feb.], pontif. anno viii°." The papal letters are also in ed., p. 186, taken from the same source, fol. 103.

[2] *Sabaudiensium*] Sebaudiensium, MS.

[3] *patriæ*] ptīe, MS.

tionem, immo deletionem, præsertim cum tanta legis permutatio sine communi assensu barnagii minime valuisset constitui. A.D. 1253.

Obiit episcopus Cicestrensis, magister Ricardus de Wiz.[1]

Quarto nonas Aprilis obiit episcopus Cicestrensis, magister Ricardus de Wiz, vir eminentis scientiæ et eximiæ sanctitatis, beatique Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, clericus quondam et consiliarius specialis. Hic, secundum beati Edmundi vaticinium, promotus est in præsulatum. Hujus autem assertionibus, necnon et magistri Roberti Bacun, fratris de Ordine Prædicatorum, certificatus frater Matheus Parisiensis, vitam memorati archiepiscopi scripsit, et quæ a fidedignis didicit, diligenter digessit.

2 April. Death of the bp. of Chichester.

Life of Edmund, abp. of Canterbury, written by Matthew Paris.

Confirmatio libertatis præconcessæ ecclesiæ de Waltham.

Anno quoque sub eodem, videlicet ad Pascha, dominus rex concessit et confirmavit abbati et conventui de Wautham, prout eis fuerat prius concessum, ut quotienscumque domum eorum vacare contigerit, conventus libere bona domus disponat, et plenam habeat tam de baronia quam de possessionibus ejusdem disponendi facultatem. Duo insuper mercata concessit eisdem, et quædam alia impendit beneficia, confecta super hoc carta præoptata.[2]

Henry confirms the privilege granted to Waltham abbey.

---

[1] In the margin are drawn a small mitre and crosier, reversed.

[2] In B. reference is made for these charters to the "Liber Additamentorum," but they are not found in MS. Cott. Nero D. I.

A.D. 1253. *Rogatus est dominus papa, ut Romam veniret.*

The Romans ask the pope to return to them, which he does.

Per idem tempus, cum dominus papa diutius extra Romam moraretur, Romani, missis nunciis solempnibus, rogaverunt eum ut Romam rediret, more boni pastoris gregem suum minaturus.[1] Et cum venire distulisset, iterum vocabant eum sub hac forma, ut, scilicet, tunc veniret, vel numquam. Volens igitur eisdem satisfacere, et periculum in mora protrahenda evitare, illuc properavit, reverenterque susceptus est, ut decuit.

De transfretatione regis, et contributione sibi facienda.

20 April. Parliament again assembled. The king is required to concede to the church the liberties previously guaranteed.

In quindena vero Paschæ, convocata ad parlamentum nobilitate Angliæ, cum de magna regis exigentia, qui postulavit sibi peregrinaturo infinitam exhiberi pecuniam, diutius pertractassent, tandem rogatum est ex parte omnium prælatorum, ut permitteret dominus rex, prout sæpius jurando promisit, sanctam ecclesiam suis gaudere libertatibus, maxime de electionibus prælatorum, tam in cathedralibus quam conventualibus ecclesiis. Et si hunc et alios errores secundum Magnæ Cartæ tenorem emendaret, ipsi usque ad gravamen magnum petitionibus suis inclinarent. Concessa est igitur regi, eorum petitionem concedenti, decima pars proventuum ecclesiasticorum per triennium recipiendorum; et a militibus scutagium illo anno, scilicet ad scutum tres marcæ. Rex igitur hujusmodi promissione exhilaratus, bona fide promisit se Magnam Cartam et omnes ejus articulos fideliter observaturum; jubens super hoc in omnes contravenientes sententiam proferri in publicum. fol. 155 *b*.

¶ *Nota quæ conceduntur regi pro concessione Magnæ Cartæ et libertatum.*

He promises to observe all the articles of the Great Charter.

[1] *minaturus*] Altered improperly in Edd. to *juvaturus*.

Notantur magnates præsentes.[1]

A.D. 1253.

13 May.

¶ *Concessa est Magna Carta, et sententia datur super hoc.*

Tertio igitur[2] idus[3] Maii, in majori aula regia Westmonasterii, sub præsentia et assensu domini H[enrici] III.,[4] Dei gratia regis Angliæ illustris, et dominorum R[icardi], comitis Cornubiæ, fratris sui, et[5] R[ogeri], comitis Nortfolchiæ et Suthfolchiæ, marescalli Angliæ, H[umfredi], comitis Herefordiæ, H[ugonis], comitis Oxoniæ, J[ohannis], comitis Warwik, et aliorum optimatum regni Angliæ, nos B[onefacius],[6] divina miseratione Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, totius Angliæ primas, F[ulco], Londoniensis,[7] H[ugo], Elyensis, R[obertus], Lincolniensis, W[alterus], Wigorniensis, W[alterus], Norwicensis, P[etrus], Herefordensis, W[illelmus], Saresbiriensis, W[alterus], Dunelmensis, R[icardus], Exoniensis, S[ilvester], Carleolensis, W[illelmus], Bathoniensis, L[aurentius], Rofensis, T[homas], Menevensis episcopi, pontificalibus induti, candelis accensis, in transgressores libertatum ecclesiasticarum,[8] et libertatum seu liberarum consuetudinum regni Angliæ, et præcipue earum, quæ continentur in Carta Libertatum[9] regni Angliæ[10] et Carta de Foresta, excommunicationis sententiam solempniter tulimus, sub hac forma:

Sententia excommunicationis talis.[11]

Sentence of excommunication pronounced on transgressors.

Auctoritate Dei omnipotentis,[12] [Patris][13] et Filii et Spiritus Sancti, et gloriosæ Dei Genitricis semperque Virginis Mariæ, et[14] beatorum apostolorum Petri et Pauli, omniumque apostolorum, et[14] beati Thomæ, archiepiscopi et martiris, omniumque martirum, beati Edwardi, regis Angliæ. omniumque confes-

---

[1] This document has been collated with the copies in B. and E., and the "Liber Additamentorum," [MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 112,] as also with the text of Rymer, taken "Ex Orig. inter Archiv. Eccles. Wellensis." i. 289.

[2] Anno Domini M°CC°LIII°., III°., Cott. and Rymer.

[3] *idus*] die, B., interlined, and E.

[4] *III.*] Om. B. and Ry.

[5] *et*] Om. Ry.

[6] *Bonefacius*] After this name has been written, *Dei gratia*, but afterwards expuncted.

[7] *Londoniensis*] MS. Cott. adds *episcopus*.

[8] *libertatum ecclesiasticarum*] libertatum et ecclesiasticorum, MS. and B. E., but corr. from Cott. and Ry.

[9] *Libertatum*] communium libertatum, Ry.

[10] *Angliæ*] Om. Cott.

[11] In the margin, a hand of the 15th century has written, "Nota de illis qui faciunt contra Magnam Cartam Angliæ, quomodo incurrunt sententiam excommunicationis."

[12] *Omnipotentis*] At first written, *patris omnipotentis*, but *patris* afterwards expuncted.

[13] *patris*] Supplied from Cott. and Ry.

[14] *et*] Om. Ry.

A.D. 1253. sorum atque virginum, omniumque sanctorum Dei, excommunicamus, anathematizamus, et a liminibus sanctæ matris ecclesiæ sequestramus omnes illos, qui amodo scienter et malitiose ecclesias privaverint vel spoliaverint suo jure. Item, omnes illos, qui ecclesiasticas libertates vel antiquas regni consuetudines probatas,[1] et præcipue libertates, et liberas consuetudines, quæ in Cartis communium Libertatum Angliæ[2] et de Foresta continentur, concessis a domino rege Angliæ[3] archiepiscopis, episcopis, et ceteris Angliæ prælatis, comitibus, baronibus, militibus et libere tenentibus, qualicunque[4] arte vel ingenio temere[5] violaverint,[6] diminuerint seu immutaverint, clam vel palam, facto, verbo, vel consilio, contra illas vel earum aliquam, in quocumque articulo temere veniendo. Item, in[7] illos, qui contra illas vel earum aliquam statuta ediderint, vel edita servaverint, consuetudines introduxerint, vel servaverint introductas, scriptores statutorum, necnon consiliarios et executores, et[8] qui secundum ea præsumpserint judicare. Qui omnes et singuli superius memorati hanc sententiam incursuros se noverint ipso facto, qui scienter aliquid commiserint de prædictis. Qui vero[9] ignoranter, nisi commoniti infra quindenam a tempore commonitionis se correxerint, et arbitrio ordinariorum plenius satisfecerint de commissis, extunc sint hac sententia involuti. Eadem etiam sententia innodamus omnes illos, qui pacem regis et regni præsumpserint perturbare. In cujus [rei][10] memoriam sempiternam, nos sigilla nostra præsentibus duximus apponenda.

The bp. of Lincoln causes this sentence to be read in his diocese.

Hanc autem sententiam, a rege et omnibus aliis voluntarie concessam, fecit episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus in diocesi sua frequenter recitari.

Fit querimonia a Wasconensibus de Symone, comite Legrecestriæ.

Complaints of the Gascons against the

Per idem tempus fecit rex acclamari in Wasconia, quod nullus extunc comiti S[imoni] intenderet vel obediret. Mandaverant enim prius regi Wasconenses,

[1] *probatas*] approbatas, Cott. and Ry.

[2] *Angliæ*] Om. Ry.

[3] *Angliæ*] Om. Cott. and Ry.

[4] *qualicunque*] quacunque, Cott. and Ry.

[5] *temere*] Om. Cott. and Ry.

[6] *violaverint*] violaverint, infregerint, Cott. and Ry.

[7] *in*] omnes, Cott. and Ry.

[8] *et*] Om. Ry.

[9] *vero*] autem, Cott.

[10] *rei*] Supplied from E., Cott., and Ry.

quod per tirannidem comitis Legrecestriæ S[imonis] multos subditos et amicos perdidisset, quod falsum est; et, nisi festinanter in Wasconiam veniret, omnia foret amissurus. Remandavit igitur rex, quod indubitanter, vita comite, illuc quamcitius veniret, quod multum eisdem, proditione latente, complacuit.

A.D. 1258. earl of Leicester.

De miraculis ad tumbam Ricardi, episcopi Cicestrensis.

Sublato, ut prædictum est, de medio episcopo Cicestrensi Ricardo, miracula ad tumbam ejus choruscarunt manifesta; unde sanctitas jam patuit, quæ prius occultata latebat. Cujus corpus cum portaretur ad lavandum, inventum est ciliciatum et circulis ferreis constrictum. Eligitur autem magister Johannes Clippinge, ejusdem ecclesiæ canonicus, eidem in episcopatum successurus.

Miracles at the tomb of Richard, bishop of Chichester.

Election of John Clippinge.

De visitatione facienda in Nigro Ordine.

Tunc temporis providit dominus papa, ut quilibet archiepiscopus et episcopus quoslibet monachos Nigri Ordinis in sua diocesi constitutos visitaret, injungens eisdem, ut eos cogerent quosdam articulos observare regulæ sancti Benedicti impertinentes.[1] Unde Franciæ monachi, datis iiii^{or} milibus librarum Turonensium domino papæ, hujusmodi impetum compescuerunt; abbas vero et conventus[2] Sancti Albani, cum suis paribus, ad sedem apostolicam appellarunt.[3]

The pope orders a visitation of the Black [Benedictine] Order.

Appeal made by the abbat of St. Alban's.

Summonentur omnes servitium regi debentes milites.

Circa kalendas Junii dominus rex fecit summoneri omnes sibi servitium militare debentes, ut in octavis

1 June. Henry summons

[1] *impertinentes*] inpertinentes, MS.

[2] *et conventus*] Interlined.

[3] See in ed. Wats, p. 173, the Statutes of the Order as emended by Innocent IV., and, at p. 228, the Replies of the Monastery of St. Alban's to the proposed innovations, both taken from the "Liber Additamentorum" [MS. Cott. Nero D. I., ff. 113, 147].

A.D. 1253. his military retainers to accompany him to Gascony, on the 16 June.

Trinitatis parati essent apud Portesmue in Wasconiam transfretaturi. Congregatis igitur ibidem cum rege necessariis omnibus, negato diutius vento, mora otiosa protrahitur, et thesaurus cum jacturis aliis minoratur.

Rex transfretat in Wasconiam.

6 Aug. He embarks at Portsmouth, and lands at Bordeaux, 15 Aug. La Réole is besieged.

Octavo[1] vero idus Augusti, vento arridente, rex, constitutis comite Ricardo et regina regni custodibus, navem ascendit apud Portesmue, comitantibus trecentis[2] magnis navibus, cum classe numerosa. Circa Assumptionem beatæ Mariæ applicuit apud Burdegalim. Susceptus igitur reverenter, ut decuit, jussit ilico Regulam obsidione vallari, ubi quamplurimi hostium suorum Gasconensium[3] latitabant, ipso Gastone ad regem Hispaniæ confugente.

Litteræ episcopi Lincolniensis Roberti ad papam.

Letters written by Robert, bp. of Lincoln, to the pope.

Cum per apostolica scripta significatum esset aliquibus, et præcipue episcopo Lincolniensi Roberto, quatinus quiddam facerent, quod eis videbatur injustum, rescripsit eidem papæ Innocentio episcopus prædictus, in hæc verba:

A.D. 1253.

Litteræ episcopi.[4]

Salutem.[5] Noverit[6] discretio vestra, quod mandatis apostolicis affectione filiali devote[7] et reverenter obedio. Hiis quo-

---

[1] *Octavo*] On an erasure.

[2] *trecentis*] trescentis, MS.

[3] *Gasconensium*] Gastonensium, MS. and E.

[4] This celebrated letter has been collated with the copies in B. and the "Liber Additamentorum," in MS. Cott., fol. 117 *b*, (both written by the hand of Matthew Paris,) and with E. and the Chetham MS. of *Flores Historiarum* (both written under his own eye); also with "Roberti Grosseteste Episc. Linc. Epistolæ," ed. Luard, p. 432. Many variations in the printed text of Parker and Wats proceed only from the arbitrary alterations made by the former, and are not here noticed.

[5] *Salutem*] Om. Cott. and Luard.

[6] *Noverit*] Noverit autem, Cott.

[7] *devote*] omnino et devote, Cott.; omnino devote, Lu.

que, quæ mandatis apostolicis adversantur, paternum[1] zelans honorem, adversor et obsto. Ad utrumque enim[2] teneor ex divino mandato. Apostolica enim mandata non sunt, nec esse possunt, alia quam apostolorum[3] doctrinæ, et ipsius Domini nostri[4] Jhesu Christi, apostolorum magistri et Domini, cujus tipum et personam maxime gerit in gerarchia[5] ecclesiæ[6] dominus papa, consona et conformis.[7] Ait enim ipse Dominus noster Jhesus Christus, "Qui non est mecum, contra me est."[8] A.D. 1253.
156 a. Contra ipsum autem nec est, nec esse potest apostolicæ sedis sanctitas divinissima. Non est igitur prædictæ litteræ tenor apostolicæ sanctitati consonus, sed absonus plurimum et discors. Primo, quia de illius litteræ et ei[9] consimilium[10] longe lateque dispersarum super-accumulato "Non obstante," non ex legis naturalis observandæ necessitate inducto, scatet cathaclismus inconstantiæ, audaciæ et procacitatis, inverecundiæ[11] mentiendi, fallendi,[12] diffidenter[13] alicui[14] credendi, vel fidem adhibendi; et ex hiis consequentium vitiorum, quorum non est numerus, Christianæ religionis puritatem, et socialis conversationis hominum tranquillitatem commovens et perturbans. Præterea, post peccatum Luciferi, quod idem erit in fine temporum ipsius filii perditionis Antichristi, "quem interficiet Dominus spiritu oris sui,"[15] non est, nec esse potest alterum genus peccati tam adversum et contrarium apostolorum doctrinæ et evangelicæ, et[16] ipsi Domino Jhesu Christo tam odibile, detestabile, et tam[17] abominabile, quam animas

---

[1] *paternum*] parentalem, Cott. and Lu. In Cott. there is a marginal gloss, *id est, paternum.*

[2] *enim*] After this word Cott. and Lu. insert, *similiter et æqualiter.*

[3] *apostolorum*] apostolicæ, E.

[4] *nostri*] Om. Lu.

[5] *gerarchia*] So also Cott.; ierarchia, E. and Cheth. In our MS. a later hand has interlined, "id est, potestate."

[6] *ecclesiæ*] ecclesiastica, Cott. and Lu.

[7] *conformis*] conforma, Cheth.; conformia, Lu.

[8] Matth. xii. 30.

[9] *ei*] aliarum ei, Lu.

[10] *consimilium*] In Cott. is added this marginal note by Matthew Paris: "per hoc quod dicitur *consimilium*, involvitur reprehensio, sed tacita, de usuris, symonia et rapina, quæ fit per Provisiones, quas Romana Curia committit impudenter. Cogitque nos subdere colla usurariis suas per oppressiones. Usura profecto, quam exemplo etiam Romanorum laici excercerent, in utroque Testamento prohibetur."

[11] *inverecundiæ*] inverecundæ, Cott.; etiam inverecundiæ, Lu.

[12] *fallendi*] et fallendi, Lu.

[13] *diffidenter*] diffidentiæ, Cott. and Lu.; diffidencio, Cheth.

[14] *alicui*] cuiquam, Cott. and Lu.

[15] 2 Thess. ii. 8.

[16] *evangelicæ*] ewangelice, MS.

[17] *tam*] Om. E., Cheth. and Lu.

A.D. 1253. curæ pastoralis officii[1] et ministerii[2] defraudatione mortificare et perdere. Quod peccatum evidentissimis[3] Scripturæ Sacræ testimoniis committere dinoscuntur, qui in potestate curæ pastoralis constituti de lacte et lana ovium Christi vivificandarum et salvandarum[4] pastoralis officii et ministerii salutem comparant,[5] debita non administrant. Ipsa enim ministeriorum pastoralium non administratio est, Scripturæ testimonio, sed[6] ovium occisio et perditio. Quod autem hæc duo genera peccatorum, licet dispariter, sint pessima et omne alterum genus peccati inæstimabiliter superexcedentia, manifestum est[7] ex hoc, quod ipsa sunt duobus existentibus et dictis, licet dispariter et dissimiliter, optimis directe contraria. Pessimum enim est, quod optimo contrarium est. Quantum autem est in dictis peccantibus, unum peccaminum est ipsius Deitatis superessentialiter et supernaturaliter optimæ.[8] Alterum vero Deiformitatis[9] et Deificationis, ex divini radii gratifica participatione essentialiter et naturaliter optimæ, interemptio. Et quia sicut in bonis causa boni melior est suo causato, sic etiam[10] in malis causa mali pejor est suo causato. Manifestum[11] est,[12] quoniam talium pessimorum interemptorum Deiformitatis[13] et Deificationis in ovibus Christi, in ecclesia[14] Dei introductores, ipsis pessimis interemptoribus sunt pejores, Lucifero[15] et Antichristo proximiores. Et in hac pejoritate gradatim, quanto[16] magis superexcellentes, qui ex majore et diviniore potestate sibi divinitus in ædificationem, non in destructionem

---

[1] *officii*] officio, Cheth.

[2] *ministerii*] ministerio, Lu., after which is inserted, *vivificandas et salvandas, pastoralis officii et ministerii*, and so in Cheth.

[3] *evidentissimis*] evidentissime, Cheth.

[4] *vivificandarum et salvandarum*] vivificandas et salvandas, et, Cott. *marg.*, with the various reading, *vel darum* noted.

[5] *vivificandarum . . . comparant*] In lieu of these words, Luard has, *suis carnalibus et temporalibus desideriis et necessitatibus prospiciunt, et pastoralis officii ministeria in æternam Christi ovium salutem operandum*, with which Cheth. agrees, except in reading *pastoralia officia et ministeria*, and omitting *Christi* and *debita*.

[6] *sed*] Interlined in Cott. Om. Lu.

[7] *est*] Om. B. and Cott.

[8] *optimæ*] optimæ vilipensio, Lu.

[9] *Deiformitatis*] deformitatis, MS. and B. E., Cheth., and so first written in Cott.

[10] *etiam*] et, B. *sec. m.*, Cott., Cheth., and Lu.

[11] *Manifestum*] Manifestissimum, Lu.

[12] *est*] Om. B.; est igitur, Cott.

[13] *Deiformitatis*] deformitatis, MS. and B. E., Cheth., and so originally in Cott.

[14] *ecclesia*] ecclesiam, Lu.

[15] *Lucifero*] et Lucifero, Cott. at first, but erased, and so Lu.

[16] *quanto*] Om. Cheth. and Lu.

tradita, magis tenentur ab ecclesia Dei tales interemptores pessimos excludere et extirpare. Non potest igitur sanctissima sedes apostolica, cui a Sancto Sanctorum Domino Jhesu Christo tradita est potestas omnimoda, testante apostolo, "in ædificationem, non[1] in destructionem,"[2] aliquid vergens in hujusmodi peccatum, Domino Jhesu Christo tam odibile, detestabile et[3] abominabile,[4] et humano generi summe penetrabile,[5] vel mandare vel præcipere, vel quoquo modo ad aliquid tale conari. Hoc enim esset suæ potestatis evidenter sanctissimæ et plenissimæ vel defectio, vel corruptio, vel abusio, et a throno gloriæ Domini[6] nostri[7] Jhesu Christi omnimodo[8] elongatio, et in cathedra pestilentiæ pœnarum gehennalium duobus prædictis tenebrarum principibus proxima coassessio. Nec potest quis immaculata et sincera obedientia eidem sedi subditus et fidelis, et a corpore Christi et eadem sede sancta per scisma non ab[scissus],[9] hujusmodi[10] mandatis vel præceptis, vel quibuscunque conaminibus[11] undecunque emanantibus, etsi[12] a supremo angelorum ordine,[13] obtemperare, sed necesse habet totis viribus contradicere[14] et rebellare. Propter hoc, reverendi domini, ego ex debito obedientiæ et fidelitatis, qua[15] teneor utrique[16] parenti apostolicæ sedis[17] sanctissimæ, et ex amore unionis in corpore Christi cum ea, hiis, quæ in prædicta littera continentur, et maxime quia,[18] ut[19] prætactum, peccatum Domino Jhesu Christo abominabilissimum et humano generi perniciossimum evidentissime vergunt, et apostolicæ sedis sanctitati omnino adversantur, et contrariantur catholicæ fidei[20] unicæ,[21] filialiter et obedienter non obedio, contradico, et rebello. Nec ob hoc potest inde[22] [vestra][23] discretio quicquam durum contra me statuere, quia omnis mea in hac parte

A.D. 1253.

---

[1] *non*] et non, Lu.

[2] 2 Cor. x. 8.

[3] *et*] Om. Lu.

[4] *abominabile*] abhominabile, MS.

[5] *penetrabile*] So Cott. in text, but *perneciabile* in marg.; *pervitabile*, Cheth.; *pernecabile*, Lu.

[6] *Domini*] Om. Lu.

[7] *nostri*] Om. Cott. and Lu.

[8] *omnimodo*] omnimoda, Cott.; summa, Lu.

[9] *abscissus*] ab, MS. and B. E. and Cott. Corrected from Cheth. and Lu.; and so in ed. Wats.

[10] *hujusmodi*] On an erasure in Cott. Om. Cheth.

[11] *conaminibus*] aliis conaminibus, Lu.

[12] *etsi*] etiam si, Cott. and Lu.; si, Cheth.

[13] *ordine*] ordine eveniret, Lu.

[14] *contradicere*] totum contradicere, Lu.

[15] *qua*] quo, Cott. and Lu.

[16] *utrique*] ut utrique, Lu.

[17] *sedis*] sedi, Lu.

[18] *quia*] quæ, Cheth.

[19] *ut*] in, Cott., Cheth. and Lu.

[20] *fidei*] unitati, Lu.

[21] *unicæ*] Om. Lu.

[22] *inde*] Om. Cott.

[23] *vestra*] Supplied from Cott., Cheth. and Lu.

A.D. 1253. et contradictio[1] et actio nec contradictio est nec rebellio, sed filialis divino mandato debita patri et matri honoratio. Breviter autem recolligens dico, apostolicæ sedis sanctitas non potest, nisi quæ in ædificationem sunt et non[2] destructionem. Hæc est enim potestatis plenitudo, omnia posse in ædificationem. Hæ[3] autem quas vocant[4] Provisiones, non sunt in ædificationem, sed in manifestissimam[5] destructionem. Non igitur eas potest beata sedes apostolica attemptare, "quia[6] caro et sanguis, quæ regnum Dei non possidebunt, eas revelavit, et non Pater Domini nostri Jhesu Christi, qui est in cœlis."[7]

Finita est epistola episcopi.

Anger of the pope on receiving this letter.

Cum vero ista littera ad notitiam papalem perveniret, ipse papa non se capiens præ ira, ipsum[8] cogitavit in tantam confusionem præcipitare, ut toti mundo stupor foret et exemplum formidabile; sed tamen consilio cardinalium emollitus, sub dissimulatione permisit transire, ne super hoc tumultus excitaretur.

Obiit Ranulfus, abbas Rameseye.

14 Aug. Death of Ralph, abbat of Ramsey.

In vigilia vero Assumptionis obiit venerabilis abbas Ranulphus, Rameseye, domum suam bonis tam spiritualibus quam temporalibus abundantem, tempore tunc messis regalibus relinquens diripiendam.[9]

De desponsatione sororis regis Hyspaniæ Edwardo, filio regis.

Espousals of the sister of the king

Misit rex nuncios solempnes ad regem Hispaniæ, videlicet episcopum Bathoniensem, et Johannem Man-

---

[1] *contradictio*] dictio, Cott. and Lu.

[2] *non*] non in, Lu.

[3] *Hæ*] Hee, MS.

[4] *quas vocant*] quæ vocantur, Cheth.

[5] *manifestissimam*] manifestam, E. and Cheth.

[6] *quia*] etenim, Lu.

[7] Adapted from Matt. xvi. 17. In Cott. is added at the end, in red letters, "*Hæc omnia asseruit idem episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus se posse sustinere et probare confidenter contra omnes mundi hæreticos, necnon et falsos Christianos.*"

[8] *ipsum*] ipsum mittentem, E.

[9] *diripiendam*] dirripiendam, MS.

sel, clericum suum specialem, ut ejus fœdus et amicitiam postularent, et sororem suam uterinam Edwardo, filio suo primogenito et heredi legitimo, matrimonialiter peterent copulandam. Ipse autem rex Angliæ Wasconiam memorato filio suo concesserat, quod non discrepat[1] a concessione facienda prædictæ puellæ præfato E[dwardo] maritandæ. Postulabat autem idem rex Hispaniæ præsentiam Edwardi sibi exhiberi, ut eum, prout tantum decuit adolescentem, cingulo donaret militari, et eorum satisfaceret,[2] prout expediret, petitioni.

A.D. 1253. of Spain to prince Edward.

Episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus infirmatus taliter conqueritur de statu ecclesiæ.

Complaint of the bp. of Lincoln, on his death-bed, respecting the state of the church.

Diebus sub eisdem episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus apud Bugeden, manerium suum, decubuit graviter infirmatus. Qui in spiritu prænoscens tribulationem ecclesiæ in proximo ingruere, vocavit ad se fratrem Johannem de Ordine Prædicatorum, scilicet magistrum Johannem de Sancto Egidio, in arte medicinali peritum, et in theologia lectorem. Recitansque facta quædam Romanorum, eum graviter redarguit et confratres suos, necnon et Minores, eo quod Ordo eorum in paupertate voluntaria constituitur, ut liberius vitia potentum acriter reprehendant. In hoc autem, quod ipsi peccata magnatum audacter non redarguunt, eosdem hæreticos dixit manifestos. Interrogans insuper eundem fratrem, "Quid esset hæresis?" et ille hæsitasset, autenticam non recolens diffinitionem, dixit episcopus, "Hæresis est sententia humano sensu electa, Scripturæ Sacræ contraria, palam edocta, pertinaciter defensa. Hæresis enim Græce, electio Latine." Et consequenter reprehendens prælatos, et maxime Romanos, subjunxit, "Dare curam animarum parvulo, sententia est alicujus

fol. 156 *b.*

¶ *Nota diffinitionem hæresis a Græco sumptam.*

[1] *discrepat*] descrepat, MS.

[2] *satisfaceret*] sat'fac'et, MS.

A.D. 1253. prælati, humano sensu electa propter carnem vel teneritatem. Et est contraria Scripturæ Sacræ, quæ prohibet fieri pastores, qui non sunt idonei ad arcendum lupos. Et est palam edocta, quia manifeste portatur carta sigillata. Et est pertinaciter defensa, quia si quis voluerit contradicere, suspenditur, excommunicatur. Cui autem tota diffinitio hæresis convenit, hæreticus est. Sed quisque fidelis tenetur opponere se hæretico, quantum potest. Qui ergo potest contradicere, et non contradicit, peccat, et videtur fautor esse, secundum illud Gregorii, 'Non caret scrupulo societatis occultæ, qui manifesto facinori desinit obviare.' Sed vos fratres maxime obligamini ad oppositionem contra talem, cum habeatis ex officio gratiam prædicandi, et per paupertatem liberiores injustis resistendi. Quia,

'Cantabit vacuus coram latrone viator.'"[1]

Hæc et alia multa lugubria proposuit idem episcopus coram clericis suis et aliis ante mortem graviter infirmatus, de cotidianis adhuc condolens ecclesiæ oppressionibus, et maxime earum fautoribus. Quæ qui plenius voluerit perspicere, alibi poterit invenire.[2]

De morte ejus et signis apertis.[3]

9 Oct. Miraculous signs accompanying his death.

Migravit igitur ab hujus mundi exilio sanctus Robertus, Lincolniensis episcopus, apud Bugedene, in nocte sancti Dionisii, domini papæ et regis redargutor manifestus, prælatorum correptor, monachorum corrector, presbiterorum director, clericorum instructor, scolarium sustentator, populi prædicator, incontinentium persecutor, scripturarum sedulus perscrutator diversarum, Romanorum malleus et contemptor. In mensa refectionis corporalis, dapsilis, copiosus et civilis,

[1] Juv. Sat. x. 22.

[2] See B. and ed. Wats, pp. 874–876.

[3] A mitre and crosier reversed are drawn in the margin.

[illegible] corpore.

[illegible] Willelmus de Wesci [illegible].

Death of [illegible] Vescy. Post transitum vero domini regis [illegible] de suis quamplures. Inter quos Willelmus de Vescy, miles quidem de nobilioribus baronibus partium Angliae borealium, viam universae carnis ingressus est. Rex autem incontinenti custodiam [illegible] [illegible] alienigenis commisit possidendam.

Discordia inter archiepiscopum et capitulum Lincolniense.

Ipsis quoque diebus orta est discordia inter archiepiscopum Cantuariensem et capitulum Lincolniense. Vendicabat enim archiepiscopus potestatem conferendi praebendas et redditus in episcopatu Lincolniensi pastore suo viduato. Illi vero canonici et clerici multi, consuetudini approbatae innitentes et certis [illegible] Discord between the abp. of Canterbury and the chapter of Lincoln.

---

[1] In the margin is this mark of reference ⟩+C, but there is no corresponding marginal note or addition.

[2] In the lower margin is drawn his shield of arms, reversed, viz., gules, a cross patonce argent. The same shield is drawn by the hand of Matth. Paris in R. MS. [illegible]

A.D. 1253. bant; unde eos et omnes contradictores archiepiscopus excommunicavit. Sed a magistro Willelmo Lupo,[1] eidem in faciem contradicente, appellatum est. Quo Romam adeunte, dominus papa misertus super hoc, providit remedium. Quo iterum, nacta spe meliori, redeunte, mors dicitur triumphare.

Appeal to the pope by William Lupus.

Nata est Katerina, filia regis.

Birth of the princess Katherine. 25 Nov.

Regina Angliæ Alienora Londoniis peperit filiam suam. Quæ die sanctæ Katerinæ nata, et ab archiepiscopo baptizata, nomen sortita est Katerina.

Discordia inter scolares et fratres Parisius.

Disagreement between the University of Paris and the Friars Preachers.

Suborta est tunc discordia magna inter universitatem Parisiacensem et fratres Prædicatores, qui in tantum multiplicati sunt et exaltati, ut approbatis consuetudinibus et juribus scolarium renuissent subjacere. Scolares igitur, destinatis nunciis discretissimis, et articulis contra fratres compositis, Romanam curiam super hoc certificarunt; fratres vero e contra miserunt. Effusa igitur multa pecunia, et labore hinc inde consumpto, mutatis consuetudinibus quibusdam, pax reformata est.

De miraculis in ecclesia Lincolniensi.

Miracles in the church of Lincoln.

Miracula miraculis diatim in ecclesia Lincolniensi cumulantur, et, operante Domino pro episcopo Roberto, alii sancti, qui in ecclesia eadem requiescunt, videlicet sancti Remigius et Hugo, ad beneficia suscitantur impendenda. Hic vero Robertus canonicos suos, scilicet Lincolnienses, multum vexavit, et in religiosos terribiliter, religiosas terribilius fulguravit, zelum

Severity of Robert, bp. of Lincoln, in his lifetime.

[1] In B. he is styled "Lincolniensis archidiaconus." See Fasti, ii. 43.

bonum habens. Confidenter autem dico, quod plus Deo placuerunt ejus virtutes, quam displicuerunt excessus; sicut in David et in Petro, plus valuit in David[1] mansuetudo, quam viluit facta Uriæ proditio. In Petro trina negatio reprehenditur, sed tamen princeps apostolorum consecratur.[2] A.D. 1253.

Annalis conclusio.

Transiit igitur annus ille satis frugifer et fructifer, ita scilicet, ut summa frumenti ad pretium xxx. descenderet denariorum. Sed in quantum terra profuit, mare obfuit, suos terminos transcendendo. Quod quis repente superundavit, multos homines et pecora occupavit, et si nocte evenisset, multo plures submersisset. Annus iste Terræ Sanctæ extitit exitialis; Flandriæ et confinibus ejus cruentissimus; Franciæ dampnosus et probrosus; Papæ et papalibus arctus et angarialis; Angliæ turbulentus; in spiritualibus temporalibusque bonis inclinativus.[3] **Annual summary.**

---

[1] *David*] Davit, MS.

[2] Here ends MS. C.C.C.C., No. XVI. (marked B.), as printed from in Edd. See Preface to vol. i. p. lx.

[3] In the corner of the lower margin is written by a different but coeval hand, "Nota mirabilia;" but what this refers to is doubtful; perhaps to the miracles in the church of Chichester, which are noticed in B., but omitted in Edd.

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS

ABBREVIATIO CHRONICORUM ANGLIÆ.

INTRODUCTORY NOTICE.

THE work which follows seems to have been quite unknown to the earlier biographers of Matthew Paris. Leland, Bale, Parker, and Pits pass it over in silence, nor is it noticed at a more recent period by Vossius, Selden, Wats, Blount, Oudin, Nicolson, and others; yet it certainly must have been seen by Joscelin, archbishop Parker's secretary, since he makes use of it in his historical collections in MS. Cott. Vitell. E. XIV. under the years 1245 and 1250; and in the list of English Historians (printed by Hearne at the end of Avesbury) he speaks of it distinctly in the following terms: "Matthæus Parisiensis scripsit Epitome Historiarum, quod vocat 'Ager Sterilis,' vel 'Abbreviatio compendiosa Cronicorum Angliæ,' ab anno incarn. Dom. Millesimo, regnante Ethelredo . . . Perduxit ad annum Domini 1255 inclusive." Joscelin, however, has here committed a singular error in assuming as the actual title of the work a phrase used by the author in a metaphorical sense, at the end of the year 1250, where he writes, "Libellus iste auctori suo *ager sterilis potest merito appellari;* nam sudor in cultura laboriosus, in colligendæ messis tempore commoditatis omnimodæ carentia, filix, spinæ et tribuli, pro fructibus colliguntur. Et 'quid juvat in sterili spargere semen humo?'" Subsequent, also, to the time when the manuscript containing the work had come into the hands of Sir Robert Cotton, it was consulted by Casaubon, who mentions it in a letter written from

London in Feb. 1614, as "brevem Historiam ejusdem Matthæi [Parisiensis], ubi acrius invehitur in Romanum tyrannidem."[1] Later still (in 1657), some extracts were made from the work by Sir James Ware (MS. Add. 4783, fol. 97), who errs with Joscelin in giving it the title of "Ager Sterilis;" and at the close of the 17th century Dr. Thomas Gale had consulted it, as appears by the following note in his handwriting in the manuscript (fol. 946): "Hic desinit Matth. Paris *Historia Minor*, quæ est epitome Majoris, quæ ad 1258 [1259] continuatur." Two faults are here apparent, first in calling this work the *Historia Minor* (and thus confounding it with the *Historia Anglorum*), and then in stating it to be a compendium of the Greater Chronicle, which it certainly is not. To these scanty notices of the work may be added the brief mention made of it in a note to the second edition of Cave's "Scriptorum Ecclesiasticorum Historia Literaria," vol. ii. p. 298, published in 1743,[2] whence, no doubt, Tanner derived the meagre reference made to the Cotton manuscript in his *Bibliotheca*, p. 752. Since his time the work appears to have been almost wholly ignored; and among recent historical writers, Mrs. Everett Green is the only one who has occasionally availed herself of the information it contains.[3] She quotes it, however, either as the work of an anonymous historian, or as the chronicle of Rishanger, which, of course, is an oversight.

[1] Is. Casauboni *Epistolæ*, p. 554, ed. 1709.

[2] This edition was edited by the Rev. Dr. Waterland, to whom probably the note is due, which is thus worded: "*Abbreviatio compendiosa Chronicorum Angliæ*, ab ann. 1000 ad ann. 1255, exstat MS. in Bibl. Cotton. sub *Claudio* D. 6, n. 3. Videtur propria Matthæi manu descripta. Vide prologum ad ann. 1251. Denuo continuata ab alio ad finem R. Hen. 3. ibid. sub *Vitellio* D. 2. n. 1." The latter statement is erroneous, since the MS. Vitellius D. II. contains only an abridged transcript of the Royal MS. 14 C. vii., made in 1565. See Pref. to Vol. i. p. lxx.

[3] *Lives of the Princesses of England*, vol. i. pp. 98, 197, 288, 392; vol. ii. pp. 74, 173, ed. 1849.

Only one manuscript of the "Abbreviatio Chronicorum" is known to exist, which is the author's original copy, and which would appear to have never been subsequently transcribed. It is preserved in the Cottonian collection, under the press-mark Claudius D. VI., and has been bound up with other historical works, composed by monks of the abbey of St. Alban in the 14th century.[1] It is a small folio, written on vellum in double columns, and contains 215 leaves, of which the Chronicle of Matthew Paris occupies eighty-six. Prefixed to the work are some historical *prolegomena* in the author's handwriting, as follows:—

a. A short introduction to the articles which follow, beginning, "Anglia habet in longitudine," occupying only a column. At the top of the page are drawn two circular schemes, in one of which is represented a monarch seated, holding a book (probably meant for Offa), and the other is divided into seven compartments, intended to contain the names of the seven kingdoms of the Heptarchy, but not filled up. In the corner of one is written, "Cenobium sc̄i Albani." . . . . . . fol. 1 *b.*

b. A series of coloured figures of thirty-two sovereigns of Britain, from Brutus to Henry III., seated under ornamented arches, four in a page. The pages are divided into columns by triple coloured vertical bands, and this peculiarity is continued throughout the chronicle. The names of the sovereigns were originally added to each in the margins, but many have been cut off by the binder, and are now replaced in the handwriting of Sir Robert Cotton. . . . . ff. 2–5 *b.*

These figures should be compared with the similar ones prefixed to the *Historia Anglorum* in MS. Reg. 14 C. vii.

---

[1] See an account of these works in Riley's Introduction to *Willelmi Rishanger Chronica*, pp. xvi–xviii.

c. Short Genealogical history from Alfred to the children of Henry III., in a more abridged form than in MS. Coll. Corp. Chr. Camb. No. xxvi. . . . . ff. 6 *b*–8.

d. Map of England, Wales, and Scotland. . . . fol. 8 *b*.

This is badly engraved by Gough in his *British Topography*, 1780, vol. i., pl. iv., and described with many blunders, pp. 68–71. He speaks of it as "the completest map of Great Britain for the period." A small portion has been cut off by the binder, but the names can be supplied from the similar map in MS. Cott. Julius D. VII., fol. 50 *b*.

On the next leaf commences the Compendious Chronicle of Matthew Paris now first printed, which is arranged in the form of Annals, with the years noted in the margin. The text is in the author's autograph to the end of the year 1252 (fol. 57), and the continuation for the years 1253, 1254, and part of 1255 (where the work ends abruptly in the middle of a paragraph) is in the hand of a contemporary monk of St. Alban's, but executed under the eye of the author.[1]

In the 16th century this volume appears to have belonged to one Richard Hatton, whose name is written at the bottom of fol. 5 *b*., with the words, "Renuncio pape cum suis." It was subsequently in the possession of John Stowe (as appears by some extracts from it in 1575 among his Collectanea, MS. Harl. 545, fol. 186), and after his death it passed, with other of his manuscripts, into the library of Sir Robert Cotton.

The title prefixed to this work was probably borrowed by Matthew Paris from the shorter history of Diceto.[2] In the portion preceding A.D. 1067, the text is partly based on Wendover, but much abbreviated, with additions from Henry of Huntingdon, and other sources. The rest of the work, to the year 1253 inclusive, has been undoubtedly abridged from the *Historia Anglo-*

[1] See Pref. to vol. i. p. li.

[2] See note in Pref. vol. i. p. x.

rum, but with numerous alterations and insertions. Some of these are taken from the *Chronica Majora* (references to which, under various titles, are frequently made), but the majority contain new and interesting matter, or give us the opinions of the writer in regard to the conduct of the Sovereign and the affairs of the Roman Court, which it is useful and instructive to compare with those expressed in his other writings. In the last two years, 1254 and 1255, the Greater Chronicle is closely followed.

Although certainly in the handwriting of Matthew Paris, the text exhibits numerous instances of carelessness (as pointed out in the foot-notes), and has never received the author's customary and final revision. Instances of verbal inaccuracies, omissions, and repetitions occur throughout, of which it is sufficient here to refer to those which occur under the years 1053, 1098, 1123, 1125, 1142, and 1201. These errors, however, do not at all detract from the historical value of the work, or from the confidence we should place in the general good faith and accuracy of the historian.

In printing the text of this Chronicle, it has been judged advisable to omit such passages as are verbally the same with the *Historia Anglorum*, and their absence is indicated by *dots*. References are also added in the margin to the printed pages of the latter work, in which the omitted portions occur.

It is also desirable to point out (with greater precision than was indicated in the Preface to vol. i. p. xxiii. note [1]), that the text of the present work has been verbally copied into the original MS. of the *Flores Historiarum*, falsely attributed to "Matthew of Westminster," from the words "Comes Ricardus cum maxima gloria," in 1250 (vol. iii. p. 311), to the end of the year 1255.

MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS

ABBREVIATIO CHRONICORUM ANGLIÆ.

fol. 9 a. *Hæc est Abbreviatio compendiosa Cronicorum Angliæ, ab anno Incarnationis Dominicæ millesimo, regnante Etheldredo, fratre Sancti Edwardi, regis et martiris.*

Millesimo. Rex Etheldredus duxit in uxorem Emmam, filiam consulis Normannorum, quem Ducem appellamus, regum piissimus et imbellis, prole felicissimus. **Marriage of Æthelred.**

Mº. primo. Inventus est sanctus Yvo episcopus in partibus orientalibus oriundus, in loco qui non multum distat ab Huntendonia; et translatum est sanctum corpus ejus ad nobile cœnobium Rameseiæ, punito abbate[1] illepido per ocream. Hujus tumba ultro recepit oblationem compatriotarum suorum, miraculose aperta. **Invention of St. Ivo.**

Mº.IIº. Angli die uno, hora una, propter oppressiones, quas sustinuerunt intolerabiles, duces qui erant in Anglia tirannizantes trucidaverunt immunitos, scilicet, Dacos. **Slaughter of the Danes.**

Mº.IIIº. Wilfricus[2] episcopus,[3] vir eximiæ sanctitatis, cœnobium de Burtona fundavit. Daci quoque ira succensi venerunt **Burton abbey founded.**

---

[1] This is an error, which occurs also in A. C. D., and is copied in the *Flores Historiarum*, ascribed falsely to Matthew of Westminster. For *abbate* we should read *præposito*, as appears by the *Vita S. Ivonis*, compiled by Gocelin in the 11th century, in MS. Cott. Tib. D. III. fol. 242 b., and in the Acta SS. vol. ii. p. 289. The name of the præpositus was *Elnothus*, and that of the abbat *Ednothus*, the similarity of which probably caused the mistake.

[2] *Wilfricus*] Wilfridus, MS., corrected from A. C. D.

[3] *episcopus*] This is a mistake. The founder of Burton abbey was Wulfric Spott. See Monasticon, vol. iii. pp. 32, 39.

Conflicts with the Danes. Eadric Streone.

in Angliam. Multi Daci et Angli in prœlio ceciderunt. Rex Anglorum Ætheldredus ducatum Merciorum Eadrico proditori, cognomento[1] Stroine, dedit.

Arrival of Sweyn.

M°.IIII°. Suein Dacus venit cum innumera multitudine barbarorum, qui omnia feraliter vastans in Anglia ferro et flamma, iram Dei et beati Edmundi, regis et martiris, sibi coacervavit, prout rei exitus comprobavit. Johannes sedit in cathedra Romana annis v.[2]

John XVIII. pope.

Henry II. emperor. Great famine.

M°.V°. Henricus Romanum adeptus imperium, imperavit annis xxii.[3] Daci, Martis vexati sollicitudinibus, repatriarunt. Fames quoque maxima Angliam invasit, quantam se nullus meminit prævidisse.

Murder of duke Æthelstan.

M°.VI°. Eadricus proditor ducem nobilem Ethelstanum[4] proditiose interemit. Rex Etheldredus, pacificus et imbellis, a Dacis pecunia pacem redemptam optinuit. Jussu regis, duo filii dicti proditoris, in ultionem paterni facinoris, excæcantur.

Treaty with the Danes.

M°.VII°. Angli cum Dacis conventionem fecerunt, et ad pacis observationem triginta milia librarum esterlingorum sunt statuta. Venerat namque Suanus, rex Danorum, omnia exterminans; qui tandem, ultore beato Edmundo, rege et martire, periit interemptus.

A fleet raised.

M°.VIII°. Rex Etheldredus, anno regni sui tricesimo, fecit parari per totam Angliam ex trecentis et decem hidis unam navem, et ex octo hidis loricam et galeam, in spem animatus.

Sergius IV. pope. Ælmar bishop of Selsey.

M°.IX°. Annis duobus et mensibus novem, Sergius sedit in cathedra Romana.[5] Defuncto Sireburnensi[6] episcopo, Ælmarus successit.

Fresh arrival of Danes.

M°.X°. Novus Danorum exercitus[7] in Angliam veniens, incendiis vacat et rapinis.

---

[1] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[2] John XVIII. was pope from 25 Dec. 1003 to June 1009. See Jaffé, "Regesta Pontificum," p. 348.

[3] Henry II. reigned from June 1002 to July 1024. See "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 14.

[4] *Ethelstanum*] So also in Wendover, i. 437; but *Ælfhelm* in Flor. Wig. i. 158, ed. Thorpe.

[5] Sergius IV. held the see from July 1009 to July 1012. Jaffé, p. 350.

[6] *Sireburnensi*] So also in Wendover, i. 438, and A. C. D. (where he is named Brihtric), but in Flor. Wig. i. 162, we have *Sælesiensi*, which is the correct reading. See "Fasti Eccles. Anglicanæ," i. 237, ed. Hardy.

[7] *exercitus*] excercitus, MS. throughout, and this orthography is used in all the other cases of the word.

fol. 9 b. M°.XI°. Daci debacchantes [1] in Anglia, multos sanctos peremerunt martires, confessores exilio et carcere condempnarunt.[2] Passus est sanctus Ælphegus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, a Danis excerebratus, tempore Paschali. Almarus, abbas Sancti Augustini, abire permittitur. Multi passi sunt pro Christo. Many holy men slain. Death of archbishop Ælfeah.

M°.XII°. Ætheldredus cum exercitu Dacorum pacem fecit, dans eis septem [3] milia librarum argenti. In villa quadam Saxoniæ chorea in vigilia Nativitatis Domini, in cimiterio Sancti Magni, martiris, miraculose continuatur. Peace with the Danes. Miraculous dance in Saxony.

M°.XIII°. Suanus Dacus tirannus totam Angliam sibi subjugavit, rege Ætheldredo fugiente in Normanniam. Sweyn conquers England.

M°.XIIII°. Suanus,[4] vindice beato Edmundo, confossus lancea de nocte, subita nece miraculose peremptus est. Rex Ætheldredus in Angliam remeavit. Death of Sweyn.

M°.XV°. Cnuto, rex Danorum, in Angliam veniens, omnia obstantia flamma, cædibus et rapinis vastabat. Veniensque Oxoniam, et magno ibi facto concilio, mandavit rex multos Dacorum nobiles,[5] consilio iniquo [6] ducis Eadrici, trucidari. Arrival of Cnut.

M°.XVI°. Rex Ætheldredus in fata concessit, cui successit Ædmundus filius suus,[7] cognomento [8] Ireneside. Hic, anno regni sui primo, septies strenue contra Cnud pugnavit, triumphans gloriose; ultimo vero singulari duello Cnutonem fatigatum sibi conciliavit. Tandem ignominiosa proditione et morte periit. Death of Æthelred. Ædmund Ironside.

M°.XVII°. Cnuto Danus totam Angliam occupavit, filios Edmundi regis et alios nobiles Angliæ, et ex antiqua clara stirpe, exilio dampnavit. Cnut obtains the whole of England.

M°.XVIII°. Cnuto Emmam, Normannicam natione,[9] relictam regis Ætheldredi, caute ducit in uxorem; et sic nobilitatem Anglicanam sibi prudenter inclinavit. Piis operibus insistens, ecclesias fundavit, elemosinas indulsit, hostes ed[omuit].[10] His marriage to queen Emma.

---

[1] *debacchantes*] debacantes, MS.

[2] *Daci . . . . condempnarunt*] Added by Matthew Paris in the lower margin.

[3] *septem*] octo, Hen. Hunt. p. 754, ed. Petrie, but the correct reading is *xlviii°*., as in Sax. Chron., Flor. Wig., and Wendover. In the latter the payment is entered under A.D. 1011.

[4] *Suanus*] Suan, MS.

[5] *nobiles*] nobile, MS.

[6] *iniquo*] iniqua, MS.

[7] *filius suus*] These words are repeated, by error.

[8] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[9] *natione*] nascione, MS.

[10] *Piis . . . . . hostes ed[omuit]* Added in the lower margin, but the concluding word has been partly cut off by the binder.

Cnut returns to Denmark. Æthelric bishop of Selsey.

M°.XIX°. Cnuto, rex Anglorum et Danorum, transfretans in Daciam, ibidem disposuit regni negotia hiemando. Eodemque anno, defuncto Æthelmaro, Selesiensi[1] episcopo, Etheldricus successit.

Monastery of St. Edmund founded.

M°.XX°. Cnuto cœnobium Sancti Ædmundi, regis et martiris, ampliavit et locupletavit; et ibidem monachos sub abbate, secundum regulam sancti Benedicti, Deo militare constituit.

Tax imposed by Cnut. St. Benet Holm founded.

M°.XXI°. Cnuto fecit per Angliam mirabilem extorquendo censum colligi, scilicet, lxxii. milia librarum argenti, præter xx.,[2] quos Londonienses dederunt;[3] sed pœnitens postea, cum vidisset terram patere discrimini, peccatum restitutione et elemosinis expiavit. Domum quoque Sancti Benedicti de Ulmo fundavit.

Laws of king Edward confirmed.

M°.XXII°. Cnuto leges antiquas tenendas inviolabiliter constituit, regis scilicet Edwardi Primi. Et scriptæ sunt in Latino, et in lingua Anglica et Danica, ad auctoritatem.

Translation of St. Ælpheah.

M°.XXIII°. Corpus beati Ælphegi, archiepiscopi et martiris, Cantuariam delatum est. fol. 10 *a*.

Wilfric archbishop of York.

M°.XXIIII°. Cnuto rex multos suorum amisit in bello. Defuncto Wlstano,[4] archiepiscopo Eboracensi, Wilfricus[5] successit. Rex Cnuto, propter victoriam quam sibi Angli adquisierant, eos[6] cœpit amplius honorare.

Endowment of the abbey of Winchester.

M°.XXV°. Cnuto, hortatu Emmæ reginæ, vetus monasterium Wintoniæ tanta munificentia[7] ditavit, ut animos et oculos intuentium ad laudes, propter decorem constructionis, invitaret.

Reverence paid to the tomb of St. Edmund. Abbeys of Holm founded.

M°.XXVI°. Cnuto magnam reverentiam circa sepulchrum beati Edmundi regis, prædecessoris sui, exhibuit. In cujus ecclesia conventum monachorum constituit sub abbate, Deo militare. Abbatiam de Ulmo in Anglia constituit, aliam in Norwegia.[8]

---

[1] *Selesiensi*] Selenesensi, MS.

[2] *xx.*] Written on an erasure.

[3] This tax is mentioned in the Saxon Chronicle, Flor. Wig., Hen. Hunt., and Wendover under the year 1018, and the sum paid by the Londoners is variously stated at 10,500 and 11,000 pounds.

[4] *Wlstano*] Wistano, MS. Wulstan II. died 28 May 1023. Fasti, iii. 96.

[5] *Wilfricus*] Wisfricus, MS. His real name was Ælfric. See *postea*, under A.D. 1052.

[6] *eos*] Added in marg.

[7] *munificentia*] munifentia, MS.

[8] *Norwegia*] Norwegiam, MS.

M°.XXVII°. Cnuto rex cum quinquaginta puppibus Norwegiam hostiliter adiit, regem Olafum fugavit, regnumque cepit,[1] et tota vita sua retinuit. Defeat of king Olaf.

M°.XXVIII°. Cnuto Norwagenses in amicitiam sibi studet conciliare. Regem Olaphum victum a regno expulit; qui redierato[2] effugavit; sicque victor rediit in Angliam. Olaf is expelled.

M°.XXIX°. Cnud Romam pompose[3] perrexit,[4] ubi elemosinam, quæ Romescot dicitur, et quam Offa rex, fundator nobilis cœnobii Anglorum prothomartiris Albani, præconcesserat, confirmavit. Cnut goes to Rome.

M°.XXX°. Cnud in ecclesia Sancti Benedicti de Ulmo, jam perfecta, monachos secundum regulam sancti Benedicti sub abbate, Deo militare constituit. Similiter aliam in Norwegia ecclesiam Sancti Benedicti fundavit, et monachos instituit, quas[5] sequenti anno plus locupletavit. Monks placed in St. Benet Holm and St. Benet in Norway.

M°.XXXI°. Cnud ecclesiam cœnobialem Sancti Benedicti in Norwegia fecit sollempniter[6] valde dedicari. Humiliatus[7] et considerans humanam fragilitatem, et maxime propriam, abdicavit coronam portare, pro eo quod mare intumens præcepto suo non obedivit.[8] Contra Edmundum Yreneside singulari duello dimicans, caute pacificatus est.[9] Dedication of St. Benet in Norway. Cnut leaves off his crown.

M°.XXXII°. Dedicata est ecclesia Beati Ædmundi, regis et martiris, cum nobili qua decuit solempnitate, in honorem beatæ Dei Genitricis Mariæ et sancti Edmundi, xv. kalendas Novembris. Dedication of the ch. of St. Edmund. 18 Oct.

M°.XXXIII°. Cnud a Romana curia revertitur; viam in marisco, multiplicatis fossoribus, quæ Kingesdelf[10] dicitur, eru- Road made in the marsh of

---

[1] In Sax. Chron., Flor. Wig., Hen. Hunt., and Wendover, placed under the year 1028.

[2] *qui redierato*] So in MS., and evidently an error. Perhaps we should read, *qui redierat, iterato.* Olaf's return to Norway took place in 1030, when he was slain by his own people. See Sax. Chron., Flor. Wig., and Hen. Hunt.

[3] *pompose*] ponpose, MS.

[4] Cnut's journey is placed by Flor. Wig., Hen. Hunt., and Wendover under the year 1031.

[5] *quas*] Refers to *ecclesias*, or else we should read *quos*.

[6] *sollempniter*] sollepniter, MS.

[7] *Humiliatus*] Humilatus, MS.

[8] This story is from Wendover, under the year 1035, vol. i. 492, who borrows it from Henry of Huntingdon, p. 757.

[9] This event took place in 1016. See the previous notice under that year, and Wendover, i. 457.

[10] *Kingesdelf*] Kingesdeff, MS. Corrected from A. C. D., which read, "viam in marisco inter Rameseiam et Burgum, quod Kingesdelf dicitur, ut periculum magnorum stagnorum vitaretur, eruderavit," and so also in the *Flores Hist.*, ascribed to Matth. Westm. p. 209, ed. 1601. See Monasticon, i. 573.

Kingesdelf. His victory over Malcolm king of Scots. deravit. Eodemque anno contra Scotos rebellantes expeditionem ducens, Malcolmum regem cum duobus aliis regibus levi negotio superavit. Unde gratus Deo pro victoria in senio optenta, religiosis in libertatibus et possessionibus multa contulit beneficia.

Benedict IX. pope. Ædnoth bp. of Dorchester. M°.XXXXIIII°. Benedictus sedit in cathedra Romana annis xiiii.[1] Eodem anno, defuncto Ædrico, Dorkecestrensi episcopo, Ædnothus successit.

Cnut's sons in Denmark and Norway. M°.XXXV°. Cnuto duos filios suos regnare fecit, unum in Dacia, alterum in Norwegia. fol. 10 b.

Regi Cnutoni successit Haraldus rex. M°.XXXVI°. Rex Cnuto potentissimus, cum regnasset xx. annis, in fata concessit,[2] et sepultus est apud Wintoniam. Haraldus, filius ejus,[3] diadema suscipiens, pro eo regnavit.

Death of Alfred, son of Æthelred. M°.XXXVII°. Alfredus, Ethelredi primogenitus, proditione comitis Godwini,[4] ignobilis animo et genere, oculorum luce privatus est,[5] nec diu post vixit.

Exile of queen Emma. Eadsi, abp. of Canterbury. M°.XXXVIII°. Haraldus rex exilio dampnavit[6] nobilem reginam, novercam suam.[7] Æthelnothus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, diem clausit extremum; successit Eadsius.

Hardecnut goes to Flanders. Death of Harald. M°.XXXIX°. Defuncto Brithmaro,[8] Hardecnutus, rex Danorum, ad Emmam, matrem suam, in Flandriam devectus, cum ipsa apud Berges[9] moram fuit. Eodemque anno obiit Haraldus rex.[10]

---

[1] Benedict IX. was pope from Jan. 1033 to Jan. 1044; again from April 1044 to April 1045; and a third time from Nov. 1047 to July 1048. Jaffé, pp. 359–362.

[2] His death, in Sax. Chron., Flor. Wig., and Wendover, is assigned to the year 1035, but Hen. Hunt. and Diceto agree with the date above.

[3] *ejus*] Added in marg.

[4] *Godwini*] Gogwini, MS.

[5] This event is entered under 1036 in Wendover.

[6] *dampnavit*] dapnavit, MS.

[7] Her exile, in Sax. Chron., Flor. Wig., and Hen. Hunt., is entered under 1037, and in Wendover under 1035.

[8] The sentence is evidently incomplete, as appears by the text of Wendover, i. 476. Brithmar, bp. of Lichfield, died in 1039, and was succeeded by Wlsi. Fasti, i. 543.

[9] *Berges*] Brigges, Wend. i. 476.

[10] His death is assigned to 1040 in Sax. Chron., Flor. Wig., Hen. Hunt., and Wendover.

M°.XL°. Hardecnutus,[1] filius Cnutonis, fratri succedens, coronatus est in regem; cum idem Hardecnutus vix iiii^or. annis regnasset, Henricus Romanum adeptus est imperium.[2] Iste etiam Hardecnutus rex corpus regis, fratris sui, defossum in Tamensem projici[3] præcepit.

Haraldo Hardecnutus successit, cui Ædwardus.

M°.XLI°. Hardecnutus rex reddidit exercitui Danorum tributum, scilicet xxi. M. librarum et xcix.;[4] et pro[5] xxii^bus.[6] puppibus, M.[7] libr. et xlviii. libr.

Tribute paid to the Danes.

M°.XLII°. Hardecnutus obiit, cui uterinus frater tantum ejus, scilicet Edwardus, confessor sanctus, successit; filius scilicet Ethelredi regis et Emmæ reginæ nobilissimæ, natione Normannicæ.

Death of Hardecnut. Edward the Confessor.

M°.XLIII°. Edsius, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, gravi infirmitate[8] detentus archiepiscopatum resignavit. In cujus loco Sywardus[9] substituitur.

Syward, archbishop of Canterbury.

M°.XLIIII°. Rex Ædwardus, in patrocinium regni sui, filiam Godwini, ditissimi ac potentissimi sed[10] subdolis et ignobilis comitis, nomine Editham, ducit in uxorem. Defuncto Alfrico,[11] Helmhammensi[12] episcopo, Stigandus, regis capellanus, substituitur.

Marriage of Edward to Edith. Stigand, bishop of Elmham.

M°.XLV°. Rex Ædwardus classem magnam sed frustra contra regem Noricorum congregavit. Quia Suanus, rex Danorum, bellum disponit parare contra Angliam.

Fleet collected against the Danes.

M°.XLVI°. Silvester sedit in cathedra Romana. Eodem anno, [Gregorius][13] succedens sedit annis ii., postquam prædecessor ejus S[ilvester] sederat eadem diebus lvi.[14]

Silvester III. antipope. Gregory VI. pope.

---

[1] *Hardecnutus*] Hardecuntus, MS., and so often afterwards.

[2] Henry III. was elected emperor in 1026, but did not succeed till 1039. See "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 15.

[3] *projici*] proici, MS.

[4] *xcix.*] lxxxix., Hen. Hunt.

[5] *pro*] This word is erroneously written before *xcix.* in MS.

[6] *xxii.*] xxxii., Sax. Chron. and Hen. Hunt.

[7] *M.*] xi. milia, Hen. Hunt., and so Sax. Chron.

[8] *infirmitate*] imfirmitate, MS.

[9] *Sywardus*] At first written *Sawardus*. Syward is omitted in the Fasti, i. 6, but he occurs in 1044 in the Sax. Chron. vol. ii. 134 and as a witness in charters of Edward the Confessor in 1045–6. See *Cod. Diplom. Anglo-Sax.* iv. 94, vi. 197.

[10] *sed*] set, MS., *passim*.

[11] Alfric, bp. of Elmham, died in 1038, according to Flor. Wig. i. 193. See Fasti, ii. 458.

[12] *Helmhammensi*] Belihāmēsi, MS.

[13] *Gregorius*] Supplied from Wendover, i. 484. He held the see from 1 May 1045 to Dec. 1046. Jaffé, p. 363.

[14] Silvester III. was antipope 49 days, from Feb. to April 1044. Jaffé, p. 362.

Stigand holds two bishoprics. M°.XLVII°. Stigandus duos ex dispensatione papali optinuit episcopatus.[1] Ex tunc Romana curia pecuniæ inclinare cœpit manifeste. fol. 11 a.

Clement II. pope. Eadred, bp. of Durham. M°.XLVIII°. Clemens papatum recepit, et rexit mensibus ix. et diebus vi.[2] Defuncto Ædmundo, Dunelmensi episcopo, successit Eadredus.[3]

Damasus II. pope. Leo IX. pope. M°.XLIX°. Damasus sedit in cathedra Romana diebus xxvi., et obiit; cui eodem anno Leo succedens,[4] sedit annis v. mensibus ii. et diebus vi.[5]

Succession of bishops. M°.L°. Defuncti sunt episcopi Eadnothus Dorkecestrensis,[6] Siwardus, vicarius Ædsii,[7] Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, et, post ipsum, Ædsius. Cui successit Robertus, Londoniensis episcopus, et Roberto Willelmus; ad Dorkecestrensem Ulf, regis capellanus.

M°.LI°.[8]

The Dane-geld abolished. Kinsig, abp. of York. Death of queen Emma. M°.LII°. Rex Ædwardus a vectigali gravissimo Anglos absolvit, quod, patre vivente, Danis solvi consuevit, scilicet xxxviii. milia librarum. Eodem anno, defuncto Alfrico, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, Kinsius, regis capellanus, successit.[9] Emma quoque regina obiit.

Death of prince [Rhesus] of Wales. M°.LIII°. Griffinus,[10] frater regis Walensis, rege præstantior, perimitur.[11] Marianus Scotus, veracissimus historiographus, obiit.[12] Comes Godwinus regi rebellis concordatur, et magnatum consilio pristino honori restituitur.

Death of earl Godwin. M°.LIIII°. Godwinus proditor turpissime de proditione redargutus et, Deo ultore, convictus, obiit.

---

1 *episcopatus*] Added in marg.

2 Copied from Wendover, i. 484. Clement II. was pope from 24 Dec. 1046 to 9 Oct. 1047. Jaffé, p. 364.

3 *Eadredus*] Eadrecus, MS. Wendover places his accession in 1049.

4 *succedens*] sucedens, MS.

5 Damasus II. was consecrated 17 July 1048, and died 9 Aug. following. His successor, Leo IX., held the see from Dec. 1048 to April 1054. Jaffé, pp. 366, 367.

6 *Dorkecestrensis*] Dorkencestris, MS.

7 *Ædsii*] Ædisii, MS.

8 This year is left blank in the MS.

9 These events are placed by Wendover under the year 1051.

10 *Griffinus*] This is a careless mistake in copying Wendover, i. 492, who has, "Frater Griffini, regis Walanorum, nomine Rhesus;" and so Flor. Wig. i. 211.

11 *perimitur*] perrimitur, MS.

12 His death is assigned by Flor. Wig. and Wendover to 1052, but falsely, as he did not die till 1082 or 1083. See Pertz, *Mon. Germ.* v. 484; and cf. *postea*, under A.D. 1082.

M°.LV°. Rex Ædwardus cum ingrederetur thesaurariam suam, ut videret thesaurum suum, vidit diabolum sedentem desuper, quasi totum vendicantem; cum autem audisset rex, quod de collecta et extorsione[1] facta fuisset a pauperibus regni, omnia jussit restitui. Quod pium factum, licet furtum clientis dissimulasset latrunculi; contractum, quem gestavit, sua humilitate curasset; Jesum in manibus sacerdotis sub specie vidisset; septem dormientes se in sinistra latera vertisse contemplatus fuisset; regem Daciæ navem suam ascensurum submersum fuisse asseruisset; et alias multas virtutes in Christi nomine operatus fuisset, in conspectu Domini fuerat acceptissimum. Victor [sedit][2] in cathedra annis ii. et mensibus iii.[3] Nobilis dux Northambrorum Siwardus obiit, cujus ducatum rex Eadwardus Tostio, fratri ducis Haraldi, concessit; comitem vero Algarum exilio dampnavit. Inventa sunt ossa regis et martiris Oswini divina revelatione apud Thinemue, anno a Passione ejus cccc°.xiiii°., v°. idus Martii.[4]

Legends concerning king Edward.

Victor II. pope.

Death of duke Siward.

Exile of earl Algar.

fol. 11 *b*. M°.LVI°. Ethelstanus, episcopus Herefordensis, perimitur. Cui successit Leovigarus,[5] ducis Haraldi capellanus, vir sanctus et pius. Huic successit[6] Walterus,[7] qui usque ad tempora Willelmi perduravit. Eodem quoque anno Egelricus, Dunelmensis præsul, episcopatu suo sponte resignato, monachus vita et habitu effectus est.[8]

Succession of bishops.

M°.LVII°. Rex Edwardus revocavit ab Hungaria Edgarum Ethelling, nepotem suum, cum sorore sua Margareta, ut post eum regnaret, tanquam heres legitimus; erat enim elegantissimus et præstantissimus.

Edgar Etheling is recalled.

M°.LVIII°. Stephanus Romanam rexit ecclesiam; cui succedens anno eodem Benedictus, novem mensibus, ut prædecessor suus, cathedram gubernavit.[9] Eodemque tempore civis quidam Romanus juvenis liberatus est a dæmone eum vendicante mirabiliter; Historiæ autem docent quomodo.[10]

Stephen X. pope.

Benedict X. pope.

---

[1] *extorsione*] extorsioïe, MS.

[2] *sedit*] Omitted in MS.

[3] Victor II. was pope from Nov. 1054 to July 1057. Jaffé, p. 379.

[4] *Inventa . . . Martii*] Wrongly entered here, but again, more correctly, under 1065.

[5] *Leovigarus*] Leonigarus, MS.

[6] *successu*] successit, MS.

[7] *Walterus*] Willelmus, MS. erroneously, but he is rightly named under 1061. He succeeded in 1060. See Fasti, i. 455.

[8] *Ethelstanus . . . . effectus est*] The whole of this year is written over an erasure.

[9] Stephen X. was pope from Aug. 1057 to March 1058; Benedict X. rom April 1058 to April 1059. Jaffé, pp. 382, 383.

[10] The legend is in Wendover, i. 498, and Malmesbury, i. 355, ed. Hardy.

Capture of duke Harold in Normandy.

M°.LIX°. Cum dux Haroldus in prædio juris sui Boseam perhendinaret, die quadam navem ingressus piscatoriam, mare spaciaturus intravit. Orta igitur subita tempestate, raptus applicuit, etsi invitus, in Pontivum; ubi captus et vinctus Willelmo, duci Normannorum, præsentatus est. Quem Godwinus[1] ita falsis et fallacibus pollicitis fascinavit, ut cum honore multo ad propria remearet. Tradunt autem aliter alii—sed hoc a veritate videtur discrepare—quod videlicet Haroldus a rege Edwardo ad hoc in Normanniam fuerit destinatus, ut ducem Willelmum in Angliam adduceret, quem idem rex heredem sibi constituere cogitavit. Duplicitas autem et fraudulenta mendacia Haroldi[2] hic faciunt hystoriographos in Hystoriis dubitare. Finis autem ejus seriem totius vitæ ejus, Deo ultore, maculavit.

Nicholas II. pope. Succession of bishops.

M°.LX°. Nicholaus[3] sedit in cathedra Romana annis duobus et mensibus vi.[4] Eodem anno Kinsius, Eboracensis archiepiscopus, obiit. Successit Aldredus. Eoque anno, defuncto[5] Deduc, Wellensi episcopo, Gisa successit.

Aldred, abp. of York, returns from Rome.

M°.LXI°. Aldredus, Eboracensis antistes,[6] cum comite Tostio Romam profectus, cum gaudio remeavit; pallium enim a papa Nicholao suscipere meruerat. Ibi etiam consecrati sunt Gisa, fol. 12 a.
Wellensis episcopus, et Walterus, Herefordensis.

Wulstan, bishop of Worcester.

M°.LXII°. Wlstanus, prior Wigorniensis ecclesiæ, vir magnæ sanctitatis, ad ejusdem ecclesiæ præsulatum consecratus est. Consecratus est autem ab Aldredo, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, quia archiepiscopo Stigando officium episcopale tunc fuerat interdictum, pro eo quod, vivente Roberto, illius ecclesiæ archiepiscopo, sibi archipræsulatum occupare præsumpsit.

Expedition of Harold against the Welsh.

M°.LXIII°. Haraldus, Godwini filius, fines Walliæ[7] depopulatur, ut regem Griffinum inquietaret. At Griffinus, ejus adventu præcognito,[8] naves adscendit, et fugiens vix evasit. Haraldus cum illum comperit aufugisse, recessit, et majorem exercitum congregavit. Cui frater ejus Tostius ex mandato regis occurrens, junctis viribus, per terram simul et mare

[1] *Godwinus*] An error, copied from Wendover, i. 501, and so also in the pseudo Matthew of Westminster. The name of the count of Ponthieu was *Guido*, as in Malmesb. i. 384.

[2] *Haroldi*] Horaldi, MS. The name is written in the text *Haroldus* and *Haraldus*, indifferently.

[3] *Nicholaus*] Nocholaus, MS.

[4] Nicholas II. was pope from Jan. 1059 to July 1061. Jaffé, p. 384.

[5] *defuncto*] defucto, MS.

[6] *antistes*] antis, MS.

[7] *Walliæ*] Walle, MS.

[8] *præcognito*] precongnito, MS.

regionem illam depopulari cœperunt. Unde Wallones necessitate compulsi, obsides sibi dederunt, et tributum se regi Edwardo reddituros deinceps promiserunt, regemque suum Griffinum expulerunt.

M°.LXIIII°.[1] Gens Wallensium nonas Augusti, interfecto rege suo Griffino, caput ejus duci Haraldo miserunt. Quod mox Haroldus ad regem Edwardum transmittens, alium Wallensium regem præfecit. Qui Edwardo regi fidelitatem præstito faciens juramento, omnia quæ regibus Anglorum solvi consueverant, ipse fideliter se pensurum spopondit, per insolentiam sui[2] prædecessoris puniti castigatus. Death of king Griffin of Wales. 5 Aug.

M°.LXV°. Inventa sunt ossa gloriosi regis et martiris Oswini, revelatione divina apud Thinemue, anno a Passione ejus quadringentesimo quartodecimo, quinto idus Martii. Invention of St. Oswin. 11 Mar.

M°.LXVI°. Dedicatum est monasterium Beati Petri Westmonasterii. Sanctus etiam rex Edwardus in vigilia Epiphaniæ pro regno terreno commutavit æternum. Defuncto igitur gloriosissimo rege ac Dei confessore Edwardo, Haraldus, Godwini comitis filius ignobilis et perjurus, statim regnum invasit, seipsum coronavit. Qui cum anno integro nondum regnasset, ab hominibus suis merito derelictus et exosus, spiculo confossus in capite, ultore Deo, apud Hastingum obiit miserabiliter interfectus. Et apud Waltham traditus sepulturæ, quia rex qualisqualis[3] extiterat, et in armis strenuissimus. Willelmus autem cognomento[4] Bastardus, Normannorum dux, tanta potitus victoria, gratus Deo ecclesiam Deo et sancto Martino fundavit, et locupletatam multis possessionibus et
fol. 12 b. libertatibus ampliavit. Castrum quoque, quod festinanter construxerat, Hastingum appellavit, et ecclesiam, quam Bellum appellavit, anno sequenti sollempniter fecit dedicari; ubi jurans et certissime promittens se dilectissimi regis Edwardi leges inviolabiliter observaturum, et vestigia ejus sequendo gentem Anglicanam sincero corde conservatam dilecturum, gratanter ob omnibus est susceptus. Et Londonias veniens, a civibus cunctis est honoratus, et [ab][5] Aldredo, archiepiscopo Eboracensi, apud Westmonasterium coronatus est. Dedication of St. Peter's, Westminster. Death of Edward the Confessor. 5 Jan. Harold's coronation and death. Battle abbey founded. Hastings castle built. Coronation of William.

M°.LXVII°. Edgarus Etheling videns regnum Angliæ in præcipiti positum, et cor regis in arcum pravum conversum, Edgar Etheling goes to Scotland.

[1] *M°.LXIIII°.*] M°.XLIII°., MS., but corr. in margin.

[2] *sui*] Repeated again superfluously after *prædecessoris*.

[3] *qualisqualis*] quaqualis, MS.

[4] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[5] *ab*] Omitted in MS.

navem conscendens, dum conaretur in Hungariam reverti, compulsus[1] est, una cum sorore sua Margareta, in Scocia applicare. Ipsam igitur Margaretam rex Scociæ Malcolmus desponsavit, et de ea filiam genuit, quam Matildem nominavit.

Marriage of king Malcolm.

M°.LXVIII°. Natus est . . . . . subjugaret. Eodem anno . . . Northamhumbriæ comitatum. Cui statim homines illius regionis insurgentes, ipsum cum secentis viris suorum peremerunt. Sed rex Willelmus superveniens . . . delevit.

Hist. Angl vol. i. p. 11

The bp. of Durham imprisoned

M°.LXIX°. Episcopus Dunelmensis de proditione accusatus, in villa, quæ Burgum dicitur, captus, ad Westmonasterium ductus est, carcerali custodiæ mancipandus. Eodem vero tempore venerunt filii . . . . ab Anglia aufugarent. Quorum . . . obviam illis Edgarus, filius . . . capere. Tunc fœdere . . . castello occuparunt, et multa hominum milia peremerunt. Inter igitur flumina Vasam[2] et Trentam omnes regionis incolas immisericorditer affligebant. Sed Willelmus superveniens, hostes fugavit, et multos trucidavit. Verumtamen Walthefus comes ibi plures Normannorum solus detruncavit; sed Willelmus multo stipatus milite triumphans, adversariis fugatis, dominabatur. Et sic Edgarus[3] pacem de facili a rege W[illelmo] impetravit.

H. A. i. 12

Victory of William.

Spoliation of the monasteries.

M°.LXX°. Willelmus, pessimo usus consilio, omnia Anglorum monasteria spolians, calicibus etiam et feretris manifeste jam perjurus non pepercit. Solus inter omnes Angliæ prælatos Egelwinus, Dunelmensis episcopus, zelum Dei habens, universos ecclesiæ invasores excommunicavit. Laufrancus, monachus Beccensis, et post abbas Cadomensis, in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem consecratur.

fol. 13 a.

Abp. Lanfranc consecrated.

Flight of the English nobles.

M°.LXXI°. Multi nobiles ex generoso sanguine Britonum et Anglorum oriundi, tirannidem regis Willelmi pejorantis et degenerantis declinantes, loca deserta petierunt, ut laterent. Rex etiam Egelwinum episcopum incarceravit. Rex Francorum Philippus a Roberto comite.[4] Multi Anglici de latibulis[5] Elyensis insulæ cum indignatione prorumpentes, quamplures de Normannis trucidarunt. Rex tandem blandis promissionibus, sed fallacibus, rebelles omnes omnipotentatui suo inclinavit. Herewardus tamen præpotens et strenuus, regi valde molestus, nullatenus valuit enervari.

Success of William at Ely.

Hereward.

[1] *compulsus*] conpulsus, MS.
[2] *Vasam*] Nasam, MS.
[3] *Edgarus*] Egarus, MS.
[4] A verb is here wanting, and the whole paragraph seems out of place. See the Greater Chronicle, under the year 1075, ed. Wats, p. 10.
[5] *latibulis*] latiti, MS., and the last syllable erased.

M°.LXXII°. Rex Will[illegible] ibi superavit quamplurim[illegible] cum obsidibus homagio. i[illegible] Dunelmensis apud Westmona[illegible]. est sepultus.

M°.LXXIII°. Invaserunt monac[illegible] archiepiscopum Rothomagensem [illegible] missam celebraret. Eodemque a[illegible]

[. A. i. 17. præcepto Alexandri papæ, rege Wi[illegible] obedire.

M°.LXXIIII°. Beatus Wlstanus per [illegible] situs restituitur; cum baculum pa[illegible] Edwardi infixisset, nullus præter eum [illegible] isset. Gregorius sedit in cathedra R[illegible] diebus. Iste[3] papa, sinodo congregata, [illegible] municavit. Transfertur sedes episcopal[illegible] Cicestriam.[5] Northamhumbrenses episcop[illegible] crudeliter peremerunt. Venitque in Angl[illegible] cum Cnutone, filio Suani, ex Dacia. Obiitque [illegible] et apud Westmonasterium est sepulta.

M°.LXXV°. Rex Willelmus jussit Weltheoph[illegible] toniæ, decollari, et extra civitatem sepelliri.[6] [illegible] et rex Francorum amici facti sunt. Idem [illegible] ecclesia Fiscami filiam suam Ceciliam [illegible]

fol. 13 *b*. Rex W[illelmus] filio Roberto maledixit, [illegible] eorum adhærens, prœlium[7] contra eum [illegible] pulsus ab equo, graviter vulneratus est. In [illegible] præcedentis et hujus principio interfectus est [illegible] mensis a comprovincialibus, eo quod nimiam [illegible] serat ab eisdem.

[H. A. i. 22. M°.LXXVI°. Rex Willelmus I. cœpit . . . . F[illegible] eorum saginando, crimen perjurii et suæ pro[illegible] veritus incurrere; unde quadam . . . cecidit [illegible] sibi paratos vix evasit. Eodemque anno, vi°. Kal[illegible]

[Ibid. i. 23. . . . Quadragesimæ tunc alte perdurans . . . . [illegible]

---

[1] In *Hist. Angl.* this event is placed under 1072.

[2] *virente*] vivento, MS.; a mistake for *annuente*.

[3] *Iste*] Inde, MS.

[4] *Selesi*] Selebi, MS.

[5] The transfer of the see took place about the yea[illegible] Fasti, i. 238.

[6] *sepelliri*] sepelli, MS.

[7] *prœlium*] prœlium co[illegible] which is taken from *H*[illegible] 21, but here disturbs the [illegible]

Paul of Caen made abbat of St. Alban's.

M°.LXXVII°. Paulus, monachus Cadomensis, archiepiscopi Lamfranci nepos, creatus est in abbatem Sancti Albani; qui fabricam ecclesiæ decenter reformavit. Eodemque anno Herlewinus . . . reddidit Salvatori. Eodemque anno Henricus imperator, **H. A. i. 23.** collecto Warmatiæ multorum[1] episcoporum concilio, decrevit omnia . . . dicebatur, irritari, Hildebrandum abjurans. Hildebrandus e contra . . . primates imperatori excommunicato contradicerent. Ex sententia . . . . regem benedixit. Hilbrandus autem omnes . . . Radulphum aggressus in fugam compulit, et Suaviam devastavit. **Ibid. i. 24.**

M°.LXXVIII°. Ecclesia Becci . . . . cujus operis initiandi ipse **H. A. i. 24.** . . . lapidem jecit. Et per Gunzonem, ipsius ecclesiæ monachum, resuscitatum fundamentum mirabiliter est ampliatum. Hujus autem autenticæ ecclesiæ consuetudines prosequitur conventus Sancti Albani, per Lamfrancum archiepiscopum et Paulum abbatem, ejus nepotem, suscitatas[2] et inviolabiliter observatas.[3]

Customs of the church of Bec observed there.

M°.LXXIX°. Rex Willelmus I. in . . . . . accusatum incarceravit. **H. A. i. 25.** Eodemque anno imperator Henricus, in concilio . . . Ravennensis urbis . . . designavit. Et eodem anno Antiochia . . . quamplurimis. **fol. 14 a.**

M°.LXXX°. Hildebrandus[4] papa . . . . interfecit. **H. A. i. 25, 26.**

M°.LXXXI°. Willelmus . . . cum magnatibus multis. Eodemque . . . . Aprilis. **H. A. i. 26.**

M°.LXXXII°. Marianus . . . diligenti facta inquisitione . . . **H. A. i. 26.** invenitur. Hinc . . . evangelii.[5] Sed hoc facit magnorum numerorum limitatio, quæ parvum numerum deficientem vel supercrescentem non reputat.

Queen Matilda buried at Caen.

M°.LXXXIII°. Matildis . . . Anglorum, obiit, et apud Cadomum est sepulta, in domo sanctimonialium, quam ipsa sancta construxit. Eodemque tempore Willelmus . . . . reservantur; unde liber conficitur qui Domesdai dicitur. Deinde de . . . solidos suscepit argenti . . . caput congestis, corpore et anima manifeste deteriorari.[6] Hic incepit oppressio Angliæ subarrari. **H. A. i. 26.** **Ibid. i. 27.**

Domesday book.

Henry IV. emperor.

M°.LXXXIIII°. Henricus in imperio constituitur, et . . . Romanorum Patricius. Eodem insuper anno . . . militari. Deinde suspecta habens corda eorum, quos læserat, et quos læsurus **H. A. i. 28.** **fol. 14 b.**

---

1 *multorum*] et multorum, MS.
2 *suscitatas*] suscitate, MS.
3 *observatas*] observate, MS.
4 *Hildebrandus*] Hildebertus, MS.
5 *evangelii*] ewangelii, MS.
6 *deteriorari*] deteriori, MS.

erat, cepit . . . tenementi. Extorta igitur maximæ pecuniæ summa violenter vel sophistice, in Normanniam . . . transfretavit.

M°.LXXXV°. Ira autem Domini nondum quiescente, cœperunt pullalare in Anglia thelonea iniqua et consuetudines pessimæ, juramenta blasphemialia. Et quanto magis Anglorum primates State of England.
A. i. 29. læsi conquerebantur, tanto . . . . . patrocinaretur. Rex homines non reputabat. Ad castra construenda cogebantur et inviti, nec præmia reportabant. Emptores regales prætia non reputabant. Verumtamen rex magnanimus et dives valde, et tanto magis Deo obligatus, Normanniam, tanquam hereditarium, specialiter dilexit et rexit; Britanniam Armoricanam[1] sibi subjugavit . . . rebelles omnes edomuit. Pacem servavit; Deum minus quam decuit, formidavit. Episcopatus Dorkecestrensis transfertur ad Lincolniam.[2] The see of Dorchester transferred to Lincoln.

M°.LXXXVI°. Rex Willelmus, armis et arduis curis confractus et jam senio confectus, cœpit morti appropinquare. Et quia[3] fero- Approaching end of William.
A. i. 30. citates ejus . . . distributor. Duo fundavit cœnobia; unum . . . vocavit, et aliud in Normannia, in honorem sancti Stephani, quod Cadomum nominavit. Regina, uxor ejus, plures ei liberos procreavit, cui nomen Matildis; videlicet, Robertum, Ricardum, Willelmum, et Henricum. Filiæ autem ipsius erant, Cecilia, Cadomi abbatissa, Constantia, Britanniæ comitissa, Adala, Blesencis comitissa, nupta Stephano, comiti Blesenci. Quartæ vero His children.
Ibid. i. 31. . . . . regi, maritabatur, nomina historiographi non scripserunt. Rex itaque W[illelmus] subjectis socialis fuit, et humilis atque affabilis; indomitis . . . . . matutinas vigil sedulus . . . audivit. Eodemque[4] anno Gregorius papa, qui et Hildebrandus, obiit; cui successit Clemens.[5] Et, eodem defuncto, post paucos dies successit Desiderius, et Victor nominatur. Death of pope Gregory VII. Victor III. pope.

fol. 15 a. H. A. i. 32, 3. M°.LXXXVII°. Willelmus I., rex Anglorum, et dux Apuliæ obierunt. Berengarius . . . Galliæ partem maximam maculavit. Papa vero Leo[6] qui Victori successit, Vercellis . . . extersit. Ossa Walwani, militis præclarissimi, inventa sunt in provincia Walliarum, a quo Galeweia corrupto[7] nomine dicitur, quasi Waleweia. Eodem quoque anno, cum regis W[illelmi] [equus][8] quandam amplam fossam transiliendo corpus sui as- Bones of Walwain found.

---

[1] *Armoricanam*] Armonicam, MS.

[2] As to the date of the transfer of this see, consult Fasti, ii. 7.

[3] *quia*] qui, MS.

[4] *Eodemque*] Edemque, MS.

[5] This is an error. See note in *Hist. Angl.* i. 32.

[6] *Leo*] This is also a mistake. See note in *Hist. Angl.* i. 33.

[7] *corrupto*] corrupno, MS.

[8] *equus*] Om. in MS.

Death of William I.

sessoris concussisset jam senile, decubuit moriturus. Roberto autem, filio suo, Normanniam, non tamen sereno corde delegavit, sed quia pro patre filius Crucem assumpsit. Willelmo autem Rufo Angliam, scilicet conquestum suum, assignavit, ut Anglos . . . . thesauris suis Henrico . . . ut cœnobium pro eo constitueret. Rex igitur viii°. idus Septembris obiit, anno scilicet regni sui xx°ii°., et apud Cadomum est sepultus. Cui successit in regnum Willelmus, filius ejus, dictus et existens Rufus.

Ibid. i. 34. Ibid. i. 35.

William Rufus.

The English nobles rise against him.

M°.LXXXVIII°. Multi nobiles Angliæ, et præcipue Willelmus, Dunelmensis episcopus, quem Willelmus I. rex justiciarium fecerat, faventes duci Normannorum Roberto, insurgunt contra regem Willelmum II., sed obruuntur.

Death of archbishop Lanfranc.

M°.LXXXIX°. Odo ex monacho . . . . vocatur. Obiit Lamfrancus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus. Quo defuncto, Willelmus novus rex, postposito Dei et archiepiscopi L[anfranci] timore, jamjam cœpit tirannizare. H. A. i. 37

Treaty with duke Robert.

M°.XC°. Willelmus II. rex contra Robertum, fratrem suum, hostiliter insurgens, tandem vix concordatus est cum eodem. Statuerunt insuper, ut si quis eorum prius obiret absque herede, superstes foret heres illius. Quod et juratum est. Rex Scotorum Malcolmus, timens tirannidem regis Willelmi, ea quæ pacis sunt a rege postulavit; et fecit ei homagium et fidelitatem. Robertus de Munbrai, Northamhunbrorum comes, de consilio et licentia Pauli abbatis, constituit[1] monachos, de claustro Sancti Albani assumptos, Deo apud Thinemue deservire.

Submission of king Malcolm.

Cell at Tynemouth founded.

M°.XCI°. Remigius . . . disponeret, Thomas . . . . constructam; et appellatum[2] est. Postea . . . fuit amota, procuravit, ut ea magnifice consummaretur.[3] H. A. i. 42

M°.XCII°. Rex Willelmus II. apud . . . infirmatus;[4] unde formidans mori, firmiter promisit, legibus malis abdicatis, bonas observare. Devotus igitur ad horam dedit . . . sancto, atque Roberto, cognomento[5] Bloet, episcopatum Lincolniensem. Rex tamen . . . se exhibuit solito deteriorem. Eodemque anno pius rex Scotorum Malcolmus interemptus est. Cujus loco subrogatus est Malcolmi regis frater Duncanus;[6] sed Dun-

H. A. i. 42 fol. 15 *b*. Ibid. i. 43.

Death of Malcolm of Scotland.

[1] *constituit*] constuit, MS.
[2] *appellatum*] apellatum, MS.
[3] *consummaretur*] consumaretur, MS.
[4] *infirmatus*] imfirmatus, MS.
[5] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.
[6] *Duncanus*] An error for *Duvenal*. See note in *Hist. Angl.* i. 43.

Ibid. i. 44. canus . . . . aufugavit. Eodemque anno Johannes . . . regis transtulit in Bathoniam sui cathedram præsulatus.

Carlisle rebuilt.

M°.XCIII°. Rex Willelmus reædificavit Karleolum, et habitatores a finibus Angliæ australibus illuc transmisit. Eodem-
H. A. i. 45. que anno Paulus . . . . dum domum rediret, obiit; cujus corpus ad Sanctum Albanum delatum, ibi traditur sepulturæ.
Ibid. i. 46. Remansit autem domus vacans in manu regis . . . destituta, Nemora . . . et thesauros ecclesiæ asportavit. Thomas, Eboracensis antistes, Anselmum in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem consecravit.

Consecration of abp. Anselm.

H. A. i. 47. M°.XCIIII°. Rex Willelmus . . . hostiliter impetere, loco sui. Robertus enim de Munbrai,[1] comes . . . Malcolmum vicerat, curiamque regis factus rebellis adire refutavit. Unde rex ipsum cum magna indignatione hostiliter insecutus, ipsum comitem R[obertum] cum suis captum apud Windelesoram incarceravit exheredandos.[2] Rex insuper Walliam, pro excessibus Walensium, qui jam castrum Montis Gomerici[3] prostraverant et, necatis inclusis, superbierant, graviter punivit. Exulavit archiepiscopus Cantuariensis Lamfrancus, præcepto regis irrediturus. Transfretans igitur et Romam veniens, a papa Urbano reverenter est susceptus. Deinde Lugdunum veniens, et ibi moram continuans, exilium diutinum patienter toleravit. Transfertur[4] episcopatus de Theodford[5] ad Norwicum.

Defeat of the Welsh.

Exile of archbishop Lanfranc.

Transfer of the see of Thetford to Norwich.

M°.XCV°. Vir vitæ venerabilis Wlstanus, Wigorniensis episcopus, quem rex patrissans acerbo odio persequebatur, migravit ad Dominum. Eodem anno papa Urbanus, Anselmi instinctu, apud Clarum-montem, Alverniæ civitatem, concilium celebravit; ubi multos nobiles cruce signavit, Petro heremita prævio, prout Historia prolixa super hoc confecta plenius manifestat.[6]

Death of Wulstan, bishop of Worcester.

Council of Clermont.

M°.XCVI°. Gualterus, natione Francus, cognomento[7] Sansavur, cum ingenti armatorum manu pedestri, Petrum sequebatur
fol. 16 a. peregrinans; et postea simul proficiscentes, cum xl^a. milibus armatorum, non sine magna difficultate et strage suorum, Nicæam perveniunt,[8] quam cum magno labore ceperunt. Insidias enim et dampna a fraudulentissimo imperatore Constantinopolitano frequenter sustinuerunt. Audiens autem dux Normannorum Robertus, quod multi nobiles de diversis mundi partibus ad

Proceedings of the Crusaders.

---

[1] *de Munbrai*] Added in marg.

[2] In the margin is added, "Hic R[obertus] sepultus est apud Sanctum Albanum."

[3] *Gomerici*] Glomerici, MS.

[4] *Transfretur*] Tranfertur, MS.

[5] *Theodford*] Theford, MS.

[6] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, pp. 22-25, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 54-59.

[7] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

[8] *perveniunt*] perve, MS.

iter peregrinationis se accingerent, ut Christi injuriam alacriter vindicarent, videlicet Hugo, dictus Magnus, frater regis Francorum, comes Maniæ præclarissimus, Godefridus, dux Lotharingiæ, Reimundus, comes Tholosanus, et alii quamplures, moræ impatiens, cum numerosa equestris et pedestris manus multitudine, accepta a rege fratre suo licentia et multa pecunia mutuo, prævia agmina sequitur peregrinans. Eodem anno perfecta est ecclesia Norwicensis, et pro clericis monachi subrogati.

Church of Norwich completed.

Capture of Nice.

M°.XCVII°. Capta est Nicæa, urbs nobilissima, mense Julii,[1] xx°. die mensis, a Christianis. Proficiscitur exercitus. Antiochia obsidetur. Eodemque anno, opprimente supra modum ecclesiam Anglicanam rege Willelmo, Anselmus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, hæc ægre ferens, latenter Angliam ingreditur, sperans quoquo[2] modo cor regis Deo inclinare. Sed cum in remotis Angliæ partibus agens, ad remotiora properaret, Anselmus Londoniis latitans, Samsone in episcopum Wigorniensem in ecclesia beati Pauli consecrato, infecto negotio, sicut clam venerat, clam dolens recessit. Anno quoque sub eodem, Ricardus de Exaquio, natione Neuster, creatus in abbatem Sancti Albani . . . . ampliando, possessionibus, thesauris, ornamentis, et numerosa monachorum approbatorum multitudine ampliando, licet ipsum cœnobium per tirannidem regis W[illelmi], qui illud,[3] in manu sua [4] annis retentum, dissipatum[5] reperisset. H. A. i. 9

Return of archbishop Anselm.

Consecration of Sampson, bishop of Worcester.

Richard, abbat of St. Alban's.

Capture of Antioch.

M°.XCVIII°. Capta est Anthiochia, civitas nobilissima et antiqua, sancti Petri primum domicilium. Adveniens autem Corbarannus, princeps[6] Persarum, vir potens et bellicosus, obsidet eam cum Christianis inclusis. Qui obsessi fame periclitantes, exierunt contra ipsum Corbarannum et infinitam cum eo infidelium multitudinem dimicaturi, et omnes miraculose vicerunt. Eodem tempore rex W[illelmus] tam ab Normannis quam Anglis infinitam extorsit pecuniam, mentiens se eam missurum Roberto, fratri suo, Christo in Terra Sancta strenue militanti. Obierunt Willelmus,[7] Wintoniensis, et Hugo, Sal'[8]

Extortion of money by William II.

Deaths of Walkelin, bp. of Winchester,

---

[1] *Julii*] A mistake for *Junii*. See note in *Hist. Angl.* i. 84.

[2] *quoquo*] quoque, MS.

[3] *illud*] eam, MS.

[4] A blank is left here in the MS.

[5] *retentum, dissipatum*] retentam, dissipatam, MS. For *retentum* the construction would require *retinuerat*.

[6] *princeps*] princes, MS.

[7] *Willelmus*] An error for *Walkelinus*. See *Hist. Angl.*, i. 132, and Fasti, iii. 6.

[8] *Sal'*] Apparently, for *Salopesbiriensis*, as in *Hist. Angl.*, but an extraordinary instance of carelessness is evident here (derived from the incorrect rubric in *Hist. Angl.*) in converting Hugh de Montgomery, earl of Shrewsbury, into a bishop! See Flor. Wig., ii. 42, and Dugdale's *Baronage*, i. 28.

episcopi. Hugoni i
a rege depauperat

M°.XCIX°. Sancta c

. 16 b. potenter expugnata
dic.... Christiani. p
mille quingenti, prae
bus incumbere. Urbe
et Damacenorum, prince
mus, cum hoc cognovis
ducem exercitus sui
obsidionem[4] curantes. In
pares, invocato de super
in eosdem,[5] praevio duce
dem meruit immortalem.
parunt. Robertus quoque
vulneravit; quo viso, omn
Congregata igitur in civita
ultans multitudo, tractavit
potenter adquisita tueretur.
tum consensissent, dux, cano
regnum refutavit, quia[6] reg
ab omnibus maturavit. In
fridus rex est electus. Eodem
episcopatum Dunelmensem Ran
episcopus Saresbiriensis Osmun
licitur. Sigebertus monachus

De morte regis Willelmi.

M°.C°. Rex Anglorum Willelmus
curiam suam ad Natale apud Gl
Wintoniam, deinde Londoniis in
tino beati Petri ad Vincula per

Eodem tempore rex Henricus
s de praedictis.

castellum Harundeliæ et
et dominum castelli ipsius
Anselmus concilium . . . epi-

Siege of Arundel castle.

Archbp. Anselm goes to Rome.

archiepiscopus, post mul-
mam petiit. Eodemque
Normannorum Robertus
annis ex pacto reddere
sub eodem, Christiani
triumpharunt.

Annuity relinquished by duke Robert.

Defeat of the Saracens.

dia; unde rex Nor-
mificavit. Mortalitas
elmus a Roma rediens
rico] I.[2] prohibitus
edit. Rex autem
on, quæ et Tholo-
wino,

Great mortality.

Return of Anselm.

Capture of Acre.

ubi multas civi-
ri illata dampna,

sentiens non
ab pace petita
itus. Primo
ri; rege
ace autem
" Amici
vero,
ratibus
gestio
eum,
Tali-
avit,
ica-
itu
li-
o,
t

Interview of Henry with duke Robert.

Robert is taken prisoner.

---

[1] *pedites*] This word is superfluous. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, i. 138.

[2] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

[3] *ducem . . . destinarit*] On an erasure.

[4] *obsidionem*] obsionem, MS.

[5] *eosdem*] After *eosdem* the MS. reads *exercitum*, but this is rendered unnecessary by what follows.

[6] *summum*] A word is wanting, probably *ducem*. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, i. 154.

for ...
transp...
... quo
[9] ...
dove ...
157.
[10] In ...
in trick ...
with a ...
the same ...

ubi Walterus Tirel, arcubajulus regis et miles, natione Neuster, cum staret ad tristam accubans cuidam arbori, tenens arcum extentum cum sagitta, cum jam pertransiret cervus, ait rex iratus, "Trahe, diabole, trahe, diabole; quid enim moraris?" Ipse igitur miles sic redargutus, trahere festinavit. Unde incircumspecte emissa sagitta ex obliquo ad quandam arborem repercussa, pectus et cor regis perforavit. Quod et beatus in visu nocturno manifeste consideravit Anselmus.[1] Merito autem, Deo et sanctis ejus, quos læserat, ultoribus, in medio injustitiæ suæ obiit subito sagittatus, nobilibus nequam, humilibus nequior, sibi nequissimus. Defuncto itaque rege Willelmo, et apud Wintoniam sepulto, cum magnates Angliæ quid agendum ignorarent, nescientes quid accidisset duci Normannorum Roberto, regis defuncti fratri primogenito, timuerunt diu sine certo rege vacillare. Quod Henricus, fratrum ultimus, cum cognovisset,[2] congregata[3] Londoniis universa Angliæ universitate, fratrem suum tanquam virum bellicosum, iracundum, pacis ignarum dampnavit, seipsum tanquam pacificum, justum et mansuetum, atque populi Angliæ semper amatorem collaudando. Cum igitur post multas boni promissiones super evangelia[4] jurasset se bonas leges conservaturum, videlicet sancti Edwardi et piorum regum Angliæ antiquorum, respondit universitas Anglorum, asserens . . . quæ floruerunt in regno tempore Edwardi regis, nec patrissando tirannizaret, in ipsum consentirent,[5] et in regem sullimarent. Quod et videbatur omnibus expediens, præsertim cum absens et valde remotus fuisset dux Robertus, licet heres legitimus; nec possent, sine maximo periculo regni, diutius expectare. Henrico autem hæc omnia vultu serenissimo et alacri concedente, et multiplici ac solempni juramento affirmante, consecratus est . . . . gubernandum. Item, maledixerat pater Roberto, et primogenita meritis abstulerat exigentibus.

Election of Henry I.

fol. 17 a

H. A. i. 176.

Ibid. i. 1[illegible]

Marriage of Henry.

M°.C°.I°. Rex, Henricus I. Matildem, filiam regis Scotorum Malcolmi, duxit in uxorem. Quæ patrissans et matrissans educata ab infantia in claustro sanctimonialium,[6] et, ut dicitur, velo sacro Deo dicata, doluit quod alii quam Deo debuit matrimonio copulari.[7] Sed rex propter ejus mores et pulchritudinem eam instanter postulavit, et optinuit. Eodem

---

[1] *Anselmus*] The first syllable is on an erasure.

[2] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

[3] *congregata*] congregato, MS.

[4] *super evangelia*] super ewangelia, MS., on an erasure.

[5] *consentirent*] consentiret, MS.

[6] *sanctimonialium*] sanctiniolium, MS.

[7] *copulari*] cupulari, MS.

H. A. i. 190. anno Henricus . . . imperavit. Eodem tempore rex Henricus . . . electione, nullatenus curans de prædictis.

M°.C°.II°. Rex Henricus obsedit castellum Harundeliæ et cepit, contra suum juramentum; et dominum castelli ipsius exilio relegavit. Eodem anno Anselmus concilium . . . episcopis suffraganeis. Siege of Arundel castle.

H. A. i. 191.

M°.C°.III°. Anselmus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, post multas injurias a rege sibi irrogatas, Romam petiit. Eodemque anno, regis procurante versutia, dux Normannorum Robertus tria milia marcarum, quas rex singulis annis ex pacto reddere debuerat,[1] condonavit. Anno quoque sub eodem, Christiani de multis milibus Sarracenorum gloriose triumpharunt. Archbp. Anselm goes to Rome. Annuity relinquished by duke Robert. Defeat of the Saracens.

H. A. i. 195. M°.C°.IIII°. Surrexit . . . fratres discordia; unde rex Normanniam impetens, eam multum dampnificavit. Mortalitas hominum et pecudum maxima fuit. Anselmus a Roma rediens versus Angliam, ne procederet, a rege H[enrico] I.[2] prohibitus est; perveniens autem Lugdunum, ibi resedit. Rex autem ipsum omnibus bonis suis spoliavit. Achon, quæ et Tholomaida dicitur, regi Jerusalem redditur Baldewino, Great mortality. Return of Anselm. Capture of Acre.

H. A. i. 201. M°.C°.V°. Rex Henricus . . . decertaturus; ubi multas civitates et castra occupavit. Et post multa fratri illata dampna, in Angliam remeavit.

fol. 17 b. M°.C°.VI°. Dux Normannorum R[obertus], se sentiens non posse a pari contra regem contendere, venit sub pace petita ad regem, sed, ut decuit, sereno vultu est receptus. Primo autem pacifice loquens, sibi petiit de injuriis satisfieri; rege autem renuente, in jurgia et minas proruperunt. Duce autem in Normanniam redeunte, rex Anglos affatur dicens, "Amici Interview of Henry with duke Robert.

H. A. i. 203. . . . Robertus, a Deo vocatus . . . refutavit. Ego vero, rex vester humilis et pacificus, vos in pace et libertatibus vestris, quicquid malo consilio hactenus actum est, gestio confovere. Vos igitur Angli, si constanter stetis mecum, minas et superbiam ultramarinorum minime formidabo." Talibus igitur sermocinationibus omnium corda sibi inclinavit, ut contra quemlibet usque ad capitis expositionem dimicarent. Rex igitur, pacificato populo, cum innumero exercitu transiens, Robertum, Normannorum ducem, hostiliter ordinatis exercitibus impetiit, et, facto congressu cruentissimo, vicit et cepit. In quo prœlio ceciderunt multi nobiles et præclari, ubi Willelmus de Albineto ex parte regis laudem promeruit singularem. Capti sunt itaque dux Robertus [et][3] con- Robert is taken prisoner.

[1] *debuerat*] dubuerat, MS.
[2] *Henrico I.*] On an erasure.
[3] *et*] Omitted in MS., but required.

sul Moretonii;[1] Robertus vero de Beleasmo fugit. Hoc actum est viii°. kalendas Maii. Rex autem victor in Angliam rediens, fratrem suum Robertum misit ad castrum de Divises, deputatum custodiæ xii. virorum fortium, perpetuo carceri mancipandum. Hoc quoque anno canonicorum Saresbiriensium Ordo incepit.

24 April.

Canons at Salisbury.

[M°.C°.VII°.][2] Rex Henricus, subactis omnibus inimicis, ad petitionem magnatum qui secum strenue dimicaverant, duxit secum pacificatum Anselmum, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, rediens in Angliam, et ei ablata restituit. Factus igitur rex ab omnibus securus inimicis, Deo ingratus factus est de rege tirannus, ac promissi sui et juramenti transgressor manifestus, nobilium suorum oppressor, et pecuniæ extortor; neminem formidans nisi papam, et hoc non propter spiritualem, sed propter secularem potius potestatem. Eodemque anno facta est convocatio episcoporum . . . regis. Cui, juxta . . . . Ibid. i. 2 vel aliquam laicam[3] . . . . . et privaretur. Anno vero sub Ibid. i. 2 eodem consecrati . . . . archiepiscopo. Obiit Mauricius . . . canonicos seculares. Obiitque rex . . . Alexander.

Archbp. Anselm reconciled to the king.

M°.C°.VIII°. Defuncto Girardo, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, Thomas substituitur. Ricardus, Londoniensis electus, ab Anselmo archiepiscopo consecratur. Eodemque tempore, regi fol. 18. Francorum Philippo successit Ludowicus.

Succession of bishops. Louis VI. king of France.

M°.C°.IX°. Anselmus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, magnus philosophus et doctor eximius, obiit in Quadragesima. Filia regis Henrici Matildis maritatur Henrico imperatori. Consecratur Thomas, Eboracensis electus, facta obedientia Cantuariensi ecclesiæ, a Ricardo, Londoniensi episcopo. Eoque anno rex Henricus Elyensem abbatiam ad sedem transtulit episcopalem, et Herveum, Bangorensem, episcopum Walensium, persecutiones fugientem ibidem constituit. Defunctoque Ricardo, qui . . . . . comitatus. Dux Robertus, dum conaretur, miro H. A. i. 210. fascinatus consilio, [effugere],[4] capitur, et dum cum minis ampulosa verba projiceret,[5] luce oculorum privatum jussit rex ipsum perpetuo carceri mancipari. Ubi præ dolore in superbia solita mortuus, animam miseram, ut timetur, efflavit, quia cœlitus electus Deo militare regnando, renuit militare. Sed hæc supra.

Death of archbishop Anselm. Marriage of Matilda to the emperor. Consecration of abp. of York. *Nota de Eliensi ecclesia.* Duke Robert is deprived of his eyesight.

M°.C°.X°. Rex Henricus gravem movit quæstionem contra comitem Cestrensem, imponens ei quod dans cornua Roberto

Accusation of the earl of Chester.

---

[1] *Moretonii*] Meretonii, MS.

[2] The year is omitted in MS., but *CVII.* noted in margin.

[3] *laicam*] laicum, MS.

[4] *effugere*] Supplied to complete the sense.

[5] *projiceret*] proiceret, MS.

duci, regnum niteretur perturbare, novum regem subrogando. Tandem vix est,[1] quia re vera reus extitit, cum rege concordatus. Ricardus, ecclesiæ Sancti Albani abbas, sancti Oswini reliquias in novam Sanctæ. Mariæ ecclesiam transtulit apud Thinemue, x°. kalendas Septembris, scilicet die suæ passionis. Sanctus Godricus vitam . . . solutus, ad Deum transmigravit. Sed hæc supra.[2] Translation of St. Oswin's reliques. 23 Aug. H. A. i. 214.

H. A. i. 215. M°.C°.XI°. Rex Henricus transfretans contra comitem Andegavensem, Cenomanniam, eo invito, tenentem, eam gravi afflixit depopulatione. Eodemque tempore Rogerus, . . . corpus beatæ Frethesithæ requiescit, Wimundo canonico; qui ibi canonicos prior effectus congregavit regulares. Mortalitas, tabes et fames facta est, cometa illud præmonstrante. Invasion of Maine. Mortality.

H. A. i. 216. M°.C°.XII°. Facta est contentio . . . . . qui licite contulerant episcopatus . . . . scilicet, non debere dari sic aliquam prælatiam, per manum videlicet laicalem. Tandem facta est ita, ut . . . . . ad quem pertinuerunt . . . consuetam. Acta
fol. 18 *b*. sunt hæc . . . . imperatori.

H. A. i. 217. M°.C°.XIII°. Rex Henricus contulit archiepiscopatum . . . . . . contradicens infirmavit. Eodem anno rex Wallenses suæ subdidit voluntati, et Angliæ legibus informavit. Cometa præmissa, fuit terræmotus in Roma. The Welsh subdued. Earthquake at Rome.

H. A. i. 219. M°.C°.XIIII°. Rex Henricus fecit . . . . regina sua. Eodem anno Thamisia ita in æstate desiccata est, ut in refluxu Londoniis poterat leviter transvadari. Et mare . . . dies. Rofensis episcopus Radulphus postulatur in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem. Dedicata est ecclesia Cantuariensis. The Thames dried up. Dedication of the church of Canterbury.

H. A. i. 219. Ibid. i. 220. M°.C°.XV°. Consecratus est . . . legato, et pallium suscepit ab eodem. Et eodem die palam idem . . . episcopos consecravit.

M°.C°.XVI°. In contermino anni præteriti et subsequentis, videlicet die Innocentium, dedicata est ecclesia Sancti Albani, præsente rege Henrico et regina, ab archiepiscopo Rothomagensi Gaufrido; Ricardo tunc abbate. Solempnitati autem assistebant Londoniensis Ricardus, Saresbiriensis Rogerus, Dunelmensis Rogerus,[3] episcopi . . . procurante. Et rex H[enricus] dedit in dotem ecclesiæ Bissopescote in perpetuum, et carta sua confirmavit. Dedication of the church of St. Alban. 28 Dec. Grant of Bishopscote. H. A. i. 221.

[1] *est*] On an erasure.

[2] *supra*] We should read, apparently, *infra*. See under the year 1170.

[3] *Rogerus*] An error for *Ranulfus*, as also in *Hist. Angl.* See Fasti, iii. 282.

Tempests and earthquakes. Merton abbey founded.

M°.C°.XVII. Tonitrua, grandines et ventorum impetus, et, in Lumbardia et tractibus orientalibus, terræmotus turres, mœnia, ædificia et arbores solotenus contriverunt. Luna . . . sanguinea. Robertus prior . . . Augustini ibidem constituit observari. H. A. i. 222.

Death of queen Matilda. Hospital of St. Giles. Order of the Templars. Death of Baldwin I., king of Jerusalem.

M°.C°.XVIII°. Defuncto papa . . . successit. Obiit autem eodem anno Matildis, Anglorum regina, et sepulta est apud Westmonasterium. Hæc autem regina inter cetera ejus pietatis opera, hospitale Londoniis constituit, quod Hospitale adhuc Reginæ dicitur, scilicet Hospitale Sancti Egidii. Obiit Petrus, primus prior Bermundesheie.[1] Incepit Ordo Templariorum, sicut in Historia Jerosolimitana plenius enarratur. Obiit rex Jerusalem Baldewinus; successit Baldewinus, comes Edessanus. H. A. i. 222.

Calixtus II. pope. Battle in France. Deaths of the abbat of St. Alban's and bishop of Norwich.

M°.C°.XIX°. Defuncto papa Gelasio, successit Calixtus, qui errorem magistri Gileberti Porretæ,[2] condempnavit. Campestre prœlium inter reges Francorum et Anglorum committitur, ubi, victore rege Anglorum, rex Francorum deteriorem calculum reportavit. Obiit Ricardus de Albeneto, abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Albani; cui successit Galfridus de Gorham. Obiit Herbertus, episcopus Norwicensis. Tempore sub eodem . . . collocuti sunt rex magnus et summus sacerdos. fol. 19 a. H. A. i. 229.

Shipwreck of the king's family.

M°.C°.XX°. Divina, ut dicitur, ultione, qui . . . velificabant, redeundo a Normannia, filii . . . Ricardus, filia quoque ejus et neptis . . . et multi proceres et regis consiliarii cum eisdem, in mari naufragium perferentes submersi[3] obierunt. Et merito communi sepultura caruerunt, qui luxuriosi et perjuri universitati regni Angliæ adversabantur. Quod enim admiratione dignum, mare, cum absorbebantur, extitit pacatissimum! Hoc etiam anno descendit cœlestis ignis super sepulchrum Domini, xiiii°. kalendas Maii. H. A. i. 230.

Miraculous light. 18 April.

M°.C°.XXI°. Rex Henricus . . . causa suæ pulchritudinis. Quæ . . . archiepiscopo, consecrata . . . coronata. Walenses concordati sunt cum rege. Calixtus . . . et, licet invitum, monachum ordinavit. Luna . . . . in archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem. H. A. i. 230, 231. Ibid. i. 2[illegible]

Reading abbey. Death of Ralph, bp. of Bath.

M°.C°.XXII°. Rex Anglorum Henricus I. omnia Redingiæ ædificia, abbate creato, perfecit. Obiit Radulphus, antistes Bathoniensis.

---

[1] *Bermundesheie*] Bermundeh', MS.

[2] *Porretæ*] Porrēt, MS.

[3] *submersi*] et submersi, MS.

M°.C°.XXIII°. Rex Henricus, ad Natale Domini apud Dunestapliam festo celebrato, se contulit Berckamestudam, ubi regis cancellarius, dum verba probrosa in Sanctum Albanum jacularetur, ex equo corruit excerebratus. Obiit Robertus, Lincolniensis episcopus; successit Alexander. Rex H[enricus] dedit archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem Willelmo de Corbolio, quem monachi Cantuarenses, rege irrequisito et inde irato, elegerant; et tunc, rege pacificato, consecratur et inthronizatur. Episcopatum Bathoniensem contulit tunc rex Godefrido. Rex Rothomagum muro alto, spisso et propugnaculato, turri[1] quoque castrum Cadomense fortissime communivit. Castra etiam . . . de Oxomio, de Abrincis, et Vernonis inexpugnabiliter roboravit. Rex dedit archiepiscopatum Cantuariensem Willelmo de Curbolio, priori de Chicche, et episcopatum Bathoniensem Godefrido, capellano reginæ. Robertus de Mulent recessit a rege.[2] Rex Jerusalem Baldewinus . . . Edissani hostiliter descendens, dum incautus . . . . irruit subito non præmeditatum, et captum in castro . . . mancipavit. Detinebantur autem in eodem . . . et ejus nepos Gualerannus. Principes[3] autem . . . . et strenuum, qui . . . ordinaret. Balach interea cum . . . . cum aliis Terræ Sanctæ principibus, prævia tamen vera Cruce, invocato præcordialiter Spiritus Sancti auxilio, hostes . . . perimentes; unde inter se victores spolia impretiabilia diviserunt. Nec mora, rex Baldewinus, multis captivatis et datis obsidibus, cum eis qui cum eo capti sunt, a vinculis liberati sunt. Willelmus . . . suscepit.

Death of the chancellor. Succession of prelates. Fortification of Rouen, Caen, and other towns. H. A. i. 232. Ibid. i. 232. fol. 19 *b*. H. A. i. 233. King Baldwin released from captivity.

M°.C°.XXIIII°. Robertus de Meblent[4] . . . de Muntford et Hugone . . . camerarius regis H[enrici] fidelis, aciebus dispositis, contra illos viriliter decertans . . . præsentavit. Obierunt Theophus . . . episcopi. Tyrus, Syriæ metropolis, a Michaele, Venetorum duce, et principibus regni Jerosolimitani capitur, et Christianis mancipatur. Johannes Cremensis, apostolicæ sedis legatus, ad Nativitatem beatæ Mariæ[5] Londoniis concilium generale celebrans, concubinas sacerdotum et sacerdotes dampnavit[6] concubinarios. Tandem vero in idem vitium ipse legatus, deliciis crapulatus, corruit comprehensus; unde scandalum non minimum[7] in ecclesia suscitavit. Rex H[enricus]

H. A. i. 233. Ibid. i. 234. Capture of Tyre. Scandal caused by the legate John of Crema. 8 Nov.

[1] *turri*] At first written *turrim*.

[2] *Rex dedit . . . a rege*] Apparently added to the original text by the author, and chiefly a repetition of what has been written before.

[3] *Principes*] Princeps, MS.

[4] *Meblent*] So also in *Hist. Angl.*, but written *Meslent* under 1140.

[5] *Mariæ*] Mare, MS.

[6] *dampnavit*] dapnavit, MS.

[7] *minimum*] menium, MS.

Death of Alexander of Scotland. David succeeds. Various events.

dedit Simoni Wigorniensem . . . abbati Glastingeberiensi, Cicestrensem præsulatus. Obiit rex Scotorum Alexander; successit David, frater ejus.[1] Rex H[enricus] plures, immo fere omnes, Angliæ monetarios, eo quod falsarii erant, fecit turpiter mutilari. Rex Jerusalem B[aldewinus] de Borsequino, principe orientis potentissimo, gloriose triumphavit. Obiit Kalixtus papa; successit Honorius. Rex Jerusalem B[aldewinus] liberatus est.[2] Ibid. i. 23[illegible]

Succession of bishops.

M°.C°.XXV°. Rex H[enricus] dedit Symoni Wigorniensem, Johanni Rofensem, Sifredo Cicestrensem præsulatus. Obiit rex Scotorum Alexander.[3]

Arnulph bishop of Ravenna.

M°.C°.XXVI°. Henricus, Romanorum imperator, præsulatum Ravennæ Ærnulpho, viro eleganti, eo quod accusatus, quod quadam nocte dormierat cum quadam sua concubina, imperatori. Jussit igitur imperator, ut legeret sibi evangelium,[4] quod et ipse renuit, nec potuit ulla ad hoc trahi compulsione;

Disappearance of the emperor.

unde imperator eum dignum censuit præsulatus.[5] Ipse autem imperator quadam noctium clandestinam[6] fugam arripiens, et fugiens pompam[7] mundi fastidivit, et voluit paupertatis humilitatem experiri. Evanuit igitur ab hominum visu et cogni-

The empress comes to England.

tione;[8] unde uxor ejus, imperatrix Matildis, usque ad mortis angustias contristata,[9] quo diverteret, ignoravit. Et quia ab aliquibus improperatum fuit ei, quod viro suo venenum propinasset, fugit de nocte versus partes tendens occidentales, ut ad patris, scilicet H[enrici] regis, alas fugeret protegenda. fol. 20 a
Pio igitur . . . imperavit. Diligebat . . . suam specialiter, H. A. i. 238.
quia unicam illam habebat filiam; et recepit eam cum summa alacritate. Et rediens rex in Angliam, comfortans[10] eam tanto viro spoliatam. Et, jussu regis, omnes Angliæ et Normanniæ primates fecerunt . . . et Blesentium comite procreatus.

---

[1] In the margin are drawn three small bearded heads, each wearing a tall peaked hood, with a crown above each, meant for the kings of Scotland. Over the head of the first is written, "Malcolmus."

[2] Most of the above events are entered under the year 1125 in *Hist. Angl.*

[3] *Obiit Kalixtus . . . Alexander*] These lines (partly a repetition of what has been stated immediately above) have been added by Matthew Paris to the text, as originally written.

[4] *sibi evangelium*] ewangelium sibi, MS., but marked to be transposed.

[5] *præsulatus*] presula, MS.

[6] *clandestinam*] clamdestinam, MS.

[7] *pompam*] ponpam, MS.

[8] *cognitione*] congnicione, MS.

[9] *contristata*] contristatata, MS.

[10] *comfortans*] The construction requires *comfortavit.*

H. A. i. 238. M°.C°.XXVII°. Rex H[enricus] . . . archiepiscopus regem . . . . fecerat, cum . . . est ejectus. Eodem [tempore][1]
Ibid. i. 239. defuncto . . . Universalis succedens, a Willelmo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo est consecratus. Comes Andegavensis Fulco Jerusolimam sine proposito revertendi . . . filio suo, dicto Plantegenest . . . Jerusalem prospere pervenit. De cujus adventu et pio proposito[2] rex . . . . suam. Quod cum regi[3] Anglorum nunciaretur, transfretavit . . . . copulavit.[4] Obiit
Ibid. i. 240. Ricardus, episcopus Herefordensis. Die sancti Johannis . . . . cum quibusdam[5] aliis fratribus, ita scilicet, quod xii. erant quærentes sibi idoneum locum mansionis, vitam et habitum in arctius mutaturi, exemplo . . . inchoarunt. Qui dum vagarentur, locum aptum quærentes mansionis, et invenissent, ut . . . . "Hic state," hoc est, "Manete"; unde locus
Ibid. i. 241. ille Ciestaus usque hodie appellatur. Similiter . . . . opacam et aquosam invenerunt, et illam Fontes appellatam inhabitabant. Pauperes autem primo magnum,[6] Deo dante, cito in spiritualibus et temporalibus susceperunt incrementum. Foundation of Fountains abbey.

H. A. i. 241. M°.C°.XXVIII°. Rex H[enricus] . . . . Hespardum, tam quiete et secure viii°. diebus, ac si in regno suo moraretur . . . coegit. Ranulphus, Dunelmensis, et Willelmus, Wintoniensis, Deaths of prelates.
Ibid. i. 242. obierunt. Magister Hugo . . . laudabiliter digessit.

fol. 20 b. H. A. i. 242, 243. M°.C°.XXIX°. Honorio . . . . archiepiscopi; inter quos . . . sacerdotum, ne cohabitarent. Episcopantur Henricus, abbas . . . . in Lincolniensem præsulatus. Philippus . . . . ludens ageret, porco equum offendente, cecidit, et fractis cervicibus, expiravit. Death of Philip of France.

M°.C°.XXX°. Innocentius papa expulsus a Romanis, Anacleto intruso, se contulit ad Cisalpinos; veniensque in Galliam Flight of pope Innocent II.
H. A. i. 244. . . . . recepit eundem apud Rothomagum. Et sic . . . reverenter susceptus, Anglorum rege . . . . coronavit in regem Francorum. In Nativitate vero beatæ . . . destinavit Dedicata est ecclesia Cantuariensis. Hugo, abbas . . . Rothomagensem. Church of Canterbury dedicated.

H. A. i. 245. M°.C°.XXXI°. Rex Jerusalem . . . gravem incidit ægritudinem. Et cum vidisset mortem imminere[7] . . . . potestatem; et sic expiravit. Obiit Innocentius[8] . . . Cluniacensis.

---

[1] *tempore*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *proposito*] prosito, MS.

[3] *regi*] a rege, MS., as in *Hist. Angl.* (but with a different construction.)

[4] *copulavit*] coplavit, MS.

[5] *quibusdam*] quibus, MS.

[6] *magnum*] mangnum, MS.

[7] *imminere*] iminere, MS.

[8] *Innocentius*] A mistake for *Honorius*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*

See of Carlisle founded. M°.C°.XXXII°. Rex H[enricus] I. novum . . . Karleolum,[1] et posuit primum . . . priorem, cui consuevit peccata sua[2] confiteri. Hic episcopus canonicos ibi constituit regulares, et multis ecclesiam illam ditavit honoribus. Natus est . . . Henricus. H. A. i. 245. Ibid. i. 24

Succession of bishops. M°.C°.XXXIII°. Tenebræ factæ sunt. Terra . . . transfretavit. Idem rex . . . Radingum. Herveo, Elyensi episcopo, Nigellus successit. Galfridus cancellarius fit Dunelmensis.[3] H. A. i. 247.

M°.C°.XXXIIII°. Matildis imperatrix, filia regis H[enrici] I. peperit . . . Gaufridum. Obierunt Landavensis et Gilebertus, Londoniensis episcopi. Obiit quoque Robertus, dux quondam Normannorum, longo carcere maceratus.[4] H. A. i. 247.

Death of duke Robert of Normandy.

Death of Henry I. M°.C°.XXXV°. Rex Henricus I. moratus in Normannia, crapulatus a murena, cum a venatu redisset, infirmatus[5] graviter, regum . . . regnasset magnifice xxxv. annis et iii. mensibus. Hic pro animæ . . . . providit. Ejusque visceribus, oculis et cerebro humatis Rothomagi, ut ipse vivus præceperat, corpus ejus apud suum cœnobium est humatum. fol. 21 a. H. A. i. 249.

M°.C°.XXXVI°. Defuncto autem . . . . regium temere invasit. Unde, Deo vindice, parvo . . . . . . certissime. Willelmus quoque . . . Angliæ, Stephanum in regem sullimavit. Die igitur sancti Stephani coronatus est in regem Stephanus, et ab omnibus rex acclamatus. Quæ autem tunc juravit, in Historiis[6] reperiuntur. Ecclesia Sancti Pauli Londoniarum, et ipsa urbs usque ad ecclesiam Danorum combusta[7] est. Stephanus de se confisus et bene corroboratus, præsentibus archiepiscopis et quibusdam episcopis, thesaurum, quem avunculus suus congesserat ad exequendum testamentum suum, violenter, jamjam ex rege factus tirannus, occupans, dissipavit. H. A. i. 251.

Coronation of Stephen. 26 Dec.

St. Paul's, London, burnt.

Stephen seizes the royal treasure.

Rex Scotorum . . . fecerat, scilicet David, in Angliam . . . imposuit. Rex Stephanus occurrens, ipsum regem Scotorum adeo humiliavit, ut homagium regi faceret S[tephano]; et filius ejus regi S[tephano] homagium faceret. Festo autem Ascensionis, nescitur quo casu, disseminata est fama, quod Ibid. i. 25[illegible]

The king of Scots offers homage.

30 April.

---

[1] *Karleolum*] Karlel', MS.

[2] *sua*] sui, MS.

[3] The whole of the events under this year have been added by the author to the text, as originally written.

[4] A blank shield, reversed, with a crown, is drawn on the lower margin with a plummet.

[5] *infirmatus*] imfirmatus, MS.

[6] *in Historiis*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 74, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 252.

[7] *combusta*] conbusta, MS.

Rumours of Stephen's death. Geoffrey of Anjou's success in Normandy.

rex procul dubio mortuus extitisset. Rex autem se probans non esse mortuum, multos de inimicis suis, qui jam caput erexerant, occupavit. Galfridus interea, comes Andegaviæ, et uxor ejus Matildis, aliqua castra Normanniæ optinuerunt, et
l. i. 255. multum cœpit jamjam dominari. Willelmus . . . obierunt.

A. i. M°.C°.XXXVII°. Stephanus transfretavit . . . ubi guerræ indulgens, omnia ad votum consummavit. Concordiam . . . composuit. Et sic in Angliam lætus remeavit. Eodem anno obiit
l. 21 b. . . . . juniorem.

Invasions of Northumberland by the Scots.

A. i. M°.C°.XXXVIII°. Conradus . . . est imperium. Rege Anglorum S[tephano] in diebus Nataliciis castrum Bedefordiæ obsidente, Rex Scotorum . . . ducens, rem execrabilem perpetravit. In improperium enim imperatricis, cui etiam fidelitatem fecerat, mulieres . . . anticipatos in altum projectos super hastas recipiebant, ita ut viderentur Herodis tempora renovari. Nec ecclesiæ parcebant monachis vel presbiteris. Rex autem S[tephanus] potenter occurrens, ipsum regem cum suis Scotulis ignominiose coegit retroire, multis ex ipsis trucidatis. Iterum, occupato rege
l. i. 258. S[tephano], David . . . proceres boreales, jussu . . . . restiterunt. Factum est autem inter Anglos [et Scotos][1] bellum anceps et cruentissimum; et post multam sanguinis effusionem victi sunt turpiter Scoti, et fugit rex Scotorum David. Et quia Angli[2] vires suas et acies dissipatas ad suum standardum revocarunt, secundum militarem disciplinam, vocatum est illud prœlium, prœlium Standardi, quod sonat in improperium indelebile omnium Scotorum. Interim autem comes Gaufridus multos sibi subjugavit, tam de regno Angliæ quam de Normannia. Albericus, Hostiensis episcopus, legatus celebravit concilium Londoniis, in ecclesia Sancti Pauli. Theobaldus, abbas Beccensis, in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem eligitur.

Battle of the Standard. Success of Geoffrey of Anjou. Council at London. Theobald abp. of Canterbury.

M°.C°.XXXIX°. Rex Stephanus perrexit[3] hostiliter in Scociam. Et rex Scotorum David, multis amicis intermeantibus, cum rege Anglorum Stephano concordatus est, filio ipsius rege Scotorum Henrico dato in obsidem regi S[tephano]. Rex S[tephanus] quosdam Angliæ episcopos male tractavit. Eodem tempore venit in Angliam M[atildis], quondam imperatrix, cui jurata fuit Anglia; et multiplicata[4] sunt mala diversa, hiis hinc

Expedition to Scotland. Stephen ill-treats some bishops. Arrival of empress Matilda.

---

[1] *et Scotos*] Supplied to complete the sense.

[2] In the margin opposite is a note, of which only two words are now legible: " . . . *Scotorum* . . . *derunt*."

[3] *perrexit*] perexit, MS.

[4] *multiplicata*] multiplata, MS.

Ecclesiastical events. illis illinc consentientibus. Obiit Rogerus, episcopus Saresbiriensis. Rex quoque exilio dampnavit Nigellum, episcopum Elyensem. Turstano, Eboracensi archiepiscopo, successit Willelmus.

Prognostics before the capture of Stephen. 2 Feb. M°.C°.XL°. Rex Anglorum Stephanus apud Lincolniam existens, audivit quod multiplicati sunt inimici ejus, volentes eum violenter occupare. In die igitur Purificationis beatæ Mariæ, rex S[tephanus] pugnaturus, dum cereum suum offerret, cecidit confractus et extinctus. Et vas in quo corpus erat Dominicum, in triste præsagium, funiculo rupto, cecidit super altare coram episcopo celebrante. Eadem quoque die idem rex apud Lincolniam captus est, et ad imperatricem ductus, et præsentatus **Eclipse of the sun.** eidem; inque turri de Bristoldo custodiæ mancipatur. Facta est horribilis eclipsis solis per totam Angliam tenebrosa. Hoc **fol. 22 a.** **Exchange of Stephen for earl Robert.** completo sic bello . . . affirmante eodem populo, quod . . . **H. A. i. 266.** declaravit. Capitur Robertus comes, frater imperatricis, et datus est rex pro eo; et sic ambo liberati sunt a vinculis. **Robert, bp. of London.** Gualerannus, comes de Meslent . . . . . et castrum Falesiæ. **Ibid. i. 26[illegible]** **Death of Albert de Vere.** Gileberto, Londoniensi episcopo, successit Robertus de Sigillo. Albericus de Ver Londoniis occiditur.

Defeat of Stephen. M°.C°.XLI°.[1] Cum rex Anglorum Stephanus apud Wintoniam[2] castrum quoddam firmaret, supervenit subito hostium suorum multitudo, ipsumque fugam inire coegerunt, quosdam vel capiendo vel trucidando. In hac pugna captus est Willelmus Martel, et apud Walingefordiam incarceratus. Rex S[tephanus] **Escape of the empress.** imperatricem in castello Oxoniæ obsedit. Sed ipsa in tempore nivis, induta veste candida, cum suis, delusis custodibus, de nocte exiens, per posticum evasit.

Council held. Capture of Geoffrey de Mandeville. M°.C°.XLII°. Willelmus,[3] Wintoniensis episcopus et legatus, in media Quadragesima concilium, rege præsente et aliquibus episcopis, celebravit. Rex S[tephanus] cepit Willelmum[4] de Mandevilla apud Sanctum Albanum, antea facta congressione cruentissima; unde comes . . . . . est, et fere submersus. **II. A. i. 270.** Reddidit autem dictus Willelmus [turrem Londoniarum][5] regi **Ramsey abbey plundered.** Stephano. Cœnobium de Rammeseie eo tempore dampna sus-

---

[1] *M°.C°.XLI°.*] M°.C°.LXI°., MS., but rightly dated in marg.

[2] *Wintoniam*] A mistake for *Wiltonam*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 268.

[3] *Willelmus*] Another mistake for *Henricus*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 267.

[4] *Willelmum*] An error for *Gaufridum*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 270.

[5] *turrem Londoniarum*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, i. 71.

tinuit enormia. Obiit Fulco, rex Jerosolimitanus.[1] Defuncto papa Innocentio, successit Lucius.[2] Willelmus, Malmesburiensis[3] monachus, Anglorum scribens Historiam terminavit. Death of Fulk of Jerusalem. William of Malmesbury.

M°.C°.XLIII°. Defuncto papa Lucio, Eugenius successit.[4] Rex S[tephanus] Lincolniam obsedit, sed a Ranulpho, comite Cestriæ, operarii ejus fere octoginta sunt interfecti; et sic, re imperfecta, recessit. Robertus Marmiun obiit, merito excommunicatus. Galfridus, comes de Mandevilla, persecutor Rameseiæ, obiit sensu privatus. Arnulphus, ejus filius, qui post mortem patris ecclesiam illam pro castello tenebat, a rege captus exilio condempnatur. Gaufridus, comes . . . susceptus, dux Normanniæ appellatur. Siege of Lincoln. Deaths of Rob. Marmion and Geoffrey de Mandeville. H. A. i. 274.

H. A. i. 275. M°.C°.XLIIII°. Rex Anglorum . . . aliis hostibus suis a constructione . . . fugavit, et castrum in suam suscepit potestatem. Obiit Gaufridus de Mandevilla. Gaufridus, comes Andegavensis, potiorem Normanniæ partem[5] sibi adquisivit. Eodem anno obiit Celestinus; successit autem Lucius. Geoffrey of Anjou acquires Normandy. Lucius II. pope. fol. 22 b.

H. A. i. 275. M°.C°.XLV°. Rex Anglorum . . . ad ipsum pacifice . . . ei redderet . . . suæ fuerant ditionis . . . pudore suppeditato, apud . . . portavit. Lucius, lucis expers et honoris, obiit.

H. A. i. 276. M°.C°.XLVI°.[6] Henricus, . . . filius, prosperatur in Normannia, [et][7] apud Beccum honorifice susceptus est, sicut in aliis locis quamplurimis. Willelmus de Sancta Barbara fit episcopus Dunelmensis. [V°.][8] kalendas Martii obiit Gaufridus, abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Albani; cui Radulphus Gubiun successit. Obierunt episcopi, Ascelinus, Rofensis, Rogerus, Cestrensis, et Robertus, Herefordensis; Ascelino successit Rogerus,[9] Rogero Walterus, Roberto vero Gilebertus. Et post Turstanum . . . præsulatum. Eugenius papa venit Parisius. Imperator magnus Conradus peregrinaturus, duxit . . . junioribus, et equitibus levis armaturæ. Secutus est illum . . . memorato. Et cum in remotas partes pervenissent, tradidit omnes illos imperator Constantinopolitanus in manus Soldani Yconiæ; ita ut de tanta multitudine occulto Dei judicio vix decima pars evaderet. Imperator tamen vix evasit. Succession of bishops. Ibid. i. 277. Ibid. i. 279. The crusaders betrayed by the Greek emperor.

---

[1] *Jerosolimitanus*] Jerosololimitanus, MS.

[2] Lucius II. did not succeed till March 1144. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 273.

[3] *Malmesbiriensis*] Malmeburiensis, MS.

[4] Lucius II. died in Feb. 1145, when he was succeeded by Eugenius III.

[5] *partem*] par, MS.

[6] *M°.C°.XLVI°.*] M°.C°.LXVI°., MS.

[7] *et*] Omitted in MS.

[8] *V°.*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[9] *Rogerus*] A mistake for *Walterus*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 277.

Their proceedings in the East.

M°.C°.XLVII°. Imperator Achon applicans Fretherieus,[1] Jerosolimam profectus, a rege Baldewino honorifice susceptus est post dolorem; et, oratione perfecta, recessit. Rex autem Francorum Ludowicus, qui cum lxx. . . . eum sequebatur, illo itinere proficiscebatur,[2] in eosdem confusionis laqueos cecidit irretitus.[3] Et quis potest dicere Deo, "Cur hoc facis?"[4] Cecidit autem ibi corona lætitiæ Francorum et alacritas. Rex vero multum consternatus, orationem votivam perfecit Jerusalem. Post vero imperator et reges Francorum et Jerusalem, ne nil ageretur, [Damascum][5] obsederunt. Et cum prosperatum fuisset opus Martium in manibus eorum, ita ut pateret, hortis[6] destructis, captio civitatis, corrupti auri et argenti multitudine infinita pacifice sed turpiter recesserunt. Proh pudor! immo proh dolor! infideles fidelium detestabantur infidelitatem, teporem et avaritiam. Ex tunc igitur diatim tepuit et languit Christianorum devotio circa liberationem hereditatis Crucifixi. H. A. i. 282.

Robert, bp. of Lincoln.

Robertus factus est episcopus Lincolniensis, per manumque Theobaldi, archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, consecratur.

Successes of Noradin.

M°.C°.XLVIII°. Post recessum autem imperatoris regisque Francorum, post multas et lamentabiles strages, quas exercuit cruentus Sanguineus, Noradinus, ejusdem Sanguinei filius, princeps Turcorum potentissimus, fines Anthiochenos hostiliter ingressus, Reimundum, principem Antiochiæ, contra eum exeuntem cum suis trucidavit. Noradinus igitur jam cornua sumens et erigens, nullo obstante, progressus in partibus Terræ Sanctæ debacchando,[7] castrum Hareng[8] munitissimum[9] cædem exercens[10] occupavit; donec ipse rex Jerosolimorum superveniens hostiliter, ipsum compulit retrocedere fugientem. Facta [est][11] translatio sancti Erkenuualdi.[12] Rex Scotorum David fecit militem Henricum, primogenitum . . . Matildis. fol. 23 a; H. A. i. 285.

Capture of Lisbon. Gilbert Foliot bp. of Hereford.

M°.C°.XLIX°. Gaufridus . . . . ab infelici[13] peregrinatione sua. Lexebona capta est a Christianis. Gilebertus Foliot est factus episcopus Herefordensis. H. A. i. 285, 286.

Peace made between

M°.C°.L°. Rex Francorum Ludowicus, Eustachius, filius regis Stephani, dux quoque Normanniæ Henricus, cum copiosissima

[1] *Fretherieus*] A mistake for *Conradus*. See *Hist. Angl.*, i. 281.

[2] *proficiscebatur*] profiscebatur, MS.

[3] *irretitus*] Written *irretus* in the text, but corr. in marg.

[4] *facis*] fecis, MS.

[5] *Damascum*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[6] *hortis*] ortis, MS.

[7] *debacchando*] debacando, MS.

[8] *nullo . . Hareng*] Written over an erasure.

[9] *munitissimum*] munitissum, MS.

[10] *exercens*] exercens, MS.

[11] *est*] Omitted in MS.

[12] *Erkenuualdi*] Erkeuualdi, MS.

[13] *infelici*] imfelice, MS.

militia utriusque regni, omnino præparati [sunt][1] ad congressionem belli. Sed videntes utriusque partis magnates, quod legiones tot et tantæ nequibant sine irrestaurabili[2] jactura et sanguinis effusione [congredi],[3] cœperunt de pace contrectare; et, intermeantibus optimatibus, rex Francorum tandem cepit . . . recesserunt. Dum dux igitur rediret in Angliam, pater . . . graviter vulneratus,[4] [vii°.][5] idus Septembris obiit. Et sic Henricus . . . dux Normannorum. Gelu . . . ad xi. kalendas Martii, ut crederetur omne genus volucrum jam extinctum. Glacie quoque jam molarem trahente spissitudinem, pauperes et pecudes siti arentes et frigore deficientes moriebantur. Tamisia quoque ita congelata est, ut Londoniis plaustris, bigis, et summariis pontem[6] de se præbuit glacialem. Radulphus, ecclesiæ Sancti Albani abbas, valitudinarius factus, Robertum de Gorham consilio conventus sui suum constituit procuratorem, et totius abbatiæ rectorem. Celebratum est . . . suam. Comites et . . . Stephani.

A.D. 1150. Louis and duke Henry.

A. i. 7.

7 Sept.

19 Feb.

The Thames frozen.

Robert de Gorham made "rector" of St. Alban's.

id. i. 288.

A. i. 9.

ol. 23 b.

M°.C°.LI°. Dux Normannorum . . . Ludovicus dimiserat, propter suam pulchritudinem [desponsavit].[7] Et sic factus est dux . . . consul Andegaviæ. Et hoc procuravit ipsius Alienoræ astutia muliebris, in odium regis Francorum, qui eam dimiserat, ut sic promoveretur æmulus ejus, et potentior foret Henricus ad expugnandum regem Francorum. Quo audito . . . Henricum, librans subtiliter rerum eventus futurarum; maxime . . . . memoratæ. Cum igitur dux . . . rex Francorum et multi alii nobiles, cum ingenti copia armatorum conjurati, ut duci . . . auferrent. Et sic incepit odii seminarium per humani generis inimicum, qui per mulierem primam mundum corrupit, ut et iterum cædibus infinitorum hominum ipsum cruentaret, sicut sedulus lector in Historia super hoc confecta poterit invenire. Veniente rege Anglorum Stephano ad Sanctum Albanum, suggestum fuit ei de languore Radulphi abbatis. Concessit igitur rex, ut alius abbas eligeretur. Electus est igitur in abbatem Robertus, prior ejusdem ecclesiæ, et creatus. Obiit Matildis, uxor regis Stephani; et in . . . sepulturæ. Obiit Willelmus, episcopus Dunelmensis. Johannes de Papiro . . . . vero principalem. Conradus impera-

Astuteness of queen Alienor.

Robert de Gorham abbat of St. Alban's

Death of queen Matilda.

id. i. 291.

id. i. 292.

---

[1] *sunt*] Om. in MS.

[2] *irrestaurabili*] irrestaurabi, MS.

[3] *congredi*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[4] *vulneratus*] ! This is an error; and the Greater Chronicle and *Hist. Angl.* read with Wendover, *infirmatus*. Geoffrey of Anjou died of pleurisy, 7 Sept. 1151. See "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 854.

[5] *vii°.*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[6] *pontem*] ponte, MS.

[7] *desponsavit*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

Death of the emperor Conrad. tor, vir pius et prudens, diem clausit extremum; cujus facta laudabilia in libro Cronicorum[1] plenius poterunt reperiri.

Anastasius IV. pope. Richard, bishop of London. M°.C°.LII°. Eugenio successit Anastasius. Ricardus de Beumes fit episcopus Londoniensis. Eustachius . . . subito mortuus, in[2] ecclesia de Fevresham est sepultus. Henricus Murdac . . . excellentis, ab[3] hoc seculo migraverunt. Obiit pius rex . . . nepos ejus.[4] H. A. i. 292. Ibid. i. 293

M°.C°.LIII°. Dux Normannorum . . . xxxvii., milite stipatus copioso, venit in Angliam, [et][5] multa castra hostium suorum occupavit. Et diatim prosperatum est negotium ejus. Natus est . . . . . comitibus Andegaviæ.[6] Natus est autem in confinio illorum duorum annorum, scilicet diebus Nataliciis.[7] H. A. i. 293. Ibid. i. 294

Facta est pax inter reges S[tephanum] et H[enricum] II.

Nota formam. Indignati sunt magnates Angliæ vehementer . . . diuturnitate, dicentes . . . libidine? Experiatur . . . sors victoriam . . . dominator. Cum igitur ad pugnandum[8] acies utrobique disponerentur, Matildis . . . . in corde suo; et, vocato seorsum rege, instillavit regiis auribus quoddam secretissimum. Quod cum bene . . . iræ suæ. Accepto igitur . . . modum. Respice hic librum Hystoriarum.[9] Ibid. i. 294 fol. 24 *a.* Ibid. i. 295

M°.C°.LIIII°. Anastasius papa, defuncto, ut supradicitur, Henrico . . . . veneno, obiit. Cui successit Rogerus, Cantuariensis archidiaconus. Dux Normannorum transfretans, revocavit in jus proprium successive et diatim dominica . . . . repressit. Nicholas [Adrian IV.] pope. Defuncto papa Anastasio, successit Nicholaus, propria industria promerente, de territorio[10] Sancti Albani oriundus. Perfecta est concordia . . . Normannorum H[enricum]; formam quære in Cronicis.[11] Rex reddidit[12] . . . duo milia marcarum. Et H. A. i. 298. Ibid. i. 299

[1] See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 292.

[2] *in*] in in, MS.

[3] *ab*] ad, MS.

[4] In the margin is drawn a small head wearing a peaked hood, with an axe over the shoulder, and crown above; intended for king Malcolm.

[5] *et*] Omitted in MS.

[6] The preceding events are placed under the year 1152 in *Hist. Angl.*

[7] *Natus . . . Nataliciis*] Apparently added by Matthew Paris to the original text.

[8] *pugnandum*] pungnandum, MS.

[9] *librum Hystoriarum*] See *Hist. Angl.*, i. 296, and the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 86.

[10] *territorio*] teritorio, MS.

[11] *in Cronicis*] Only a short abstract of this treaty is given in Wendover and the Greater Chronicle, and I have found it nowhere else at greater length.

[12] *reddidit*] reddit, MS.

sic facta est concordia inter regem Francorum L[udowicum] et ducem Normanniæ[1] Henricum.[2] Rex Anglorum Stephanus, miles egregius, mente tamen piissimus . . . quod et ipse construx- *Moritur Stephanus rex.*
Ibid. i. 300. erat[3] . . . sepulti. Dux igitur, vii. idus Novembris in . . . . consecratus. Ascalona adquiritur. Sanctus Wilfricus[4] de Heselberge migravit ad Dominum. **Ascalon taken. Death of St. Wilfric.**

H. A. i. 301. m°.c°.lv°. Natus est Londoniis, ii. kalendas . . . legitimus, et vocatus est Henricus. Fuit autem rex Henricus jam prospere undique agens. Et tunc exheredavit Willelmum Peverel, quia Ranulpho, comiti Cestriæ, venenum propinavit. Rex **William Peverel disinherited.**
Ibid. i. 302. Henricus fecit . . . Henrico. Defuncto Roberto . . . . . successit. Henricus episcopus,[5] præmisso thesauro suo, absque
Ibid. i. 303. . . . complanavit.[6] Ludowicus rex . . . Tholetum. Thomas, Cantuariensis . . . . . humillimus,[7] quia ab eadem ecclesia promotus cepit redditum primitivum, videlicet ecclesiolam de Brantefeld. Rex Henricus postulavit a[8] papa Adriano licentiam adquirendi Hiberniam, et in lege Christiana et seculari **Henry asks leave of the pope to invade Ireland.**
fol. 24 b. informandi. Rex Henricus . . . cepit castella Mirebellum et
Ibid. i. 306. Chinonem. Alienora . . . nuncupavit.[9]

m°.c°.lviii°.[10] Rex Henricus venit in Angliam . . . . ei comi-
H. A. i. 307. tatum Huntunduniæ. Willelmus, filius . . . . . possidebat. Hugo quoque Bigod . . . resignavit. Willelmus . . . diebus Nataliciis, et sepultus est apud Radingum. Rex H[enricus], Walensibus subactis, munitiones multas super eo[11] firmavit et diruta restauravit. Et apud Snaudon multorum Walensium homagia **The Welsh subdued.**
Ibid. i. 308. cepit cum conditionibus. Natus est . . . Alienore filius, et vocatus . . . [illegible]. Tunica Salvatoris inventa est revelatione divina [illegible].[12] Quædam horum in confinio annorum evenerunt, unde quidam discordant Historiographi, sicut inquam in aliis **Discovery of the tunic of Christ.**

---

[1] *Normanniæ*] Normannie. MS.
[2] *Rex . . . Henricum*] These words have been added by Matth. Paris to the original text, but they are a mere repetition of what precedes.
[3] *construxerat*] construxerat. MS.
[4] *Wilfricus*] Wilfridus. MS.
[5] *episcopus*] Repeated in error, and *Wintoniensis* omitted.
[6] *complanavit*] In the margin opposite to this note: "Nota serpentem, per auctum Thomam post [illegible]."
[7] *humillimus*] humilimus. MS.
[8] *a*] ab. MS.
[9] *Rex . . . nuncupavit*] These events are assigned in *Hist. Angl.* to the year 1156, and ought so to have been entered in the text.
[10] *m°.c°.lviii°.*] m°.c°.lvii°. MS., erroneously, and the date of year m°.c°.lvii°. omitted.
[11] *super eo*] So in MS. perhaps we should read *super eos*.
[12] *Tunica . . . [illegible]*] Added in marg. in *Hist. Angl.* entered in 1156.

consimilibus; sed inde non est in narrationibus difficultas. Quod in confinio est, utriuslibet est.[1]

Humility of Henry II. M°.C°.LVIII°. H[enricus] rex die Natalis apud Wigorniam coronam portavit in magna gloria; et cum staret coronatus, recordatus humanæ fragilitatis, humiliatus est, reducens ante oculos cordis laudabile regis Cnutonis factum, quod scribitur in Historiis,[2] et merito. New coinage. Antiqua moneta [reprobatur],[3] quæ Baselard dicebatur; nova successit. Great pomp of Thomas the chancellor. Thomas, regis cancellarius, in apparatu et comitatu maximo venit . . . . in conjugem copulam accepturus. H. A. i. 309. Cancellarius utique inter alia magnalia, novem longas bigas habebat. Gaufrido, fratre . . . . . recipiente. Ibid. i. 3[illegible]

Schism in the papacy. M°.C°.LIX°. Rex Henricus duxit . . . . facti sunt. H. A. i. 310. Eodem anno, defuncto papa Adriano, et, ut dicitur, præ invidia a Romanis potionato, oritur scisma inter duos, Alexandrum et Octovianum. Imperator cum . . . . in Alexandrum. Tandem Alexander papatum optinuit.

M°.C°.LX°. Rex Henricus a Tholosa rediens, Margaretam fol. 25 . . . . suscepit. Et sic filium regis Anglorum septennem, filia H. A. i. 311. regis Francorum triennis[4] dispensative suscepit. Theobaldus . . . extremum.

Bartholomew, bp. of Exeter. M°.C°.LXI°. Bartholomæus, vir religiosus et optimus theologus, consecratus est in Exoniensem episcopum. Cui accidit quoddam mirabile, sicut patet in Historiis.[5] Maria, abbatissa . . . . H. A. i. 314. seducta, forte volens, Mathæo, Bononiæ comiti, nupsit. Quod matrimonium illicitum nitebatur Thomas cancellarius impedire, sed prævaluit carnalis suggestio. Et hoc fuit primum seminarium persecutionis, quam postea multiplicatam[6] sustinuit beatus Thomas. Canterbury burnt. Cantuaria fere tota combusta est.

M°.C°.LXII°. Ludowicus . . . Anglorum, cum magno martio H. A. 315. apparatu, cum jam . . . . discretis, ne totus mundus deterioraretur, amici feliciter[7] effecti sunt. Alienora apud . . . imposuit ei nomen suum, scilicet Alienoram. Death of the bp. of London. Obiit Ricardus, Londoniensis episcopus. Per idem tempus . . . . quam adjectionem filius non acceptavit. Et ex tunc . . . cancellario, Ibid. i.

---

[1] *Quædam . . . est*] Added by Matthew Paris to the text, as first written.

[2] *in Historiis*] See note *ante*, under A.D. 1031, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 308.

[3] *reprobatur*] Supplied from the marginal note in *Hist. Angl.*

[4] *triennis*] Originally written *triennem*, but corr. in marg.

[5] *in Historiis*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 97, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 312.

[6] *multiplicatam*] multiplatam, MS.

[7] *feliciter*] felicer, MS.

carissimum carissimo, commisit alendum et informandum.
Unde deinceps idem . . . appellavit. Idem Thomas cancel- Conduct of Thomas, when archbishop of Canterbury.
larius, rege vigilanter procurante, eligitur in Cantuariensem
archiepiscopum. Qui intronizatus, suo[1] exuto veteri homine, no-
vum cum actibus suis induit. Nuncii autem sui ad papam, qui
tunc Cismontanis partibus morabatur, secretius destinati, pal-
lium ad opus archiepiscopi, cum habitu Nigri Ordinis a papa
benedicto reportarunt; præhabito habitu canonicorum Mere-
toniæ. Nam curiæ curis ex tunc interesse recusavit, malens
Dei quam regis gratiam adipisci; unde officium cancellariæ
cum sigillo regio, liber ab omni obligatione, resignavit, quod
i. 318. utique regi nimium displicuit murmuranti. Sopita est . . . .
Albani, Roberto tunc episcopo, et Roberto tunc abbate, in
præsentia regis H[enrici]. Cujus pacis formam qui scire
25 b. desiderat, Librum[2] adeat Cronicorum Sancti Albani.[3] Rex Jero-
i. 319. solimorum . . . ejusdem Almaricus.

M°.C°.LXIII°. Gilebertus, Herefordensis episcopus, procurante Gilbert, bp. of London.
rege H[enrico], et concedente papa Alexandro, ad sedem
postulatus Londoniensem, illuc translatus est. Translatum est
. i. . . . positum in feretro ab . . . Henrico et illud procurante.
Sciendumque est, quod . . . illibatum. Henricus de Esexia Henry de Essexe assumes the religious habit.
de proditione convictus, ex regis clementia habitum religionis
apud Radingum suscepit. Thomas, Cantuariensis archiepisco-
i. 321. pus, ad petitionem regis . . . redintegratam. Papa Alexander
Turonis concilium congregavit; ad cujus . . . alii ecclesiarum Council at Tours.
i. 322. prælati. Thomas . . . . Dunelmensi. Malcolmus, rex[4] Scoto-
rum . . . . . filio ejus. Rogerus, comes . . . . Thunebruge
cum pertinentiis. Contradixit . . . illud comiti et[5] servitio
. . . . ab archiepiscopo.

M°.C°.LXIIII°. In præsentia regis et magnatum Angliæ, apud Constitutions of Clarendon.
Clarendonam, facta est . . . consuetudinum sive libertatum
. . i. . . . observari deberent in . . . teneri. Quæ abusiones dici pos-
sunt potius quam consuetudines. Quibus etsi primo consen-
sisse videretur archiepiscopus Cantuariensis Thomas, tamen in
calce[6] sermonis non consensit. Quas consuetudines si quis
videre desiderat, in Cronicis[7] poterit quas censuit tolerabiles,

[1] *suo*] su, MS.

[2] *Librum*] Librorum, MS., but the last two syllables partly erased.

[3] *Cronica Sancti Albani*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 99, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 318.

[4] *Malcolmus rex*] Rex Malcolmus, MS., but marked to be transposed.

[5] *comiti et*] At first written *comitis*, but *s* erased. The correct reading is *totum in*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 322.

[6] *calce*] cale, MS.

[7] *Cronicis*] See the Greater Chronicle, p. 100, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 323–32

quas reprobandas, invenire. Rex Henricus inter ceteras tirannides decrevit, quemlibet clericum, in publico flagitio deprehensum, primo exauctorizari, et postea regis curiæ traderetur puniendus; in contrarium sentiens beatus Thomas, ne una culpa bis puniretur: Deus enim non bis punit in id ipsum.

Quarrel between the king and archbishp.

Oritur igitur ex ira jam odium inter regem et archiepiscopum induratum, et insidiabatur ei rex nocumenta machinari, immo toti ecclesiæ novercari. Videns igitur archiepiscopus libertates ecclesiæ jam nullo obice expirasse pro magna parte, fugam et exilium subire cogitabat.

Dedication of the church of Reading.

Sed cum a multo tempore illud proposuisset, ecclesiam de Redingo sollempniter dedicavit.

Proceedings at Northampton.

Facta universali concione apud Norhamtonam coram rege, magnatibus et prælatis, archiepiscopus sciens quod rex fol. 26 a. aspirabat ipsum ex libidine ulciscendi confundere, venit coram omnibus bajulans crucem suam, ut sic saltem ab impetu regis defenderetur. Quod rex molestissime ferens, ait iratus et tumidus, "Sumne diabolus, infidelis,[1] aut scismaticus,[2] ut crucem abhorream et fugiam?" Et gravissimam super hoc omnibus querelam reposuit, exigens ut inde sibi faceret[3] archiepiscopus. Et dilatum est hoc magnum negotium usque in crastinum.

Flight of the archbishop.

Nocte igitur insecuta videns archiepiscopus se tam suffraganeorum[4] suorum quam regis gratia destitutum, clandestinam[5] et nocturnam fugam arripiens, mare in fragili cimba infra[6] paucos dies cum duobus sacerdotibus in Flandria applicuit. Et vix evadens laqueos comitis Bononiæ pro causa prædicta, pervenit indempnis in regis Francorum ditionem, ubi pressuras regis Henrici minime formidabat. Infiscantur igitur omnia, quæ ad archiepiscopum pertinebant, hoc comperto.

He arrives at Pontigny.

Et cito post beatus Thomas se ad Pontiniacense contulit[7] cœnobium, consolationem a coexule suo papa Alexandro accipiens et benedictionem; ibidem moraturus donec aura felicior aspiraret. Alienora regina periclitans in puerperio, voto facto cum pœnitentia prosequenda, mortis discrimine liberatur.[8]

Birth of the princess Joanna.

Chrism made at St. Alban's.

M°.C°.LXV°. Alienora regina regi Henrico peperit filiam, quam vocavit Johannam. Eodem anno Godefridus, episcopus de Sancto Asaph, confecit crisma in ecclesia Sancti Albani.

---

[1] *infidelis*] imfidelis, MS.

[2] *scismaticus*] cismaticus, MS.

[3] *faceret*] A word is here wanting, perhaps *rationem*.

[4] *suffraganeorum*] sufraganeorum, MS.

[5] *clandestinam*] clamdestinam, MS.

[6] *infra*] imfra, MS., *passim*.

[7] *contulit*] At first *se contulit*, but *se* erased.

[8] *Alienora . . liberatur*] Added subsequently by Matthew Paris to the text.

i. Noradinus, quidam . . . Antiochenis debacchando[1] Hareng. . . . . et Noradinum gladiis et lanceis incumbentes, in fugam propellunt. Quem cum . . . contra nostrates . . . irruptione gravissima, nobiles . . . Halapiam carceribus mancipavit; castrum quod . . . circumcingens. In confinio anno-
.338. rum illorum, in Ely et Northfolckia factus . . . pulsavit. In-
.330. terea, in confinio annorum illorum, defuncto Octoviano . . . . pontificem.[2]

M°.C°.LXVI°. Beatus Thomas, Cantuariensis episcopus, excommunicavit omnes observatores legum Angliæ[3] supradictarum. Quo audito, rex commotus procuravit ut interdiceretur solatium quod habuit Pontiniaci, ne amplius ibi moraretur. Quod audiens rex Francorum, venit Pontiniacum, et procuravit archiepiscopo aliam mansionem, consolans eum, scilicet
6 *b.* Senonim. Et cum recederet, abbati conducenti eum ob honorem dixit beatus Thomas,[4] "Salutate conventum. Scio, scio, quoniam vobis oneri fui. Sed veniet ab Anglia alius, qui quicquid exposui de vestro, solvet affluenter." Per idem tem-
i. pus . . . caruca terræ . . . concessi sunt. Alienora . . . Johannes. Robertus . . . obiit, postquam ecclesiam illam annis xiiii. magnifice gubernasset. Beatus Thomas,[5] dum in exilio moraretur, elegantissimas epistolas commonitorias et deprecatorias transmisit regi H[enrico], ut mitius ageret cum [eo],[6] immo pro ecclesia universali; et hoc per favorabiles personas et autenticas, tum per imperatricem, matrem suam, tum papam, tum ex parte regis Francorum, tum aliorum nobilium. Sed semper illum invenit inexorabilem. Scripsitque regi Francorum ipse rex H[enricus], quod mirabatur quamplurimum, quod suum inimicum Thomam[7] tam favorabiliter fovisset, et in terra sua receptasset. Scripsit igitur amicabiliter beatus Thomas[8] suffraganeis suis episcopis, ut juvarent eum pro causa totius ecclesiæ universalis dimicantem. Sed ipsi in omnibus eidem adversabantur.

Proceedings of archbishop Thomas.

M°.C°.LXVII°. Beatus Thomas,[8] omni humano auxilio, consilio et consolatione, [destitutus],[9] confugit ad divinum [auxi-

---

[1] *debacchando*] debacando, MS.

[2] *Interea . . . pontificem*] This event is placed under 1164 in the Greater Chronicle and in *Hist. Angl.*

[3] *Beatus . . . . Angliæ*] These words have been partially erased, but probably in the 16th century.

[4] *beatus Thomas*] Erased.

[5] *Thomas*] Again erased.

[6] *eo*] Omitted in MS.

[7] *Thomam*] Erased.

[8] *Thomas*] Erased.

[9] *destitutus*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, i. 343.

Mission of two papal legates.

Death of Robert, bp. of Lincoln.

Symon, abbat of St. Alban's.

-lium];[1] se totum effundens coram Deo in vigiliis, jejuniis et assiduis orationibus. Missi sunt duo legati a latere papæ, Vivianus et Gratianus. Sed quorum erat potestas æqualis, effectus et affectus varius disjungebat; unde pacis et pietatis[2] effectu et affectu eorum adventus privabatur.[3] Robertus, episcopus Lincolniensis, obiit. Symon, prior ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, in abbatem illius ecclesiæ creatus est. Eodemque tempore facti sunt discordes . . . . . villam Andeliaci redegit in favillam. Et ipsa . . . suis amisit conmilitonibus. Et non . . . a Normannis. H. A. i. 344.

Henry writes to the abp. of Cologne.

Letter from the pope to the bishop of London.

M°.C°.LXVIII°. Rex Anglorum H[enricus] motus contra papam Alexandrum, eo quod beato Thomæ[4] [præstitit][5] auxilium, consilium, et favorem, necnon pro ipso scripserat, Reginaldo, Coloniensi archiepiscopo, scismatico et hosti papæ publico, consensit, scribens eidem amicabiliter in hæc verba, "Desideravi justam habere occasionem," etc. Respice Epistolarum librum.[6] Eodem tempore dominus papa Gileberto, Londoniensi episcopo, scripsit eleganter et prolixe; cui ipse episcopus elegantius rescripsit, et[7] prolixius. Erat autem archiepiscopo hostis manifestus. Eodemque anno, Conanus . . . cum in fata concessisset, ex sorore regis Scotorum Constantiam filiam . . . . famam, adquisivit in uxorem. H. A. i. 345, 346.

Excommunication of the bishop of London.

Marriage of the princess Alienor.

Sufferings of the archbp.

M°.C°.LXIX°. Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis beatus Thomas[8] Gilebertum, Londoniensem episcopum, excommunicavit. Alienora, filia regis Angliæ, nupsit regi Castellæ Andephulso. Et concessit ei quasdam de terris suis rex H[enricus], sed clam, contradictionem timens suorum consiliatorum. Beatus Thomas[9] in tot angustiis constitutus, et de morte jam subarratus, cum de manifesta persecutione regis, episcopo Gileberto excommunicato[10] stimulante, certificaretur, immo jam ad exhortationem utriusque vacillaret, suspiria emittens ex profundo, supra quam dici potest, doluit. Cum enim . . . incumbit structura . . . sperandum? Instabat jamjam annus septenus. Parentes et amici sui pro ipso jubente exularunt. Clerici et laici sui episcopatus depauperabantur. Papa, de quo . . . . . odio fol. 27 a. H. A. i. 351.

[1] *auxilium*] Supplied from the same.

[2] *pietatis*] peitatis, MS.

[3] This mission of the legates properly belongs to the year 1169. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 343.

[4] *beato Thomæ*] Erased.

[5] *præstitit*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, i. 345.

[6] *Epistolarum librum*] lib. i. ep. 69, ed. Lupi.

[7] *et*] Originally so written, and then erased.

[8] *beatus Thomas*] Erased.

[9] *Thomas*] Erased.

[10] *excommunicato*] excomunicato, MS.

habentibus; lacrimosis suspiriis [illegible] ...tutis suam conservare[1] cum suis [illegible] ...t. in demum. In illa igitur mentis [illegible] ...ensi de superis. ...nse- ...iis.

M°.C°.LXX°. Rex Henric[illegible] præsentibus . . . . transfreta[illegible] ... vovit[3] . . . archiepiscop[illegible] faciendo humiliare. Prosper[illegible] ... nihil meminit præte[illegible] ...pus Londoniensis humiliato[illegible] de Finchale ex hac luce tra[illegible] Cujus sanctitas tractatus exigit [illegible]

52\. runt . . . . læsionem. Q[illegible]

53\. plicuisse. Unde, ultore . . . . Cum igitur una dierum, procur[illegible] episcopo Senonensi, et multis a[illegible] nobiles personas pax reformaretur, [illegible] Anglorum H[enricus] et Cantuari[illegible] Et facta est pax inter eos, ita [illegible] ecclesiæ suæ prosequendo, in [illegible] ...licite exerceret.[4] Quod rex serene [illegible] veniens in Angliam, archiepiscop[illegible] suæ ecclesiæ ...res, præcipue in co[illegible] episcopi excommunicati querul[illegible] ... transmarinis, adierunt, et [illegible] ... ut rex rancore plenus ira[illegible] et minarum plena congessit in archie[illegible] ... suis, scilicet ill[illegible] ... et obsequium præsta[illegible] ... conjurati sunt in necem [illegible] ...tatis Dominicæ sermonem faciens [illegible] ... ecclesiæ Cantuariensis mortem prædixit. Quosdam autem [illegible] suæ invasores excommunicavit. Q[illegible]

6\. venerunt milites, videlicet[7] iiii[illegible] sequens sermo plenius declarabit.

Birth of a son to the duke of Saxony.

Fame of St. Thomas the martyr.

Death of Jocelin, bishop of Salisbury.

Proceedings of the Saracens in Spain.

King Baldwin resigns his crown.

Conquests of Saladin.

M°.C°.LXXI°. Quinta vero die [illegible] ... [illegible]

3\. lamo suo consideret cum cleric[illegible] ... [illegible]

[illegible] Death of Baldwin.

1 *conservare*] Written *conservire*, but the *i* afterwards erased.

2 *Britannia*] Britania, MS.

3 *vovit*] Deo vovit, MS.

4 *exerceret*] excerceret, MS.

tiosi, subito in archiepiscopum, quasi furia invecti, jam ad ecclesiam euntem ad vesperas, gladiis extractis et armati irruerunt, et, ut brevibus rem gestam expediamus, ipsum excerebrarunt. Unde quidam de immanitate sceleris admirans dixit,

" Quis . . . . ara Dei." Ibid. i. 364

Et alius, de termino suæ passionis,

Verses on his death.

" Annus millenus centenus, septuagenus,
Primus erat, primas quoque cadit ense Thomas."

Hoc quoque anno . . . . ejusdem[1] sancti Cuthberti. Ibid. i. 369 Rogerus . . . . susceperat, quodque mortem beati Thomæ Ibid. i. 370 nec verbo, nec scripto, nec facto scienter procuraverat, beneficium meruit absolutionis.

Henry's purgation on account of the archbishop's death.

M°.C°.LXXII°. Rex Henricus sufficienter, quoad hominem, se purgavit de nece beati Thomæ. Diffamabatur non mediocriter inde jam per universitatem totius Christianitatis, quod sanctum virum et tantæ auctoritatis prælatum, pro quo Deus incomparabilia fecerat palam miracula, crudeli morti in ecclesia sua tradidisset. Venit igitur rex cum summa humilitate Cantuariam,[2] ubi a toto conventu accipiens nudus disciplinam, postquam juraverat [se][3] mortem archiepiscopi non procurasse, beneficium meruit absolutionis. Promisit igitur rex . . . . H. A. i. 372. . . . revocaret. Quas qui scire desiderat, librum adeat Historiarum.[4] Præterea, quod possessiones . . . . . martire exularant, in pace revocarentur. Rex vero junior, quicquid . . . promisit. Et sic ecclesiæ plene sunt reconciliati. Hiis ita gestis, . . . Margareta, in Angliam transfretavit; et apud . . . Ibid. i. 373 Angliæ consecravit et coronavit.

Ralph de Warneville chancellor. Mary, abbess of Barking. William, archbp. of Bordeaux.

M°.C°.LXXIII°. Rex Anglorum . . . . . sponsam dedit. Rex H. A. i. 373. Henricus juvenis . . . . quam patrem. Unde factæ sunt dissensiones, inimicitiæ, homicidia, rapinæ et incendia. Ad fol. 28 a. instantiam . . . concessit. Radulphus de Warannia[5] constituitur Angliæ cancellarius. Ibid. i. 374 Ricardus, Pictavensis . . . . Ibid. i. 375 sunt electi. Suffraganei Cantuariensis ecclesiæ et sanior . . . Doverensem. Soror beati Thomæ fit abbatissa de Berkinge, Maria nomine. Willelmus, abbas Redingiæ, assumptus est in archiepiscopum Burdegalensem. Rex Henricus juvenis . . . . ad Ibid. i. 376, 377.

[1] *ejusdem*] ejudam, MS.

[2] Henry did not visit Canterbury till 1174. See *postea*, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 385.

[3] *se*] Omitted in MS.

[4] The Constitutions of Clarendon are here again referred to. See previously, p. 195, under 1164.

[5] *Warannia*] We should read *Warnevilla*, as in Wendover, ii. 370, and *Hist. Angl.*

Henry curses the young king his son.

gravem sine misericordia coegit redemptionem; unde patrem usque ad spiritus offendit amaritudinem. Unde pater filium, quod horribile fuit, præcordialiter maledixit, quod et filius Ibid. i. 377. contempsit, quod fuit horribilius. Robertus, comes . . . . fecerunt. Rex Francorum Ludowicus in Normannia magnum fecit exterminium, audax effectus de discordia supradicta. Cui occurrit rex H[enricus] pater, desiderans mori [aut][1] vindicari. Rex autem Francorum sciens cor regis H[enrici] sic amaricatum, nolens ambigua Martis fata experiri, retrocessit. Obsessa est civitas Legrecestriæ, subfossa et capta. Invocavit enim rex auxilium et consolationem beati Thomæ, devotus et humiliatus. Willelmus rex [Scotorum],[2] dum letaliter nimis et hostiliter Northamhumbriam conatur exterminare, [3] regis Henrici patris, fugere et retroire ad sua Scociæ coactus est receptacula. Comes etiam Legrecestriæ et comitissa, cum suis Flandrensibus, captus est.

War in Normandy.

Siege of Leicester.

Flight of William, king of Scotland.

Earl of Leicester captured.

Castle of Axholm taken.

M°.C°.LXXIIII°. Rogerus de Molbraio a fidelitate regis senioris, sicut multi alii fecerunt, recedens, in insula de Anxiholm castrum antiquitus[4] dirutum in regis nocumentum reparavit. Ad quod Lincolnienses navigio pervenientes, castrum obsederunt, et omnes in eo inventos, castro diruto, ad deditionem H. A. i. 383. coegerunt. Rex Anglorum . . . occupasse, illuc festinus et iratus nimis properavit; et, beato Thoma invocato, prosperatum est opus martium in manu sua, obstantes omnes dissipando. Capti sunt igitur, tam in ecclesia quam alibi, milites lx., cum quingentis[5] balistariis. Comes Flandrensis Philippus multa regi H[enrico] patri nocumenta machinatur, et multiplicantur inimici. Rex igitur H[enricus] pater, salubri pœnitentia ductus, comperiens quod ad plenum non satisfecisset[6] ecclesiæ Cantuariensi de tanta offensa, clam et subito transfretando peregrinationis orationem cum summa fecit devotione; postulans cum lacrimis beatum Thomam de instanti periculo consolationem. Consuetudines autem, pro quibus cassandis beatus Thomas usque ad mortem decertavit, dampnavit ut prius et abdicavit. Et quasi victus victori se reddidit dicens, fol. 28 b. "Me de cetero tibi dedo, beate martir Thoma!" Si con-

Success of Henry at Saintonge.

Conduct of the earl of Flanders.

Henry's submission at Canterbury.

---

[1] *aut*] Omitted in MS.

[2] *Scotorum*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, i. 379.

[3] The words *captus est subito* have been written here, and afterwards erased, and no others supplied in their place. The passage, as it stands, is not intelligible. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, i. 379.

[4] *antiquitus*] antiquitu, MS.

[5] *quingentis*] quadringentis, *Hist. Angl.*

[6] *satisfecisset*] satisfeciis, MS.

His affairs prosper.

dignos pœnitentiæ egerit fructus, novit ille qui nihil[1] ignorat. Deus autem omnibus bonus tradidit in manus regis humiliati in brevi omnes inimicos ejus. Capto enim comite Legrecestriæ cum suis, ut prætactum, fautoribus, rex Scotorum Willelmus iterum insurgens, captus est, et carceri mancipatus. Rex autem juvenis, immo juvenilis et puerilis, navem ascendens, et veniens versus [Angliam],[2] ut eam sibi subjugaret, tempestate suborta, vix mortem evasit. Intelligens igitur elementa pugnare pro patre, cœpit pœnitere contra patrem suum recalcitrasse. Rex quoque Francorum cum confusione recessit ab obsidione Rothomagi.

Return of the archbp. of Canterbury from Rome.

Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis a Roma rediens, a papa, jam cum imperatore pacificato, pallium et primatum Angliæ reportavit.

Peace between Henry and his sons.

M°.C°.LXXV°. Rex Francorum Ludowicus et comes Flandrensis retrocesserunt, juvene rege rogante ea quæ pacis sunt a patre suo. Quid plura? Filii regis H[enrici] et omnes inimici ejus ad pacem redierunt. Tunc rex pater . . . . . H. A. i
recrearet. Continebatur insuper, quod omnia castella quæ 391.
diruta[3] fuerant . . . incepit. Cognovit enim rex feliciter, quoniam Deus exercituum Dominus in hoc eventu operatus est.

Council at Westminster. Death of the earl of Cornwall. Peace made with the king of Scots.

Concilium[4] habitum est apud Westmonasterium, præsidente Ricardo, novo Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, et apostolicæ sedis legato. Obiit Reginaldus, comes Cornubiæ. Willelmus autem, rex Scotorum, translatus de carcere ad carcerem, et jam tentus apud Falesiam, cum rege Anglorum pacem fecit in hunc modum. Rex Scotorum . . . . habere. Et inde confecta est carta, Ibid. i.
appensis[5] sigillis supradictorum. Pro hac autem conventione Ibid. i.
dedit . . . . ponent, donec quod justum fuerit adimpleatur. 392, 39

M°.C°.LXXVI°. Reges . . . venientes, cotidie in una mensa H. A. i.
sunt refecti. Johannes . . . . episcopus Norwicensis. Johanna, 393. Ibid. i. 3
filia regis, Siculorum regi nupta traditur. Quo etiam tempore
Willelmus . . . . Johannem, filium regis H[enrici], cognomento[6] Ibid. i. 3
Sine-terra, si superviveret, constituit successorem.

Foreign sovereigns seek Henry's counsel.

Diebus illis reges remotissimi se arbitrio regis Anglorum in dubiis fol. 29
casibus subdiderunt, ita quod alter Salomon haberetur. Quod
perpendere potest lector Historiarum. Hugo de . . . cursu Ibid. i. 3
peracto, Romam revertitur.

Deaths of nobles.

Eodem anno obiit Willelmus, comes de Strigoil, comes quoque Willelmus . . . Octobris, cujus corpus sepultum est apud Wimundham, prioratum

[1] *nihil*] nichil, MS., *passim*.

[2] *Angliam*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, i. 387.

[3] *diruta*] A mistake for *communita*, as in *Hist. Angl.*

[4] *Concilium*] Cognovit, MS., but afterwards erased.

[5] *appensis*] appe, MS.

[6] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

Sancti Albani, cujus patronus extitit. Walterus, prior . . . . . Westmonasterii.

H. A. i. 398. M°.C°.LXXVII°. Amotis . . . canonicis secularibus, introducti . . . auctoritate, rege procurante H[enrico] II., qui . . . spe-
Ibid. i. 399. cialis. Et eadem die . . . . collocatus. Concordia firmata inter reges Francorum et Anglorum. Philippus, comes . . . Jerusalem. Frethericus imperator humiliatus, satisfaciens de offensa, ablata papæ restituit. Amotis secularibus, introducuntur, rege procurante, canonici regulares.[1] Peace between England and France. Humiliation of the emperor.

H. A. i. 400. M°.C°.LXXVIII°. Ricardus de Luci . . . . . martiris, apud Westuude . . . . . sancti Johannis. Gaufridus, filius regis
Ibid. i. 401. H[enrici], cingulo donatur militari. Eodem anno nix . . . . volatile penitus extinctum . . . . Januarii. Prince Geoffrey knighted.

Inventus est sanctus Amphibalus cum sociis suis.[2]

Eodemque anno inventus est sanctus Amphibalus martir, cum sociis suis, apud Redburniam. Qui inquam martir[3] beatum Albanum, Anglorum prothomartirem,[4] convertit ad fidem Christianam, pro quo pio facto evisceratus est. Celebratur[5] autem ejusdem et sociorum ejus inventio in crastino Nativitatis sancti Johannis Baptistæ. Invention of St. Amphibalus. 25 June.

M°.C°.LXXIX°. H[enricus] rex Anglorum junior transfretans,
H. A. i. 409. in . . . torneamenta dicuntur, in . . . peregit. Deinde multis insignitus titulis triumphalibus ad patrem reversus, honore debito susceptus est. Rex Francorum Ludowicus beatum Thomam venit in Angliam oraturus. Fuerat enim beato Thomæ amicissimus, et consolator in exilio suo specialis. Rex autem Anglorum venienti occurrit lætabundus, apud Doveram navem ascendens, et quicquid honoris, gaudii ac reverentiæ poterat, ei The king of France visits the tomb of St. Thomas.
fol. 29 *b*. impendit. Eodem anno habitum Romæ . . . . Alexander III[us].
Ibid. i. 411, 414. Relatum fuit papæ, quod . . . deviavit. Similiter et abbas Johachim. Quæ lima indigebant correctionis. Philippus . . .
Ibid. i. 417. archiepiscopi, consecratus est in regem Francorum, patre adhuc vivente, et omnia necessaria ministrante. Ludowicus,

[1] *Amotis . . . regulares*] Added by the author after the text was first written, and merely a repetition of what was stated above.

[2] In the lower margin this rubric appears thus: "¶ *Invenitur sanctus Amphibalus martir, cum sociis suis*;" with a drawing of two arms grasping a pickaxe.

[3] *martir*] martir convertit, MS., but the verb is superfluous.

[4] *prothomartirem*] prothomariem, MS.

[5] *Celebratur*] Cebratur, MS.

Death of Louis VII. rex Francorum, diem clausit extremum; et sepultus est in monasterio Cisterciensis Ordinis, quod Barbellum dicitur, propriis sumptibus ædificatum. Aquitannorum dux Ricardus et Henrici regis filius, ad superbiam Gaufridi de Rancona[1] reprimendam, castellum ejus obsedit; et, licet ad unguem munitum, occupavit. Quo casu comperto, multa in circuitu ejus castella sine difficultate se sibi dederunt. Omnibus igitur ad votum completis, dux Ricardus in Angliam transfretavit, et triumphator maximus acclamatus, receptus est cum honore a suo merito genitore.[2]

Proceedings of duke Richard.

Treaty between France and England.

M°.C°.LXXX°. Fœdus initum est inter reges Anglorum et Francorum. Obiit Lodowicus, pius rex Francorum, beati Thomæ consolator. Ricardus, comes Pictaviæ, terras Galfridi de Liziniaco devastat.[3]

M°.C°.LXXXI°. Rex Francorum Philippus, de consilio suorum, cum vidisset et bene perpendisset, qualiter rex . . . . . ex alia, H. A. i. 420.
undique et pacifice gubernaret, regis Henrici omne regni gubernaculum Francorum et seipsum consilio commendavit.[4] Obiit Rogerus, Eboracensis archiepiscopus. Eclipsis solis facta est, in vigilia Exaltationis sanctæ Crucis. Obiit Papa . . . . Lucius. Eodemque anno moneta . . . nova successit. Ibid. i. 423
Baldewinus . . . Wigorniensem.

Death of the archbp. of York. Eclipse of the sun. 13 Sept.

M°.C°.LXXXII°. Gaufridus . . . . præfuisset, præsente rege et H. A. i. 423.
episcopis regni, electioni[5] sponte renunciavit. Dux Saxonum . . . . abundanter.[6] Eodem anno Walterus . . . Lincolni- Ibid. i. 424
ensis. Obiit Rogerus, Rofensis episcopus.

Death of the bp. of Rochester.

Warin, abbat of St. Alban's. Death of the young king.

M°.C°.LXXXIII°. Defuncto Symone, abbate ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, Warinus, ejusdem ecclesiæ prior, successit. Rex Henricus, dum diligentem curam impendisset, ut pacificarentur filii sui, nec potuit ob superbam contumaciam filii sui Ricardi, qui nullo modo voluisset homagium facere primogenito fratri suo, prout voluit pater, frater ejus, sicut contemptus, instinctu patris hostiliter insurrexit[7] in ipsum, tanquam contumacem, et patri et primogenito fratri suo rebellem,

[1] *de Rancona*] See note in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 419.

[2] *Ludowicus . . genitore*] These events are placed, more correctly, under 1180 in *Hist. Angl.*, i. 418, and are repeated, in a briefer form, in that year.

[3] *Fœdus . . devastat*] Added by Matthew Paris subsequently to the first writing of the text.

[4] *commendavit*] comendavit, MS.

[5] *electioni*] On an erasure.

[6] *abundanter*] habundantur, MS.

[7] *insurrexit*] insurexit, MS.

et juri inimicum. Et dum hæc agerentur, in flore juventutis
fol. 30 a. suæ, cum annum ætatis vicesimum octavum complevisset, in Turonica rex junior de medio sublatus est, et in Rothomagensi ecclesia traditus sepulturæ. Girardus, dictus Puella, conse-
H. A. i. 426. cratur episcopus . . . concessit. Walterus de Constanciis, Lincolniensis episcopus, in . . . collocatus.

H. A. i. 426. M°.C°.LXXXIIII°. Ricardus . . . . . extremum. Rex H[enricus] duxit . . . familia sua. Ducissa autem peperit filium Wintoniæ, quem vocavit Willelmum. Baldewinus, Wigorniensis episco-
Ibid. i. 427. pus, factus est . . . Rothomagensis. Philippus, archiepiscopus . . . . soluturi. Dominus enim famam ejusdem martiris per crebro celebrata miracula per totius Christianitatis latitudinem clarificavit. Magnatibus adventantibus[1] occurrens rex, multis est honoribus prosecutus. Rex fundavit[2] . . . . anima Henrici filii sui, qui quandoque beatum Thomam ad iram provocaverat. Obiit Jocelinus, episcopus Saresbiriensis. Rex Sarracenorum omnium, qui sunt in Hispania, duxit . . . regibus xxxvii., ut nomen et fidem delerent. Et post multa prœlia et cædes utrobique factas, tandem, consentientibus[3] partibus, decretum est, ut duello totum negotium Martis determinaretur, videlicet regis Macemund et regis Galaciæ, ad hoc electorum. Macemund autem ad pugnam[4] præparatus, etsi invitus, cum equum deberet ascendere, tremebundus præ pavore, febre correptus est; ex quo febre, dolore et pusillanimitate[5] interiit. Quo mortuo, totus ejus confusus fugit exercitus, spoliis eorum Christianis derelictis. Baldewinus, Almarici, quondam regis Jerusalem, filius, tunc in Terra Sancta regnavit. Percussus lepra, convocatis utique regni principibus, matre [præsente][6] et patriarcha, regnum resignavit. Guido autem de Liziniaco substituitur[7] regno;[8] quo non prosperante, Reimundus, comes Tripolitanus, substituitur. Hac quoque tempestate potentissimus Babiloniæ et Damasci Soldanus, vir quidem vafer et bellicosus, nomine Salahadinus, subjugatis quampluribus orientis[9] regibus, adeo, Deo permittente, in Terra Sancta debacchando[10] invaluit, ut omnia in ea discrimini paterent et exterminio; et se Salahadinus regem regum faceret appellari. Mortuo interea Baldewino, rege

Birth of a son to the duke of Saxony.

Fame of St. Thomas the martyr.

Death of Jocelin, bishop of Salisbury.

Proceedings of the Saracens in Spain.

King Baldwin resigns his crown.

Conquests of Saladin.

Death of Baldwin.

[1] *adventantibus*] adventabus, MS.
[2] *fundavit*] fundavid, MS.
[3] *consentientibus*] consencienbus, MS.
[4] *pugnam*] pungnam, MS.
[5] *pusillanimitate*] pusillanimite, MS.
[6] *præsente*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, i. 429.
[7] *substituitur*] sustituitur, MS.
[8] *regno*] Added in marg.
[9] *orientis*] orientibus, MS.
[10] *debacchando*] debacando, MS.

Jerusalem leproso, Baldewinus, nepos ejus, in regem coronatur, v. annorum puer. Saladinus igitur audiens quod in Jerusalem post . . . . os ejus, omnia licenter absorpturus.[1] Omnibus Ibid. i. igitur in Terra Sancta conversantibus in hoc solum consentientibus,[2] mittitur Eraclius, patriarcha Jerusalem, ad regem Henricum, ut regnum Jerosolimitanum[3] desolatum in suum reciperet regimen et dominum, [4] tutor foret, dominus fol. 30 et protector. Interim Saladinus, forte morbo correptus, vel sub treuga, quievit[5] ad horam. Nuncii interim iter versus occidentem arripiunt memorati.

Mission of Eraclius to king Henry.

Failure of the patriarch's mission.

M°.C°.LXXXV°. Eraclius patriarcha et Rogerus, Magister Hospitalis Jerusalem, venerunt in Angliam ad regem H[enricum] apud Radingum, explicantes ei causam adventus sui, et claves sanctæ civitatis ei optulerunt. Tunc[6] omnium amicorum regis fuit consilium, ut regnum suum caute gubernando, illud a barbarorum irruptione in pace ecclesiastica tueretur, quam orientalium consuleret prosperitati. Et sic a spe sua frustati, ipsi nuncii recesserunt. Johannes, filius regis, a patre fit miles. Hugo de Lascy in Hibernia interfectus est. Factus est terræmotus[7] horribilis apud Lincolniam et ejus partibus. Gilebertus de Glanvilla factus est episcopus Rofensis. Symon, comes . . . . pertinentiis. Dux Saxonum reconciliatur imperatori, suo contentus patrimonio. Obiit mulierum . . . . Henrici Secundi. Cujus tale est epitaphium, H. A. i. 435.

Various events.

The duke of Saxony reconciled to the emperor.

"Ortu . . . . parens."

Death of Geoffrey, count of Britanny.

M°.C°.LXXXVI°. Baldewinus . . . sibi dedita suscepit. Gaufridus, comes Britanniæ, filius regis H[enrici], in quodam hastiludio prostratus et confractus, post aliquot dierum languorem cadens in lientariam expiravit; et Parisius est sepultus, in majori ecclesia, juxta chorum canonicorum. Reliquit duas . . . . . . H. A. i. 436. Ibid. i. 4 vocavit. Willelmus de Ver factus [est][8] episcopus Herefordensis. Hugo, Ordinis Cartusiæ, factus est episcopus Lincolniensis; Willelmus de Norhale, episcopus Wigorniensis; et Johannes

Succession of bishops.

[1] *absorpturus*] absorturus, MS.

[2] *consentientibus*] consenticientibus, MS.

[3] *Jerosolimitanum*] Jerosolimita, MS.

[4] Two words have been here erased, apparently *ei xpē*. Perhaps we should read *et ejus*.

[5] *quievit*] q'u, MS., and *u* afterwards erased.

[6] *Tunc*] Tantu, MS., and *tu* subsequently erased.

[7] *terræmotus*] terromotus, MS.

[8] *est*] Omitted in MS.

. . . antistes. Urbanus papa Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, ut construeret ecclesiam de Akintona, concessit. Baldewino, rege Jerosolimitano puero . . . . Jopensis. Descendit igitur Saladinus ab Ægipto in partes Damascenas, in apparatu magno, et Terram Sanctam vastare disponit. Mortuo Urbano, succedit Gregorius, qui parvo tempore sedens obiit potionatus; cui Clemens subrogatur. Obiit Gilebertus, episcopus Londoniensis. Ricardus, comes Pictaviæ, vir martius, ubique timetur.[1]

Church of Akinton.

.. i. 438.

Gregory VIII. pope. Clement III. pope. Death of Gilbert, bp. of London.

M°.C°.LXXXVII°.[2] Saladinus, Damascenis partibus vastatis, Terram Sanctam hostiliter ingreditur et vastat, Jerusalem capit et partes conterminas, prælatos exterminat, regem captivum abducit. Omnia nobilia oppida[3] occupat, præter Aschalonam, Tyrum et Crac, quod alio nomine Mons-Regalis dicitur, quod et Petra Deserti in antiquis scripturis dicitur. Mater ecclesia cum tota civitate[4] Cicestriæ comburitur. Ricardus, comes Pictaviæ, cruce signatur.

Proceedings of Saladin.

Chichester burnt.

I. 31 a. M°.C°.LXXXVIII°. Imperator Fretherieus, pacem cum jam inierat cum papa A[lexandro], cruce signatus est. Scribit Saladino. Saladinus rescribit. In Historiis Sancti Albani[5] reperies epistolas. Guido, rex Jerusalem, cum apud Damascum detentus

The emperor assumes the cross.

Release of Guy, king

[1] *vastare disponit . . . ubique timetur*] These lines, together with the whole of the year 1187, are written on a piece of vellum pasted over the original text, which has been partially obliterated, but which can be deciphered as follows: *miserabili depopulatione vastavit. Quid plura? Sanctam civitatem occupavit, Crucem Christi rapuit* [*et*] *asportavit. Et si quis reliquam rei seriem scire desiderat, librum intueatur Historiæ Jerosolimitanæ. Mortuo Urbano papa, successit Gregorius. Qui cum paucis temporibus sedisset, potionatus defunctus est; cui Clemens IIIus. subrogatur Obiit Gilebertus, Londoniensis episcopus. Eodem tempore Ricardus, comes Pictaviæ, cruce signatur. Hugo de Nunant factus est episcopus Cestrensis. Saladinus cepit Jerusalem et regem, Crucemque.* [What follows is written over an erasure.] *Imperator humiliatur papæ A*[*lexandro*]. *Saladinus Terram Sanctam depopulatur. Jerusalem et ejus rex cum sancta Cruce capitur. Obiit Galfridus comes, regis* [*Henrici*] *filius, et sepultus est Parisius. Ecclesia cum tota* [at first, *In ecclesia Sanctæ Mariæ*] *civitate Cicestriæ comburetur. Scribit F*[*rethericus*] *imperator Saladino. Rescribit Saladinus.* These events are chiefly entered under the years 1187 and 1188 in the Greater Chronicle, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 441–452.

[2] *M°.C°.LXXXVII°.*] M°.C°.LXXXVI°., MS.

[3] *oppida*] opida, MS.

[4] *civitate*] civi, MS.

[5] *In Historiis Sancti Albani*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, pp. 146, 147, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 447–452.

of Jerusalem. fuisset in vinculis, Saladinus sub tali conditione illum dimisit, ut, abjurato regno, mare quantocius proscriptus transiret.[1]

Hostilities of Philip of France and earl Richard against Henry. M°.C°.LXXXIX°. Post fœdus et concordiam inter reges Francorum et Anglorum, ruptis treugis, multi barones a rege Anglorum [recesserunt],[2] et Ricardo, comiti Pictaviæ, qui a rege patre recesserat, adhæserunt. Rex igitur Francorum Philippus, cum dicto comite Ricardo, congregatis copiis militaribus, intrantes terras regis Anglorum hostiliter, eas cœperunt devastare. Britones insuper a rege Anglorum avertentes, hostibus sunt adjuncti. Doluit igitur pater inconsolabiliter, quod in ipsum sua pignora surrexerunt.[3] Comes[4] Ricardus homagium fecit regi Francorum. Rex Francorum cum comite Ricardo cepit . . . castella regis Anglorum. Rex autem Anglorum Turonim fugiens cum paucis, ibi se in munitione suscepit. H. A. i. 459.
Rex Francorum ilico . . . suos reddita fuisset[5] ei turris . . . Ibid. i. 46
inde ad horam recedens, multa castella cepit in circuitu.
Peace is made. Turonis demum a rege Francorum capitur. Tunc rex Anglorum in arcto positus, pacem sibi turpissimam facere compulsus est; formam, quia flebilem, non hic scribo. Respice plenitudinem Historiarum.[6] Death of the emperor Frederic. Fretherieus, Romanorum imperator, iter arripit Jerosolimitanum, cum numeroso exercitu et forti; sed in parvo flumine periit submersus.[7] Rex autem Henricus nunquam postea in statu prosperitatis erectus, de colloquio
Death of Henry II. mœstus valde recessit. Et ad Chinonem . . . . positus, et summa Ibid. i. 4
cordis amaritudine, diem clausit extremum, cum regnasset annis xxx. et quatuor . . . et Pauli. Matildis . . . filia, audito Ibid. i. 4 466.
hoc infortunio,[8] præ dolore expiravit.

Richard comes to England. Defuncto rege magnifico Henrico, Ricardus dux navem ascendens, apud Portesmue applicuit, idus Augusti; concedens unicuique quod suum erat liberaliter. Deditque fratri suo . . . . confirmavit. Gaufridus, Elyensis [episcopus],[9] obiit intes- Ibid. ii.
tatus; unde . . . marcarum. Dux Ricardus Londonias venit, Ibid. ii.

---

[1] *Imperator . . . transiret*] The whole of this year is written over an erasure, the text of which was originally a continuation of 1186. Only the last line of this erasure is now legible, namely, *Respice in libro Historiarum hujus anni.*

[2] *recesserunt*] Supplied from the *Flores Historiarum.*

[3] *surrexerunt*] surexerunt, MS.

[4] *Comes*] From the commencement of the year to this word is written over an erasure.

[5] *fuisset*] Repeated superfluously.

[6] *plenitudinem Historiarum*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 151, and *Hist. Angl.*, i. 463.

[7] Frederic I. was drowned 10 June 1190. See note to *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 21.

[8] *infortunio*] infornio, MS.

[9] *episcopus*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

ubi, congregatis prælatis et magnatibus, cum maxima solempnitate coronatus est in regem Anglorum. Et quia exigit plenitudo historiæ officia quorumdam magnatum, qui in coronationibus habent implere de antiqua consuetudine, lectorem hujus libelli abbreviati[1] ad historiam transmitto prolixiorem,[2] quæ in Consuetudinibus[3] Scaccarii poterit reperiri.[4] Rex Ricardus dedit ecclesiam de Scardeburc pro salute animæ suæ, et omnium regum Angliæ, antecessorum suorum, Ordini Cisterciensi, ut monachi, ad capitulum venientes, sumptibus[5] illius redditus reficerentur. Rex Ricardus . . . apud Pipwelle, suorum fretus consilio, concessit . . . . . Elyensem. Hugo, Dunelmensis episcopus, data pecunia, nomen comitis sibi comparavit usurpando. Quo gladio . . . dixit a tergo astantibus, "Juvenem . . . veterano." Et prior Dunelmensis, "O quam manifeste jam exorbitat noster episcopus, transformatus a vestigiis sancti Cuthberti!" Obiit Willelmus, comes de Mandevilla. Missi sunt nuncii . . . . . confirmatum. Willelmus, rex Scotorum, fecit . . . . regi Anglorum decem milia marcarum. Rex Ricardus dedit . . . de Dorecestre. Quinta die Decembris apud Doveram transfretavit. Qui cum transisset per Cantuariam, ibi vigiliam, jejunium, orationem et votum, cum nobili fecit oblatione; promisitque certissime omnia, pro quibus dimicavit martir sanctus Thomas usque ad mortem, se fideliter adimpleturum. Et postquam ascendisset navem, promisit se facere unam capellam in Terra Sancta, si illuc prospere perveniret. Decima pars rerum mobilium per Angliam concessa est ad Terræ Sanctæ subventionem.

[Margin notes: His coronation. — Grant to the Cistercians. — f. 31 b. — f. ii. 10. — Hugh, bp. of Durham, purchases the title of earl. — f. ii. 11. — Death of William de Mandeville. — f. ii. 13. — King Richard's vow at Canterbury. — Tax in aid of the Holy Land.]

M°.C°.XC°. Post Natale habitum est [colloquium][6] in Normannia inter reges Francorum et Anglorum, ubi . . . Domino, in sincera arriperent dilectione. Baldewinus . . . iter arripuit memoratum. Willelmus, Elyensis episcopus, legationem impetravit. Fabricata est . . . martiris. Regina Alienora . . . faciens per plana Ytaliæ, tandem ad filium pervenit. Cum quo iiii^or. dierum moram faciens, licenciata tunc ad Angliam remeavit, relinquens . . . Navariæ, regi nupturam. Baldewinus, Can-

[Margin notes: A. ii. — d. ii. 15. — William, bishop of Ely, made legate.]

---

[1] *abbreviati*] abreviati, MS.

[2] *prolixiorem*] prolixorem, MS.

[3] *Consuetudinibus*] Consuetudibus, MS.

[4] The details of Richard's coronation do not appear either in the Red or Black books of the Exchequer, but they are given by Benedict Abbas, pp. 557–560, and copied by Hoveden, p. 656, ed. 1601, from whom Wendover somewhat abridges them, and thence repeated in the Greater Chronicle of Matt. Paris, ed. Wats, p. 153, and *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 6.

[5] *sumptibus*] suptibus, MS.

[6] *colloquium*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 14.

Arrival of English nobles at Tyre. Return of John, bp. of Norwich, from Rome. Proceedings of Richard in Sicily and Calabria.

tuariensis archiepiscopus, et quidam alii nobiles apud Tyrum applicuerunt. Johannes, Norwicensis episcopus, absolutus Romæ, reversus est; perniciosum exemplum præbens populo peregrinaturo. Rex Francorum . . . applicuit. Rex [vero][1] Ricardus superveniens, ingressum civitatis habere non potuit, Francis prohibentibus, qui dicebant quod victualia duobus regibus non sufficerent. Quod rex Ricardus audiens, misit ad majores civitatis, petens ut sibi victualia venderent, ne inedia deperiret ejus exercitus, qui Deo militavit. Cives igitur misserti, cum hæc audissent, tanto . . . recipere. At Franci contradicentes . . . conabantur. Rex autem Ricardus, ad iram provocatus . . . convolare. Qui illico valvas confringentes, hostibus invitis, aditum sibi violenter præpararunt, atque, prævio rege Ricardo, primoque intrante, omnes in fugam compulerunt. Quod cum audisset rex Francorum, maximam . . . mitigavit; sed . . . flamma iracundiæ ministrante . . . incrementum, ut sequens sermo declarabit. Verumtamen reges, inter se colloquium habentes, nullam prorsus de prædictis fecerunt mentionem. Rex autem Ricardus, fluvium transiens, cepit . . . . reginam. In crastino autem cepit aliud castrum, peregrinis rebelle et nocivum, quod Monasterium Grifonum dicebatur; ubi Grifones . . . repulsi sunt. Et accipiens castrum in suum, illud roboravit, et Mategrifun appellavit. Illi vero Grifones humiliati, postea de pace ei observanda jurantes, obsides tradiderunt. Concilium provinciale habitum est apud . . . legato. Diebus sub iisdem . . . . legavit, Huberto, Sarisbiriensi episcopo, executore constituto. Willelmus, Elyensis episcopus, Angliæ justiciarius et apostolicæ sedis legatus, fecit turrim Londoniarum fossato profundo circumcingi, et muro mirabili sed imperfecto. Et, super modum elatus, titulum in scriptis suis præposuit memoratum. Mille etiam . . . stipatus. Obierunt Willelmus . . . de Glanvilla.

Ibid. ii. 1
fol. 32 a
Ibid. ii. 1
Ibid. ii.
Tower of London fortified.
Ibid. ii.

M°.C°.XCI°. Obierunt apud Achon, post mortem Cantuariensis archiepiscopi B[aldewini], in obsidione Achon, viri nobiles . . . . alii multi, quorum nomina scripta in libro vitæ penitus ignoramus. Quarto kalendas Aprilis rex . . . ascendit, vela[2] versus Achon dirigendo.[3] Rex vero Ricardus . . . habuit secum xiii. buzas, cum velis triplicibus, et centum . . . triremes[4] galeas bene communitas. Qui circa . . . veniens insulam, decursis . . . applicuit. Cursac autem . . . se usurpative

H. A. ii. 20.
29 March.
Ibid. ii.

[1] *vero*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *vela*] Repeated erroneously after *Achon.*

[3] *dirigendo*] dirigenda, MS., but the last letter afterwards erased.

[4] *triremes*] trieres, MS.

præ superbia sua imperatorem nominari fecit,[1] in militari
32 *b*. magna et forti magnitudine portum . . . homines ceperat et . . . occiderat. Unde rex . . . . ditioni;[2] ipsumque Cursac, quia ipsum superbum nimis invenit, argenteis compedibus magni ponderis jussit mancipari. Tandem ibi filiam regis Navariæ, Berengariam, desponsavit. Papa Celestinus . . . filium Fretherici. Comes Flandrensis Philippus obiit in Terra Sancta. Rex Ricardus unam maximam navem, omnibus aliis incomparabilem, cum maxima victualium copia cepit,[3] ad succursum Achonensium destinatam. Tandem rex Ricardus cum maxima mundi gloria apud Achon applicuit; et, applicatis utriusque regis machinis, non est concessa requies inclusis. Death of Philip, count of Flanders. Richard lands at Acre.
ii. 24. Qui tandem, inito . . . . numeraret.[4] Sic igitur civitas nobilis, quæ . . . . regibus iiii°. idus Julii feliciter est mancipata. Veniente . . . mancipatis. Subjugata igitur tam nobili civitate, rex Francorum, dolens quod omnia regi Anglorum Ricardo ascribebantur, se ad repatriandum præparavit, prætendens ærarii inopiam et defectum. Promisit igitur rex Ricardus promta liberalitate regi Francorum, se communicaturum . . . victualibus, equis . . . Terra Sancta disperderent. Quod rex Francorum facere præcise renuebat. Dimisit tamen ibi ducem Burgundiæ, cum mille armatis, quasi in adjutorium regis Ricardi, proditorem nequissimum, quem etiam instruxit de proditione. Cum autem recessisset rex Francorum, rex Ricardus civitates maritimas indefessus obsedit et cepit. Quod cum videntes infideles perceperunt, ne quod civibus Achonensibus fecerat eis quoque faceret metuentes, diffidentesque de Saladini subventione, fugerunt qui in Caifa, Cesarea, Asur, Jopen, 12 July. The king of France returns home. Successes of Richard.
ii. 27. Gaza, et Aschalona fuerant habitantes. Et sic rex . . . Jopen, repulso . . . suo, victoriam reportavit gloriosam. Dedit igitur Henrico . . . . de Monteferrato. Robertus, Lincolniensis canonicus, fit episcopus Wigorniensis. Rothomagensis archiepiscopus summus regni Angliæ dispositor constituitur. Cancellarius, in muliebri veste transfiguratus, in portu maris transfretaturus deprehenditur, et pro meritis male ac turpiter Various events.
ii. 29. tractatur. Obiit Clemens . . . Baptistæ. Hugo de Nunant . . .
33 *a*. seculares.

M°.C°.XCII°. Obiit Reginaldus, Cantuariensis electus sive postulatus. Rex Francorum, a peregrinatione rediens, Parisius solempni processione receptus est. Rex Ricardus Darum cepit. Et post hanc victoriam, recedens dux Burgundiæ, cui dederat Death of Reginald, abp. elect. Capture of Darum.

---

[1] *fecit*] At first written *facit* in MS.
[2] *ditioni*] On an erasure.
[3] *cepit*] Repeated erroneously after *destinatam*.
[4] *numeraret*] numerarent, MS.

. . . . hostes Christi, navem clanculo ascendit et subito recessit. H. A. ii. 29.
Cito post quidam Bedewini, obligati regi Ricardo, nunciaverunt maximam . . . . maxime victualibus, scilicet frumento, Ibid. ii. 30
. . . et consimilibus. Quae omnes cum suis caravanis[1] rex Ricardus cepit. Ipsis diebus, cum his . . . Austriae et cujusdam armigeri Normanni, et querimonia ad aures regis commoti ex dictis Normannorum reboantium, rex praecipitanter praecepit, ut vexillum ducis in cloacam projiceretur.[2] Et sic privatus est dux hospitio, probris Normannorum lacessitus. Dux igitur cito postea iratus et tristis, reposita super hiis Deo querimonia, ad propria remeavit. Quidam heremita sanctus revelavit regi Ricardo, Jerusalem tunc non fore capiendam; de cujus sanctitate et dicti veritate satis per signa consequentia certificabatur, sed hoc in Historiarum plenitudine[3] prolixius enucleatur. Dux Burgundiae, mente alienatus, sese discerpens quasi in manifestam ultionem, obiit; qui in necessitate summa regi Ricardo constituto noluit suffragari. Rex enim dum obsessis apud Jopen festinavit subvenire, Saladinus interim, crebris insultibus urbe capta, captos jussit perimi, quinque tantum de praestantioribus reservatis; sed ipsi strenuissimi valde evadentes, sese in turrim receperunt.[4] Rex autem, quasi fulgur superveniens, seipsum et paucis, qui cum eo venerant consequentibus sed strenuissimis, prosiliens de navi in medios hostes, projecit, et prorumpens, tanquam sui prodigus, hinc inde hostes multos trucidavit. Quod videntes qui in turri erant, exeuntes animosius regi festinabant auxiliari. Exercitus autem Saladini, quem ipse Saladinus exhortator sedulus sequebatur, videns animositatem regis et suorum, quorum gladii jam sanguine inebriabantur, fugerunt ocius versus Ramulam, Salahadino [in curru][5] rapido currente. In crastino autem nunciatum . . . paucissimo exercitu illuc advenisse; sed . . . . Ibid. ii.
habuisse. Qui tamen, propter audacem eorum impetum, multa milia milium ibi fuisse credebantur. Puduit igitur et poeni- fol. 33
tuit ipsum Saladinum a campo praelii recessisse sine victoria, cum numerus sui exercitus tunc fuisset infinitus, et regis Ricardi[6] nullus reputatus. Unde nimio iracundiae furore succensus, lxii. milia imperiali . . . regem Ricardum vivum . . . nocte quiescente . . . . intrepidus cohortatur. Nec mora . . Ibid. ii.
. . . prosternunt. Infideles igitur, audaciam Christianorum considerantes, terga fugiendo certatim dederunt. Exercitus enim

Affront offered to the duke of Austria.

Death of the duke of Burgundy.

Proceedings at Joppa.

---

[1] *caravanis*] carvanis, MS.
[2] *projiceretur*] proiceretur, MS.
[3] *in Historiarum plenitudine*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 169, and *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 35.
[4] *receperunt*] ceperunt, MS.
[5] *in curru*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 35.
[6] *regis Ricardi*] Ricardi regis MS., but marked for transposition.

generalis ab Achon veniens, cui nunciabatur casus iste, imminebat,[1] qui faciem terræ cooperuit. Quod cum vidisset Saladinus, etsi invitus, Deum glorificavit Christianorum, adjungens, quod inter omnes mundi principes fuit rex Anglorum Ricardus admiratione dignissimus, si sui corporis prodigus non extitisset. Considerans autem rex Ricardus, se a rege Francorum derelictum, et thesaurum suum admodum minui, hostiumque diatim numerum augmentari,[2] audivit,[3] quod frater ejus Johannes supplantationem[4] [ejus][5] moliebatur, et quod ex alia parte rex Francorum sibi nocumenta machinabatur, disponit repatriare. Triennalibus treugis[6] constitutis, rex navem ascendit, constructa tamen prius capella in honorem sancti Thomæ martiris. In proximo autem obiit Saladinus, et inter filios suos ortum est prœlium cruentissimum et intestinum. Unde, si rex Ricardus moram continuasset, omnia procul dubio in tota terra orientis sibi subjugasset. Post multa vero maris et terrarum pericula, tandem rex Ricardus per emptores suos, linguam patriæ ignorantes, in Austria captus est. Suam igitur probitatem rex videns non prævalere,

Saladin's praise of Richard.

Death of Saladin.

Capture of Richard in Austria.

id. ii. 40. cessit captioni. Duci igitur . . . adduxit, et deinde . . . custodiendum. Savaricus electus est in episcopum Bathoniensem.[7]

Savaric bishop of Bath.

. A. ii. l. M°.C°.XCIII°. Rex Ricardus . . . donec ipsum vendidisset[8] imperatori . . . . custodiri. Imperator autem in multis eum graviter accusavit.[9] Sed hæc omnia in Historiis[10] reperiuntur. Tandem pro redemptione sua centum quadraginta milia librarum imperatori numeravit, ad pondus Coloniensium; pro qua redemptione omnes episcopi, clerici, comites et barones, abbatiæ sive prioratus, quartam partem redditunm suorum ad regis redemptionem contulerunt. Insuper ad hoc calices Angliæ sunt collati. Warinus vero, abbas Sancti Albani, omnes suæ ecclesiæ et diocesis de suo adquietavit, centum marcas regiis

Ransom of Richard.

ol. 34 a. ministris persolvendo. Nondum adhuc censu persoluto, Jo-

---

[1] *imminebat*] iminebat, MS.

[2] *augmentari*] aucmentari, MS.

[3] *audivit*] The construction of the sentence would perhaps require us to read *audiensque*.

[4] *supplantationem*] supplacionem, MS.

[5] *ejus*] Supplied to complete the sense.

[6] *treugis*] Before this word something seems wanting, perhaps *igitur*.

[7] *Bathoniensem*] Bothoniensem, MS.

[8] *vendidisset*] After this word *illum* is inserted superfluously, unless we read *ipse* for *ipsum*.

[9] *accusavit*] acusavit, MS.

[10] *in Historiis*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 173, and *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 42.

Earl John's traitorous attempts frustrated.

hannes comes, frater regis Ricardi, multas in Anglia occupavit munitiones, fœdusque cum rege[1] Francorum iniit. Dicebat enim periculum esse magnum, regnum omne esse sine rege, sicut navem esse sine gubernaculo. Sed Anglorum fidelitas, licet depauperatorum, ei in faciem contradixit. Rex

Invasion of Normandy by Philip.

Francorum sui, quod fecerat, immemor juramenti et fidei, Normanniam hostiliter invadit, et tandem Rothomagum occupasset, nisi fidelium regis Anglorum[2] retroire cogeretur. Rex Francorum . . . Ingelburgam accepit in uxorem. Quam Ibid. ii. 4 ilico repudians, reclusit inter sanctimoniales, Dacosque . . .

Hubert Walter made abp. of Canterbury.

repatriare. Hubertus Walteri[3] in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem promovetur, qui episcopus fuerat Saresbiriensis. Cujus industriæ totius . . . administratio. Hic quoque ambitiosos . . . potenter refrænavit.

Richard returns to England.

M°.C°.XCIIII°. Rex Ricardus, jam maxima suæ redemptionis parte soluta, obsidibus datis pro residuo, liber permissus est repatriare. Qui, matre sua A[lienora] comitante, beatum Thomam devotus adiens, gratias Deo et martiri egit de liberatione sua. Fuerat enim tempus, quo credidit in frusta pro injuria, quam duci Austriæ præpropere in Terra Sancta fecerat, detruncari. Deinde Londonias veniens, solempni proces-

Siege of Nottingham castle.

sione receptus est. Indeque Notingham[4] properabat, eos[5] qui castro erant expugnaturus. Inclusi autem, perpendentes se [non][6] posse resistere, se regi præsentaverunt, quos secundum merita graviter punivit. Inter regem autem et comitem J[ohannem], jam humiliatum, intermeantibus amicis, pax est

Proceedings in Normandy.

reformata. Tunc autem temporis rex Ricardus audiens quod rex Francorum Vernolium, subactis aliquibus aliis castris, obsidione vallasset, illuc concito advolavit.[7] Franci autem, nolentes dubia Martis fata experiri, ab obsidione recesserunt.

Herbert, bp. of Salisbury.

Herbertus, cognomento Pauper, fit episcopus Saresbiriensis. Rex Ricardus castrum de Luches cepit. Venitque tunc in auxilium ejusdem regis R[icardi] filius regis Navariæ, exercitum ducens copiosum, cum quingentis[8] balistariis. Rex Francorum Philippus, fines Turoniæ devastans, ibi tutus fixit tentoria; sed cum cognovisset[9] regem Ricardum in furore magno

---

[1] *rege*] At first written *regis*, but *is* erased, and corr. in marg.

[2] *Anglorum*] On an erasure, and so corr. in marg. A noun seems here to be wanting, perhaps *probitate*.

[3] *Walteri*] Walterus, MS.

[4] *Notingham*] Notigham, MS.

[5] *eos*] suos, MS. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*

[6] *non*] Omitted in MS.

[7] *advolavit*] avolavit, MS.

[8] *quingentis*] quinquaginta, *Hist. Angl.* ii. 49.

[9] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

adventare, tentoriis festinanter summo mane avulsis, aufugit. Superveniens autem rex, multa quæ festinantes reliquerant in proprium vendicavit. Deinde omnes adversariorum suorum munitiones et terras sine obice contradictionis occupans, usque ad Crucem-Karoli formidabilis habebatur, nec erat qui eidem

H. A. ii. 51. rebellis inveniretur. Henricus Marescallus . . . Exoniensis. Treugæ captæ sunt inter reges. Alexius quidam, . . . innumerabili armatorum copia congregata, Cursac, tunc imperatorem Constantinopolitanum, cepit hostiliter aggressum;[1] et excæcatum et ementulatum perpetuo carceri mancipavit. Rex Francorum sollempnes nuncios ad regem Ricardum destinans petivit, ut absque majori dampno populorum utriusque regni,

The emperor of Constantinople imprisoned.

fol. 34 *b.* pugna quinque virorum electorum utrobique lis dirimeretur.[2]

Ibid. ii. 50. Placuit autem hæc provisio regi . . . . recusavit.

M°.C°.XCV°. Rex Ricardus per nuncios sollempnes[3] papæ destinatos gravem querimoniam de duce [Austriæ][4] reposuit, quod ipsum Deo militantem et de peregrinatione sua tam laboriosa redeuntem cepit, et indecenter afflixit, imperatorique, ac si bos esset vel asinus, vendidit, per quod regnum depauperare cogebatur; ita quod gravior erat illi, quam si ipse Saladinus paganissimus cepisset, quod et ipse Saladinus ante mortem protestatus est. Porro omnes peregrinantes ceperat ecclesia ineundo et redeundo, et maxime eos qui redire proposuerant, usque ad triennium, sub pœna excommunicationis,

Richard complains to the pope of the duke of Austria.

H. A. ii. 53. protegendos. Papa igitur . . . . . qui universali ecclesiæ . . . facere renuisset, papa cum cunctis cardinalibus . . . . denunciatis, dux, omnibus spretis, humiliari recusavit. Percussa est . . . . . derivatus. Die vero sancti Stephani, dum dux pergeret spaciatum, ejus equus offensus, tibiam ejus cum pede ad arborem graviter contrivit. Unde cito post, igne ibidem percussus infernali, cum non posset cruciatum tolerare, pedem dolabro fecit amputari, et sic miseram animam exhalavit.

26 Dec. Death of the duke, occasioned by an accident.

Ibid. ii. 54. Imperator Henricus subjugavit . . . . . debebatur. Rex de Marroc . . . . coegerat retroire. Omnes igitur increduli pavore perculsi, ad propria certatim sunt reversi. Obiit Garinus, abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, cui successit magister Johannes de Cella. Papa Celestinus . . . legatum. Admonetur

fol. 35 *a.* [rex][5] Francorum resumere[6] uxorem suam, auctoritate apo-

Ibid. ii. 56. stolica. Procurante rege . . . . absolutionem.

Death of abbat Warin. John de Cella succeeds.

M°.C°.XCVI°. Facta est pacis conventio salubris inter reges. Sed malignorum sibilis rex Francorum circumventus cœpit

War renewed between

---

[1] *aggressum*] agressum, MS.
[2] *dirimeretur*] diremeretur, MS.
[3] *sollempnes*] solempnos, MS.
[4] *Austriæ*] Omitted in MS.
[5] *rex*] Omitted in MS.
[6] *resumere*] rusumere, MS.

Philip and Richard. William with the Beard is hung. Capture of the bp. of Beauvais. Vision of a monk of Evesham.

pœnitere, et resilire a pactis prælocutis. Unde rex Francorum cepit castrum de Alba-marla, et alia castra. Quod rex Ricardus videns, reddit ei talionem. Willelmus, cognomento cum Barba, pro piissima causa Londoniis est suspensus; unde cum causa martirem faciat non pœna, judicio piorum inter martires est computandus. Captus est a Markedeo[1] et Martino Algeis episcopus Belvacensis, et ejus archidiaconus, cum suis complicibus, et regi Ricardo præsentati; erant enim regi valde nocivi et dampnosi. Unde rex jussit eos[2] armatos[3] incarcerari, donec petitione papæ pecunia fuissent redempti.[4] Eodem tempore Henricus . . . . eminentiori prospiciens, in plateam . . . H. A. ii.
expiravit; cui successit Johannes de Bresnes, miles illustrissi- 61.
mus. Facta est visio cuidam monacho de Evesham mirabilis; quam qui videre desiderat, quærat Historiam.[5]

Robert bp. of Bangor. Reform of the measures.

M°.C°.XCVII°. Quidam sanctus et bene literatus prædicator, Fulco nomine . . . . . partes infecerat Cisalpinas. Consilio autem H. A. ii.
ipsius missus est in Angliam ad prædicandum . . . exerceri,[6] 62.
delevit. Robertus de Salopesbire consecratus est in episcopum Bangorensem. Rectificatæ sunt mensuræ vini, celiæ,[7] et pannorum. Statutum est insuper, ne quis mercator pannos rubeos prætendat seldæ suæ; nec tinctura fiat,[8] nisi solummodo nigra,[9] in regno, nisi . . . burgis. Ibid. ii.

Order of the Jacobites.

M°.C°.XCVIII°. Procurante rege Ricardo, Otto . . . . . sedit cum ea H. A. ii
. . . coronata. Sedente et prosperante papa Innocentio Tertio, 65.
novum genus Ordinis, videlicet prædicatorum, eodem papa favente, exortum est; qui jam Jacobitæ appellantur.[10] Qui vitam apostolicam . . . . . . quærentibus ædificaverat, quæ . . . Jacobitæ Ibid. ii.
usque hodie nomen sortiuntur. Isti . . . aurum vel argentum, vel etiam aliud proprium non habentes, ibant per civitates et fol. 35
vicos verbum . . . . habitantes in urbibus . . . . erogabant. Et ne scripturarum ignari redarguerentur, scolas congregarunt, in quibus convenienter legentes et disputantes,[11] fidei tenorem roborarunt, et moribus illustrarunt. Palamque in populo prædicantes, audientes omnes moribus informarunt. Ibant autem

---

[1] *Markedeo*] Markede, MS. In B. C. these men are spoken of as "Markadeus, Algais, et Lupescarus, natione Provinciales."

[2] *eos*] At first written *rei*, but afterwards erased, and corr. in marg.

[3] *armatos*] armotos, MS.

[4] *redempti*] redepti, MS.

[5] *Historiam*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, pp. 182–189.

[6] *exerceri*] excerceri, MS.

[7] *celiæ*] celi, MS.

[8] *fiat*] Written *fuit*, and then partly erased.

[9] *nigra*] nigri, MS.

[10] *appellantur*] apellantur, MS.

[11] *disputantes*] dispitantes, MS.

calciati in præparatione evangelii,[1] edulio et tecto contenti
populari. Unde plus operibus quam sermonibus populum
docuerunt; dum, divitiis contemptis, spontaneæ paupertati
literati eleganter et beneficiati adhærerent. Et sic fructum
fecerunt in Dei ecclesia multiplicem, multorum errores et
diversas hæreses extirpantes. Papa præcepit, ut, expulsis cle-
ricis secularibus, qui jam dissolute et enormiter vivebant
apud Coventre, monachi, qui per episcopum Hugonem illius
loci expulsi[2] fuerant, restituerentur; et, episcopo eodem de-
functo, substitutus est[3] Joibertus. Et per idem tempus, Domi-
nica qua cantatur "Lætare Jerusalem," Eustachius factus est
episcopus Elyensis, Gaufridus Coventrensis. Surrexit con-
ii. 68. tentio . . . . cautelam, apud Lambeth, ubi proposuit[4] monachos
Cantuarienses instituere. Unde querimonia ad papam Inno-
centium III. ascendente, scripsit papa [regi][5] Ricardo, ut
ipsum archiepiscopum a justiciaria amoveret, cum non liceat
episcopis negotiis secularibus implicari; propositum autem
ejus de prædictis[6] remansit, auctoritate apostolica. Quo amoto,
rex Galfridum filium-Petri loco ejus subrogavit. Rege Ricardo
in partibus transmarinis prœliis intendente, Walenses omnes
insurgentes sub innumerabili multitudine, terram Willelmi de
Brause vastantes, castrum Matildis obsederunt; præerat autem
eis Wenunwen. Quibus, collecto copioso exercitu, occurrit
Petri filius Galfridus, justiciarius, et, contrita eorum fortitu-
dine, ipsos devictos et multa cæde cruentatos coegit retroire.
ii. 71 Occisi autem referuntur ex Walensibus tria . . . vulneratis.
Facto congressu inter reges Francorum et Anglorum inter
Games et Vernonem, rex . . . . antequam castrum ingredi . . .
ii. 72. insecutus, xx. milites . . . dignabantur, cepit occupatos, quia
in fuga ultimi extiterunt, et servientes lx. Obiit Ricardus de
Lucy,[7] episcopus Londoniensis.[8] Rex R[icardus], omnibus con-
36 a. gregatis . . . . . et multis communiis, profectus est . . . audisset
rex Ricardus . . . cum eo prœlium commisit. In quo con-
gressu rex . . . coactus ad Gisortium scilicet castellum aufu-
git. Et cum pontem fugiendo ascendisset, confractus . . . . .

Restoration of the monks at Coventry.

8 March. Succession of prelates.

Geoffrey Fitz-Peter made justiciary.

Revolt of the Welsh.

Death of Richard, bishop of London.

[1] *evangelii*] ewangelii, MS.

[2] *expulsi*] Originally written *epm̄ si*, and *epm* afterwards erased. It would be better to read, *per Hugonem, illius loci episcopum*.

[3] *substitutus est*] This expression is here very equivocal. Joibert was appointed Prior of the convent. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 67.

[4] *proposuit*] prosuit, MS.

[5] *regi*] Omitted in MS.

[6] *de prædictis*] de pᵃdcīs, MS.

[7] *de Lucy*] This is a mistake. His name was Richard Fitz-Nigel. See Fasti, ii. 283.

[8] *Londoniensis*] Lincolniensis, MS., erroneously, and so in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 72.

volutatus, et aqua subintrante ponderosus ridiculose . . . ereptus. Interea acies quædam electissima de Francis, ut . . . reversa de fronte . . . sui exemptione mortis . . . se exponendo. Tunc bellum utrobique factum est acerrimum, nec furor . . . rex R[icardus] aciem illam sub captione conclusit. In quo conflictu cruentissimo rex . . . . . Francorum. Hiis ita . . . Anglorum convictoribus suis pretiosa distribuit donativa. Rex Francorum videns vires regis R[icardi] diatim crescere, misit ad summum pontificem secretos nuncios, significans[1] ei, quod libenter componeret cum rege R[icardo], ne negotium Crucis amplius impediretur. Geminata igitur papali cum regali petitione, rex Ricardus treugas concessit quinquennes, ea intentione et conditione, ut papa promotioni Othonis diligenter intenderet et favorabiliter. Ad quod etiam expediendum cepit rex R[icardus] de unaquaque . . . auxilio. Finxitque se suum[2] sigillum [amisisse][3] in mari; unde, facto novo sigillo, oportuit, ut dicebat et volebat, omnes cartas priori sigillo sigillatas renovare, et eas novo sigillo, cassato veteri, remunire. Unde non minimum turpi commento[4] tali sibi thesaurum[5] adquisivit. Hoc autem non a suo pectore emanavit, sed a sibilis, ut dicitur, Galfridi, justiciarii sui, emanavit.

Ibid. ii. 7

Truce made between England and France.

Ibid. ii.

A new great seal made, and the charters previously granted re-sealed.

M°.C°.XCIX°. Hubertus . . . suus [fundaverat][6] auctoritate papali, volens nolens complanavit. Statutis, ut . . . . trucidavit. Tandem ad Aquitannicum tractum veniens, in territorio . . . a Petro Basilii telo venenato . . . . apposita. Diebus autem xii. . . . . mancipavit. Cum autem, aggravescente malo, mortem sensisset appropinquare,[7] confessione . . . . præcepit.[8] Corpus autem suum ecclesiæ Fontis-Ebraudi, ad pedes patris sui, cujus proditorem se fuisse cum lacrimis confitebatur, jussit sepeliri.[9] Ecclesiæ autem Rothomagensi, quia Normanniam præcordialiter diligebat, cor suum inexpugnabile[10] delegavit. Apud vero castrum . . . munere relinquens Pictavensibus.

H. A. ii. 75.

Ibid. ii.

fol. 36

Testamentary dispositions of Richard, and death.

---

[1] *significans*] signifans, MS.

[2] *suum*] Repeated superfluously after *sigillum*.

[3] *amisisse*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[4] *commento*] comento, MS.

[5] *thesaurum*] thesarum, MS.

[6] *fundaverat*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[7] *appropinquare*] approquintare, MS., but *quinta* afterwards erased.

[8] In the margin is drawn the shield of Richard, with a cross-bow below it, both reversed.

[9] *sepeliri*] sepiliri, MS.

[10] *inexpugnabile*] inexpungnabile, MS.

Septimo[1] igitur idus Aprilis rex spiritum exhalavit.[2] De cujus morte et sepultura . . . modum; 7 April.

. ii. 77. "Pictavis exta . . . . tanta ruina."
"In Chaluz . . . . lucis adeptæ."
"Christe, tui . . . . æra Crucis."

. ii. 78. Victoriosissimo[3] . . . . justiciario. Denunciatumque regi Scotorum, ut veniret in Angliam, eidem J[ohanni] quod jus dictaret perfacturus. Ortum autem est murmur inter magnates. Quidam enim adhæserunt Arthuro, quidam Johanni. Unde comes J[ohannes] cum Alienora, matre ejus, multos rebelles eis contriverunt. Veniens autem comes Rothomagum, gladio ducatus ibidem accinctus est, per manum Walteri, Rothomagensis archiepiscopi. Veniensque in Angliam Londoniis coronandus, occurrentibus regni magnatibus properavit; et coronatus est ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi H[uberto]. In
. ii. 80. qua coronatione triplici . . . . . incursu opprimentium indempnem . . . regno exerceret.[4] Deinde adjuratus . . . . adimplere. Et sic archiepiscopus, eo omnia hæc jurante, manu[5] extenta ad corpus Domini et evangelia,[6] et deinde ad pectus, capiti ejus coronam apponens, unxit[7] eum in regem. Deinde veniens in Normanniam, multorum magnatum[8] ibi corda sibi conciliavit.
. 37 a. Habitumque [est][9] colloquium inter reges, et statutæ . . . beatæ
. ii. 81. Virginis, ut interim de pace tractarent. Venerunt interea . . . Flandrensis et multi . . . pepigerunt cum eo fœdus, lucris inhiantes. Quod et rex Francorum moleste tulit. Eodem tem-
. ii. 82. pore rex . . . militari; et fecit Arthurus . . . . . perquirenda. Convenerunt reges ad colloquium, sed discordes discesserunt. Recedente autem in hunc modum rege Francorum, Willelmus de Rupibus callide . . . cum rege Anglorum, et Arthurus
. ii. 83. denuo . . . recessit. Eodem tempore Otho,[10] Romam veniens, ad imperium est promotus. Francia est interdicta. Et, ne eandem pœnam subiret,[11] episcopus Belvacensis cum suis, qui jam per biennium in custodia detinebatur, est abire permissus, graviter tamen redemptus.

Proceedings of John to secure the throne.

His coronation.

John goes to Normandy.

Otho IV. emperor. Interdict in France. The bp. of Beauvais released.

[M°.CC°.][12] Alienora regina missa est in Hispaniam ad Andefulsum, regem Castellæ, [propter][13] neptem regis J[ohannis]

Treaty for the marriage of

---

[1] *Septimo*] A mistake for *Octavo*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 77.

[2] *exhalavit*] exalavit, MS.

[3] In the margin is drawn the shield of John, erect.

[4] *exerceret*] excerceret, MS.

[5] *manu*] Repeated after *evangelia*.

[6] *evangelia*] ewangelia, MS.

[7] *unxit*] uncxit, MS.

[8] *magnatum*] Repeated after *corda*, on an erasure.

[9] *est*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 81.

[10] *Otho*] Otto, MS.

[11] *subiret*] *scil.* rex Anglorum.

[12] The date of the year is omitted in the MS.

[13] *propter*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 85.

A.D. 1200. Lodouuico, filio regis, maritandam, quia sic inter eos convenit. Et sic fœdus inter eos firmatum est. Rex Anglorum, in Angliam transfretans, cepit . . . solidos; et cito post remeavit in Normanniam. Ludowicus, filius regis Francorum, duxit Blanchiam, filiam regis Hispaniæ, in uxorem. Rex Francorum reddidit regi Anglorum[1] multas civitates, castella et terras Normanniæ. Rex Johannes venit in Angliam, qui, repudiata priore uxore, jam in uxorem duxerat Ysabellam . . . . Marchiæ. Coronata est igitur Ysabella, et portaverunt coronam rex et regina Londoniis solempniter. Hugo, Lincolniensis episcopus, debita naturæ persolvit. Qui propter vitæ eminentiam, et virtutum ac signorum claritatem, sanctorum cathalogo est annumeratus. Egidius de Brausia consecratus est in episcopum Herefordensem; Maugerus, in Wigorniensem; Johannes de Grai, in Norwicensem. Apparuerunt de nocte . . . . . multis stellis.

[Margin: John's niece to Louis of France. Cities in Normandy restored. Marriage of John to Isabel of Angoulême. *Sanctus H[ugo] episcopus migra[vit ad Dominum].* Succession of prelates.]
[Margin right: Ibid. ii. 8 — Ibid. ii. 8 — Ibid. ii. 8]

M°.CC°.I°. Rex Johannes et regina Ysabella denuo coronam portarunt insimul solempniter, sicut antea fecerant Londoniis, Cantuariæ, præsente archiepiscopo H[uberto]; dimissa Hawisa[2] palam, priore sponsa sua, filia comitis Gloverniæ, propter sanguinitatem. Sed hæc alibi. Eodem anno, die videlicet Ascensionis, exiit edictum regale, ut omnes . . . . transfretandum, ad Pentecosten. Et tunc rex transfretavit, cum regina. Deinde convenerunt ad colloquium reges. Videns autem rex Francorum robur adversantium, consensit ut cum rege Anglorum pacificaretur. Et tunc rex Anglorum J[ohannes] venit cum rege Francorum Parisius. Rex Anglorum fecit homagium regi Francorum. Lodowicus desponsavit Blanchiam. Francia fuit tunc interdicta. Abbas de Flai floruit in [Gallia].[3] Ad instantiam Innocentii III. papæ concessa quadragesima pars reddituum omnium ecclesiarum, ad subventionem Terræ Sanctæ. Fulco prædicator floruit in Gallia.

[Margin: Coronation of John and his queen at Canterbury. 3 May. They go to Normandy. Peace made with France. Tax in aid of the Holy Land.]
[Margin right: H. A. ii. 90. — fol. 37 *b.*]

M°.CC°.II°. Rex Anglorum J[ohannes] celebravit Natale apud Argentomium. Et in Quadragesima . . . reges juxta castellum de Guletun; ubi rex Francorum oblitus prius actorum, mortali . . . . quæ rex Anglorum præcise abnegavit. Itaque . . . haberet, rex Francorum . . . . subvertit. Et ita progrediens, omnia quasi fulgurans dissipavit. Reversusque Parisius . . . ducentos, qui cum . . . ut eam sibi subjugaret. Nunciatumque eis

[Margin: John at Argentan.]
[Margin right: H. A. ii. 92.]

---

[1] *regi Anglorum*] Repeated superfluously after *Normanniæ.*

[2] *Hawisa*] A mistake for *Isabella.* See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 86.

[3] *Gallia*] Cut off by the binder.

The lines from *Rex Anglorum fecit* to *in Gallia* have been added subsequently by Matthew Paris, and contain partly a repetition of events noticed under the previous year.

. . . dicitur, commorari. Et illuc omnes properarunt castrum vallantes, et obsesso infatigabiliter infestantes, castrum, quod[1] erat immunitum, ad deditionem [compulerunt].[2] Quod cum audisset rex J[ohannes], ocius advolat[3] illuc; Franci autem imperterriti[4] illi obviam pugnaturi[5] occurrunt. Factus est igitur conflictus acerrimus, sed virtute Anglorum cito terminatus. Capti sunt ibi milites ducenti; Arthurus et omnes qui ibidem erant, Pictavenses et Andegavenses.[6] Ligatos igitur captivos misit in Normanniam vel Angliam; Arthurum vero misit ad Falesiam tutius custodiendum. Elapso igitur aliquanto tempore, Arthurus evanuit. Verumtamen ab aliquibus . . . submersus est. Franci vero . . . asserunt, quod præcepto regis J[ohannis] vel etiam manibus fuerat interemptus. Per malitiam tamen obloquentium non mediocriter super hoc rex Anglorum J[ohannes] extitit diffamatus.

A.D. 1202. Proceedings in Normandy. Victory gained by John. Death of Arthur. H. A. ii. 95.

M°.CC°.III°. Rex Anglorum J[ohannes] Natale Domini apud Cadomum celebravit; ubi . . . cotidie, sompnos protrahens matutinales. Rex interim Francorum, pervigil, cepit . . . . fortiora sibi reservavit. Venientibus . . . suorum, præcipue Anglorum, qui ob hoc confundebantur, nunciis, rex respondit Johannes, "Sinite . . . ille temere per plures dies occupavit; una die recuperabo." Nobiles igitur, cum non possent aliud responsum reportare, impetrata licentia, ad propria dolentes et indignantes remearunt. Unde rex . . . excelsiora, et cœptis insistebat vigilantius. Quid plura? Captis nobilioribus castris Normanniæ, rex J[ohannes] in Angliam inglorius remeavit, ab omnibus, et tunc præcipue a Normannis, discrimini patentibus, derisus et redargutus. Quo cum pervenisset, desævit in Anglos, asserendo accusans eos, quod ipsum in articulo[7] deseruissent constitutum. Omnia regi Francorum, rege J[ohanno] absente, patuerunt leviter capienda. Willelmus, ecclesiæ Lincolniensis præcentor, factus est episcopus ejusdem ecclesiæ.

John at Caen. H. A. ii. 96. fol. 38 a. Ibid. ii. 97. John returns to England. William bishop of Lincoln.

M°.CC°.IIII°. Rex J[ohannes] Natale Domini celebravit Cantuariæ, H[uberto] archiepiscopo omnia necessaria ministrante. In crastino vero Circumcisionis, convenientibus Angliæ mag-

John at Canterbury. 2 Jan.

[1] *quod*] ad quod, MS.

[2] *compulerunt*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 93.

[3] *advolat*] avolat, MS.

[4] *imperterriti*] ei imperterriti, MS.

[5] *pugnaturi*] pungnaturi, MS.

[6] *Andegavenses*] Angegavenses, MS.

[7] *in articulo*] A phrase similar to *in arcto*, and used elsewhere. See *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 179.

A.D. 1204. natibus, concessa . . . quolibet scutico,[1] duæ marcæ et dimidia. H. A. ii. 100.
Nec ecclesiæ personæ sine promissione recesserunt. Illo tempore Rothomagum et omnes fines contermini in ditionem regis Francorum cesserunt. Simon de Welles factus est episcopus Cicestrensis. Godefridus, Wintoniensis, diem clausit extremum; cui successit Petrus de Rupibus. Baldewinus . . . Constantinopolitanus. Hoc quoque . . . Alienora in abbatia . . . . evangelistæ.[2] Ibid. ii. 102.

Rouen submits to the king of France. Succession of prelates.

M°.CC°.V°. Rex Johannes . . . per unum diem. Mense autem Januarii . . . . . vendebatur. Circa Pentecosten rex J[ohannes] se præparavit ad transfretandum. Deinde cum parvo comitatu apud Portesmue naves ascendit, et, mutato per archiepiscopum consilio, apud Stodland juxta Warram applicuit. Reversus . . . infinitam pecuniam, argumentose prætendens causam, quod scilicet nollent ipsum sequi in partes[3] . . . ibi amissam recuperaret. Obiit Hubertus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, apud Tenham; rege super hoc gaudente et dicente, "Nunc primum sum rex Angliæ." Et hoc dixit, quia nimis præsumptuosus erat ad regios impetus refrænandos. Defuncto itaque ipso, antequam corpus sepulturæ traderetur, adolescentiores fratres de conventu, regis consensu irrequisito, Reginaldum, eorum suppriorem, in archiepiscopum sibi elegerunt; media nocte super hoc Te Deum decantantes.[4] Timebant enim quod rex, si de morte certificaretur, liberam eorum electionem impediret. Romam autem festinanter et clam perveniens, petiit a papa confirmari, et illud obiter, contra juramentum factum conventui, divulgaverat. Papa vero respondit, quod voluit super hoc deliberare et expectare, donec majorem haberet inde certitudinem. Monachi interea Cantuarienses irati, eo quod perjurus electus consilium eorum detexerat, quosdam de conventu ad regem destinarunt, ut requirerent ab eo licentiam eligendi. Quod et rex annuens, rogavit pro episcopo Norwicensi. Conventus autem hæc audiens, ut sibi regem, quem offenderat, reconciliaret, Johannem, episcopum Norwicensem, in archiepiscopum postularunt. Rex, ut hæc consummarentur, simul cum quibusdam monachis Cantuariensibus quosdam suos clericos Romam destinavit; et hic error, alteri errori adjunctus, seminarium totius discordiæ futuræ generavit. H. A. ii. 103. fol. 38 b.

John embarks at Portsmouth, but returns. Death of Hubert, abp. of Canterbury. Election of his successor, and proceedings thereon.

M°.CC°.VI°. Rex J[ohannes] dies Natalicios Domini apud Oxoniam celebravit. Miserunt episcopi Cantuariensis [ecclesiæ][5]

John at Oxford.

[1] *scutico*] In the text *sco̅* . . but corr. in marg.
[2] *evangelistæ*] ewangeliste, MS.
[3] *in partes*] Repeated in MS.
[4] *decantantes*] decantes, MS.
[5] *ecclesiæ*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

ii. **suffraganei** procuratores suos Romam . . . querimoniam repo- A.D. 1206.
nentes, quod monachi Cantuarienses sine illis electionem vel
postulationem temere præsumpsissent celebrare. Monachi vero
. . . . diffinitiva. Obierunt Willelmus . . . episcopus, et
Henricus . . . de Apulia. Jocelinus . . . Bathoniensem[1] con-
secratur. Eodemque anno rex Johannes, capto fortissimo castro *Arrival*
. . . Pictavia. Johannes Ferentinus veniens legatus in An- *of John of*
gliam, eumque perlustrans, magnam ex ea pecuniam congessit. *Ferentino*
Et tandem . . . Radingum concilio celebrato, repentinus cum *as legate.*
ii. clitellis completis remeavit. Treugæ . . . constituuntur.

M°.CC°.VII°. Rex Johannes dies Domini Natalicios apud Win- *John at*
ii. toniam celebravit. Deinde in . . . . . cunctis licet obmurmuran- *Winches-*
tibus et præ dolore ingemiscentibus. Solus Gaufridus, archi- *ter.*
episcopus Eboracensis, plane . . . qui [in][2] suo[3] archiepisco-
patu hanc rapinam facerent, et in genere . . . innodavit.
Otho venit . . . et cum venisset Londonias, ornata est civitas *Visit of the*
ii. coronis, lampadibus et olosericis. Et cum per . . . gaudio, *emperor*
multiplicavit imperator . . . restaurare; immo etiam . . . *Otho to*
39 a. civitates sibi debitas indubitanter subjugare. Unde idem . . . *London.*
marcas meruit reportare. Sub eisdem temporibus fratres qui *Order of*
dicuntur Minores, favente papa Innocentio, inceperunt per *the Minor-*
loca domos ædificare, et eas in capitalibus civitatibus inhabi- *ites.*
tare, et publice prædicare. [illegible] tempore monachis Can- *Election of*
tuariensibus ad invicem [illegible], qui pro se, alii pro *Stephen de*
suo electo, [illegible] papa [illegible] Ste- *Langton as*
ii. phanum de Langetona . . . . [illegible] *archbishop.*
papa ex [illegible]
ipse [illegible]
modo [illegible]
nachi [illegible]
ii. clamaverunt. [illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
regni Angliæ [illegible] *Expulsion*
[illegible] *of the*
[illegible] *monks of*
[illegible] *Canter-*
[illegible] *bury.*

[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]

A.D. 1207. Obiit Symon, episcopus Cicestrensis. Ysabella . . . primogenitum, die sancti Remigii, et aptatum . . . Henricus. Ibid. ii. 114.

Death of the bp. of Chichester.

John at Windsor. Deaths of bishops. England placed under an interdict, 23 March.

M°.CC°.VIII°. Johannes, rex Anglorum, celebravit dies Natalicios apud Windeleshores.[1] Obierunt Philippus, Dunelmensis, et Gaufridus, Cicestrensis, episcopi. Discurrebant interea diebus singulis hinc inde inter papam et regem nuncii, sed nihil . . . coacervantes. Cum igitur papa plures et pluries nuncios ad regem destinasset, et nihil proficiebant, prima die Lunæ in Passione Domini, scilicet x°. kalendas Aprilis, sub generali interdicto conclusum est regnum Anglicanum.[2] Unde quidam ait versificator, H. A. ii. 114.

"Mille ducentenis annis, octoque peractis,
Tollitur Angligenis cultus et ordo sacer."

Infiscantur igitur omnia bona ecclesiæ in Anglia. Rex autem sibi timens, homagia . . . obsides. Philippus, dux . . . Othonis, interimitur. Cistercienses, qui celebrare præsumebant, sunt suspensi. Hoc quoque anno peperit Ysabella filium, et vocatus est Ricardus. Anglicana viluit ecclesia propter interdictum, exulantibus episcopis.[3] Ibid. ii. 117. fol. 39

Birth of prince Richard.

John at Bristol. Fowling and fishing prohibited. Arrival of the duke of Saxony.

M°.CC°.IX°. Rex Anglorum J[ohannes] Natale Domini celebravit apud Bristoldum. Capturam autem avium per totam Angliam interdixit, et in multis fluviis piscaturam; unde, quod admiratione dignum est, aves et pisces facti sunt pauciores. Dux Suaviæ[4] venit in Angliam ex parte Othonis, thesaurum[5] ad opus ipsius Othonis exacturus; unde quod postulavit reportans, repatriavit. Procurante Stephano . . . Angliæ condoluit . . . divina; Cistercienses vero hac . . . prænotatam. Per idem tempus . . . . militari. Festo autem sancti . . . Londoniensium. Rex Anglorum fœdus iniit cum rege Scotorum. Dedit tamen rex Scotorum regi Anglorum pro bono pacis et fœderis ix. milia marcarum. Insuper, ad majorem securitatem, tradidit[6] eidem regi J[ohanni] dictus rex Scotorum duas filias suas in obsidatum. Otho consecratus est in imperatorem Romanum. Henricus, dux Saxoniæ, venit in Angliam, frater Othonis. Duo scolares Oxoniæ propter quandam mulierculam, cum H. A. ii. 118.

Treaty with the king of Scotland.

Otho IV. consecrated.

Two scholars hung at Oxford.

---

[1] *Windeleshores*] Windelehor', MS.

[2] In the margin is drawn a church bell reversed.

[3] *Anglicana . . episcopis*] Added on to the text, as originally written.

[4] *Suaviæ*] A mistake for *Saxoniæ*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 117.

[5] *thesaurum*] ut thesaurum, MS., and *thesaurum* repeated before *exacturus*.

[6] *tradidit*] tradiit, MS.

tamen insontes essent, sunt suspensi. Recessit igitur universitas scolarium . . . quam clerici; quorum . . . . Oxoniam vacuam reliquerunt. Hugo de Welles, regis . . . promovetur. Rex sigillum suum [tradens][1] Waltero de Grai, fecit eum cancellarium suum. A.D. 1209. Walter de Grai made chancellor.

ii. M°.CC°.X°. Rex Johannes . . . Windeleshores. Deinde, rege . . . . ab eis pecunia extorqueretur; unde ab . . . emunxit.[2] Multi magnatum et etiam quidam de familia sua, quantum poterunt, a rege sese retraxerunt. Rex in Hiberniam profectus, applicuit viii. idus Junii. Et cum ad . . . . supersedentibus, loca inexpugnabilia habitantibus. Qui tandem cum communitionibus vocati, venerunt præ timore, et regi homagium fecerunt et fidelitatem, leges Anglicanas suscipientes. Et præfecit eis custodes . . . . rotunditatem. Progrediens igitur rex in Hyberniam, plurimas . . . . qui in manus regis incidere metuebant. Tandem in Midiam fulgurando veniens . . . filium ejus militem, cum uxore[3] . . . incarcerandos. Ad votum igitur omnibus dispositis ibidem negotiis, iii°. kalendas Septembris remeavit. Deinde Londonias . . . . . . dilapidationem, ut egeret per multum sequens tempus totius Angliæ latitudo, ita videlicet quod summa extortæ pecuniæ ad centum millia marcarum argenti dicitur ascendisse. Cistercienses quoque . . . . querela eorum, qui de diversis et remotis partibus advenient, ipsum diffamarent. Assidebant . . . [illegible], Ricardus . . . milites Walterus de Grai . . . Henricus de [illegible][4] in [illegible] Eodem tempore Matildis, mulier nobilissima [illegible], [illegible] que ejus et heres et uxor ejus, apud Windleshores [illegible] durissime ac dirissime, fame [illegible]. Cujus doloris series, si [illegible], [illegible] teret etiam tirannorum. John at Windsor. His nobles desert him. 8 June. Ireland is subdued. 30 Aug. Tax levied on the clergy. [illegible] Matilda de Braose [illegible]

i. M°.CC°.XI°. Rex Johannes [illegible] veniens, obvia sibi [illegible] et obsides ab [illegible] et viii°. [illegible] b. triumphans, [illegible] in Galliam [illegible] nobilis et [illegible] Reginaldus [illegible] statim [illegible] Francorum [illegible]

[1] tradens [illegible]

Angl. [illegible]

[2] [illegible]

A.D. 1211. tatem. Recesserat autem a domino suo rege Francorum, ob suam superbiam et contumaciam. Leolinus autem . . . . et venit ad deditionem; cui rex filiam suam concessit maritandam. Obierunt eodem anno Robertus de Thurnam [et][1] Willelmus . . . fugerat Gallicanas, apud Corbuliam;[2] corpus . . . Sanctum Victorem tumulandum. Innocentius papa . . . nunciis suis, ut prædictum est, contumaciter respondisset, et claves obstinate contempsisset, tam pauperes . . . . . evitarent. Ibid. ii. 126.

M°.CC°.XII°. Rex fuit ad . . . sequente, scilicet Dominica H. A. ii. 126. . . . Scotorum Willelmi, et . . . militari. Et cum percepisset aliquos vitare ipsum, propter sententiam papalem, desævit in eosdem, scilicet Galfridum . . . arctissime incarceratum jussit tormento perimi excogitato. Magister vero Willelmus de Nectona, regis clericus specialis, fidelis et omni dignus honore, ne simili ob illam causam subjaceret discrimini, clam . . . transmarinas, et apud Curboliam latitavit. Multi quoque nobiles . . . ultramarinis ac ignotis . . . . et tandem proscriptus. Ibid. ii. 127. Obiit etiam Malgerus . . . . . conventus magnum, quem ei iterum transmisit Anglia, habere confessorem. Obiit etiam Baldeuuinus . . . Samson.[3] Eisdem[4] temporibus erat in provincia . . . futura infallibiliter prædixerat . . . . palam prædicabat, scilicet, Ibid. ii. 129. quod non foret . . . . . ipsum duceretur, quæsivit ab illo si . . fol. 41 *a*. . . . . cui rex, "Fiat tibi secundum verbum tuum." Tunc . . . videretur. Sollicitavit interim . . . . morabantur, ut in tirannum . . . . universalis per hanc discordiam . . . pateretur. Combusta[5] est . . . et columpna[6] super pontem . . . . . correptionem Ibid. ii. 131. civium et correctionem. Roberti filii-Walteri . . . . destruuntur, ædificia comburuntur, arbusta venduntur, pomeria extirpantur; eosdemque homines et dominos [rex][7] jussit irrevocabiliter utlagari. Surrexitque[8] . . . Domini quidam ruptarius, nomine Falcasius, Neuster natione. Qui quandoque unus custodum Marchiæ Wallensis[9] a rege J[ohanne] constituebatur, ortu vero spurius, et pro meritis a patria sua fugitivus. De quo, cum rex illum nullum genus facinorum cognovisset[10] formidare Ibid. ii. 132. . . . . . execrabilis.

John's cruelty to those who avoided him.

Faukes [de Breauté].

M°.CC°.XIII°. Rex Johannes . . . Westmonasterium. Tunc H. A. ii. 132.

---

[1] *et*] Omitted in MS.

[2] *Curbuliam*] Curbulium, MS. In *Hist. Angl.* Curbulam.

[3] *Samson*] Sanson, MS.

[4] *Eisdem*] Eidem, MS.

[5] *Combusta*] Conbusta, MS.

[6] *columpna*] An error for *capella*, as in *Hist. Angl.*

[7] *rex*] Omitted in MS.

[8] *Surrexitque*] Surexitque, MS.

[9] *Wallensis*] Valensis, MS.

[10] *cognovisset*] congnovisset, MS.

etiam increbruerunt . . . qui merito[1] inter martires computandus est, quia . . . persecutionem. Mense vero Januarii A.D. 1213.
fol. 41 *b*. . . . . promulgarunt. Tunc rex Francorum . . . . jussit sub
Ibid. ii. 133. nomine . . . mererentur, scilicet exheredationis. Fecit etiam omnes . . . poterat, etiam de Janua et Pisa, bellicosas conductioias super mare versus Angliam congregare, et congregatas frumento . . . communire. Rex autem J[ohannes] e regione sese potenter et prudenter studuit communiendo

Preparations in France to invade England.

Ibid. ii. 134. præparare, proponens cum hostibus navale . . . . . adventum, venerunt duo fratres . . . et venientes dixerunt ei amicabiliter, "Mittimur . . . . condempnatus." Quod cum regi . . . . et laicis, ut, ipso duce . . . . parendi, et, licet sero, humiliari, poteris adhuc forsitan ex clementia . . . fuisti abjudicatus." Hiis igitur intellectis, rex J[ohannes], sed sero,
Ibid. ii. 135. humiliatus est, licet invitus et mente merito perturbatus . . . imminere.[2] Demersus igitur in abissum desperationis, persuasionibus . . . probrosam et toti Angliæ dampnosam adquievit. Cujus summa . . . . satisfaciet. Quod cum rex . . . intimi cruentam amaritudinem et lacrimarum effusionem commovebatur. Hoc autem infeliciter factum fuit . . . . J[ohannis] xiiii°. Instabat autem dies Ascensionis. Et videns rex quod adhuc 16 May. viveret, jussit Petrum heremitam, propter assertiones suas, et filium suum suspendi. Hiis factis, P[andulphus] cum carta præ-
fol. 42 *a*. Ibid. ii. 137. dicta in Galliam remeavit, viii°. milia librarum . . . . . . diligenter admonuit, qui jam parabatur . . . remearet. Rex enim Anglorum J[ohannes] filius factus est obedientiæ et reconciliationis. Hæc audiens rex Francorum, iratus est nimis, dolens se verbis fallacibus fuisse muscipulatum. Expenderat enim, stimulante papa, plusquam[3] lx^ta^. . . . apparatu, nec aliquid nisi probra reportaret. Et quia suggestione[4] . . . nullatenus dictis P[andulphi] . . . . in Anglia? Quinimmo, detines . . . cismarinas." Quod audiens . . . confestim ut recederet impe-

Peter the hermit and his son hung.

Ibid. ii. 137, 138. ravit; et insequens . . . ferro feraliter cœpit exterminare. Præterea nautis . . . . propter eum constituto suffragaretur, militare sibi præsidium destinando. Hiis auditis, rex Anglorum misit in succursum comitis fratrem suum Willelmum, ducem vel
Ibid. ii. 138. comitem Holandiæ, et Reginaldum . . . . . . faciebant; ubi totam navium . . . . regis Francorum, et ipsam . . . marinellis, caruisse. Exierant enim milites ad prædandum in terra comitis. Quod cum milites regis Anglorum cognovissent, ad arma prosilientes, trecentas ex eis frumento, vino, et aliis victualibus et

Aid sent by John to the count of Flanders.

[1] *merito*] Repeated superflously after *martires*.

[2] *imminere*] iminere, MS.

[3] *plusquam*] plus, MS.

[4] *suggestione*] sugestione, MS.

A.D. 1213. armis onustas . . . stabant, combusserunt . . . . . possiderunt. Ibid. ii. 139. Rex igitur Francorum cum suis confusus et inglorius est reversus. Rex igitur Anglorum, hiis auditis, mente respiravit,

"Ut solet infuso vena redire mero;"[1]

præcepitque[2] multitudini . . . . pecuniæ quantitatem, promittens eis . . . regis Francorum vastarent, et ibidem[3] incendiis vacarent et rapinis. Ibid. ii. 139. fol. 42 b. Ipse rex apud Portesmuam cum exercitu copioso in Pictaviam transfretavit.[4] Magnates Angliæ, sicut ei aperte prædixerant, ipsum sequi, nec mirum, plenarie noluerunt . . . liber et expeditus, martiis casibus indulgerent. Hac igitur districtione . . . . omnia sibi pacta et placita recepturi. Ascenderunt . . . . . regem pervenerunt. Ductus est igitur in capitulum . . . . pacem recipiente. Fecit insuper rex prælatos et magnates Angliæ universos,[5] quod si, instigante sinistro spiritu, prædictis præsumeret adversari, omnibus quibus possent modis cogerent fidelitati inclinare. Ibid. ii. 140. Inde præcepit in . . . spoliatis; sed qualiter restituebantur, novit Deus, omnium conscius secretorum. Continuo vero . . . . . negotia tractarentur. Quo facto, venit ibidem militum multitudo copiosa, cui promiserat in omnibus necessariis efficaciter patrocinari. Quæ tamdiu ibidem expectabat voluntatem hoc jubentis, ut, omni pecunia eorum jam exposita, equos et arma vendere cogebantur; unde eum sequi nequiverant qui prius potuerunt, nisi de fisco ipsis rex stipendia necessaria ministraret. Quod cum rex facere recusaret, iratus . . . . reversis. Unde cum sese cerneret sic derelictum, ad Angliam remeavit. Ibid. ii. 141. Denunciatum est vicecomitibus, forestariis et aliis regis ministris, ut, omni pace concessa, nihil attemptent perturbationis, sicut facere consueverant; et hoc, invito vel nescio rege, per Cantuariensem archiepiscopum et G[aufridum] filium-P[etri] et alios regni custodes. Quod cum regi innotuisset, objurgans cœpit pœnitere quod unquam paci consenserit; et, repulsis suis naturalibus baronibus, consiliis alienigenarum et spuriorum, ira successus rediviva. Juravitque, quod propter unum clerigastrum non omitteret homines suos edomare. Inde raptim se contulit versus partes, nescitur ad quid, aquilonares. Quem modeste prosequens archiepiscopus, vix regem blandimentis simul et comminationibus remeare fecit Londoniam. Eodem

John proposes to go to Poitou.

His troops refuse to accompany him, and he returns to England.

Orders given for the observance of the laws.

John goes towards the north, but returns to London.

---

[1] Ovid. Ep. ex Ponto, lib. i. 3, 10.

[2] *que*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[3] *et ibidem*] On an erasure.

[4] *transfretavit*] This is a mistake. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*

[5] *universos*] A verb is here wanting, but the *Hist. Angl.* affords no assistance. Perhaps we may supply *jurare?*

anno, ii. idus Octobris, obiit Galfridus filius-Petri, in cujus casu enervatum est robur regni et consilium. Circa festum A.D. 1213. 14 Oct.
ii. . . . statum ecclesiæ languentis et regni vacillantis reformaret. Qui apud . . . deposuit, et multos, qui in tempore guerræ regem dampnificaverant, graviter punivit. Summopere[1] enim regi placere, aliis licet offensis, satagebat; dederat enim ei rex ilico
13 a. donativa pretiosa. Extortos igitur redditus ab Anglis suis compatriotis dedit et consanguineis; unde qui nuper cum quinque equitaturis venerat et uno mulo macilentis, jam triginta vel pluribus stipatus incedebat.

Death of Geoffrey Fitz-Peter. Conduct of the legate Nicholas.

ii. M°.CC°.XIIII°. Rex Anglorum J[ohannes] ad . . . . et ejusdem suffraganei. Moleste enim et . . . regiis nutibus inclinatus, in ecclesiis vacantibus prælatos instituit insufficientes, intrusione magis quam canonica electione; et suis, quos vocavit[2] consanguineis, affinibus et compatriotis, prorsus indignis, et quampluribus absentibus et ignotis, redditus contulit opulentos, rege benigne hæc acceptante. Unde unum casum huic paginæ ridiculosum, licet videatur inutilis digressio, duximus annectendum. Reliquit idem Nicholaus quandam mulierculam, eidem consanguinitate propinquam, gravidam et in proximo parituram. Cui recessurus a patria sua dixit, "Redditum opimum me promitto certissime proli tuæ collaturum, filius si fuerit; sin autem, iterum ilico concipe, ut filium valeas generare, quem multis redditibus locupletabo. Vado enim legatus in Angliam." Mulier autem filiam edidit, nec unquam prolem edidit postea nisi femininam, quamvis postea immaturas filias tres vel quatuor generasset. Hæc iccirco dixerim, ut sciat lector quam indifferenter redditus Ytalicis indignis et aliquibus nascituris conferuntur. Appellatum est contra hujusmodi legati tirannidem. Legatus autem . . . . subjectionem ipsum solum procaciter appellasse. Asserebat insuper idem P[an-
i. dulphus], regem . . . . restitutionibus nimis protervos fuisse contra regem humiliatum. Et sic . . . detrimentum cepit et dilationem. Papa enim maximum contra eum rancorum concepit. Rex principibus militiæ . . . . inquietarent, transmisit. Rex insuper, missis Romam . . . suo et apud Rupellam applicuit. Quo audito, sititores auri et argenti venerunt ad eum, pecuniam[3] patulis rictibus inhiantes, barones videlicet Pictaviæ; et infideles ei fidelitatem juraverunt, et ei fidem perfidi promiserunt. Dein progrediens . . . hostium ope et opera Anglicorum sibi subjugavit; sed subjugata incaute

The legate's tyranny in bestowing benefices on his unworthy countrymen. An instance of this given.

The barons of Poitou swear fealty to John.

---

[1] *Summopere*] At first written *Summo opere*, but *opere* afterwards erased.

[2] *vocavit*] After this word *redditus* is added, but is superfluous.

[3] *pecuniam*] pecuniē, MS.

A.D. 1214. alienis commisit, spretis Anglicis, custodienda. Cum autem durasset . . . . interdicti. Johannes, abbas ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, vir ad plenum literatus, et in Ordine sancti Benedicti moribus informatus,[1] die beati Kenelmi, sicut idem sanctus multis ante præteritis annis prædixerat, viam universæ carnis est ingressus. Rex ad castrum . . . . . illuc properavit. Rex autem J[ohannes], hoc audito,[2] præparavit . . . ut resisteret. Et cum animassent eum Anglici imperterriti, Pictavenses . . . prœlium conserendum. Tunc rex . . . imminebat.[3] Franci autem plus gaudebant super illo casu, quam unquam de alio qui eis contingebat, immo etiam de illo qui in Flandria evenit. Sed de illo in sequentibus declarabitur. Hiis quoque diebus . . . Francorum perterruit. Erant namque[4] in . . . . et Braibanciæ, qui pari tirannide in Francigenas fremuerunt. Additus etiam est et hiis quidam comes Alemanniæ . . . nominabant. Tandem autem venit . . . paucis militibus comitatus. Cumque hæc . . . nec mirum, perterritus,[5] invocato tamen Dei et sancti Dionisii suffragio, occurrit eis cum . . . . Anglorum bellum quod præparaverant conserere, Hugo de Boves, Christianus umbratilis, non reputans . . . dies te, Hugo, proditorem, et me probabit et fidelem experietur." Exclamato igitur hinc "Regales! Regales!" inde "Montis-gaudium! Montis-gaudium!" perstrepentibus[6] tubis et lituis, commissum est bellum cruentissimum. Et rex in medio acierum est prostratus . . . opponeret, Neuster natione, tandem interfectus est. Et rex vix super equum elevatus, dum quidam alius miles Francigena, qui armis regiis fuerat redimitus, hostium[7] turmis extitit impetitus, qui et tandem periit interemptus. Tandem . . . Julio mense, opponuntur[8] hinc inde hii hiis hostiliter; vulnerantur, prosternuntur, occiduntur, capiuntur. Denuo prævaluit pars Francorum; et post conflictum gravissimum, in quo ipse fere occubuit imperator ab equo pulsus, clam se divertit cum suis quibusdam commilitonibus. Capti sunt ibidem, ex parte regis Anglorum, W[illelmus] comes Saresbiriensis, comes . . . . . Reginaldus, comes Pelu Alemanniæ, cum multis aliis præclaris et viris præpotentibus, qui . . . . et cantibus applaudentium splenduit serenata.

Margin notes: Death of John, abbat of St. Alban's. 17 July. — Joy of the French at the treachery of the Poitevins. — Battle of Bovines. — fol. 43 b. — Ibid. ii. 149. — Ibid. ii. 150. — Ibid. ii. 151. — fol. 44

[1] *informatus*] imformatus, MS.
[2] *audito*] audito ad, MS.
[3] *imminebat*] iminebat, MS.
[4] *namque*] namque, MS. *passim.*
[5] *perterritus*] perteritus, MS., and orignally written *perturbatus* (as in *Hist. Angl.*), but afterwards erased, and corr. in marg.
[6] *perstrepentibus*] prestrepentibus, MS.
[7] *hostium*] Written at first *fustium*, but *fu* erased, and corr. in marg.
[8] *opponuntur*] opprimuntur, *Hist. Angl.*

A.D. 1214.

Facta est autem hujus belli .... complicum suorum rapuerat, credens sed deceptus, quod ex tali emolumento aliquis fructus proveniret, inaniter expendit. Cum autem hujus .... præ dolore, cibum nec potum sumpsit[1] illa die. Et renuens consolationem, recordatus est verbi quod dixerat insons Petrus
i. heremita. Eodem tempore, nonas Octobris .... episcopos consecrantur. Rex Anglorum .... rediit in Angliam tristis et inglorius, xiiii. kalendas Novembris; datis proinde regi[2] Francorum viii°. milibus marcarum, pro quibus fidejubebat Hubertus de Burgo; de qua fidejussione multi mirabantur et invidebant, et maxime comes Cestrensis Ranulphus. Unde idem comes dictum Hubertum omnibus diebus odio habuit et persequebatur, quia comes, ad pleggagium se offerens, refutabatur. Obiit Thomas de Grai, Norwicensis episcopus, magnæ perturbationis in Anglia occasio. Obiit Galfridus de Glanvilla, episcopus Rofensis. Convenerunt comites et[3] barones ad commune colloquium[4] apud Sanctum Edmundum, quasi in oratione;
i. ubi cum diu ... spem per signa manifesta reportabant, producta est ... Henrici primi, cujus transcriptum in multis libris Angliæ historialibus habetur, quam ... magnatibus regni, dum frater ... remearet. Quam cartam ... archiepiscopo monstratam viderant et audierant Londoniis. Continebat autem quasdam ... Edwardi, ecclesiæ Anglicanæ et ... dicti magnates super ... libertates inscriptas concedere[5] nollet, prout sæpe ultro juravit, et benigne manuteneret, ipsi[6] ei guerram, sicuti ex præcepto ejusdem regis sacramento tenebantur, tam diu ... comprobaretur. In hoc tamen ... ad regem accedentes, libertates præscriptas sibi peterent confirmari. Eodem quoque anno Johanni ... monachus successit.

19 Oct.

Hubert de Burgh becomes surety for money paid to the king of France.

Deaths of prelates.

Meeting of the barons at Bury St. Edmund's.

ii. M°.CC°.XV°. Rex J[ohannes] curiam suam tenuit Wigorniæ
55. vix uno die. Dein Londonias ... magnates memorati, qui
l b. .... crucem suscepit, ut ... et fortior esset ad resistendum; et castra caute communivit. Obiit Eustachius, episcopus Elyensis. Ebdomada vero Paschali ..... armis decenter communitos. Hii igitur omnes confœderati S[tephanum], Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, eo quod utrique parti fidelis extitisset, [sibi constituerunt capitaneum],[7] ut una cum ...., exigunt?" Juravitque horribiliter, se nunquam illa, non sine

John at Worcester.

The barons elect the archbp. as their chief.

---

[1] *sumpsit*] Repeated by error in MS.

[2] *regi*] regis, MS.

[3] *comites et*] Added in marg.

[4] *colloquium*] colloquio, MS., but the last letter erased.

[5] *concederet*] The last letter is erased.

[6] *ipsi*] ipse, MS.

[7] *sibi constituerunt capitaneum*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

A.D. 1215. omnium stupore, in vita concessurum. Quod cum magnates intellexissent, constituerunt . . . . . convolantes, violenter voluerunt et attemptarent regem emollire. Suspensum est scaccarium. Cives Londonienses indicant eis, quod quia rex, eorum violatis libertatibus antiquis et incartatis, eos[1] frequenter depauperat, et quasi ultimæ conditionis servos crebro talliat, quod caute ad urbem veniant, et portis patulis recipientur. At ipsi de nocte iter conficientes, nullo contradicente, clanculo cointrarunt, et civitatem totam ilico sibi subjugarunt. Quod videns rex, iterum misit ad eos, quorum sermones super oleum molliti et super favum melliti, baronum non semel, sed sæpius, simplicitatem credulam circumvenerunt. Interim rex procuravit donis et promissis, ut papa, habita pro voluntate deliberatione, cartam sæpe dictam, licet pia . . . . cassavit; dicens quod extorta fuit per metum, qui potuit cadere in [virum][2] constantem; licet re vera concessisset eam rex sponte et sereno vultu, ad petitionem ipsius. Committitur interea castrum Rofense, de communi assensu baronum Londoniis commorantium, Willelmo de Albineto ad custodiendum; cui adhæserunt milites præclari septies xx^{ti}., cum sequela sua; et invenerunt locum illum penitus immunitum. Cum ecce rex, cum innumerabili exercitu alienorum, quos antea, in Vecta insula commorans per aliquot dies, convocaverat, superveniens,[3] obsidione acriter vallavit. Venerant enim cum rege, qui ad regis mandatum venerant, turba nefandissima ex partibus Pictaviæ,[4] et partium conterminarum, cui præerant Savaricus de Malleone et alii, quibus sanguis innocentium pro nihilo erat in conspectu. Et ex regionibus Lovaniæ et Braibantiæ catervæ . . . exules, quibus præerat . . . transmiserunt. Ad quos ulciscendos,[5] vocatus a rege, venit de partibus transmarinis Hugo de Boves, in una navi nobilissima a rege sibi missa, quæ vulgo Husser dicebatur; sed, exorta tempestate, ipse cum tota sequela sua periit in profundo. Eodem tempore, cum defecisset[6] inclusis in castro Rofensi succursus cum victualibus, captum est castrum; et omnes suspendio rex interemisset, nisi comminationibus Savarici refrænaretur, dicente, "quod si hæc feceris, tantundem facient ipsorum consortes, si in eorum retiacula inciderimus. Omnes igitur, si eos

The Exchequer suspended.

The barons occupy London.

The pope annuls the Great Charter.

Rochester castle committed to William de Albini.

John besieges it with foreign mercenaries.

Hugh de Boves perishes at sea.

Rochester castle taken.

Ibid. ii. 156.

H. A. ii. 162.

fol. 45 *a*.

Ibid. ii. 164.

[1] *eos*] In the text *eum*, but corr. in marg.

[2] *virum*] Supplied from the Greater Chronicle, p. 267.

[3] *superveniens*] superveniens rex, MS.

[4] *ex partibus Pictaviæ*] Repeated by error in the MS.

[5] *ulciscendos*] ulciscen, MS.

[6] *defecisset*] In the text *defecissis*, but corr. in marg.

interimis, a te discedimus." Hæc cum audisset rex, eos sine A.D. 1215.
misericordia misit ad Corf et alibi, duris ac diris carceribus
mancipandos, et supra posse redimendos. Efficacius igitur
adjutus a domino papa rex, procuravit ut barones excommunicarentur;
et sic papa, qui prius contra regem eos exacuerat et animaverat,
versa rota fortunali et amplexato regni dominio, barones feraliter
persequebatur. Eligitur magister Simon de Langetona in archiepiscopum
Eboracensem, qui credebatur fratrissare et fratris sequi vestigia;
sed electores in sua spe decipiebantur. Procuravit igitur rex, jam
totus papalis, ut archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, qui tam vigilanter
commodum[1] regis et regni procuraverat, suspenderetur, et fratris
ejus, scilicet magistri Simonis de Langetona, electio cassaretur.
Sicut enim rex jam totus papalis effectus est, sic et papa regalis.
Reputabat enim papa, quod quicquid regi, vassallo suo, subtraheretur,
et ei diminueretur. Procuravit insuper rex, quod papa suspensionem
confirmavit supradictam. Rex insuper, ad partes se conferens
aquilonares, terras baronum exterminavit, cædibus vacans et rapinis;
exercens[2] extortiones pecuniarum cum tormentis exquisitis; quas qui
explicaret, ipsos homines reputaret inhumanos, et diaboli-
ii. cam excedere crudelitatem. Fugerunt etiam a facie . . .
relinquentes. Falcasius insuper, ruptarius spurcissimus et
infernalis, castris subactis, [in][3] nobiles compatriotas, non
parcens ætati, sexui vel conditioni, immo nec ecclesiæ, indigna
relatu irreverenter exercuit. Quod rex acceptans, dedit ei
cum quadam nobili puella, scilicet Margareta de Ripariis,
castrum de Bedeford, et multas cum honoribus possessiones.
ii. Consecrati sunt . . . præcentor [Sancti Pauli][4] Londoniarum
in Rofensem, vir literatus, et in theologia lector Parisius;
15 b. magister . . . in Cicestrensem. Eodemque anno celebrata . . .
ii. Novembris; in quo . . . et xii., patriarchæ duo, præsidente
papa Innocentio III. pontificatus sui anno xviii°.

The pope excommunicates the barons.

Election of Simon de Langetone, as abp. of York, annulled, and the abp. of Canterbury suspended.

John marches northwards, and exercises great cruelties.

Excesses of Faukes [de Breauté].

John gives him the castle of Bedford.

M°.CC°.XVI°. Rex J[ohannes] fuit ad Natale[5] Domini apud
castrum de Notingham, commissis omnibus castris et terris,
quas in borealibus partibus super barones ceperat, viris sanguinum,
misericordiam nescientibus, Hugoni scilicet de Bailloil,
Philippo de Hulecotes, Roberto de Veteri-ponte, Brienno de
Insula, Galfrido de Lucy, et aliis, omnibus Sarracenis crude-
ii. lioribus. Cum igitur omnia ruinæ . . . . . . perpetrantes, vix

John commits the custody of the captured castles to 'men of blood.'

[1] *commodum*] comodum, MS.
[2] *exercens*] excercens, MS.
[3] *in*] Omitted in MS.
[4] *Sancti Pauli*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*
[5] *Natale*] Natali, MS.

A.D. 1216. manus ab incendio continuerunt; sed prioris industria, censu multiplicato, ecclesia cum officinis est redempta. Barones igitur in arcto constituti, strictissima necessitate compulsi, scientes quod . . . invenirent, Ludowicum, regis Francorum primogenitum, in regem sibi elegerunt. Quod cum tam . . . et cartas. Barones autem inter duas molas contriti, papæ scilicet et regis, aliud refugium . . . perfecerunt. Tunc vero temporis, reclamantibus omnibus cardinalibus, ne papa confratrem eorum S[tephanum], Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, qui cardinalis erat, ad petitionem regis Anglorum deponeret, destitit papa a crudeli proposito suo, [et],[1] etsi invitus, ipsum absolvit. Unde rex dolens factus est et iratus. Ita tamen absolutus est, quod . . . non intraret. Tunc vero solutum est concilium generale. Papa . . . . auxilium pecuniare exegit, quam recessuri prius adquisiverunt; postea de viaticis sollicitabantur. Cogebantur[2] autem hæc omnia a mercatoribus, id est usurariis, Romanæ curiæ duris conditionibus mutuare. Et sic cum benedictione papali satis empta repatriarunt. Ludowicus misit quosdam de militibus suis ante faciem . . . oppressionibus papalibus ac regalibus comprimebantur. Obiit Gaufridus de Mandevilla, læsus quodam lanceæ fragmento, dum in hastiludio contra eum [quidam][3] de militibus Ludowici decertaret, extra[4] civitatem Londoniarum. Tunc vero temporis venit Walo legatus[5] in Franciam . . . impediret, nec regem Angliæ in aliquo inquietaret rex Francorum, sed ipsum, ut papalem vassallum, protegeret et defenderet, cujus regnum . . . pertinebat, tanquam beati Petri patrimonium speciale. Rex autem Francorum . . . nunquam fuit patrimonium beati Petri, nec est . . . . . hunc errorem defendat, perniciosum regibus et regnis exemplum perhibebit. Non diligo vel approbo . . . ancillatione. Heu! quantum per eum deterioratur regum conditio . . . Francia." Et tendens manus in cœlum, subdidit, "Quod Deus avertat! quod Deus avertat! Tamen hoc potest formidari[6] quam prius; quia quanto papa magis ditatur et roboratur, tanto efficacior ad quos voluerit conterendum." Tunc quoque . . . cœperunt, "Per mortem . . . Johannes, Anglorum regulus, pro isto

Prince Louis of France elected king by the barons.

The abp. of Canterbury is absolved.

Forced payments from the prelates to the pope

Death of Geoffrey de Mandeville.

The legate Walo comes to France.

Ibid. ii. 174.

Ibid. ii. 175.

Ibid. ii. 176.

fol. 46

---

[1] *et*] Omitted in MS.

[2] *cogebantur*] Repeated superfluously after *mutuare*.

[3] *quidam*] Supplied from the Greater Chronicle, p. 280.

[4] *extra*] ex, MS.

[5] *legatus*] Added in marg.

[6] *hoc potest formidari*] Some words are evidently wanting, and perhaps we should read, *potest nunc magis formidari*. The paragraph is not in *Hist. Angl.* or in the Greater Chronicle.

A.D. 1216.

ii. articulo . . . immo potius usque ad mortem . . . suam motam, vel paucorum adulatorum consensum, regnum valeat[1] vel principatum suum dare vel tributarium facere, unde nobiles regni servi efficiantur, præcipue . . . alicujus ecclesiasticæ personæ. Quid ad tales . . . . vestigia sequentes." Et cœperunt more suo Gallici horribiliter jurando comminari. Supervenit ex industria . . . . . impediatis. Impium esset . . . libertate Angliæ decertantes patulis rictibus luporum expositos derelinquere, . . . dominum elegerint,[2] et consolatorem." Cui pater, "Nec te impedio vel promoveo." Tunc recessit legatus tremulus, et timens ne ei in corpore aliquid sinistri eveniret, ad mare Angliæ clanculo properando. Ludowicus autem, congregato comitatu copioso, festinavit in Angliam veniendo legatum prævenire, et in portu de Calesio secentas naves et quater xx. cogas promtas invenit et bene præparatas, quas Eustachius Monachus contra adventum Ludowici ibidem congregaverat. Misitque Ludowicus Romam, ut pro jure suo, quod credebat habere in Anglia, de ipso regno efficaciter coram papa allegarent. Ludouuicus vero et qui cum eo erant, ascendentes naves, sese Neptuno commiserunt. Erat autem

The legate leaves France.

Prince Louis embarks at Calais.

He sends to Rome to plead his right in England.

ii. tunc temporis rex J[ohannes] . . . sed quoniam, ut eidem dicebatur, alienigenis . . . vallatus, et suorum naturalium hominum privatus extiterat, Ludowico jam applicanti . . . transmarini, eo relicto, ad Ludowicum, transmarinorum dominum, sese transferrent. Unde præelegit . . . . . tanquam fidelissimo, tutius confidebat; nec cessavit raptim fugere, donec Wintoniam pervenisset Ludowicus vero . . . . præter Doverense castrum,

46 b. in suam . . . ingenti omnium baronum tripudio est receptus. Cœpitque homagia . . . qui eum ibi expectaverant. Ille vero . . . . partium borealium, qui . . . . multi præelecti,

ii. regem J[ohannem] . . . optineret. Magistrum autem Symonem de Langetuna, nuper per regem Anglorum cassatum et ab archiepiscopo Eboracensi repulsum, constituit cancellarium suum; qui Londoniis commorans, non fratrissans, sed penitus a vestigiis fratris sui archiepiscopi Cantuariensis exorbitans, plus sævit in Anglicos quam de regno Angliæ oriundus vel etiam advena de exteris regionibus procreatus. Ludowicus

Simon de Langetone made chancellor by Louis.

ii. etiam discurrens, omnem circumjacentem . . . subjugavit, partes scilicet australes et orientales. Rex autem Scotorum

ii. . . . . defendebant. Walo interea legatus in procurationibus suis et reddituum rapinis suos et quos voluit ditavit, metens quod non seminavit. Obsidetur interea castrum Doverense a

Exactions of the legate.

Siege of Dover castle.

---

[1] *valeat*] Repeated after *dare*.

[2] *elegerint*] The first two syllables have been erased.

A.D. 1216. Ludowico, sed Hubertus de Burgo ei constanter restitit in faciem. Unde L[udowicus] iratus valde juravit, se non inde . . . punirentur. Barones animati obsiderunt Windeleshores, sed per proditionem comitis Nivernensis[1] soluta est obsidio. Eodem[2] tempore, mense . . . Doveram fecit Ludowico homagium . . . debuit.[3] Sed, dum transitum fecit per Castrum-Bernardi, balistarius quidam de castro emittens telum, Eustachium de Vesci telo interemit; unde rex inconsolabiliter doluit, habuit enim idem Eustachius sororem regis Scotiæ desponsatam. Rex igitur tristis ad propria remeavit, in quo casu pars baronum non mediocriter est infirmata.[4] Contigit autem . . . . Francorum, Londoniis graviter infirmari. Qui, cum mortem sibi comperisset imminere[5] . . . Angliæ; quibus dicebat, "Doleo super . . . . Ludowico[6] juraverunt." Et, hiis dictis, nobilis ille expiravit. Cum hæc autem . . . vehementer, sed hæc caute pallientes. Inter igitur multas angustias constituti, arbitrabantur minus malum ad fidelitatem regis reverti, et gratiam ejus experiri et misericordiam—quia tunc demum regius sanguis vincitur, cum se vicisse conspicit—quam imminenti[7] periculo, quod Deus revelavit, subjacere. Dum igitur Ludowicus obsidionem apud Doveram inaniter protraxisset, rex J[ohannes] in fortitudine[8] gravi provincias Sufolcke et Northfolke et postea possessiones habitantium in marisco cum tanta tyrannide, ferro et flamma contrivit, ut qui vera narratione illa prosequeretur, lacrimas excuteret audientium. Dum igitur rex apud Wellestrem pervenisset, et sine duce illam aquam marinam transire præsumpsisset, ipsemet vix evadens, ibidem bigas suas et summarios . . . . amisit, sabulo vivo omnia absorbente. Rex igitur cum residuo exercitus sui, quem vorago[9] reliquerat, nocte sequenti . . . de rebus a fluctibus absorptis[10] tantam . . . . . novi pomacii nimis repletus . . . . versus[11] castrum de Lafford . . . plus ultionum quam . . . miliaria pertransisset anhelus[12] et gemebundus, descendere coactus, jussit lecticam sibi, uti levius veheretur, præparari. At illi . . . . contexerunt. Quam cum . . . lectisterniis caruisset . . . . immo jam interfecit." Et creditur, quod in lectica . . . . febribus præbet incentivum. Ira enim . . . . leniter vectus est ambulante.

Siege of Windsor castle raised.

Eustace de Vescy killed.

The king of Scotland returns home.

The barons incline to renew their fealty to John.

John's proceedings in Suffolk and Norfolk.

He loses his treasure in the quicksands of the Wellstream.

Ibid. ii. 184. Ibid. ii. 186. Ibid. ii. 187. Ibid. ii. 188. fol. 47 a. Ibid. ii. 190. Ibid. ii. 191. Ibid. ii. 192.

[1] *Nivernensis*] Niniverncnsis, MS.
[2] *Eodem*] Eo, MS.
[3] *debuit*] debet, MS.
[4] *infirmata*] imfirmata, MS., and *imfirmari* in the next line.
[5] *imminere*] iminere, MS.
[6] *Ludowico*] Luduwico, MS.
[7] *imminenti*] iminenti, MS.
[8] *fortitudine*] fortudine, MS.
[9] *vorago*] varago, MS.
[10] *absorptis*] absortis, MS.
[11] *versus*] Repeated, but underlined for omission.
[12] *anhelus*] hanelus, MS.

Ibique decubans . . . de Crokestuna, viro sancto et literato, A.D. 1216.
et in arte medicinæ perito, consilium accipiens corporale, de futuris edocetur, unde confessionem et eucharistiam devotus suscepit. Deinde Henricum . . . fecit. Literas quoque sigillo . . . . ut ei omnes et singuli forent fideliter intendentes. Et inter . . . circumsedentibus amicis ejus, "Dominus noster Jhesus Christus pro nobis moriturus, pro suis oravit persecutoribus et eum crucifigentibus, nobis pium relinquens exemplum, ad quod in Oratione Dominica obligamur. Necesse habetis

Last hours of John.

.l. 47 b. . . . . ipsi, tanquam domino suo . . . et ejusdem regiam experiri misericordiam, propter revelationem illis nuper Lon-
d. ii. 3. doniis factam, sicut prædictum . . . vitavit, prout dicit Poeta,

> "Sæpe canem longe visum fugit agna, lupumque
> Credit, et ipsa suam nescia vitat opem."[1]

Et subdidit instanter amicus, qui loqui inceperat, et dixit mentes et proposita regi penitus baronum ignoranti,[2] et persuasit,[3] ut sincero corde omnibus offensoribus noxam condonaret—sitiebat enim salutem animæ suæ—et continuo dixit ei, "Domine . . . . commoti exasperantur. Quia si . . . agendum est cum eisdem; si non . . . corona, omnis remittenda est pro Christo malivolentia." At rex . . . gemitum, et prædicta tamen trutinans, ait, "Si aliter . . . persuasistis. Et hoc . . . ut et ipse similiter faciat, ne et sic anima mea prægravetur, et de cetero . . . et sequatur." Hiis ita gestis . . . . eligere sepulturam. Cui rex, resumpto spiritu, ait, "Deo et . . . commendo." Postea vero, nocte quæ diem sancti Lucæ evangelistæ[4] præcedit proxima, ex hac vita migravit. Facta[5] igitur . . . . apud Crokestunam, ubi et ipse rex redditum[6] legaverat, ab eodem abbate sunt delata et honorifice

Death of John. 18 Oct.

id. ii. 4. sepulta. Corpus vero, regio scemate redimitum, ad . . . tumulatum. Tempore quoque quo . . . . circiter xl^a. festinanter, qui . . . est, cum literis ad pacem . . . valebat. Cum autem regnasset . . . . transmigravit. Sperandum est . . . . . corde suo, ut prætangitur, terram legavit decem libratarum. Et, quod . . . . suam venientes, qui secundum . . . nec eos mutire permittebat. Item, vitam suam in confessione et juribus Christianis terminavit.[7]

---

[1] Ovid, Epp. ex Ponto, lib. ii. 7, 11.

[2] *baronum ignoranti*] ignoranti baronum, MS., but marked to be transposed.

[3] *persuasit*] persuavit, MS.

[4] *evangelistæ*] euuangeliste, MS.

[5] *Facta*] Facto, MS.

[6] *redditum*] reditum, MS.

[7] In the margin is added the following note by Matthew Paris: "Capellæ de infirmaria Sancti Albani contulit reliquias de sancto Cosma vel Damiano."

A.D. 1216. *De prima coronatione Henrici Tertii, Anglorum regis.* fol. 48

Defuncto Johanne . . . . et turba nimis, ut . . . feliciter coronarent. In crastino autem legatus supradictus, associatis supradictis, duxit . . . . evangeliis[1] et multis reliquiis, quod . . . ecclesiæ omnibus diebus vitæ suæ. Juravit etiam . . . . solent decantari. Expletis . . . . ubi omnes epulabantur, spe concepta meliori. Coronatus est . . . et Judæ. Rex autem . . . . donaria magna, ita . . . adhærerent. Regi igitur Henrico . . . . favorabilem, nobiles regni certatim convolando protinus adhæserunt. Castrorum . . . . ceperunt obediendo famulari. Censuerunt . . . . præparantes contra Ludowicum, castra sua cœperunt optime communire. Animabat . . . . complicibus videbant et audiebant solempniter excommunicari.[2] Ludowicus autem ac barones . . . obsidione castri Doverensis, cum de morte . . . sibi jam penitus subjugassent. Una igitur dierum Ludowicus credens fidelitatem et constantiam Hubert de Burgo per avaritiam suis nutibus inclinare, significavit eidem ut ipsum multis honoraret possessionibus, si castrum ilico redderet; sin autem, ipsum et omnes obsessos, et primum fratrem suum, Thomam de Burgo, quem tenebat in vinculis, suspendio condempnaret. Addidit[3] insuper, quod rex J[ohannes] interiit. Ad quod respondit Hubertus, quod antea suspenderetur ipse Hubertus, et frater ejus Thomas, et totum genus,[4] quam talem faceret proditionem; "Dovera enim clavis est Angliæ et repagulum." Et addidit, "Si dominus meus rex J[ohannes] mortuus sit, heredem habet manifestum." Ludowicus autem, cum hæc audisset, recessit ab obsidione. In crastino autem sancti Martini obsedit castrum Hertfordiæ, quod Walterus de Godarvilla resignavit ei, qui erat ibi castellanus, salvis personis et armis obsessorum. Redditoque . . . . murmur inter indigenas et alienigenas, et diatim cœperunt naturales regis homines a Ludowico recedere; et patuit veritas revelationis Londoniis propalatæ. Eodem tempore, die . . . . marcarum. Ludowicus obsedit castrum de Berkamestude, quod et in suam recepit potestatem, salvis personis et rebus obsessorum. Et sic per Sanctum Albanum transitum faciens, homagium ab [abbate][5] habere voluit, nec potuit; et sic Londonias pervenit.

[Margin notes: H. A. ii. 195. — Ibid. ii. 196. — Ibid. ii. 197. — Loyalty of Hubert de Burgh in refusing to yield up Dover castle. — fol. 48 — The siege raised. — 12 Nov. — Hertford castle surrendered. — H. A. ii. 200. — Berkamstead castle taken. — Louis visits St. Alban's.]

M°.CC°.XVII°. Juvenis rex Henricus . . . Marescallo, regis H. A. ii. 201.

[1] *evangeliis*] ewangeliis, MS.

[2] *excommunicari*] excommunicare, MS.

[3] *Addidit*] Addit, MS.

[4] *genus*] ge, MS.

[5] *abbate*] A blank is left in the MS. for this word.

et regni custode. Exierunt de castro Montis-Sorelli quidam rapinis intendentes; quod cum cognovisset castellanus de Notingham,[1] exivit cum suis, et compulit eos in fugam, multos autem cepit et interemit. Falcasius, collectis undecunque viribus, abbatiam Sancti Albani invasit, et villam deprædatus est in nocte Sancti Vincentii. Quod non fuerat impune perpetratum. Unde in visione nocturna perterritus, mane venit in capitulum, ut absolveretur; unde a singulis fratribus disciplinam absolutus suscepit. Apud Wauberge similiter factus est impetus vehemens et repentinus a Falcasio et suo comitatu; ubi captus de parte baronum Rogerus de Colevilla, et multi milites et servientes. Nuncii Ludowici, qui pro eo steterant . . . . a papa. Hac igitur de causa statutæ sunt treugæ ad horam inter regem et L[udowicum]. Transfretante igitur Ludowico, plus et plus patuit Francorum superbia. Et venerunt ad fidelitatem regis, Willelmus, comes Saresbiriensis, W[illelmus], comes Harundelliæ, W[illelmus], comes Warenniæ, et alii multi dicto regi, juranti[2] et promittenti in anima sua illis omnia bona;[3] qui deinceps fideliter et immutabiliter domino suo regi famulantes, fideliter adhæserunt. Sed et magnus . . . . mutilavit. Obsidetur castrum Montis-Sorelli. Unde, ad petitionem comitis Wintoniæ Saeri, cujus castrum erat, exierunt ad subventionem castri ab urbe Londoniarum . . . armatorum, habentes . . . Marescallum exercitus, comitem . . . multis. Moventes igitur castra per Sanctum Albanum, et quæque obvia deprædantes, tandem ad castrum memoratum venientes et obsidionem solventes, tandem Lincolniam pervenerunt, castrumque obsederunt. Cum autem hæc agerentur, Willelmus, Marescallus magnus, regis et regni custos, de consilio legati et Petri, Wintoniensis episcopi, fecit congregari omnes regis amicos et fideles; Lincolniamque hostiliter venientes, ut brevibus multa concludam, omnes regis inimicos vel in fugam compulerunt, vel vinculis constrictos carceri manciparunt. Comes autem Perticensis excerebratus, contemptibiliter est sub cespite sepultus. Hujus autem rei seriem, tam de satisfactione Falcasii et visione, quam hujus belli executione, si quis plenius scire desiderat, librum inspiciat super hiis prolixius declarantem.[4] Capta igitur civitate, victores gratia Dei abutentes, milites in cives, legatus in clerum, tirannice ac immisericorditer sævierunt. Capti sunt ex baronibus capitaneis, Saerus, comes Wintoniæ, Robertus filius-

Marginal notes: A.D. 1217. The garrison of Montsorel defeated. Faukes [de Breauté] ravages St. Alban's. 22 Jan. Foray at Wabridge. Ibid. ii. 205. Truce between king Henry and Louis. Many barons join the king. Ibid. ii. 206. Siege of Mountsorel. fol. 49 a. Ibid. ii. 207. Siege of Lincoln. Defeat of the barons by the royalist forces. Death of the count of Perche. Chief barons captured.

[1] *Notingham*] Notinham, MS.

[2] *juranti*] jurananti, MS.

[3] *bona*] A verb is here omitted, perhaps *restituere*.

[4] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, pp. 292–296, and cf. *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 204–213.

A.D. 1217. Walteri, Henricus de Boun . . . Lincolniæ. Capti sunt insuper barones, Ricardus . . . . . quos longum foret, licet strenuos et præclaros, dinumerare, nedum eorum nomina paginæ[1] huic commendare.[2] Quod audientes qui castrum Montis-Sorelli tenuerunt, castrum relinquentes, aufugerunt; quod rex ilico jussit dirutum complanari. Quod cum Ludowico, qui jam de transmarinis partibus redierat, et Londoniis morabatur, innotuisset, doluit supra modum, [et][3] patri suo, Francorum regi, ut de remedio tanti doloris cogitaret, ilico misso nuncio festino, supplicans et lacrimabiliter persuadendo. Cumque ad patrem . . . pervenissent, tam illa quam ille efficaciter de ultione cogitantes, ccc^{tos}. strenuos milites cum innumera armatorum manu in Angliam destinarunt. Quæ regem Angliæ latere minime valuerunt; qui et eis obviare, et Londonias proposuit obsidere. Die igitur sancti Bartholomæi classis Francorum, ad succursum Ludowici, Eustachio . . . Londoniarum conductam Ludowico præsentaret. Ingressi autem . . . Angliam velut aura fortunata, vehementer urgens impellebat; sed . . . ignorabant. Habuerunt namque naves magnas . . . naves habuerunt, sed optime communitas. Cum autem Hubertus de Burgo, custos Doveriæ,[4] ab alto falesiæ supercilio, vices agens excubitoris, considerans, de adventu eorum certificaretur, dixit episcopo . . . aliis, quos illuc rex destinaverat,[5] "Quid agendum? Si gens ista impune applicet, regnum confundetur. Summopere . . . mari obviare, qui maris sunt ignari. Accingimini et . . . . aut navale bellum experientes. Hubertus igitur . . . responsis, reintrans castrum, divertit a loco paululum, et, accito Luca, capellano et confessore suo, confessus est ei plene cum lacrimis peccata sua; acceptis . . . viatico communivit. Induensque[6] audaciam . . . . . affici et torqueri, antequam, etiam me ad vos acclamante . . . Franco reddatis, vel alicui regis inimico. Clavis enim regni est et tutela." Ipsi autem . . . concessunt. Acceptis igitur . . . . . super litus Doverense stantibus magnatibus et expectantibus, "Si hostes vestri de nobis . . . . . ascendant; ita ut nec eorum unus evadat; et sanguinem nostrum de manibus[7] eorum requirite vindicantes. Vos autem, episcopi, absolvite nos, orantes pro nobis." Erant autem nutui ejus omnes naves

Mountsorel razed.

Prince Louis sends to his father for aid.

24 Aug.

Bravery of Hubert de Burgh on the approach of the French fleet.

Ibid. ii. 212.

Ibid. ii. 216.

Ibid. ii. 217.

fol. 49 b

Ibid. ii. 218.

[1] *paginæ*] pegine, MS.
[2] *commendare*] comendare, MS.
[3] *et*] Omitted in MS., but evidently required here.
[4] *Doveriæ*] Dovrie MS.
[5] *destinaverat*] destinaverat, ait, MS., but the last word is superfluous.
[6] *Induensque*] Iduensque, MS.
[7] *de manibus*] Repeated in MS. by error.

Anglorum intendentes et vexillo. Perrexerunt[1] igitur audacter naves ascendentes, et velificantes benedicebant eos episcopi. Obliquantes igitur dracenam, quæ vulgariter dicitur Lof, visa classe adversariorum, non obviam eis sed a dextris ibant, ac si vellent adire Calesiam. Quod cum . . . ait, "Scio, scio quid . . . latrunculi, credentes illam invenire immunitam; falluntur hoc opinando, sed magis fallentur, etsi essent plures in decuplo, dimicando." Et ecce Angli, maris periti, cum se . . . transverso sinistrantes, vento . . . alacriter, sinuatis velis et usque ad summitatem mali suspensis; et cum attigissent . . . violenter. Hubertus vero, cum suis amicis et sociis fidelibus ad unguem armatis, unam . . . vexilla Francorum nobilium, quæ noverat, quam specialiter insequebatur, et per hoc perpendit ipsam nobilibus fuisse refertam, attigit, attraxit, et attractam agili saltu intravit. Et qui . . . antennas, et maxime anguinas malum et velum sustinentes; et cecidit[2] . . . irretitas. Angli super eos discurrendo suppeditantes, cos cultellis et lanceis confoderunt; et cum eos detegerent, nobilioribus . . . ceteros conciderunt, et detruncatos in mare projecerunt. Philippus vero de Albineto et milites et balistarii, atque sagittarii cum fundibalariis, in Francos tela mortifera cum lapidibus infatigabiliter transmittentes, nimium ex obstantibus stragem exercuerunt. Habuerunt . . . . excæcarunt. Fuit[3] inter . . . . in brevi fuerat penitus infirmata. Nam ubi . . . . . mergebantur. Spes auxilii aut fugæ non imminebat.[4] Unde multi, ne caperentur ab hostibus trucidandi, sese sponte, quasi mergi, in maris fluctus projecerunt . . . voluntate adversariorum capi, incarcerari, dimendi,[5] vel interimi, secundum illud Philosophi.[6] "Hostium . . . mori." Angli igitur . . . . intruserunt; perpendentes veraciter, quod si prospere applicuissent, Anglis minime pepercissent. Inter ceteros . . . quæsitus Eustachius Monachus, multumque desideratus, proditor . . . nequissimus. Erat autem Flandrensis natione, aliquando portans habitum religionis, sed pro hereditate consequenda, fratre suo sine liberis præmortuo, relicto . . . . factus est, et fructus . . . . caput ejus amputavit. Cum autem Hubertus, victor miraculosissimus, ad . . . . solempniter et dicentes, "Benedictus qui venit in nomine Domini."[7] Magnates insuper expectantes, ut . . . argento, equis et armis, cum

A.D. 1217.

Engagement with the French ships.

Eustace the Monk put to death.

d. ii.

).

l. 50 a.

l. ii.

).

l. ii.

[1] *Perrexerunt*] Perrexerunt, MS.

[2] *cecidit*] cedit, MS.

[3] *Fuit*] Probably a mistake for *Fit*, as in *Hist. Ang.*

[4] *imminebat*] imminebat, MS.

[5] *dimendi*] Originally written *pe*[illegible] *dimendi*, but the first syllable erased. We should probably read *perimi*.

[6] *Philosophi*] [illegible] *Hist. Angl.* ii. 220.

[7] Matt. xxi. 9.

A.D. 1217.

Names of the nobles at Dover.

. . . triumphantium. Nomina magnatum, tam episcoporum quam militum expectantium, hic duximus annotanda: Petrus fol. 50 b. Wintoniensis, Ricardus Saresbiriensis, Jocelinus Bathoniensis, Hugo Cicestrensis [episcopi];[1] magnus Angliæ Marescallus, comes Herefordiæ, comes Warranniæ, comes Albemarliæ; legatus Walo, circumiens provinciam in adjutorium[2] istorum.

Robert de Curtenai and others taken prisoners.

Hujus autem rei . . . . sibi Lincolniæ irrogato. Erant enim ibidem capti de nobilioribus[3] regni Francorum, Robertus scilicet de Curtenai, et alii multi vel submersi, vel interfecti, vel capti. Zelus quo tendat? Multi autem ex tunc Hubertum,

Envious enemies of Hubert de Burgh.

cui merito ascribebatur illa fortunata victoria, oderant invidentes et multimodos laqueos paraverunt, sicut in subsequentibus dilucidabitur.[4] Marescallus igitur . . . grandem, atque in fortitudine . . . . non possunt odisse; et propter Ibid. ii. 221, 222. unum verbum miserabile, quod cum suspirio rex Francorum, pater Ludowici, cum certificaretur de periculo ejus, protulit, dicens, "Vivitne adhuc magnus Angliæ Marescallus?" Et

Confidence of the king of France in the Great Mareschal [earl of Pembroke].

responsum, "Vivit, et prosperatur regnum Angliæ gubernans dominando; et ipse rex et omnia regni negotia ejus jussu disponuntur." Et rex, "Non igitur sollicitor, nec est mihi de primogenito meo Ludowico formidandum." Quandam igitur . . . . procurarent. Hunc igitur . . . recedere. Mandavit ergo legato . . . mancipari. Quod cum provideretur, convenerunt rex Henricus, legatus et Marescallus, et alii multi ex una . . . . . consenserunt. Juravit in primis Ibid. ii. 222. Ibid. ii. 223. . . . . Philippum, regem Francorum, ad hoc induceret, ut [redderet][5] regi . . . cum rex foret, ipse idem illa restitueret et in pace dimitteret. Juravit insuper, quod omnia . . . . . fol. 51 a.

Terms of the peace concluded.

. . . . . sine difficultate, redemptione et censu liberentur. Nec quomodolibet puniretur vel improperium pateretur, hinc vel inde, qui huic vel alii adhæsisset, sed, secundum evangelium,[6] cujuslibet rancoris offendiculum a cordibus omnium utrobique remitteretur, et amici utrobique utriusque fierent amiciores.

Louis returns to London,

Hiis itaque gestis, Ludowicus a loco parlamenti hujus, scilicet quadam insula Thamisiæ, non procul a Stanes, Londonias revertitur . . . et a spe optinendi regnum penitus evacuatus; Ibid. ii. 224. servata ecclesiæ forma, datis mutuo osculis ad signum integritatis, in sincera amicitia. Inde a civibus . . . esterlingo-

and goes back to France.

rum, ad mare festinanter perveniens, in Galliam inglorius et tristis transfretavit. Cum autem . . . dixit eis, "Manifestum

---

[1] *episcopi*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *adjutorium*] adjutorum, MS.

[3] *nobilioribus*] nobiliorum, MS.

[4] *dilucidabitur*] dilucibabitur, MS.

[5] *redderet*] Omitted in MS. In *Hist. Angl.* the text reads, *induceret reddere.*

[6] *evangelium*] ewangelium, MS.

est, quod nostrum secretissimum consilium, de omnibus videlicet Anglis perpetuo exheredandis, in lucem prodiit. Quis igitur Anglis hoc misterium revelavit?" Et responsum fuit, "Vere scribitur in evangelio,[1] 'Nihil occultum, quod non reveletur.'"[2] Vicecomes . . . . . recesserint, qui eis mala pro bonis recompensare proposuimus." Nulla autem in memorato magnatum[3] concilio mentio facta fuit specialis de magistris Symone de Langetona, fratre archiepiscopi Cantuariensis S[tephani], qui cancellarius et specialis Ludowici[4] consiliarius extiterat, vel Gervasio de Hobrugge, in quos legatus ignobili tyrannide desævit. Similiterque in alios, non tantum clericos sed religiosos, qui aliquantulum, licet inviti, Ludowico favorem videbantur præstitisse; in quo facto juramenti tenorem nuper facti videtur violasse. De spoliis igitur spoliatorum, licet se sufficienter humiliassent, suos clericos, et etiam remotissime consanguineos[5] prorsus indignos, ditavit opulenter. Spoliati igitur curiam Romanam adire cogebantur, papalem misericordiam, quæ parva fuerat, experturi. Legatus autem, ut prætangitur, post victoriam ad votum optentam, ab Hugone, Lincolniensi episcopo, in Angliam nuper veniente, eo quod videbatur Francis consensisse, centum marcas extorsit.

A.D. 1217.

Persons excepted from the treaty of peace.

The clergy despoiled by the legate.

M°.CC°.XVIII°. Rex Henricus III. fuit ad Natale Domini apud Norhamtunam, qui est [annus][6] regni[7] ejusdem regis jam tertius; Falcasio regiæ festivitate necessaria ministrante. Erant autem . . . . contra regis prohibitionem adhuc detinere præsumpserunt. E quibus Robertus de Gaugi, dum castrum[8] de Neuwerc detinere præsumpsit, a Willelmo Marescallo confusus est et punitus. Eodem anno facta est motio universalis exercitus Christiani ab Achon usque ad Damiatam, ubi longa et sumptuosa nimis obsidione quædam turris cum catena miraculose capta est. Saphadinus, dierum malorum plenus, dolore cordis tactus, mortuus est, et sepultus in inferno. Cui successit filius ejus Coradinus . . . . . in acervos. Subjugata . . . Crucis, de diversis . . . . et nobili, natione Anglico[9] et Romanæ ecclesiæ cardinali, et Romanis multis. Venerunt et . . . recessit formidolosus. Venit et tunc . . . . sicut nec notitiam non tenemus. In vigilia autem sancti Andreæ . . .

fol. 51 *b*. H. A. ii. 226.

H. A. ii. 229.

Ibid. ii. 230.

Henry at Northampton.

Robert de Gaugi punished.

Proceedings at Damietta.

Death of Saphadin.

[1] *evangelio*] ewangelio, MS.

[2] Altered from Matt. x. 26.

[3] *magnatum*] magnato, MS., but *o* erased.

[4] *Ludowici*] Luduwici, MS.

[5] *consanguineos*] The last syllable is written by a recent hand over an erasure.

[6] *annus*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 226.

[7] *regni*] rengni, MS.

[8] *castrum*] cast, MS.

[9] *Anglico*] Anglici, MS.

A.D. 1218. 29 Nov. nimbis irruentibus, vento et choruscatione, intumuerunt . . . victualibus et omni supellectili[1] dampnose subvertit. Quæ . . . exturbavit. Dedicata est . . . episcopo, abbatibus, prioribus, et multis aliis ecclesiarum prælatis . . . . abbati ecclesiæ Sancti Albani. Tempore quoque . . . clericus, de familiarioribus[2] regis Johannis, qui diu in clientela illi militaverat . . . . cum ecclesia sua habuit, vel cum monachis, qui ipsum ad tantum apicem sullimarunt. Walo legatus, refertis[3] sarcinis, Romam remeavit. Pandulphus, per ipsum sullimatus in episcopum Norwicensem, in ejusdem successit officium. Rex proprium sigillum optinuit. Ibid. ii. 231.

Pandulph, succeeds Walo as legate.

M°.CC°.XIX°. Rex Henricus III. . . . . . Willelmus, Marescallus Angliæ magnus, senior, qui propter . . . gubernator, in fata concessit. Londoniis . . . ecclesiæ tumulatus, tali [epitaphio][4] meruit, dictante . . . astrologo, intitulari: fol. 52 a. H. A. ii. 231. Ibid. ii. 232.

"Sum . . . . Martem."

Conduct of the legate Pelagius.

Legatus apostolicæ sedis Pelagius exercitum Christianorum apud Damiatam existentium adeo infatuavit et exagitavit, ut in fine Saraceni, in confusionem universalis ecclesiæ et fidei Christianæ labefactionem, triumpharent. Quod in libris Ystoriarum plenius poterit reperiri.[5] Capta tamen fuit Damiata; sed

Capture of Damietta.

"Tota trahit series ex turpi fine pudorem."[6]

Siege of Toulouse.

Ludowicus, filius regis Francorum, obsedit Tholosam; sed post inanem et morosam obsidionem, fame et mortalitate invalescente in exercitu suo, inglorius recessit. Cives vero subito irrumpentes in eos, qui ultimi erant de exercitu, multos vel interemerunt vel turpiter mutilarunt. Nobilis vir comes Montisfortis Symon, qui dum fideliter et viriliter contra hæreticos Albigenses pro ecclesia dimicaret, et de rege Arragonum,[7] eorum fautore, miraculose triumpharet,[8] quodam lapide emisso de petraria, tanquam Dei martir, vitam temporalem pro æterna feliciter commutavit.[9] Qui tali epithaphio meruit intitulari:

Death of Simon, earl of Montfort.

"Dantur item . . . . atque Cato."[10] Ibid. ii. 240.

---

[1] *supellectili*] suppelectili, MS.

[2] *familiarioribus*] Partly on an erasure.

[3] *refertis*] refertus, MS., and *s* afterwards erased.

[4] *epitaphio*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[5] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, pp. 307, 308; and cf. *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 236, 237.

[6] From the "Nova Poetria" of Geoffrey de Vinesauf. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 276.

[7] *Arragonum*] Arroganum, MS.

[8] *triumpharet*] triumplaret, MS.

[9] The real date of his death is 25 June 1218. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 239.

[10] *qui dum fideliter . . Cato*] The whole of this passage has been written over an erasure.

M°.CC°.XX°. Rex Henricus III., anno regni sui [v°.],[1] fuit[2] ad Natale .... idem rex H[enricus] III. apud Westmonasterium, a Stephano ... populo regni, ne dignitas ecclesiæ suæ mutilaretur. In cujus rei testimonio et memoria exiit præceptum, ut ..... ad propria remeavit. Johannes, abbas de Fontibus, consecratus est in episcopum Elyensem. Sanctus Hugo ... canonizatus est. Eodemque tempore ... et martiris, in octabis apostolorum Petri ... passus est martir memoratus, præsentibus rege Henrico quampluribusque tam transmarinis quam cismarinis prælatis et magnatibus. Nec est visa sub cœlo tam celebris alicujus sancti translatio. Rex Henricus a Willelmo ... et de Sauveia. Rex incepit novam capellam Westmonasterii, eodem rege primum lapidem ponente in fundamento. Obierunt viri ... de Quinci, præmortuo Roberto, filio suo elegantissimo, et Henricus de Boun, comes Herefordiæ.

A.D. 1220.

A. ii. · I. ii. · I. ii. · I. ii. ·

John, abbat of Fountains, consecrated bp. of Ely.

Foundation of a new chapel at Westminster.

M°.CC°.XXI°. Rex Henricus ad Natale Domini, anno regni sui vi°., tenuit ... perturbare, a curia regis non licentiatus recedens, castellum de Biham victualibus et armis et servientibus communivit; et prædis intendens et rapinis, totam patriam, regis præceptis inobediens, perturbavit. Habuit autem ... necessitate ligaverat, Falcasium .... armatos, milvinos et lupinos, ut solitis prædis saginarentur. Sed cum tandem hæc præsumptio[3] ad notitiam regis et magnatum pervenisset, obsessos adeo coartarunt, quod regiæ misericordiæ exeuntes, sese post paucos dies præsentarunt. Venit interea ... ad regem. Quo cum, Pandulpho procurante, eo quod in guerra[4] regi fideliter militaverat, pacificatus est. Milites insuper et servientes .... fiducia iterum levarent calcaneum ... incentivum. Eisdem diebus orta est dissensio gravis et damnosa inter episcopum Dunelmensem, Ricardum, et priorem et conventum ejusdem domus. Cujus rei seriem, quia prolixam, ad librum transmitto Historiarum Annalium.[5] Rex construxit novum castrum apud Montem-Gomericum, ad reprimendum impetus comprovincialium discurrentium. Concesserunt magnates Angliæ regi scutagium, duas scilicet marcas, in eorum gravamen non modicum. Willelmus ... resignavit episcopatum, in ... Pauli. Cui successit Eustachius de Faucunberge. Cessavit legatio Pandulphi, ipso Romam non vacuis clitellis revertente. Rex Henricus III. dedit ..... regibus et utri-

A. ii. · I. 52 b. A. ii. · I. ii. · I. ii. ·

Dissension between the bishop of Durham and the convent.

Castle built at Montgomery.

Scutage granted.

Eustace bp. of London.

Return of the legate Pandulph.

---

[1] *v°.*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *fuit*] The first syllable is erased.

[3] *præsumptio*] presumpsisset, MS., but the last two syllables erased.

[4] *guerra*] guera, MS.

[5] *Historiarum Annalium*] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 311, and *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 245.

A.D. 1221. usque regni multis nobilibus, nuptiæ sunt solempniter celebratæ. Hubertus quoque . . . Margaretam.[1] Obiit Willelmus de Albineto, comes Harundeliæ, rediens a Damiata. Cujus corpus Thomas, monachus ecclesiæ Sancti Albani,[2] qui cum eo peregrinus extiterat, in Angliam transportavit, et in ecclesia prioratus de Wimundham, cujus idem comes patronus extiterat, honorifice tumulavit.

Death of William de Albini, earl of Arundel.

M°.CC°.XXII°. Rex Henricus III. fuit ad Natale Domini, anno regni sui vii°., apud Wintoniam, episcopo . . . ministrante. Quo etiam tempore Philippus de Albineto de Terra Sancta prospere remeavit.[3] Sarraceni recuperaverunt Damiatam, quam amiserant, pro qua tot nobilium sanguis est effusus. Eodem anno suspensus est quidam de nobilioribus civibus Londoniarum, Constantinus filius-Olavi, et nepos ejus cum eo; quia facientes quidam[4] discordiam palam proclamaverunt[5] edictum Francorum. Rex vero, ad majorem vindictam, magistratus plures deposuit, alios subrogando. Et ab aliquibus non minimam extorsit pecuniæ quantitatem. Hæc cum audisset Ludowicus, cui Constantinus fuerat amicissimus, doluit, et planxit eum. Eodem anno audita sunt tonitrua et variæ tempestates incomparabiles.

H. A. ii. 249.

Philip de Albini. Damietta recaptured. Constantine Fitz-Olaf hung.

fol. 53

Thunder-storms.

M°.CC°.XXIII°. Rex Henricus III., viii°. anno regni sui, fuit ad Natale Domini apud Oxoniam. Et postmodum . . . . et aliis magnatibus regni, ut libertates et liberas consuetudines regni, pro . . . suum, benigne confirmaret. Et sicut idem . . . . ad regem, xv°. die post Pascha. Anno sub eodem fuerunt multa et magna prœlia et hominum strages inter Willelmum Marescallum et Leolinum et ejus Walenses. Sed idem princeps Leolinus cum suis Walensibus in fine calculum reportavit deteriorem. Æstimati sunt enim de illis interfecti et vinculis mancipati Walensibus ad novem milia hominum, exceptis paucis per fugam elapsis in locis inaccessibilibus. Walterus, cognomento Maucler, consecratus . . . Eboracensis. Prorupit oleum . . . archiepiscopi. Circa festum beati Petri . . . idus Augusti, diem clausit extremum. Ipsius igitur . . . . ab Anglia. Ad hæc autem Ludowicus, quibusdam frivolis errorem

Henry at Oxford.

H. A. ii 253.

Hostilities in Wales.

Ibid. ii. 255.

Ibid. ii. 256.

[1] *Margaretam*] Marga . . . MS., the latter part of the name being erased.

[2] *Albani*] Interlined by a much later hand.

[3] This is a mistake. Philip de Albini went to Palestine this year. See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 313, and *Hist. Angl.*

[4] *quidam*] dam, MS. A word beginning with *de* was at first written, and then erased.

[5] *proclamaverunt*] proclaverunt, MS.

suum pallians, respondit, dicens se Normanniam . . . . ad eam vellet venire . . . . dum imprisii sui et amici, tam clerici quam laici, immo et quidam civis Londoniensis, redditibus, possessionibus et omnibus honoribus spoliati, facti sunt per legatum suum exules et mendici. "Et memoratus civis, scilicet Constantinus, quia me amicum suum recognovit,[1] non sine mei maximo dedecore, est patibulo præsentatus. Libertates et liberas consuetudines, pro quibus barones sui justam guerram moverunt, et quas totiens juratum est inviolabiliter tenere, minime tenet. Immo nobiles suos odit et opprimit, patris sequens vestigia pedetentim. Et Londonienses, spretis eorum antiquis et novis pactis, frequentibus talliis et angariis, quasi servos ultimæ conditionis, deprædatur et depauperat. Alia autem, quæ relatu sunt indigna, prætermitto. Dum igitur in pectore . . . transgressor optinebit. Dignus enim . . . conculcat." Hanc igitur audientes tyrannidem archiepiscopus et episcopi, voluerunt hiis respondere, [sed][2] non sunt exauditi. Et cum non possent aliud responsum reportare, cum sannis . . . audierant relaturi. Quæ cum rex audiens intellexisset, doluit et pœnituit eum vehementer tam favorabilem fuisse Ludowico, cum in retiaculum suum incidisset; imponens hoc affirmative per magnum Marescallum[3] fuisse machinatum. Surrexit murmuratio non modica inter magnates regni et Hubertum de Burgo, Angliæ justiciarium, et quasi regis pedagogum specialem, eo videlicet quod non regni negotia fideliter, sed sua, non reipublicæ sed sui ipsius honores ampliaret et possessiones, elatus propter gratiam quam Deus ei fecerat in mari. Alias autem causas si quis scire desiderat, librum aliquem de Historiis Annalibus sibi quærat intuendum.[4] Apud Bromholm, domum scilicet religiororum monachorum nigrorum, crebruerunt divina miracula, ad gloriam et honorem Dominicæ Crucis et Passionis. Johannes, rex Jerosolimitanus . . . . . civiliter suscepit et honoravit . . . de thesauro affluenter distribuit. Magister [Simon][5] de Apulia, episcopus Exoniensis, et Willelmus de Cornhulle [episcopus Cestrensis][6] obierunt.

A.D. 1223. Complaints of Louis VIII. against Henry.

fol. 53 b.

Ibid. ii. 257.

Henry repents his leniency to Louis.

Murmurs against Hubert de Burgh.

Miracles at Bromholm.

Deaths of prelates.

H. A. ii. 260.

M°.CC° XXIIII°. Rex Henricus, anno regni sui nono, tenuit . . . . . festum suum, quasi æmulus, tenuit ex adverso, tumens . . . exigebat ab eodem. Archiepiscopus . . . tunc ibi habe-

---

[1] *recognovit*] recongnovit, MS.

[2] *sed*] Omitted in MS.

[3] *Marescallum*] Marescalum, MS.

[4] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 318.

[5] *Simon*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 260.

[6] *episcopus Cestrensis*] Supplied from the same.

A.D. 1224. bat episcopis . . . ecclesiæ invasores. Deinde misit sollempnes nuncios ad Legrecestriam, scilicet ad . . . . firmiter eisdem denuncians . . . . . et ejus complices suum defectum considerantes, videlicet quod non poterant contra regem a pari contendere, vel contra justiciarium, qui regiis inseparabiliter adhæsit lateribus, consternati sunt valde, et, usi salubriori consilio . . . castella sua, honores et . . . . . redderet resignata. Voluit profecto illorum sic fidelitatem experiri. Sed postquam illa rex clauso pugillo tenuit, noluit expansis digitis illa, licet postulantibus, reconsignare. Et hoc ex Huberti cautela consilium pullulavit, et ita comitis Cestriæ, qui[1] semper in occulto invidus oderat, multiformis proditoris ars artem fefellit. Consilium et subdolum inierunt multi, ut, rege ultramarinis partibus intendente, et Ludowico insurgente in Pictavia, moverent regi guerram; ut sic quasi inter duas molas[2] cum suo justiciario[3] contereretur. Erant autem . . . Albemarliæ, Falcasius cum suis ruptariis et castellanis,[4] maxime Bedefordensibus, Robertus de Veteri-ponte . . . Willelmus de Cantelupo, et alii quamplures alienigenæ, quorum personas et nomina propter eorum ignobilitatem dedignor[5] memorare, licet eos rex Johannes exaltasset et ditasset. Qui regem H[enricum] III. innocentem cupientes a fastigio regni[6] præcipitare, et, pace regni perturbata, solitis prædis et rapinis inhiare.[7] Sed Deus, in cujus manu corda sunt regum, aliter disposuerat. Eodem quoque anno . . . reservans, propter quod Deus abbreviavit dies suos, duxit exercitum grandem ad Rupellam, instinctu proditorum prædictorum, ut et illam . . . vel saltem proditione, flexis quomodolibet ad nutum suum Pictavensibus, sibi subjugaret. Quo cum . . . . forentque ei ex tunc intendentes,[8] et desererent regulum fide omnique[9] carentem probitate, qui suos conculcat undique naturales. Quod cives audientes, et medullitus trutinando intelligentes, et ne rex filius patrissaret formidantes, civitatem illam præclaram regi Francorum subito, nescientibus et irrequisitis rege et suis optimatibus, tanquam nativi proditores tradiderunt, pro tot bonis, quæ eis rex impenderat, tantum malum recompensantes. Significaverant enim conspiratores supradicti clanculo, quod rex nullo modo

Margin notes: Ibid. ii. 261. — fol. 54 a. — The barons conspire to dethrone Henry. — Ibid. ii 262. — Rochelle delivered up to Louis.

[1] *qui*] On an erasure. We should apparently read *quem*.
[2] *molas*] mo, MS.
[3] *justiciario*] justiario, MS.
[4] *castellanis*] castelanis, MS.
[5] *dedignor*] dedignorum, MS.
[6] *regni*] At first written *rege*, then *regni*.
[7] A verb seems wanting in this sentence, or else we should read *cupiebant*.
[8] *intendentes*] Originally written *de cetero intendentes*, but *cetero* afterwards erased.
[9] *que*] Interlined.

poterat eis suffragari; et quod haberet brachia plena in brevi de guerra in Anglia; et quod præmunita sunt optime quædam contra eum castella, quorum primum fuerat castrum Bedefordiæ, quod eum per unum ad minus annum detinebit. Interim magnates regni, quorum corda exasperaverant rex et suus justiciarius, discurrent non segniter[1] omnes circumjacentes provincias, et consequenter totum regnum occupabunt. Sic enim prælocutum fuerat et præcircinatum. Quod cum audissent rex et regni optimates naturales, inconsolabiliter doluerunt. Est enim Rupella introitus et exitus, clavis et conclave, portus et porta regni Anglicani et Pictaviæ, ubi reges . . . regionum, quæ orientem aut austrum respiciunt, applicare . . . via hostili repagulo . . . tam in civitate quam castello . . . et servientes, qui crebro subsannantes, Pictavenses,[2] et maxime Rupellenses,[3] repulerunt, et de proditione improperantes angariaverunt. Sic sic igitur rex Francorum sine ulla sanguinis effusione, de maxima parte Pictaviæ securitate suscepta, gaudens ad propria remeavit, de Pictavensium proditione solita subridendo. Per idem tempus . . . . et aliis nobilibus regni, de negotiis tractaturi. Voluit enim rex, ut dicebat, uti ex tunc penitus consilio magnatum suorum fidelium de terris transmarinis, quas rex Francorum, de quo bona speraverat se accepturum, de quo mala pro bonis doluit reaccipisse, [occupaverat].[4] Fuerunt eodem tempore apud Dunstapliam justiciarii[5] itinerantes, Martinus . . . disseisina.[6] Unde Falcasius inter alios ibi, qui multos spoliaverat et injuste depauperaverat, cecidit in . . . . . sicut consueto, jussit . . . . justiciarios caperent memoratos, atque . . . carceralem. Justiciarii vero talia . . . fortuitus raptim deducebat. Inter quos . . . . . mancipatus. Rumore igitur divulgato, venit uxor ejusdem Henrici . . . concilio, de injuria viro suo irrogata cum lacrimis querelam deposuit. At omnes . . . . obsessos excommunicaverunt. Quod tamen ante multipliciter promeruerunt. Erat enim illud castrum spelunca latronum et caverna regulorum. Quod factum est . . . . nocte continuatus. In quo certamine duo nobiles, præter plebeios et vulgares, perierunt. Tandem . . . . cupiebant, omnes incendio pariter consumpsissent. Tandem . . . . . postularunt. Sed quia hoc nimis sero . . . addicti. Suspensi sunt igitur inter . . . . . a terra librati sunt, sed non usque ad mortem vel jugulationem suspensi. Henricus vero . . . .

A.D. 1224.

Movements of the rebel barons.

fol. 54 *b*.

Importance of Rochelle.

Council held by the king.

Ibid. ii. 263.

Ibid. ii. 264.

fol. 55 *a*.

Ibid. ii. 265.

[1] *segniter*] signiter, MS.
[2] *Pictavenses*] Pictaventes, MS.
[3] *Rupellenses*] Rupellentes, MS.
[4] *occupaverat*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*
[5] *justiciarii*] The first syllable has been erased.
[6] *disseisina*] disseina, MS.

A.D. 1224. gratias exhibebat. Durante vero obsidione, distractæ [sunt][1] res omnimodæ Falcasii, blada, instaura, utensilia, maneriorum possessiones, et omnia quæ poterant inveniri. Falcasius vero, spe falsa seductus, et promissionibus comitis Cestrensis et suorum complicum alienigenarum, . . . deceptus Falcasius, cum de . . . . jacto saxo, beatus quem . . . Albanus, immo Deus per ipsum! Sic enim in nocturna visione, sicut prælibatum est.[2] Erat autem . . . scriptori seriatim enarravit, testimonium perhibens certum de prædictis; et scimus quia verum est testimonium ejus. Post fletum autem et profunda suspiria deprecabatur . . . regem tutius duceretur. Quod . . . apud Bedeford duceretur, corruens . . . periculosis sibi et patri suo in necessitate impensis, misericordiam subiret, non judicium. Tunc . . . . Eustachii, Londoniensis episcopi, donec quid de corpore suo fieret et judicialiter diffiniretur. Quem cum . . . subridendo ait Falcasio . . . . caput meum." Et cum Ibid. ii. hæc dixisset, vidit . . . . per ordinem suspensos, lacrimabiliter 266. gemuit[3] et dixit, "O quam . . . severior!" ac si sciret illud Gregorianum, "Lento gradu divina procedit severitas, sed tarditatem gravitate compensat." Et addidit dicens, "Heu mihi! fol. 55 b quod in tantum protrahitur infelix vita . . . perierunt." De hoc quidem casu quidam sic ait,

"Perdidit . . . . ab ævo."

Episcopus vero Londoniensis, sicut homo misericors fuit et jocundus, superaddit prædictis, dicens eidem Falcasio sic de provocatione sanctorum,

"Si de tot . . . . unus eris."[4]

Hanc itaque feci digressionem, ut viderat quilibet impius quantum decipitur omnis qui in malitia, dum ei conceditur potestas, in ea gloriatur. *Consecration of bishops.* Consecrantur in episcopos, Alexander in Cestrensem episcopum, Romæ, a domino papa; Willelmus de Briwere in Exoniensem, Radulphus de Noville in Cicestrensem,[5] qui factus est regis cancellarius. Eodem anno quidam senilis . . . . Constantinopolitanum promotus fuerat. Ibid. ii. Cui multi fidem perhibebant et favorem, et etiam fecerunt, 267. *An impostor hung.* tanquam domino . . . . . nimis patibulo suspensus. Et fecit comitissa duos veteres canes hinc inde collateraliter suspendi, et fimo equino cadavera suffumigari. Si autem sophisticus fuisset ille senex vel non, veraciter non diffinimus.

Henry at Westminster. M°.CC°.XXV°. Rex Henricus III., anno regni sui x°., fuit ad Natale Domini apud Westmonasterium, præsentibus clero et

[1] *sunt*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] See *ante*, p. 239.

[3] *gemuit*] et gemuit, MS., but *et* erased.

[4] Ovid. Epp., ii. 43.

[5] *Cicestrensem*] Cecestr̄., MS.

populo, et regni magnatibus. Solempnitate igitur, ut decuit, completa, Hubertus justiciarius . . . et omnibus aliis ad hoc congregatis . . . transmarinis a Ludowico perjuro et Pictavensibus, secus quam deceret[1] stupefactis. Ex quo casu non solum . . . sint in casu vel causa . . . necessaria. Petiit ergo . . . . . . et concio tota, habita . . . licet id grave eis gravissimum foret quod postulasset . . . et totiens concessas, omni amplius cavillatione amota, concedere voluisset. Annuit igitur rex benigne, precibus ac rationibus ductus suorum fidelium. Cartis quoque protinus conscriptis et sigillatis, ad singulos Angliæ comitatus cartæ protinus diriguntur. Et ad . . . . forestæ. Quæ in Historiis Annalium[2] locis pluribus poterit sedulus[3] quisque reperire.[4] Tunc constitutus est . . . . literatorio, ab omnibus observari jubebantur. Eodem anno, in die . . . . civibus porrexit. In quibus . . . . multi de partibus illis, nescientes cui fructuosius militarent, quibus cum stipendia . . . . et Cornubiæ literis suis inscribebatur. Dicebaturque secreto, sed non fuit palam divulgatum,[5] veraciter inter nobiles vel plebeios, quod rex totam Wasconiam ei dederat et incartaverat. Itaque . . . . castra Wasconiæ, et rebellium castra potenter subegit. Castrum Regulæ . . . . revocavit. Nec adhuc certum fuit, si rex illi Wasconiam dedisset, ut dominus terræ vocaretur et esset. Rex autem Francorum . . . . et ibi morabatur, hostiliter et potenter venientes, comitem . . . adjunctis sibi quibusdam . . . . fastigiose satis processit. Sed comes . . . . in fugam compulit inimicos. Quos . . . captis, vulneratis vel interfectis. Eodemque anno Johannes . . . de Burgo. Mense Martio, de communi concilio regis et magnatum, Falcasius, etsi turpissimæ mortis reus esset, tamen quia pro rege J[ohanne] tempore werræ se multis opposuit laboribus et periculis, non membris mutilatus est vel vita privatus, sed perpetuo Angliam abjuravit. Præcepit quoque rex comiti Warenniæ, ipsum . . . impositum ac irrediturum ventis committeret et Neptuno. Falcasius autem, navem ascensurus super litus, dixit comiti recessuro, "Salutate dominum meum regem vice mea, veraciter dicens ei, quod quicquid feci, instinctu feci quorumdam magnatum suorum." Et suspiciens et suspirans addidit, "Maledicatur . . . nominare. Sed fecerunt de me primitivum vadi temptatorem. Sciatque rex, quod omnes illos barbaros et

Marginalia (left): l. ii. — 56 a. ii. — ii. — ii. — 56 b. — ii.

Marginalia (right): A.D. 1225. — The Charters of Liberties are sent to each county. — Report that the king had granted Gascony to the earl of Cornwall. — Faukes is sentenced to exile. — His message to Henry.

[1] A word is here erased in the MS.

[2] *Historiis Annalium*] See notes in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 157, 269.

[3] *sedulus*] sedelus, MS.

[4] *reperire*] reperere, MS.

[5] *divulgatum*] divulgatum est, MS., but *est* is superfluous.

A.D. 1225. ignobiles, de mendicitate ad honorum fastigia sullevavit." Ipse igitur Falcasius Angliam salutans a tergo, Romam petiturus, illico . . . . ei in tribulatione solatium. Eodemque anno, ad mensem . . . . carta contentum fuerat intermissum. Hæc autem infirmando[1] peccavit Robertus Passelewe, et alii de sua sequela, mortalissime; sed hoc in sequentibus suo loco declarabitur. Circa eosdem dies . . . . custodia deputavit. Per Ibid. ii. 274.

The earl of Salisbury preserved from shipwreck.

idem tempus . . . transmarinis commorabatur, in Angliam remeavit. Sed maris immania perpessus pericula, per cereum quem in mari vidit, qui tenebras illuminavit, liberatus est. Deprehensumque est illum esse veraciter cereum, quem idem invenit ante altare beatæ Mariæ jugiter comes ardentem. Sed hoc alibi[2] prolixius memoriæ perpetuæ, comite dictante, commendatur.[3] Magister Otto . . . pro ecclesiæ Romanæ nego- Ibid. ii. 275. tiis . . . . responderent. Eodem tempore dictus magister fol. 57 O[tto] ex parte . . . . caritate. Ad quod rex cum respondisset, torvo respiciens oculo, negative, et hoc præcise, tacuit O[tto], et ad alias[4] se transtulit sermocinationes. Cepit idem O[tto][5] ab . . . marcas, nomine procurationis. Cum Ibid. ii. 276. communiter relatum fuisset, quod comes Saresbiriensis in mari dimergeretur, exegit Hubertus a rege, ut uxorem . . . nepoti Ibid. ii. 277. suo, viro superbo videlicet et proditori. Sed cum comitissa nullo modo ad consensum potuisset inclinari, applicuit comes sanus et incolumis. Facta est igitur ex tunc præsumptio . . . . fecisset, cœpit Huberti fama diutius denigrari, prout sequens sermo declarabit.

Henry at Winchester.

M°.CC°.XXVI°. Rex Henricus III. fuit ad Natale apud Wintoniam, anno regni sui undecimo, præsentibus . . . . dies decu- H. A. i. 278. buit desperatus. Venit . . . clero et magnatibus . . . responderet. Apertis igitur literis, magister O[tto] contenta palam recitavit. In quibus allegavit . . . vetustissimum,[6] scilicet avaritiæ, et nec potest aliquis negotium . . . et munerum exhibitione . . . debent patris inopiam . . . . abbate tantundem. Hæc omnia audientes prælati, responsum suum posuerunt in ore . . . archidiaconi, qui sic ait, "Domine . . . Ibid. ii. 279. regem specialiter tangunt, qui præ infirmitate non est præsens. Tangunt etiam generaliter omnes . . . prælatos. Cum igitur rex et multi episcopi et prælati sint absentes, vobis nunc respondere . . . quia hoc in præjudicium fieret præla-

---

1 *infirmando*] imfirmando, MS.

2 See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 325, and *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 274, 5.

3 *commendatur*] comendatur, MS.

4 *alias*] alios, MS.

5 *Otto*] After this word, *cepit* is repeated by error.

6 *vetustissimum*] vetussimum, MS.

torum." Et dum talia dicerentur, venit Johannes, regis Marescallus, et cum eo alii regis nuncii, ex parte ejus . . . . . A.D. 1226.
fol. 57 b. ecclesiæ obligarent, unde . . . in medio Quadragesimæ . . . . sortiretur. Sed illi absque [regis][1] et aliorum absentium assensu . . . ad propria remearunt. Dictumque illi O[ttoni] in aure secretius, quod si iteraret[2] petita, cum non possit sitis sedari avarorum, citius depauperabitur Romana curia quam ditabitur, et asperius responsum acciperet negativum. Verumtamen aggressus est aliquos de prælatorum præstantioribus super hoc, quid pro responso darent summo pontifici. Dictumque ei fideliter in secreto, quod expectarent, donec vidissent quid alia regna facerent prius, ut sic plenius quid agendum edocerentur. Dominus enim papa ad similem exactionem legatum, scilicet dominum Romanum, destinaverat. Magister igitur O[tto], cum, misso nuncio festino in Galliam, didicisset quod socius suus Romanus durum ibi et negativum responsum reportasset, et durius formidabat, siluit, et doluit propter hoc in Angliam advenisse. Et ecce literæ a domino papa transmissæ eidem O[ttoni] præsentantur. In quibus contine-

Reply given to the legate Otho touching the pope's demands.

His recall.

ibid. ii. 84. batur . . . enervata. Quibus cum ira in ignem projectis, compositis ex collecta pecunia refertis clitellis, ilico repatriavit. Similiter legatus in Francia Romanus tristis et inglorius infectoque[3] negotio est repulsus. Eodemque tempore Willelmus, comes Sarisbiriensis, glorioso fine[4] vitam terminavit. Ricardus vero de Marisco, religiosorum malleus et ecclesiæ suæ deprædator, e contra fine miserabili apud Burgum vitam pomposam et inutilem consummavit. Cujus epitaphium[5] huic paginæ, quia conveniens, duximus inserendum :

Failure of the legate Romanus in France. Deaths of the earl of Salisbury and bp. of Durham.

Epitaph of the bishop.

Culmina qui cupitis,	Laudes pompasque sititis,
Est sedata sitis,	Si me pensare velitis.
Qui populos regitis,	Memores super omnia sitis,
Quod mors immitis,	Non parcit honore potitis.
Vobis præpositis,	Similis[6] fueram, bene scitis,
Quod sum, vos eritis,	Ad me currendo venitis.

Ejus autem corpus delatum est Dunelmum tumulandum. Elegerunt autem monachi loco ejus subrogandum Willelmum

The elections made of his

[1] *regis*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.* The words *et aliorum* are partly erased.

[2] *iteraret*] iteret, MS.

[3] *infectoque*] imfectoque, MS.

[4] *fine*] finem, MS.

[5] This epitaph is omitted in *Hist. Angl.*, but is added by Matthew Paris to the text of the Greater Chronicle in B. C. (ed. Wats, p. 332). In the former it is headed, "Epitaphium Ricardi de Marisco, episcopi Dunelmi, editum a quodam monacho Dunelmensi."

[6] *similis*] simul, MS., but corr. from B. C.

A.D. 1226. [Wigorniensem][1] archidiaconum, et iterum Thomam, eorum
successor are annulled by the king.
priorem, quos rex quibusdam frivolis exceptionibus cassari
procuravit. Pullulante tunc temporis hæresi Albigensium,
rex Francorum Ludowicus, super ipsos cruce signatus, die
28 May. The king of France marches against the count of Toulouse.
Ascensionis exercitum suum et cruce signatorum congregavit,
ut Christi injuriam illuc hostiliter iturus vindicaret. Qui
congregatus æstimatus est ad l. milia militum et equitum,
præter pedites innumerabiles. Legatus vero, in primis comitem
Tholosanum et omnes ejus fautores publice excommunicans,
totam terram suam supposuit interdicto, licet ipse comes
Siege of Avignon.
omnimodam humiliter satisfactionem optulisset. Avinionem
igitur perveniens rex cum exercitu, cum denegatus ei fuisset
civitatis ingressus, iratus obsedit eam; ubi factus fuit assultus
acerrimus, dum . . . valeat, [experitur].[2] Cumque tempus Ibid. ii 287.
inutiliter protraheretur, procurante comite Tholosano, deficientibus
alimentis, hominum in exercitu innumera periit multitudo.
Louis retires to the abbey of Montpancier.
Fame . . . exercitus nimis, licet valde numerosus. Divertente
igitur rege ad quandam abbatiam non multum inde
distantem, Muntpancier vocatam, ut ibi, donec caperetur civitas,
et ipse interim respiraret, venit ad eum illuc Henricus,[3]
comes Campaniensis . . . . remeandi. Quod cum rex non concessisset, Ibid. ii 288.
multiplicatis hinc conviciis et inde, tandem proruperunt
verba in infamiam Blanchiæ reginæ probrose redundantia.
Irato igitur rege vehementer, febris magis accenditur; et, ut fol.
His death.
dicitur, eidem regi veneno propinato, declinavit ad mortem.
Quo mortuo, comes iratus recedens jactitavit se iram vel
minas regis minime formidare; unde nota de morte regis non
Avignon delivered up through treachery.
mediocriter denigrabatur. Et dum regis mors celaretur per
viii[a]. dies, legatus proditiose civitatem intrans, sub dolo et
mendacio eam Francis subjugavit. Regis autem visceribus in
Coronation of Louis IX.
prædicta abbatia tumulatis, corpus solempnius, ut decuit, delatum
est sepeliendum. Defuncto igitur rege Ludowico, regina,
30 Nov.
de consilio legati et Franciæ magnatum, fecit filium suum,
puerum vix decennem, die sancti Andreæ in regem coronari.
Sinister rumours respecting the legate and queen Blanche.
Orta tunc temporis, secus quam deceret, falsa[4] infamia de
pudicitiæ læsione inter legatum et reginam Blanchiam, dispersa
est Parisiensium scolarium universitas, necnon et procerum
Franciæ fit dissidium[5] non mediocre. Hoc etiam anno
. . . ortus est, migravit ad Christum. Eoque anno Falcasius Ibid. 291.

---

[1] *Wigorniensem*] A blank is left here in the MS. See note in *Hist. Angl.* ii. 286.

[2] *experitur*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[3] *Henricus*] This is an error. See note in *Hist. Angl.* ii. 288.

[4] *quam . . . falsa*] On an erasure.

[5] *dissidium*] discidium, MS.

e contra exul et extorris, ad Tartara[1] ex hoc mundo, crapulatus de quodam pisce intoxicato, destinatur, et apud Sanctum Ciriacum tumulatur. Defunctique episcopi, Benedictus, Rofensis, et Pandulphus, Norwicensis. Pandulpho successit . . . scaccario, cujus promotionem, sicut et fratris sui Elyensis Galfridi, procuravit Hubertus justiciarius. A.D. 1226. Death of Faukes [de Breauté]. Ibid. ii. 292. Deaths of bishops.

M°.CC°.XXVII°. Rex Henricus III., anno regni sui xii°., ad Natale . . . Radingum. Et eisdem diebus obiit . . . profusus. Deinde rex . . . cives, consilio iniquorum adulatorum, et maxime Huberti de Burgo, justiciarii,[2] quod in suum præjudicium dederunt Ludowico, Franciæ heredi, a Londoniis recessuro, v. milia marcarum, jam ultione divina intoxicato, et in perjurio mortuo. Unde compulsi sunt ipsi cives, formidine peccati postposita et injustiæ, regi persolvere tantundem pecuniæ. Et hoc regem Francorum non latuit, vel e[3] consiliariorum; unde illa avaritia[4] et rapina odii occulti præbuit incentivum, et juramenti, ut dicebant Franci, læsionem. Ex tunc igitur fama Huberti justiciarii cœpit non tantum Londoniis sed per totam fœtere regionem, pristinos titulos turpiter commaculandoque diatim superbivit. Mense Februarii rex apud Oxoniam, . . . se jam legitimæ . . . . tutorem habuit Willelmum . . . excussit[5] de aliena voluntate et informatione;[6] et hoc per consilium Huberti justiciarii. Unde non jam mediocrium, sed multorum magnatum, promeruit indignationem. In eodem itaque . . . . et consignatæ, dum . . . . usurpatum. Facta est igitur super . . . omnes hujus perturbationis causam refundunt in justiciarium, et auctorem fuisse affirmarunt. Ut igitur odium regis incurreret . . . pedum [vestigia],[7] procurarunt. Tunc denunciatum . . . et aliis, prædicto Huberto omnia hæc procurante, ut qui suis . . . . coacti. Et sic diatim maledictiones cotidie super caput aggerabat, sicut . . . declarabit. Eodem anno, defuncto . . . . mortem suam, cum mortuus crederetur nec tamen erat . . . quod viveret adhuc, per . . . versificator,

H. A. ii. 292. Henry extorts money from the citizens of London. Evil fame of Hubert Burgh. Ibid. ii. 293. fol. 58 *b*. Ibid. ii. 294. Ibid. ii. 295.

"O pater . . . . vade mori."

Per idem tempus . . . . . negotio, propter quod fuerant destinati. Omnes . . . Franciæ pacificabantur. Comes insuper Britan-

---

[1] *Tartara*] Tartaria, MS.
[2] *justiciarii*] justiarii, MS.
[3] A blank space is left in MS. Perhaps we should read *ejus consiliarios*.
[4] *avaritia*] avaracia, MS.
[5] *excussit*] excusit, MS.
[6] *informatione*] informacionis, MS.
[7] *vestigia*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

A.D. 1227. niæ, cujus, ut dicebatur, [filiam][1] nuncii petebant regi Anglorum maritandam, nunciis . . . Francorum fœdus iniit, quod nullo modo poterat violare. Eodem quoque tempore, mense scilicet Maio, [Ricardus, frater regis][2] post multos et varios labores et expensarum profusiones, quas Wasconenses emunxerant,[3] rediit . . . susceptus. Henricus de Sanford . . . episcopatum promovetur. Nonas [Februarii][4] Hubertus justiciarius . . . comitatus. Eodem anno, in fine . . . . . præter Ibid. ii. 296.
valitudinarios et mulieres, profecti referuntur. Per idem . . . apparuit populo ad prædicationem congregato crux cum Ibid. ii. 297.
Crucifixo in aere . . . perlectæ, ut, quod incredibile relatu[5] fuit, testimonio fidedignorum crederetur. Diebus sub eisdem iter arripiunt viri nobiles Petrus . . . ad commodum multorum et salutem, et præcipue Anglorum, laudabiliter continuarunt. Romanorum autem . . . . . fortium armatorum, spe Ibid. ii. 298.
frustrata et infecto omni negotio, redierunt, et multo plures perierunt. Unde ex tunc, Deo . . . ei undique adversitates, tribulationes . . . prælatorum, Templariorum et Hospitalariorum odium et iram in se suscitavit, sicut sequens sermo declarabit. Miracula per sanctum Franciscum crebrescunt; unde Ordo Minorum etiam jam in Anglia floruit ampliatus. Magister Robertus de Bingham[6] . . . ecclesiæ. fol. 5[illegible] Ibid. ii. 299.

Order of Minorites flourishes.

Henry at York.

M°.CC°.XXVIII°. Rex Anglorum, Henricus III., anno regni sui xiii°., festum Nativitatis Dominicæ tenuit apud Eboracum. Cassata Romæ . . . postulatur. Rege ab Eboraco[7] versus H. A. 300.
Londonias properante, Marescalli et ballivi ejus, lucris turpiter et improbe inhiantes, mensuras bladi, vini et cervisiæ falsitatis arguentes, tam ab insontibus quam reis, nodum quærentes in scirpo,[8] non modicam pecuniam extorserunt. Quam quia sibi lucriferam sentiebant, consimilem emunctionem annuatim vel frequentius iterabant. Decisa est contentio . . . . . defuncto, alium; hoc tamen . . . . consensu canonicorum. Papa Gregorius . . . distulisset, tandem . . . . . præcepit. Imperator e contra per suas literas sese justificando, de ipso papa quamplurimum est conquestus, sententiam in eum fuisse latam injuriose. Hoc adjiciens[9] et exhortans[10] . . . Ibid. ii. 301.

Money extracted on account of false measures.

Complaints of the emperor against the pope.

[1] *filiam*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *Ricardus, frater regis*] Supplied from the same.

[3] *emunxerant*] emuncserant, MS.

[4] *Februarii*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.* In the MS. it was originally written *Novembris*, and afterwards erased.

[5] *relatu*] ralatu, MS.

[6] See note in *Hist. Angl.* ii. 299.

[7] *Eboraco*] Eborace, MS.

[8] *scirpo*] cirpo, MS.

[9] *adjiciens*] adiciens, MS.

[10] *exhortans*] exortans, MS.

iniquitatem, quæ cotidie suscipit incrementum, sese prospiciant. Quia . . . ardet." Et si maximum Christianorum præsumunt conterere[1] Romani, quid de aliis est sentiendum? Ex hac perturbatione motus imperator, excitavit contra papam . . . . sicut ipse papa multis per orbem literatorie conquerendo significavit. Populus autem Romanus . . . excitavit, et illum ejecerunt . . . . . innodavit. Stephanus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, inter omnes occidentales prælatos merito . . . sepultus. Monachi autem Cantuarienses elegerunt Walterum de Einesham, monachum suum, in archiepiscopum. Quem cum regi præsentassent, rex ipsum refutavit, et ejus cassationem procuravit. Eodem anno imperator . . . desidiam insultationes, mare ingressus, apud Achon applicuit. Quem clerus . . . honore susceperunt. Verumtamen . . . . sed eidem[2] consuluerunt Wintoniensis et Exonieniensis episcopi, et omnes alii magnates et prælati, ut, papæ satisfaciens, rediret humiliatus ad ecclesiæ unitatem. Quod . . . gravem de papa omnibus . . . eum injuste sententiam fulminasset; excusans se . . . advenisse. Soldanus . . . . . occidens nec vidit nec cognovit.[3] Sed . . . constantem. Alii tamen non male illud interpretabantur, quia re vera ante illos multos dies, propter intermeantium institorum commercia mutua et donativa pretiosa, unde pacifice licuit hinc indeque negotiari, fuerant amicissimi, sicut et ipsorum patres et antecessores. Maligni autem animi . . . interpretari.[4] Invenit autem imperator, quando Achon . . . . octingentis milibus peregrinorum, et peditibus quasi decem milibus. Qui omnes . . . . civitatem. Innumera navium multitudo, post longa tamen maris pericula, cum victualibus Achon applicuit, ita quod in exercitu qui apud Jopen, prævio imperatore, jam profectus fuit, magna fuerat abundantia,[5] usque ad . . . secundus. Floruit fama de Cartaphila Joseph, qui vidit Christum crucifigendum. Eustachius . . . extremum. Qui, quoniam die sancti Eustachii natus fuit, vocabatur Eustachius, et die sancti Eustachii obiit,[6] aptatur ei hoc epitaphium,

[Margin, right: A.D. 1228. — Election of Walter de Eynesham as abp. of Canterbury. — The emperor lands at Acre. — Friendship between the emperor and the Soldan. — Supplies brought to the army at Acre. — 2 Nov. Epitaph of Eustace, bishop of London.]

[Margin, left: Ibid. ii. 302. — Ibid. ii. 303. — fol. 59 b. — Ibid. ii. 304. — Ibid. ii. 305.]

> "Da vitæ portum mihi, qui tria, nomen et ortum,
> Eustachi, Christi miles, tumulumque dedisti."

Cujus loco magister Rogerus, cognomento[7] Niger, vir profecto sanctus et in theologia lector, jocundus in sermone,

[Margin, right: Roger Niger succeeds.]

[1] *conterere*] conterrere, MS.

[2] *eidem*] ei, MS., and *eidem* repeated superfluously after *prælati.*

[3] *cognovit*] congnovit, MS.

[4] In the margin is written with a plummet, "Proverbium."

[5] *abundantia*] habundantia, MS.

[6] According to the Patent Roll, 13 Hen. III. m. 12, he died 31 Oct. 1228. See Fasti, ii. 284.

[7] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.

A.D. 1228. maturus in moribus, rite subrogatur. Obiit Gaufridus, episcopus Elyensis, frater justiciarii, expers gratiæ, gratia destituti. In cujus loco monachi elegerunt Hugonem, abbatem Sancti Edmundi.

Death of Geoffrey, bp. of Ely.

Henry at Oxford.

M°.CC°.XXIX°. Rex Henricus III., anno regni sui xiiii°., fuit ad Natale apud Oxoniam. Ubi venit . . . Pictaviæ. Venerunt et alii . . . omnium una fuit intentio et desiderium, ut videlicet . . . . . venirent cum equis et armis, et toto populo regionum illarum et militia; et cum illo starent fideliter et immutabiliter usque ad capitum expositionem, ut viriliter revocare posset jura sua amissa et violenter retenta, et hereditates dissipatas. Indignum . . . Blanchiæ, de læsa castitate infami,[1] quæ . . . jam pertrectavit, inclinare. Rex autem, adhuc tener et juvenis, a justiciario, pædagogo suo, quem unicum habebat consiliarium summum, nihil aliud . . . hora et aura gratior arrideret. Dicebat enim suis, quos habuit amicis, secretius, "Novi istos nuncios et eorum præstigia,[2] quoniam nihil quærunt nisi desiderabiles regni Angliæ esterlingos." Nuncii vero, nihil aliud habentes in responsis, tristes ad[3] propria remearunt. Circa dies . . . . desperare. Decrevit igitur illum ab imperiali culmine præcipitandum, et alium subrogandum. Constituit igitur . . . . pecuniam, licet ab invitis et dolentibus prælatis, maxime religiosis, stipendiariis distribuendam et in prœlio exponendam, imprecantibus cunctis ne bonum finem talis præda et pompa sortiretur. Invasit igitur . . . . . et multa, ut vir martius, occupavit. Habebat . . . . non militia, thesauro . . . omnia per celeriter intermeantes imperatori . . . militanti, quantocius nunciabantur. Eodem anno, die Cinerum, orta discordia inter scolares Parisienses et quosdam laicos; reposita est querimonia dominæ Blanchiæ, quæ tunc totius regni fuerat moderatrix. Legatus enim longe erat, regina prope. At illa, impetu muliebri [agitata],[4] jussit clerum graviter puniri. Exeuntes igiter curiales satellites, gravius quam eis[5] fuerat imperatum in clericos sæviebant. Legatus autem, nimis pronus voluntati reginæ, noluit illius iratæ impetus refrænare.[6] Facta[7] igitur seditione gravissima, recessit Universitas Parisiaca a civitate, quæ ab antiquis temporibus nutrix fuerat totius philosophiæ. Pars autem . . . elegit ad studium. Regis Anglorum nuncii, videlicet . . . . petitionibus sollicitarent super petitione et desiderio . . . Ricardi.

H. A. ii. 306.

fol. 60 *a*.

Ibid. ii. 307.

Money collected by the pope to pay his stipendiaries.

Ibid. ii. 308.

Quarrel between the scholars of Paris and certain laics.

The University leaves the city.

Ibid. ii. 309.

[1] *castitate infami*] castitat imfami, MS.

[2] *præstigia*] On an erasure.

[3] *ad*] a, MS.

[4] *agitata*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[5] *eis*] ei, MS.

[6] *refrænare*] Written at first *refrenari*, and *non* prefixed, erroneously.

[7] *Facta*] Originally, *Facta est*, but *est* erased.

Et ne repulsam paterentur, promiserunt domino papæ infinitam pecuniam ab Anglia colligendam. Dixerat . . . desiderio. At dominus . . . imperatorem sitienter . . . ad consensum. Cassata igitur electione Walteri, monachi Cantuariensis, promotus est in dignitatem Cantuariensis archiepiscopatus magister Ricardus, cognomento Magnus, lector in theologia, cancellarius eccelesiæ Lincolniensis. Cum autem cognovisset[1] imperator imperium suum patere discrimini, significavit Soldano . . . . . evitare. Quod cum Soldanus audisset, gavisus omnia concessit; et sic feliciter factum est. Cum autem pax firmaretur, imperator, antequam transfretaret ad propria, voluit omnibus modis loca sancta oraturus visitare. Et cum pergeret ad fluenta Jordanis, significatum fuit Soldano a proditoribus imperatoris, quod ibi leviter nudus pedes[2] et in lanceis capi potuit, nullo prohibente. Quod cum audisset Soldanus, mirabatur de tantæ proditionis immanitate. Qui autem honorem Templi et Hospitalis minime diligunt, hæc illis imponunt mentientes. Non enim credibile, ut a viris religiosis tantum nefas[3] scaturiret, licet papam juvare viderentur. Soldanus[4] in argumentum fidei, literas illas detestabiles transmisit imperatori; unde omnibus vitæ eorum diebus fuerunt amicissimi. Gaudens igitur imperator quod laqueos absconditos evasisset, remeando transfretavit. *Verumtamen hoc fuit seminarium odii inter imperatorem et Templarios necnon et Hospitalarios. Magister* Stephanus, *domini papæ cancellarius, mittitur in* Angliam magna *armatus potestate, ad colligendam decimam,* prout ei fuerat *promissa. Qui cum venisset in Angliam, re*ceptus et *acceptus est regi et regalibus universis, illis in* omnibus *agendis suis patrocinium conferendo. Laici tamen* huic exactioni *consensum minime præbuerunt. Consenserunt* autem viri *ecclesiastici, undique suffragio destituti, in mentis* cruenta *amaritudine illud jugum servitutis et deprædationis* subeuntes. *Hujus autem collectionis seriem et collectorum* tirannidem *si quis plenius exsequeretur lacrimas excitaret* barbarorum. *Habebat enim dictus Stephanus potestatem ex*communicandi *omnes contradictionem vel etiam dilationem in* solutione *pecuniæ facientes;* [illegible] *et omnem* [illegible] *suam,* [illegible] *non secundum pretium, sed ad* [illegible] *voluntatem* vendere *cogebantur. Et post* [illegible] *non de*ductis *expensis, facta est inquisitio* [illegible] *super* [illegible] *in qua omnia* [illegible]

A.D. 1229.

ibid. ii. 10.

Richard le Grand made archbishop of Canterbury.

ibid. ii. 11.

The enemies of the emperor attempt to betray him to the Soldan.

fol. 60 *b.*

The papal nuncio, Stephen, sent to England.

Tyranny of his nuncios in enforcing payment of the tenth.

[1] *cognovisset*] cognovisse MS.
[2] *pedes*] pedas MS.
[3] *nefas*] nephas MS.
[4] *Soldanus.* Written only S with a blank but filled up by a later hand.

A.D. 1229. satus, cassato omni defensionis clipeo, ad voluntatem ipsius Stephani puniebatur. Consecratur in episcopum Saresbiriensem[1] magister Robertus de Bingham. Qui opus ecclesiæ Sarisbiriensis imperfecte consummatum,[2] quod[3] episcopus Ricardus, ejus prædecessor, ausu non pusillanimi inchoaverat,[4] et jam de debitis inæstimabilibus, videlicet xl^a. milibus marcarum, quibus Ricardus de Marisco, episcopus Dunelmensis, dicti episcopi Ricardi secundi prædecessor, innodaverat, liberavit. Hic quoque Ricardus secundus ad tres successive promotus est episcopatus. Sed ab anticipatione ad propositum revertamur. Robertus igitur memoratus, episcopus[5] Saresbiriensis jam sacratus, quosdam[6] in dicta ecclesia Saresbiriensi, juvante annuatim prædicto episcopo Ricardo II., ornatus decenter[7] perfecit, scilicet fenestras vitreas, chorum stallatum, frontem ecclesiæ cum culmine plumbato. Hæc iccirco dixerim, quia illa ecclesia Saresbiriensis inter omnes ecclesias Anglicanas vel nobilissima vel de nobilissimis una merito judicatur. De cujus opere quidam ait,

Robert de Bingham consecrated bp. of Salisbury. He completes the church there.

"Rex largitur . . . . stet opus." Ibid. 318.

Eodem tempore rex . . . Huberti, cingulo donavit militari. Consecrantur Ricardus, Cantuariensis[8] archiepiscopus, per manum Henrici, Rofensis episcopi, et Rogerus,[9] Londoniensis electus. Sub eisdem . . . Michaelis, congregata innumera Ibid. 319. armatorum multitudine apud Portesmue,[10] ut rex ad reposcenda jura sua transfretaret, non suffecit classis ad tantum transvehendum exercitum. Unde rex iratus vehementer, totum hujus rei crimen in Hubertum justiciarium refudit. Comes [Britanniæ][11] applicans tunc temporis, et quidam alii, dede- fol. (runt regi consilium, ut differret illud negotium transfretandi donec aptius tempus, scilicet Paschale, immineret.[12] Comes

Consecration of the abp. of Canterbury and bp. of London.

Arrival of the count of Britanny.

[1] *Saresbiriensem*] Sarebir, MS.

[2] *consummatum*] consumma, MS.

[3] *quod*] quam, MS.

[4] The sentence is incomplete, but may be supplied from the *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 318, thus, "viriliter ad consummationem est prosecutus," or from the *Flores Historiarum*, p. 126, ed. 1570, "non segniter prosecutus, feliciter consummavit." By carelessness, the paragraph which follows, in reference to the debts of the church of *Durham*, contracted by Richard de Marisco, and paid off by Richard Poore, is made to apply to *Salisbury*. See *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 396, under the year 1237.

[5] *episcopus*] Repeated superfluously after *Saresbiriensis*.

[6] *quosdam*] Repeated again before *ornatus*, and partially erased.

[7] *decenter*] de.enter, MS.

[8] *Cantuariensis*] Repeated by error after *archiepiscopus*.

[9] *Rogerus*] Rogeri, MS.

[10] *Portesmue*] Originally written *Portumue*.

[11] *Britanniæ*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[12] *immineret*] imineret, MS.

autem . . . homine[illegible] [illegible] fidelitatem; [illegible] glia, insuper data [illegible] remisit regionem. [illegible] F[rethericus] [illegible] prospere in Sa[illegible] fideles et naturales [illegible] occurrerunt, gaudentes [illegible] tes, "Benedictus [illegible] in nomine Domini." [illegible] bant undique [illegible] se excusando [illegible] rant, quoniam papa [illegible] eos praeoccupatos [illegible] Quod de [illegible] Readquisivit igitur [illegible] una die [illegible] papa per [illegible] effusis infinitis [illegible] extorserat, thesauro [illegible] hominum [illegible] Christianorum, [illegible] qui imperatorem [illegible] dominum, excommunica[illegible] quod est horr[illegible] papa animarum Christi [illegible] Tartara [illegible]

M°.CC°.XL[illegible] [illegible] Henricus III., anno regni sui XX[illegible] ad Natale [illegible] Scotorum Alexandro apud Eboracum. [illegible] in multis tandem [illegible] et convivi[illegible] serenavit. Rex quoque Anglorum [illegible] contulit donativa. Die [illegible] Natalis [illegible] dominus autem rex Anglorum [illegible] Londoniis [illegible] Die vero Conversionis sancti Pauli [illegible] ecclesia [illegible] Londoniis, cecidit fulgur [illegible] horribi[illegible] missam celebrante, et cum fulmine tonitru [illegible] fugitivos redidit [illegible] pore [illegible] imperator contra [illegible] it[illegible] Christiani [illegible] ca[illegible] praeter eos quos extra [illegible] tr[illegible] papae adhaerent [illegible] in[illegible] vel in partibus [illegible] Inter[illegible] proposuit idem papa [illegible] h[illegible] cum imperatorem [illegible] Imp[illegible] tanto viro prophetia [illegible] [illegible] ecclesiae et domini papae [illegible] [illegible] nec manibus imperialibus [illegible] [illegible] desiderabilium multitudine [illegible] [illegible] imperatoris tirannicamus [illegible] [illegible] auribus papalibus vehementer [illegible] [illegible] Johannes de Bre[illegible] [illegible] horrens incidere in manus [illegible] [illegible] ad natale solum, dispersis [illegible] [illegible] impregnatis eorum marsupiis [illegible] [illegible] amicis, statutae [illegible] convenientes [illegible]

[illegible] Matth. xxi. [illegible]
[illegible] praeoccupatos] preocupatos, MS. | [illegible] to be wanting

A.D. 1230. enim, offenso nimis imperatore,[1] pelli suæ formidebat. Per idem tempus Willelmus de Brausa, vir nobilis et inter Walliæ barones conterminos non ultimus, a Leolino, in regis magnum dedecus, perimitur. Tunc vero temporis dominus rex transfretaturus multam collegit [pecuniam],[2] maxime autem a domibus religiosorum et a civibus Londoniarum. Congregatis igitur omnibus qui ei servitium debebant militare, apud Portesmue pridie kalendas Maii[3] cum exercitu suo naves ascendit, et apud Sanctum Macutum in Britannia applicuit. Comes autem . . . . . juraverunt. Andreas autem de Vitri et alii nobiles pauci ad . . . . præparantes. Eodem anno passus est sol eclipsim in ortu . . . in Rogationibus. Dux Saxonum, regis . . . Angliam, de absentia regis dolens, quem credidit invenisse, cum . . . susceptus est; ubi adventum regis in domibus Veteris Templi commorans expectabat. Commotum est regnum Francorum pro quadam discordia intestina; unde multi nobiles ad regem Anglorum convolarunt, Fulco videlicet Paganellus, de Normannia, et multi cum [eo][4] de partibus illis. Rex etiam Anglorum, veniens in Wasconiam, cepit ibi multorum homagia. Submersus est Reimundus de Burgo, nepos Huberti. Hoc etiam tempore, mense videlicet Augusti, ... convenerunt. Veniens itaque Romam . . . revocatis. Comederunt ergo . . . . . confirmata. Pacificatus est insuper rex Francorum, procurante B[lanchia] regina, cum suis magnatibus, per quod pars regis Anglorum non mediocriter est infirmata.[5] Rediit igitur ad civitatem Nannatensem,[6] ibique diu jacens inutiliter thesauros consumpsit residuos, quos habebat infinitos. Interim nobiles ejus et fideles, consumptis suis viaticis, cœperunt egere, infirmari, depauperari, et miseras animas exhalare.[7] Tandem rex, naves conscendens, pauper et inglorius rediit ad propria. Et qui cum eo redierunt, applicantes post plurima [maris][8] pericula, infirmitate[9] gravatim contabuerunt. Unde comes de Glovernia et Robertus de Greslei, et multi alii nobiles et potentes ilico in fata concesserunt. Facta est eclipsis lunæ, x°. kalendas Decembris.

[Margin notes: Death of William de Brause. — Henry exacts money from the religious houses and Londoners. — 30 April. He crosses over to Brittany. — Civil war in France. — Reimund de Burgh drowned. — Reconciliation of the king of France with his nobles. — Henry returns to England. — Deaths of nobles. — Eclipse of the moon. 22 Nov.]

[Right margin: fol. 61 b. — Ibid. ii. 323. — Ibid. ii. 324. — Ibid. ii. 326.]

M°.CC°.XXXI°. Rex Henricus III., anno regni sui XVI°., tenuit curiam apud Lamhethiam in Natali Domini, Huberto . . . ad H. A. ii. 329.

[Margin note: Henry at Lambeth.]

---

[1] *imperatore*] imperator, MS.

[2] *pecuniam*] Omitted in MS. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 323.

[3] *Maii*] Mai, MS.

[4] *eo*] Omitted in MS.

[5] *infirmata*] imfirmata, MS.

[6] *Nannatensem*] Nannanensem, MS.

[7] *exhalare*] exalare, MS.

[8] *maris*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[9] *infirmitate*] imfirmita, MS.

colloquium rex cum prælatis et aliis magnatibus, ubi . . . . prælatis. Contradixit archiepiscopus R[icardus], propter quod aversum est cor regis, qui eum creaverat, ex tunc et deinceps. Insuper archiepiscopus conquestus est de Huberto . . . . ad recognitionem tenebantur. Qua de causa . . . . destinavit. Combusta est ecclesia et cella de Hætfelde.[1] Mense Aprilis, post . . . de Penbroc. Et, nuptiis . . . clausit extremum, et . . . est sepultus. Suppresso et represso Leolino, principe Norwalliæ, rex fecit reædificare . . . quod antea lignorum extitit, et a Walensibus destructum. Mense vero Junii statutæ sunt treugæ inter reges Francorum et Anglorum triennales. Mense Julio Petrus . . . et honore, ut decuit, pro bonis operibus suis, qui in Historiis plenius scribuntur, ab omnibus est receptus. Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis Ricardus, expletis negotiis Romæ, redire maturavit; infirmatus[2] autem obiter apud Sanctam Gemmam,[3] in domo fratrum Minorum, tertia dieta citra Romam, iii°. nonas Augusti diem clausit extremum. Revocatus est rex a nuptiis sororis [regis][4] Scociæ. Radulphus, episcopus Cicestrensis, Angliæ cancellarius, postulatus est in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem. Præsentatio ejus regi bene complacuit, sed intimatum fuit secretius papæ, quod si promoveretur in archiepiscopatum, contradiceret tributo, quod ab Anglia papa exigit annuatim. Dixitque adhuc domino papæ idem susurro, videlicet magister Symon de Langetuna, quod dictus episcopus Cicestrensis, Radulphus, aulicus fuit regalis, festinus, et spiritum habens in naribus. Papa vero, hiis auditis, cassavit de ipso factam postulationem, concedens, . . . in pastorem. Anno sub eodem . . . Stephano de Segrave, milite literato, et quibusdam clericis aulicis, qui computabant[5] Romanorum et alienorum quam[6] ipsius regis; et vehementer ab hoc indignantibus, distracta sunt blada ipsorum Romanorum et alienigenarum, et ipsi dispersi sunt subito, ita [quod][7] viderent omnes subito evanuisse. Eorum nempe consuetudo infallibilis est fugere fugantes et fugare fugientes. Fuerunt autem quidam de regno temerarii, qui ipsos ita terruerunt exturbatos. Qui si istam fugationem possent per aliquod tem-

Left margin notes: Ibid. ii. 329, 330. — fol. 62 *a*. — Ibid. ii. 331. — Ibid. ii. 332. — Ibid. ii. 333. — Ibid. ii. 337.

Right margin notes: A.D. 1231. — Church of Hatfield burnt. — Truce between France and England. — Death of Richard, abp. of Canterbury. 3 Aug. — Ralph, bp. of Chichester, elected abp., but rejected by the pope. — Pillage of the crops of the beneficed Italians.

[1] *Combusta . . . Hætfelde*] Added in the margin.

[2] *infirmatus*] imfirmatus, MS.

[3] *Sanctam Gemmam*] So also in Wendover, the Greater Chronicle, the *Hist. Angl.*, and *Flores Hist.*, but we should probably read *Sanctum Geminum* [St. Gemini, in the legation of Spoleto], as in the "Annales de Waverleia," p. 309, ed. Luard.

[4] *regis*] Supplied from *Hist Angl.*

[5] *computabant*] Some words are wanting here. Perhaps we might supply *beneficiatos, tam.*

[6] *quam*] q^a^n, MS.

[7] *quod*] Omitted in MS.

A.D. 1231.

John, treasurer of York, conceals himself.

Others are ill-used at St. Alban's.

poris, licet breve, exercuisse, totum regnum ab eorum peste liberassent. Johannes namque Romanus, Eboracensis thesaurarius, canonicus, timens adeo tremulus factus, ut febricitans crederetur; latuit autem in ecclesia Eboracensi in locis et angulis absconditis, ita quod vix turris tuta fuit latitanti. Item, apud Sanctum Albanum, quidam Londoniensis canonicus, Romanus natione, et Johannes Ferentinus, et quidem alii, qui ad quoddam consistorium convenerant, exturbati sunt, et alii capti, ita ut vix aliquis Romanus alicubi appareret. Tandem dominus rex hanc multis desiderabilem sedavit tempestatem. fol. 62 b

The riots are suppressed.

The election of the prior of Canterbury as abp. set aside.

Peter, bp. of Winchester, chief councillor of the king.

His enmity to Hubert de Burgh.

M°.[CC°.]XXXII°.[1] Rex Anglorum H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xvii°., fuit . . . ejusdem civitatis episcopus, omnia ministravit necessaria. Ipsis diebus . . . blada vero bonis conditionibus et amplis mensuris postulantibus venderentur, vel pauperibus, quia mucida, erogarentur, ipse, cujus erant fruges illæ, gravem super hiis coram . . . querimoniam. Ipse igitur episcopus, convocatis multis aliis episcopis . . . excommunicavit. Præterea papa significavit domino regi, ut talem compesceret præsumptionem.[2] Et sic cessavit frugum dispersio et alienigenarum exturbatio. Tempore vero sub eodem conventus . . . archiepiscopum Cantuariensem. Præsentatus autem regi [et][3] acceptus, profectus est . . . impetraret a domino papa confirmari. Et cum Romam pervenisset, videbatur papæ, quod nimis esset senex, vir tamen bonus, sed non ad hoc.[4] Præcepit igitur monachis Cantuariensibus, qui illuc cum electo venerant, ut alium eligerent ad tantam dignitatem commodiorem.[5] Petrus, episcopus Wintoniensis, principalis effectus regis consiliarius. Circa dies illos Leolinus, princeps Norwalliæ, fines baronum conterminorum ingressus . . . rapinis. Accesserunt igitur ad regem Petrus Wintoniensis et alii cum eo, novi consiliarii . . . scandalum et dedecus, quod Walensium scurræ vulgares, nullius quisquiliæ momenti, formidolosi latrunculi, singulis annis taliter impune debacchantur,[6] depopulantes confinia suarum regionum. Quibus cum . . . . . actiones." Tunc Petrus episcopus, qui a multo tempore, scilicet a quo ipse, victoria optenta est[7] in mari, sicut prædictum est,[8] remansit super litus retrogradens et fictus, Huberto victorioso

H. A. ii 338. Ibid. ii. 339. Ibid. ii. 340. Ibid. ii 341.

[1] *M°.CC°.XXXII°.*] M°.XXXII°., MS.

[2] *præsumptionem*] presupcōm, MS.

[3] *et*] Omitted in MS.

[4] *non ad hoc*] non ho, MS., corrected from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 341.

[5] *commodiorem*] comodiorem, MS.

[6] *debacchantur*] debacantur, MS.

[7] *optenta est*] There is something wrong in this sentence, and we must probably read *quando* before *victoria*, or omit *est*.

[8] See *ante*, p. 241.

inviderat et infestus odivit, respondit domino regi, " Si pauper es, tibi et tuæ imputes simplicitati, qui honores, custodias et dignitates vacantes ita transfers ad alios, et a fisco alienas, quod non in divitiis ac reverentia, sed solo nomine umbratili rex vel etiam regulus debeas appellari. Hinc est[1] confines tibi hostes, scilicet tui ministri, formidant nomen tuum." Sic sic igitur rex instructus, cepit ab hiis qui abundabant[2] ballivis plurimis pecuniam multam. Et cum ad hoc specialiter ab episcopo Wintoniensi rex stimularetur, cognoscens Ranulphum Britonem, quem justiciarius promoverat et multis ditaverat honoribus, et cameræ regalis thesaurarium constituerat, deposuit ab officio; et post multam familiaritatem in multam repellens ignominiam, cepit ab illo mille marcas. Et hoc machinabatur episcopus in odium Huberti justiciarii; quem idem Hubertus creaverat et dilexit. Videns igitur episcopus quod in hiis consiliis regi quamplurimum placuisset, ipsum locupletando, suggessit regi, quia ad hoc sitienter anhelavit,[3] ut exigeret ab eo ratiocinium strictum de thesauro regio, quem pro voluntate tractaverat, eo prius deposito a justiciaria. Quod et factum est. Ad hoc respondit Hubertus domino regi, quod patris sui regis J[ohannis] habuit cartam, quæ ipsum absolvit ab omni ratiocinio de rebus omnibus perceptis et percipiendis ad regnum pertinentibus, thesauris et rebus aliis. Qui totiens ejus fidelitatem indubitatam, ut asseruit, est expertus. Ad hæc Petrus, " Talis carta post obitum regis J[ohannis] nullum penitus habet robur aut vigorem." Tunc Laurentius de Sancto Albano, Huberti clericus specialis et consiliarius, ait, " Si dominus meus Hubertus cartam talem pro benefactis suis tunc expletis optinuisset, quanto magis debet[4] dominus rex modernus esse ei gratus et benivolus, et eum fidelissimum reputare. Si enim sciret dominus rex quanta optulit Ludowicus domino meo Huberto obsesso in castro Doveriæ,[5] ut illud sibi redderet, et noluit ullo modo, sciens quod illud esset[6] clavis Angliæ, et si illud optinuisset, totum regnum leviter in ejus cederet dominium, certe diceretis omnes, quod fidelissimus regi esset, immo quod totum regnum ipse[7] in solidum restituisset. Sed hoc parum. Quando supervenit Francis auxilii succursus immanissimus, ipse corpus suum tumidis maris undis et navali bello intre-

A.D. 1232.

Ralph le Breton removed from his office.

f. 63 a.

The justiciary Hubert deposed, and his accompts required.

Defence of Hubert by Laurence of St. Alban's.

[1] *Hinc est*] We should perhaps supply *quod* here, and *non* before *formidant*. The *Hist. Angl.* affords no assistance.

[2] *abundabant*] habundabant, MS.

[3] *anhelavit*] hanelavit, MS.

[4] *debet*] Repeated superfluously after *modernus*.

[5] *Doveriæ*] Dovrie, MS., and *certe* erased after it.

[6] *esset*] esse, MS.

[7] *ipse*] ipi, MS.

A.D. 1232. pidus commisit, et, Deo propitio, triumphavit, ubi tu Pictavensis, domine episcope, qui militarem te facis, immo Willelmus, magnus Marescallus,[1] sed nec multi, quos reges Angliæ J[ohannes] et qui præsens Henricus III. multis honoribus et possessionibus locupletavit, accedere voluerunt. Tanta non fecit tempore regis J[ohannis], qui talem ei cartam concessit; hæc igitur pro carta computentur." Cives Londonienses, qui ipsum Hubertum pro suspendio concivis sui Constantini oderant, lætati sunt de tribulatione sua. Et videntes eum undique impetitum, accusabant et ipsi eum de suspendio civis memorati, quod scelus[2] subito factum clam et sine judicio. Hubertus igitur videns quod multi, licet singulis rationabiliter respondisset, sanguinem suem sitiebant, divertit a loco, et fugit clanculo ad Meretonam, ibique inter canonicos in ecclesia pavidus latitabat. Innotuit autem hoc regi, quod scilicet Hubertus ob timorem querentium animam suam ad pacem ecclesiæ confugerat. Significavit[3] igitur illi, ut ad curiam rediret juri pariturus, et objiciendis[4] responsurus. Renunciavit autem regi, quod si a pari[5] possit cum adversariis multiplicatis verbis contendere, audacter et libenter veniret, sed iram regis et impetum hostium vehementer formidabat; qui non bona quæ multa fecit, sed mala quæ poterant excogitare malitiose ei objiciebant.[6] Præcepit igitur rex majori Londoniarum, ex quo respondisset Hubertus præcise quod paci ecclesiæ adhæreret, jam vespere, quatinus statim, conjunctis sibi civibus universis, adiret Meretonam hostiliter, et Hubertum vivum sive mortuum undecunque abstractum sibi præsentarent.[7] At major . . . . et camisia, præcordialiter orans, cum lacrimis corpus . . . frendentes, suggestum . . . . sedare non posset cum vellet . . . nominis in partibus fuerat transmarinis, erit regi in obprobrium sempiternum. Mutato . . . revocavit. Procurante . . . capellanus ipsius Huberti . . . . . . Norwicensis episcopi, credebat ibidem tutus requiescere. Quod cum regi . . . metuens ne si ita Hubertus discederet, in regno perturbationem machinaretur. Unde facti pœnitens . . . præcipiens quatinus illum . . . Londoniarum incarcerarent. Et sic vinctus reductus est, et in turri Londoniarum incarceratus. Rogerus autem, episcopus Londoniensis, fecit eum reduci ad capellam, de qua rapuit eum Godefridus,

He is accused by the citizens of London for hanging Constantine [Fitz-Olaf] without trial.

He takes refuge at Merton.

The mayor of London ordered to bring him to the king.

Ibid. i. 346. fol. 6 Ibid. ii. 347.

He is imprisoned in the tower of London, but afterwards

[1] *Marescallus*] Marecallus, MS.
[2] *scelus*] celus, MS.
[3] *Significavit*] Written *significat*, and the last letter afterwards erased.
[4] *objiciendis*] obiciendis, MS.
[5] *a pari*] Repeated after *multiplicatis*.
[6] *objiciebant*] obiciebant, MS.
[7] *sibi præsentarent*] presentarent sibi, MS., but marked for transposition.

qui eum a capella traxerat violenter; ubi circumquaque ab excubantibus strictissime custoditus est. Eligitur magister Johannes Blundus in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem, qui Romam . . . confirmaret. Concessa est regi pro debitis solvendis, quibus . . . . regis xvi., in magnum multorum dampnum et detrimentum; unde nec unquam regnum, sicut nec ex aliis præsidiis regi impensis, aliquod suscepit vel exile incrementum.[1] Obiit Ranulphus, comes Cestriæ, apud Walingeford, cujus viscera ibidem sunt sepulta, corpus vero Cestriam defertur tumulandum. Successit autem . . . . Scotorum. Propter hoc cognomento Scotus dicebatur. Alius autem . . . . . suscepit. Hubertus in arcto positus, in turri Londoniarum moram continuans diutinam compeditus, multorum corda compatientium corda cruentavit, qui regis misericordiam pro ipso rogitabant; sed adhuc non sunt exauditi. Suggestum namque regi fuerat, quod Hubertus non modicum thesaurum habuerat depositum apud Novum Templum Londoniis. Rex . . . sua. Hiis ita gestis . . . dicentes, "Quid adhuc egemus testibus? Convincitur . . . . respondeat accusationibus, ut . . . existat." Quod et factum est in crastino sancti Martini. Ubi cum a multis graviter accusaretur, respondit vel in propria . . . fideliter ausus est stare cum eo, tam eleganter tamque prudenter omnibus articulis et objectionibus contra eum argumentose compositis, quod palam eorum omnibus in cunctis insontem se probavit. Verumtamen cum quidam proterviuis instans vocaret ipsum veterem proditorem,[2] non, permisit Hubertus Laurentium, licet se parasset respondere, pro ipso loqui, sed ipsemet erectus pro se respondit, dicens, "Vetus sum, etenim senui; proditor autem, nequaquam. Verumtamen tibi in proditione convicto[3] peperci, cum te debuissem suspendisse." Et tundens pectus, ait, "Mea culpa!" Adversarius igitur ille obmutuit erubescens. Tunc rex, ad mise-
a. ricordiam inclinatus, dixit . . . stimularunt!" Concessit igitur carcerem liberiorem et mitiorem. Et missus [est][4] ad castrum de Divises, ubi aliquandiu commorans, una noctium cum audisset quod cogitaverat episcopus Wintoniensis,

A.D. 1232. taken back to the place where he was captured.

Death of Ranulph, earl of Chester.

Hubert de Burgh again imprisoned in the Tower.

12 Nov. His defence.

He is sent to the castle of Devises.

[1] On the lower margin of fol. 63 *a* is the following note, which seems to bear reference to this tax: "¶ Summa decimæ omnium proventuum ecclesiasticorum, monachis de Sancto Albano appropriatorum infra eundem archidiaconatum, xxiiii. l. ii. d. et ob. exceptis portionibus elemosinarii, quæ non taxabantur."

[2] *proditorem*] The last three syllables have been erased, and *colubrum* written over the space; but this has also been erased.

[3] *convicto*] convicti, MS.

[4] *est*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

A.D. 1232. ipsum fame interimere, dormientibus custodibus, se saltu agili, sicut compeditus potuit, misit ultra murum, et cadens super unum dumum erexit se sanus et integer, et intravit quandam vicinam ecclesiam. Quod cum custodes cognovissent,[1] irati intrantes ecclesiam, rapuerunt eum ab ecclesia, et in castro vinculis arctioribus[2] ipsum constrinxerunt. Quod audiens Robertus, episcopus Saresbiriensis, omnes illos pacis ecclesiasticæ[3] violatores excommunicavit. Interim episcopus regem adiit, nec prius discedere voluit quam Huberti liberationem a laicorum vinculis impetrasset. Et sic solutus, reductus est in ecclesiam. Vicecomes[4] autem a rege præceptum recepit, ne permitteret victualia ferri in ecclesiam, ut scilicet ita fame acerba moriturus, exire cogeretur, et sic a castellanis caperetur.[5]

He escapes, but is seized and reimprisoned.

He is again released, and replaced in the church.

M°.[cc°.]xxxIII°.[6] Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xviii°.,[7] fecit ad Natale . . . . amovit officiis, et Pictavenses extraneosque in eorum officiis subrogavit. Willelmum de Rodune . . . H. A. 353. gerebat comitis Marescalli, quod idem Ricardus moleste tulit. Walterum quoque . . . thesaurariæ expellens, centum marcas eum coegit sibi, licet invitum, numerare. Consiliarios . . . nobiles refutans, nulli alii, nisi episcopo Wintoniensi et clerico suo, Petro de Rivallis, consilia sua audebat communicando revelare. Idem quoque . . . de Segrave, militem literatum, et Robertum . . . conservabat. Quod comes Ricardus Marescallus cum conspexisset, ita scilicet naturales regni postponi, et alienigenas quamplures præponi, tam . . . . . Ibid. 354. . . tenebatur. Ad hæc autem respondens episcopus, ait, "Bene . . . . homines superbos illius et rebelles . . . . verbo vehementer perturbati . . . proposuerunt, quod pro . . . usque ad capitum expositionem viriliter decertarent. Per idem tempus . . . . Wintoniensis, qui regnum, repulsis naturalibus hominibus, conabatur, et ipsum J[ohannem] habere ad hoc consor- Ibid. 355. tem et adjutorem. Electus est igitur loco ejus magister Edmundus de Abendona, theologus, Saresbiriensis thesaurarius, fol. canonicus, legens Oxoniæ in theologia, in moribus et scientia[8] excellenter adornatus. Quem rex ob bonam famam

Edmund of Abingdon elected abp. of Canterbury.

[1] *cognovissent*] congnovissent, MS.

[2] *arctioribus*] arctioris, MS.

[3] *ecclesiasticæ*] ecclesiaste, MS.

[4] *Vicecomes*] Vicem, MS., with some letters erased.

[5] This account of Hubert's escape from the castle, recapture, and release, is entered in Wendover and the Greater Chronicle (ed. Wats, p. 388), as also in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 359, 360, under the following year, 1233.

[6] *M°.cc°.xxxiii°.*] M°.XXXIII°., MS.

[7] *xviii°.*] xviii^us., MS.

[8] *scientia*] After this word *et moribus* is repeated superfluously.

A.D. 1233.

suam acceptabat, necnon et papa commendabat.[1] Confœderabantur Marescallo multi Angliæ nobiles . . . et fratres ejus,
ii. et multi ejus consanguinei et amici, Ricardus Suard . . . dinumerare. Causa enim favorabilis erat et justa, et tam propter regem quam regnum promovendum, licet rex hoc scire dissimulasset. Rex autem iratus, solius fretus . . . exules eos fecit denunciari . . . invenirentur. Fœderatur interim Marescallus Leolino et aliis magnatibus illius regionis, interposito juramento, quod nullus sine alio regi concordaret.
i. Obiit Warinus . . . de Caardif. Rex de consilio sæpedicti episcopi Wintoniensis diffidavit Ricardum, comitem Marescallum. Hubertus de Burgo raptus est ab ecclesia de Divisis subito et ante expectatum a viris armatis, amicis suis, qui misericordia ducti de tot ejus tribulationibus, ducebant ei unum equum pretiosum et celerem ac fortem, et eum desuper sedere fecerunt, et adduxerunt eum in Walliam, extra regis potestatem. Quod cum cognovissent castellani, se deceptos doluerunt. Rex apud Grosmund impetum exulum suorum, vix tamen, dampnum incurrit cum dedecore, quod episcopus Wintoniensis nunquam restauravit. Anno illo rex Anglorum H[enricus], pro redemptione animæ suæ et animarum antecessorum suorum, domos decentes cum nobili ecclesia ædificavit Londoniis, non procul a Veteri Templo, ubi Judæi conversi honeste habitare valebant, et instrui in lege Christiana, regiis[2] elemosinis sustentandi. Simili quoque pie-
i. tatis . . . hospitale propriis sumptibus Oxoniis . . . perciperent necessitatis.

The earl Mareschal joins Lewellyn, prince of Wales.

Hubert de Burgh is set free and brought to Wales.

Henry suffers disgrace at Grosmund.

He builds a church for converted Jews.

M°.CC°.XXXIIII°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xix°.,[3] fuit[4] ad Natale Domini apud Gloverniam, cum parvo valde comitatu, quia recesserunt ab eo multi magnates, qui spoliabantur omnibus bonis suis apud Grosmund. Quo utique tempore cœpit gelu fortissimum et diuturnum terram adeo constringere, ita quod fruges, plantæ et herbæ ita suffocabantur, ut radices mortificarenter, nec in vere potuerunt revivificari. Unde, agricultura suspensa, fames et sterilitas est subsecuta. In crastino autem Natalis Domini Johannes Monemutensis, dum impetum temerarium fecisset in Marescallum, dissipatis agminibus, in fugam victus[5] [est].[6] Marescallus a tergo[7]

Henry at Gloucester.

Unusual frost.

26 Dec. John of Monmouth defeated by

[1] *commendabat*] comendabat, MS.

[2] *regiis*] regii, MS.

[3] *xix°.*] xix^us., MS. In regard to the change in the numbers of the regnal years of Henry, see note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 363.

[4] *fuit*] fuit rex, MS.

[5] *victus*] So in MS. Perhaps we should read, *versus*.

[6] *est*] Supplied to complete the sense.

[7] *a tergo*] insecutus a tergo, MS.

A.D. 1234. fugientes insecutus, maxime vero Pictavenses, qui ad Johannem venerant et illi militaverant, lancea perforavit. Perempta . . . . elapsus. Equitationes vero . . . septimana, quæ vir martius[1] natura . . . . commendare.[2] Sed ut de aliis brevibus concludam, secundum volubilitatem . . . sentiebant. Cumque hæc in partibus Walliæ sic agerentur, rex . . . . . Marescalli. Episcopus igitur A[lexander], sciens quod talia verba emanarunt ab episcopo Wintoniensi, indutus . . . . regis consilium vel auxilium impenderent, vel qui super . . . malitiose imponebant talia delicta.[3] Affuit quidem . . . . . uno ore dicebant eidem, "Domine . . . securum, sed crudele et periculosum tibi et regno, quod ab episcopo Wintoniensi et suis novimus emanare." Annectentes, quod nisi ab errore incepto rex desisteret, et cum fidelibus regni pacifice . . . . perversores. Rex autem pius pium audiens prælatorum consilium, respondit, quod consiliis eorum in omnibus obedienter obtemperaret. Unde præcepit Petro . . . de cetero nec ipse nec sui regiis negotiis interessent.[4] Pictavenses insuper . . . castrorum custodiis expellens . . . . . gratia, cum episcopis . . . . concordia efficaciter contrectarent. Et sic . . . . consiliis suorum prælatorum. Eodem quoque anno . . . electus, a Rogero . . . a sancto, indigena ab indigena, theologus a theologo, Dominica . . . Aprilis. Huic autem consecrationi interfuit dominus rex cum xiii. episcopis. Et eodem die missam[5] archiepiscopus Edmundus, cum pallio . . . celebravit. Comes autem Marescallus, quod[6] infelici casu contigerat, non fuit inventus a nunciis supradictis; ignorabat enim cor . . . commutatum, in Hiberniam enim festinus transierat. Venerant enim Hiberniensium nuncii ad eum, urgentissime affirmantes, quod . . . indulgebant. Commissum est . . . Hiberniæ, penitus de animo regis statum ignorantes. Et cum versum . . . . . cirurgico Hiberniensi quodam proditore ustus . . . expirasset. Actum est hoc prœlium prima die mensis Aprilis, in sabbato. Et dum talia agerentur in partibus occidentalibus, [oritur][7] consimilis . . . inter Christianos etiam religiosos, inter scilicet Templarios et Hospitalarios. Marescallus autem, de quo prætactum est, facta confessione . . . . domino suo regi vel regno malum . . . ipsum inclinasse.[8]

Margin: the earl Mareschal. — Complaints made to the king of his evil councillors. — Ibid. ii. 364, 36[5]. — fol. 65 — Ibid. ii. 366. — Ibid. ii. 367. — Ibid. i[i]. 368. — Ibid. 369. — fol. [illegible]

[1] *martius*] macius, MS.

[2] *commendare*] comendare, MS.

[3] *delicta*] del, MS., the rest having been erased.

[4] *interessent*] non interessent, MS.

[5] *missam*] missam celebravit, MS., but the verb is repeated at the end of the paragraph.

[6] *quod*] qui quod, MS.

[7] *oritur*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[8] *inclinasse*] So in MS.; but the true reading is *inclinasset, elaborasse*, as in *Hist. Angl.*

Tenens igitur . . . Kilkenni. Post Pascha cum dominus rex versus . . . . . pernoctaret. Venerunt igitur ibidem . . . referentes de prædictis. Unde rex, admirantibus cunctis, in fletum . . . graviter, plangens tanti mortem bellatoris. Et, convocatis presbiteris et clericis capellæ suæ, fecit solempniter decantari pro anima ejus obsequium mortuorum, et largas pauperibus elemosinas jussit erogari. Venerunt igitur ad pacem regis, procurantibus archiepiscopo et episcopis, sub ducatu eorumdem, Hubertus de Burgo et alii exules memorati. Frater
ii. insuper comitis Ricardi, Gilebertus, protestatus mortem . . . susciperet ad ipsum devolutam. Et cum rex diu denegasset,
June. tandem archiepiscopi pulsatus precibus benigne concessit, et in die Pentecostes cingulo donavit militari, tradens ei virgam Marescalciæ. Hubertum quoque de Burgo, Gilebertum Basset et Ricardum Suard ad se vocavit reconciliatos. Latuit ergo episcopus Wintoniensis in ecclesia sua, cum suis complicibus. Stephanus quoque de Segrave in abbatia canonicorum Legrecestriæ vix tutum invenit l[atibulum].[1] Robertus quoque Passeleuue apud Novum Templum Londoniarum more latuit leporino. Quo repulso, subrogatus est Hugo de Pateshulle thesaurarius ad scaccarium. Comes Britanniæ, penitus recedens a rege, piraticis repinis in mari indulsit; unde merito rex eum[2] honoribus, quos in Anglia habuit, spoliavit. Papa, orta seditione in urbe, apud Perusium moram facturus[3] discessit. Capta est Majorica insula a rege Castellæ, et obsessa Minorica, festinæ patens captioni. Obiit Hugo Folioth, episcopus
ii. Herefordensis, cui . . . Maidenestane.

A.D. 1234. Hubert de Burgh restored to the king's peace.

The bp. of Winchester and others conceal themselves.

Hugh de Pateshulle made treasurer.

The count of Britanny deprived of his honours.

The pope goes to Perusium. Capture of Majorca.

M°.CC°.XXXV°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xix°., fuit ad Natale apud Westmonasterium. Eodemque tempore vii. Judæi adducti coram rege convicti sunt, quod quendam puerum Christianum furto sublatum[4] et circumscisum proposuerant, convocatis aliis in Norwico omnibus Judæis, in instanti Pascha proximo crucifigere; unde rex condignam accepit ultionem. Obiit Hugo de Welles, episcopus Lincolniensis; cui successit Robertus, cognomento Grossum-caput. Concordati sunt cum rege pristini consiliarii ejus, qui hactenus latuerunt. Obiit Henricus de Sanford, episcopus Rofensis; cui successit Ricardus de Wendoure.[5] Obiit Willelmus, abbas
Feb. sancti Albani, die sancti Mathiæ; cui successit Johannes,

Henry at Westminster.

Some Jews convicted for intending to crucify a boy.

Deaths of bishops.

Death of William, abbat of St. Alban's.

[1] *latibulum*] A blank space is left after the first letter of the word.

[2] *eum*] ei, MS.

[3] *facturus*] feuturus, MS.

[4] *sublatum*] sullatum, MS.

[5] *Wendoure*] An error for *Wendene*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 377.

A.D. 1235.

Espousals of the emperor Frederic to Isabella, the king's sister.

Arrival of foreign usurers.

prior de Hertfort. Imperator Romanorum, Fretherius, desponsavit Ysabellam, sororem regis Anglorum, cum qua data fuerunt xxx. milia marcarum, absque ornamentis necessariis tantis nuptiis, quæ ad tria milia ascenderunt. Quæ omnia per Angliam fuerant extorta et collecta. Per idem tempus ex partibus ultramarinis venerunt Londonias quidam ignoti, qui se esse domini papæ mercatores vel scambiatores asserebant, cum tamen manifesti existerent usurarii. Quorum usuræ duriores erant conditionis quam Judæorum. Isti autem maxime religiosos suis debitis studuerunt illaqueare, quia illos literis papalibus, pro voluntate impetratis, poterant exagitare. Episcopus vero Londoniensis . . . literatus et H. A. ii. 383.
sanctus, cum intellexisset hos dictos Caursinos . . . frequentare, et insontes cives Londonienses, talis pestis penitus ignaros, intoxicare, et multos, sed maxime prælatos et religiosos, fatigare, iratus et . . . illos tanquam scismaticos,[1] famam papæ non mediocriter denigrantes, ab urbe decrevit excommunicatos longius amovere, ut sic saltem pœnitentiam agerent de com- fol. 66
missis. At ipsi Caursini tumentes, et de suis pecuniis, quibus abundabant,[2] confidentes . . . Romana literas pro voluntate impetrarunt citatorias, ut . . . valitudinarius, citaretur . . . Caursinis, familiaribus sociis, ut . . . . pariturus. Episcopus vero . . . tumultum illum pacifice ac prudenter sedavit suscitatum. Et hæc . . . dissimulatione, quia senuit, per- Ibid. ii. 384.
transiens . . . . . mercatores vel cambiatores esse cum jactantia profitentes, consuetum quæstum, fœnora cum pœnis adjunctis et variis exactionibus, impune et sine contradictionis repagulis exercuerunt. Et sic inter Christianos usura, quæ in utroque Testamento detestabilis habebatur, proh dolor! suscitatur rediviva. Hiis quoque diebus . . . in tantum, Deo favente, [cœpit][3] adaugeri et prosperari per totius Christianitatis latitudinem, ut in . . . prædicationis et scolasticæ disciplinæ, magnis cœnobiis æquipararetur.[4] Corduba, civitas Hispaniæ famosa, a Christianis capitur. Obierunt nobiles. Robertus filius-Walteri, et Rogerus de Sumerico, sine herede de se.

Capture of Cordova. Deaths of nobles.

Henry at Winchester.

His marriage to Alienor of Provence.

M°.CC°.XXXVI°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xx°., tenuit festum Natalis apud Wintoniam, expectans ardenti desiderio suorum adventum nunciorum, quos in Provinciam destinaverat ad Reimundum, Provinciæ comitem, a quo poposcerat filiam suam Alienoram, sororem videlicet reginæ Francorum natu consequentem, sibi matrimonio copulandam. Quæ

[1] scismaticos] cismaticos, MS.
[2] abundabant] habundabant, MS.
[3] cœpit] Supplied from H. A.
[4] æquipararetur] equipararetur, MS.

in Anglia applicans, et Cantuariam prospere veniens, despon- A.D. 1236.
sata est regi officio Cantuariensis archiepiscopi Edmundi. Nuptiæ vero magnifice Londoniis sunt celebratæ. Diebus
A. ii. sub eisdem rex Henricus, pro . . . . . observari. Eodem anno, [iiii°.][1] kalendas Maii . . . colloquium. Admirabantur 28 April.
. ii. . . . . repulsis magnatibus naturalibus, electum Valentinum Willelmum, reginæ avunculum, qui cum ea venerat in Angliam, sequebatur . . . rex correptus et correctus, secure spopondit emendationem. Et tunc . . . . exorbitarunt. Rex instanter He demands his seal from the chancellor.
exegit ab episcopo Cicestrensi Radulpho, cancellario, sigillum
ii. suum; qui hoc facere renuit, dicens se nulla . . . suscepisset, nisi similiter de communi consensu illud resignaret. Obiit Willelmus de Albineto senior, post multas quas pro regno Death of William de Albini.
66 b. sustinuit tribulationes; adhuc heredibus suis pro redemptionis suæ debitis illaqueatis, in fata concessit. Eodemque anno capta est magna pars Hispaniæ per illustrem regem Castellæ, Great part of Spain conquered.
et, catholicis introductis, Christiano cultui mancipatur. Fit
ii. magna strages . . . in Hispania. Cruce signantur multi magnates, videlicet comes Ricardus . . . Ricardus Suard, et multi alii. Eodemque mense Augusti migraverunt a seculo
ii. Wigorniensis Willelmus de Bleis[2] . . . . de Albineto. Et circa festum sancti Michaelis obiit Rofensis[3] episcopus, et 29 Sept.
ii. Thomas . . . . consecravit.

M°.CC°.XXXVII°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxi°., Henry at Winchester.
celebravit Natale Domini apud Wintoniam. Convocari fecit omnes Angliæ magnates, ut in die sancti Hilarii Londoniis 13 Jan.
congregati de negotiis regni contrectarent. Postulavitque ibidem auxilium pecuniare, ita ut pecunia illa, secundum dispositionem aliquorum magnatum ad hoc electorum, in usus regni fructuosos expenderetur. Parliament summoned, and an aid demanded.
Orto autem multo murmure, volens rex illud sedare, quia concilium protelatum[4] est in moram, amaritudine[5] spiritus, quatriduanam,[6] spontanea et alacri volun-
. ii. tate jurans pollicebatur se non amplius nobiles . . . . solveretur. Conquestus est enim graviter, quod sororis suæ, scilicet imperatricis, matrimonium, necnon uxoris suæ, reginæ ipsius, thesaurum dissipaverat, et ipsum miserabiliter depauperaverat. Sed ut modo suam relevarent inopiam, promisit Henry promises to

[1] *iiii°.*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *Willelmus de Bleis*] See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 392.

[3] *Rofensis episcopus*] This is an error, as pointed out in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 393.

[4] *protelatum*] protulatum, MS.

[5] *amaritudine*] At first written *in amaritudine*, but *in* erased.

[6] *quatriduanam*] quadruduanam, MS.

A.D. 1237.

observe the liberties of Magna Carta.

firmiter cum sacramento se ex tunc Magnæ Cartæ libertates pleno inviolabiliter observaturum. Et quia videbatur . . . archiepiscopus Cantuariensis S[tephanus], cum . . . malo fretus consilio in magna parte . . . . . recidivaret. Unde omnium corda in hoc verbo sibi plenius inclinavit. Iterum incanduit ira regis in Hubertum de Burgo, pro eo quod nitebatur matrimonio copulare Margaretæ, filiæ suæ, Ricardum de Clare, sine regis licentia ac benivolentia. Tandem . . . asseruit Hubertus hoc fieri eo penitus . . . indignatio. Ipsisque diebus . . . comperiens, utpote vir vafer ac providus, magnatum Angliæ indignationem contra ipsum merito[1] . . . consilium,

He is angry with Hubert de Burgh, on account of his daughter's marriage to Rich. de Clare.

Ibid. ii. 395.

Ibid. ii. 396.

"Dum . . . . furori."

Tempore sub eodem migraverunt . . . de Bresne, et frater Jordanus, summus prior . . . submersus. Obiit quoque xvii°. kalendas Maii piæ memoriæ Ricardus II., episcopus Dunelmensis, cognomento Pauper, postquam tria . . . . a loco cretoso et convexo, et castro vicino transtulit in locum competentem. Trium ecclesiarum cathedralium extitit antistes et competens gubernator, Cicestrensis, Saresbiriensis et Dunelmensis. Sanctam insuper . . . fundavit, quam moriturus dominæ reginæ commisit gubernandam. Imperator F[retherieus] omnes Christianitatis principes apud Vauculur vocavit congregandos, ut de statu omnium regnorum contrectarent; sed rex Francorum noluit ad tale tam universale concilium venire, nisi exercitu suo prudenter communito, unde res effectu caruit prælocuto. Eodem anno episcopus Hertfertensis Johannes sanctum . . . confecit. Et circa eosdem . . . . . mortis revocatus est. Eodem quoque anno scribens domino papæ rex postulavit—nescitur tamen ad quid vel propter quam regni vel ecclesiæ utilitatem—sibi mitti Ottonem . . . legatum. Qui applicans, receptus est cum honore. Circa idem tempus . . . Saracenis ad ditionem Soldani Halapensis pertinentibus, apud . . . sunt. Et ceciderunt plusquam . . . . . vix apparuit, sunt interempta. Cecidit autem . . . . cui commissum fuit illa die, propter . . . quod Balcanus nuncupatur. Quod . . . abscisis,[2] sanguine cecidisset eliquato . . . tamen aliquibus prius ad Tartara destinatis. Ad quam injuriam vindicandam missus est Theodoricus, prior Hospitalariorum in Anglia, cum aliquibus Templariis sibi associatis. Rex adeo honorat legatum et ditat plurimis donativis, ut non tantum prælatorum sed et regum et omnium magnatum fuisse dominus videretur. Solum comitem Ricardum verebatur, a quo [illegible] ut sperabat.

15 April. Death of Richard Poore, bp. of Durham.

The emperor summons a meeting of Christian princes.

Arrival of the legate Otho.

Favour shown to him by the king.

Ibid. ii. 397.

fol. 67.

Ibid. ii. 398.

Ibid. ii. 399.

[1] [illegible] MS.

[2] [illegible] MS.

auferre vel alienare. Archiepiscopo autem laqueos et paravit nocumenta. Iste Otto convocavit omnes Angliæ prælatos, et in ecclesia Beati Pauli Londoniis concilium celebravit. In cujus principio missi sunt ex parte regis . . . clericus et consiliarius specialis, ad hoc concilium jam initiatum; ex parte regis et regni firmiter inhibentes, ne . . . attemptarent. Et . . . de Rale, aliis nunciis ilico recedentibus. In hoc concilio mota est controversia, utrum archiepiscopus Cantuariensis deberet sedere a dextris legati, et Eboracensis a sinistris, vel e converso. Ipsi enim assidebant ei collateraliter. Et affirmatum, quod in omnibus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis locum inter omnes Angliæ prælatos, sicut abbas Sancti Albani inter omnes Angliæ abbates, optinet digniorem. In hoc insuper concilio privavit omnes illos beneficiis suis ecclesiasticis, qui successerant patribus suis immediate. Decrevit insuper, ut omnes ecclesiæ non dedicatæ dedicarentur. Et multa alia, quæ alibi[1] literis commendantur.[2] Habitum est concilium inter reges Angliæ et Scociæ, præsente legato, apud Eboracum. Mediolanenses ausi exire hostiliter contra imperatorem F[rethericum], victi sunt, et x. milia eorum ceciderunt. Potestas eorum, scilicet filius ducis Venetorum, captus est et suspensus; et carrochium eorum captum est, in magnam eorum confusionem et obprobrium. Quia illud est Italicis pro standardo, quod cum amiserint, non poterunt aliud sibi recuperare, nisi per strenuitatem sibi readquirant, vel ex gratia imperatoris reconcedatur eisdem. Quorum utrumque erat Mediolanensibus impossibile vel nimis difficile. Eodem tempore Græci, sua ducti levitate, et oppressionibus lacessiti, a . . . scismatici recesserunt.[3] Archiepiscopus, variis fatigatus injuriis,[4] transfretans, sperat a papa recipere consolationem; nec voluit, licet a legato revocaretur, remanere. Papa enim legatum, ut audierat, revocaverat, et verum fuit; sed rex, subito misso magistro Simone Normanno, moram adhuc legati, in regni et regis detrimentum et dampnum, Romæ a papa impetraverat, reditum maturando; unde, ut ait archiepiscopus, potestas ejus expiraverat.

A.D. 1237.

Council held at St. Paul's.

f. ii.

Controversy respecting the seats of the two archbishops.

Statutes passed by the legate.

Council at York.

Victory gained by the emperor over the Milanese.

67 b.

The abp. of Canterbury goes to the pope,

M°.CC°.XXXVIII°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxii°., fuit ad Natale apud Westmonasterium; ubi comes Legrecestriæ Symon,[5] in crastino Epiphaniæ,[6] Alienoram, sororem

Henry at Westminster.

Marriage of earl Simon to

[1] *alibi*] See note in *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *commendantur*] comendantur, MS.

[3] *recesserunt*] recesserunt soliditate, MS.

[4] *injuriis*] juriis, MS.

[5] *Legrecestriæ Symon*] In the text, *Symon Legrecestriæ*, but marked to be transposed.

[6] *Epiphaniæ*] Epifanie, MS.

A.D. 1238.

the king's sister.

regis, desponsavit. Legatus accepit papale mandatum, rege procurante, ut adhuc nesciebatur,[1] tamen ad quid in Anglia; unde ecclesia tota Anglicana dampnum incurrit et fatigationes.

Oppressive conduct of the legate.

Insistebat enim procurationibus et provisionibus, et aliis multis, quæ in ecclesiarum præjudicium multiformiter redundabant. Fovit insuper plus æquo partem comitis de Harundelle, qui manifestus erat archiepiscopi adversarius.

Birth of a son to the emperor.

Natus est imperatori F[retherico] ex Ysabella imperatrice, sorore regis Angliæ, filius, et vocatus Henricus. Et ex tunc magis ac magis imperator Anglicos diligebat, unde majorem[2] spem amissa recuperandi super regem Francorum, prout idem imperator certissime promiserat sed inaniter, conceperunt. Soror regis Angliæ Johanna, regina . . . regem Angliæ visitaret, H. A. ii. 405.

Earl Simon obtains the pope's sanction to his marriage.

. . . apud Tarentum, domum sanctimonialium. Indignante comite Ricardo, cum rege similiter irato contra comitem Simonem pro memorato matrimonio, comes, vendita magna nemorum suorum parte, ne vacua manu Romam veniret, clam et subito ab Anglia recedit, Romanam curiam adiit. Datisque non paucis muneribus, dispensationem et gratiam a papa, ut liceret ei uxorem suam retinere, sana conscientia ex plenitudine papalis potestatis impetravit. Unde lætior et securior in Angliam remeavit.

The emperor of Constantinople comes to England.

Constantinopolitanus imperator Baldewinus, adolescens elegans, comperiens quod Anglia manum porrigebat prodigam ignotis et alienis, venit in eandem, ut loculos jejunos satiaret, asserens se esse regis propinquum consanguineum. Unde non minimum thesaurum tam a comite Ricardo quam rege reportavit, et a largitate Angliæ, ad quam vacuus venerat, opime recessit saginatus.

Quarrel at Oxford between the legate and the scholars.

Eodem anno orta est dissensio inter legatum et scolares Oxoniæ, unde magister cocorum suorum, qui, ut dicitur, frater extitit legati, occubuit sagittatus. Eodem anno post Pascha . . . F[retherico], sororio suo, contra . . . Johannis Mansel, et Willelmi Hardel, cum militia multa et pecunia stipendiariis, prout idem imperator postulaverat, persolvenda. Qui tota . . . multos adversantes potenter edomantes, imperiali ditioni subdiderunt. Anno sub eodem obiit . . . . preparata amicabiliter præmunivit. Hic, ut dicitur, pro amore imperatoris F[retherici]—et ad hoc sitienter anhelavit[3] idem F[rethericus]—baptismi . . . suorum minas et obprobria formidasset. Ibid. ii. 408.

Ravages of the Tartars.

Tartari cum maxima tirannide inauditum exterminium in terris Sarracenorum exercu-

---

[1] *ut adhuc nesciebatur*] The sentence is faulty, and some words seem omitted. Cf. the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 466.

[2] *majorem*] marem, MS.

[3] *anhelavit*] hanelavit, MS.

A.D. 1238.

erunt; unde præsidium a Christianorum principibus cogebantur implorare, sed optinere non promeruerunt. Si quis autem ipsorum Tartarorum numerum et potentiam exprimeret, l. 68 a. veritatis metas manifeste transgredi videretur. Eodemque id. ii. 9. anno, v°. idus Junii . . . Petrus, cum jam ecclesiam . . . strenue gubernasset. Hic laudabiliter, ad honorem totius Anglicæ nationis, [peregrinationem in Terra Sancta][1] suam, una cum Exoniensi episcopo perfecit. Domos plurimas religiosorum construxit; pacem inter papam et imperatorem reformavit. Hæc sunt nomina domorum quas fundavit: Hales, d. ii.). . . . . hospitale de Portesmue. Item, Ordinem fratrum sancti Thomæ martiris in Terra Sancta reparavit, et ipsam domum a loco inepto adaptum transtulit, et eisdem fratribus construxit officinas cum ecclesia; et impetravit a patriarcha, ut speciale signum portantes, vitam ducerent solito arctiorem et honestiorem. Diligebat autem domum illam pro amore regis Ricardi, pro cujus anima ipsam, ut dictum est, ampliavit, utpote primitivi fundatoris. Item Jopen . . . . delegavit. Rex loco ipsius Willelmum, Valentinum[2] electum, subrogare in episcopatu conabatur, licet paulo ante episcopatum Leodiensem sibi adquisisset; unde relatu indignas ecclesia Wintoniensis sustinuit tribulationes. Redit a Romana curia archiepiscopus Cantuariensis E[dmundus], in cujus adventu tristia invenit et dura. Nam quos excommunicaverat, legatus denunciavit absolutos, et omnia facta ejus in irritum revocaverat. Quæ omnia videbantur procul dubio in præjudicium archiepiscopi redundare, et obprobrium cum contemptu generare. Immo etiam domesticos suos, scilicet monachos Cantuarienses, in ipsum suscitans, contra ipsum archiepiscopum exasperavit. Quæ tamen omnia archiepiscopus, utpote vir patientissimus, sereno vultu palliavit, a Deo postulans in tribulatione consolationem. Monachi Wintonienses in pastorem animarum suarum elegerunt sive postularunt episcopum Cicestrensem Radulphum, regis cancellarium. Quod cum papæ innotuisset, timuit ne regem animaret ad contradicendum, ne solveret tributum Romæ; unde dedit conventui Wintoniensi in mandatis, ut alium eligerent aut postularent. Memoratus enim episcopus, ut asserebat papa, festinus fuit in verbo, et incircumspectus. Insuper rex iratus d. ii. 2. abstulit ab eo sigillum, et commisit illud . . . militi, nunc Simoni Normanno, bajulandum. Eodem tempore accidit regi quoddam periculum . . . . infatuatum, qui potius jugulator quam joculator postmodum est repertus. Nocte enim profunda

Good deeds of Peter, bp. of Winchester.

The king favours, as his successor, William, bp. elect of Valentia.

Edmund, abp. of Canterbury, returns from Rome.

Practices of the legate against him.

Ralph, bp. of Chichester, elected bp. of Winchester, but not accepted.

---

[1] *peregrinationem . . . Sancta*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *Valentinum*] Walentinum, MS.

A.D. 1238. . . . . cultellum, ut regem evisceraret, se ingessit, quærens ipsum, quem voluit jugulare, regem. Et tunc, Deo sic volente, diverterat rex a loco, quo prius erat. Erat autem . . . mulier sancta, regi et reginæ familiaris, quæ per candelam, ut qualibet nocte consuevit, Psalterium psallebat. Hæc videns . . . . cruentus; non enim poterat exire, ubi intraverat. Mulieris . . . salvavit. Unde rex omnibus vitæ suæ diebus plus tenetur Deo obnoxius et obligatus, qui ea nocte ipsum a turpi morte liberavit. Merito igitur crudeli morte peremptus est, distractus, membratim detruncatus, visceribus combustis, suspensus, et ad plures civitates membra suspendenda sunt transmissa. Eodem anno legatus . . . . ordinavit, super reformatione Ordinis sancti Benedicti, audituri et tractaturi. Quæ statuta alibi plenius scribuntur.[1] Repatriavit imperator Constantinopolitanus, refertis clitellis de Anglorum prodigalitate. Diebus sub eisdem quidam de Ordine Prædicatorum, Robertus Bugre dictus, eo quod aliquando hæreticus et filius hæretici extiterat, in partibus Flandriæ multa milia hominum, auxilio fretus regali, fecit comburi. Tandem ipsemet judicio confratrum suorum, qui neminem ad mortem condempnant, immuratus est, ut ibi de horribilibus commissis[2] suis[3] perpetuo pœnitentiam ageret. Tandem, eo procurante, non sine multæ pecuniæ, ut dicitur, effusione, ex dispensatione papali apud Sanctum Victorem, ne majus scandalum per ipsum oriretur, in canonicum est receptus. Fama imperatoris, forte per æmulos suos disseminantes,[4] non mediocriter est obfuscata. Imponebatur enim ei, quod dixerit quædam deliramenta de sacramento altaris, quæ plus expedit reticere quam recitare. Claruit fama . . . de cujus tumba oleum visum est emanare. Eo anno fuit dies Parasceves dies Annunciationis beatæ Mariæ, et tertia dies sequens dies Paschæ, videlicet recto et debito loco suo.[5]

Ibid. ii. 413. — *fol. 68 b.* — *Ibid. ii. 415.*

Departure of the emperor of Constantinople.

Robert Bugre becomes canon of St. Victor.

Rumours affecting the fame of the emperor.

Henry at Winchester.

M°.CC°.XXXIX°. Rex Henricus III., anno regni sui xxiii°., fuit ad Natale Domini apud Wintoniam, episcopatu ei abundanter,[6] qui in manu sua tunc erat, ministrante. Die vero . . . extremum. Die vero Purificationis beatæ Mariæ plene pacificatus regi Simon de Monte-forti, investitus est comitatu Legrecestriæ, pacificato Almarico, fratre ejusdem comitis primogenito. Rex Stephanum de Segrave revocavit ad curiam et

H. A. ii. 417.

2 Feb. Simon de Montfort created earl of Leicester.

[1] *scribuntur*] These Statutes are in the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, pp. 475–481.

[2] *commissis*] At first written *commisso*, but *o* erased, and corr. in marg.

[3] *suis*] suo, MS.

[4] *disseminantes*] dissiminantes, MS.

[5] In regard to this date, see the note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 416.

[6] *abundanter*] habunter, MS.

ad familiare consilium, ad quod libenter sine moræ dispendio accessit, licet jam senex et podagricus. Cassantur duo electi, electus scilicet[1] Norwicensis, prior illius domus . . . Wintoniensem, scilicet episcopus Cicestrensis, licet idoneus, videlicet cancellarius, quia regi displicuerunt. Circa festum sancti Mathiæ monachi Coventrenses elegerunt Willelmum de Rale, canonicum Sancti Pauli Londoniarum, in episcopum et pastorem animarum suarum. Reddita est imperatori F[retherico] opulentissima insula, Sardaniæ scilicet regnum, contra papæ voluntatem, dicentis illud regnum ad jus ecclesiæ pertinere. F[rethericus] vero asserebat illud liquido ad imperium spectare, et per Romanæ curiæ avaritiam diu alienatum; sed tenebatur obligatus sacramento dispersa imperii et alienata revocare. Et ilico, papa invito et contradicente, contulit illud Ensio, filio suo; unde rediit pristina ira cum incremento rediviva, et odium inexorabile inter papam et imperatorem. Oritur lis gravissima in ecclesia Lincolniensi inter episcopum et canonicos, super visitatione facienda. Optinuit episcopus, scilicet Robertus. Obiit Willelmus de Cantelupo, miles, Neuster natione. Eligitur Willelmus de Rale in episcopum Norwicensem. Willelmus autem, relicto episcopatu Conventrensi, ad quem eligebatur, adhæsit Norwicensi. Roboratur turris Londoniarum opere nimis sumptuoso,[2] sed fundamento falso opus mentitum corruit in acervum. Excommunicatur imperator. Tertio die Junii, hora sexta, passus est sol eclipsim. Natus est regi filius . . . Alienora. Otto vero legatus diaconus ipsum baptizavit, et, rege sic volente, Edwardum fecit appellari; archiepiscopus autem E[dmundus] ipsum confirmavit. Ranulphus Brito, canonicus Sancti Pauli, capitur, incarceratur, et in turri Londoniarum probrose tractatur. Per episcopum tandem et canonicos Londonienses vix liberatur, tamen pecunia non modica interveniente. Imperator per totam Christianitatem denunciatur excommunicatus. Ipsisque diebus apparuit in aere, tam de nocte,[3] quædam facula ignea, quasi maxima stella sed protensa, quæ se jaculabatur de loco ad locum. Contradicitur legato tam frequenter procurationes postulanti. Thomas, comes Flandriæ, venit in Angliam pro suo commodo.[4] Willelmus de Rale, electus Norwicensis, consecratur ab archiepiscopo E[dmundo] in ecclesia Sancti Pauli Londoniarum. Ecclesia Wintoniensis multas tolerat oppressiones et injurias enormes valde. Obiit Willelmus, electus

[Left margin: Ibid. ii. 418. — Ibid. ii. 422. — fol. 69 *a*.]

[Right margin: A.D. 1239. — Stephen de Segrave recalled. — William de Rale elected bp. of Chester. — Sardinia restored to the emperor, and given to his son Ensius. — Dispute between the bishop and canons of Lincoln. — Various events. — Appearance of a comet. — Arrival of the count of Flanders. — Will. de Rale consecrated bp. of Norwich. — Oppression of the church of Winchester.]

[1] *scilicet*] Repeated superfluously after *Norwicensis*.

[2] *sumptuoso*] suptuoso, MS.

[3] *tam de nocte*] In the Greater Chronicle, p. 407, "non tamen adhuc apparentibus stellis."

[4] *commodo*] comodo, MS.

A.D. 1239.
Deaths of notable personages.
Capture of Valentia.

Valentinus, in partibus transmarinis, in flore suæ juventutis,[1] multis dignitatibus honoratus, immo potius oneratus. Obiit Avelina, mulier miræ pulchritudinis, Albemarliæ comitissa. Obiit strenuissimus et fidelissimus miles, Henricus de Trublevilla.[2] Obiit quoque in mari magno, Terram Sanctam adiens peregrinus, Radulphus de Thoni, ejusdem strenuitatis et fidelitatis miles illustris. Capta est Valentia magna in Hispania, et dilatati sunt ibidem fines Christianorum.

Henry at Winchester.
Hugh de Pateshulle, bp. of Coventry.
Death of the countess of Cornwall.
The king blamed for submitting to papal exactions.
The earl of Leicester goes to the Holy Land.
Death of Llewellyn.
Popular devotion for the crusade decreases.
General Council at Lyons.

M°.CC°.XL°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxiiii°., fuit ad Natale Domini Wintoniæ, ubi Baldewinum de Devonia balteo cinxit militari et comitatu investivit. Hugo de Pateshulle, regis clericus et thesaurarius de scaccario, eligitur in episcopum Coventrensem. Obiit Ysabella, Cornubiæ comitissa, in partus discrimine. Imperator per epistolam magnam et elegantem reprehendit regem Angliæ vehementer et acerrime, eo quod permisit tam frequenter terram suam per papam talliari et depauperari, tanquam servilem et miseram. Comes Legrecestriæ Simon ad iter se præparat Jerosolimitanum, peregrinus et crucesignatus. Obiit Leolinus, princeps Norwalliæ, duos filios post se relinquens, Griffinum scilicet et David, unum naturalem nothum, et alium consequenter natu juniorem, legitimum regis Angliæ nepotem; unde orta est inter ipsos dissensio cruentissima. Ipsis quoque diebus tepuit devotio fidelium circa Crucis negotium, eo quod hiatu emolumenti pecuniaris plus quam animarum, nunc ad prædicationem prædicantium hodie signabantur, cras, data pecunia, absolvebantur. Franci in Terra Sancta . . . congrederentur, interimuntur, et (H. A. ii. 433.) multi captivantur. Consenserunt et oportunum censuerunt tam imperator quam papa et cardinales, ut concilium convocaretur generale apud Lugdunum, quo papa confugerat a facie imperatoris persequentis. Sed postquam papa convocarat ad idem quosdam Fretherici et ejus imperii hostes publicos[3] concilium, obmurmuravit imperator renuens, ne inimici ejus sui forent judices; et præmunivit eos, ne per suam ditionem transirent, per mare vel per terram. Econtra papa persuasit,[4] et eosdem, tam prælatos quam alios, ut venirent, animavit, et in virtute obedientiæ imperavit; asserens plus debere obedire Deo quam hominibus.

Edmund, archbishop of Canterbury, retires to Pontigny.

Archiepiscopus Edmundus videns omnia patere discrimini, et legatum in Anglia tirannizantem et regem infatuantem, exulat irrediturus, licet hoc legatus (fol. 69) prohiberet et dissuaderet. Et cum navigans respexisset Angliam, flevit amarissime,[5] prænoscens in spiritu se nun-

---

1 *juventutis*] juventis, MS.

2 *Trublevilla*] Trubleville, MS., but *e* afterwards erased.

3 *hostes publicos*] hospuplicos, MS.

4 *persuasit*] persuavit, MS.

5 *amarissime*] amarisse, MS.

quam eam visurum, et infinita mala passurum regnum, et ecclesiam multa deprimendam servitute. Apud Pontiniacum, ubi beatus Thomas in suo exilio sibi elegit stationem, et ipse sibi elegit, donec felicior aura arrideret, mansionem, orans ut ejus sequi vestigia, tanquam sui prædecessoris, mereretur. Nec est a suo fraudatus desiderio. Quo cum pervenisset, gaudenter et honorifice receptus est. Ibique commorans, jejuniis et orationibus sedulo intendens, omnibus fratribus exemplum præbuit sanctitatis. Die vero beatæ A.D. 1240.
ii. Mariæ Magdalenæ comes . . . Scotus, de medio sublatus est. Per eosdem[1] dies venit . . . . pecuniam non minimam sub silentio eidem persolvendam; tali modo . . . . suscepisse in alio. Eodemque anno comes Ricardus, valedicto fratri suo 22 July.
ii. regi et aliis amicis suis, paratis omnibus . . . suo Berkamestude versus Londonias, venit in capitulum Sancti Albani, se ibi fratrum orationibus commendavit.[2] Obiit eodem die, vii°.[3] kalendas Junii, inclitus comes Warranniæ Willelmus. Qui de stirpe regia extitit procreatus; filius namque fuit Hamelini, filii regis Henrici. Eoque anno, procurante diligenter rege, Death of William, earl Warren.
ii. electus . . . Transmontanus, præelecto sponte cedente. Et in festo sancti Michaelis, regina Angliæ Alienora peperit filiam, quam vocavit M[argaretam].[4] Die vero sancti Jeronimi . . . consecratus est apud Westmonasterium in archiepiscopatum Armachanæ . . . temporalibus. Die sancti Remigii . . . . . an- Birth of princess Margaret. 29 Sept.
ii. nuatim convenientibus concessa . . . tunc præsentes confirmaverunt. Obiit Thomas de Muletone. Cassata electione facta de archidiacono, monachi . . . . . tristitia in semetipsis contabescerent; unde mortui sunt quatuor, cum . . . ministris. Quod cum . . . . . spontaneus. Monachi igitur Dunelmenses regem adierunt, ut concederet eis eligendi facultatem. Qua concessa, petiit rex instantissime, ut Bonifacium,[5] reginæ avunculum, sibi eligerent in episcopum, quod monachi renuerunt. Petiit igitur rex, ut magistrum Petrum de Egeblancke, electum de Hereford, sibi eligerent in pastorem. Quod et monachi præcise denegarunt. Recesserunt igitur domum suam adituri, ut cum conventu sanius de electione contrectarent. The monks of Durham refuse to elect the king's nominees as bishop.
Magister Symon Normannus, principalis regis clericus et consiliarius, ita ut[6] bajulus sigilli fieret, a fastigio sui magistratus penitus abjectus est [et][7] aufugatus. Imperator F[rethericus], timens ne in concilio[8] celebrando, quia illuc veniebant Simon le Norman deposed. The emperor forbids cer-

[1] *eosdem*] eodem, MS.
[2] *commendavit*] comendavit, MS.
[3] *vii°.*] vi°., *Hist. Angl.*
[4] *Margareta*] In the text, *Ma*, and *a* afterwards erased, and a blank left.
[5] *Bonifacium*] Bonificium, MS.
[6] *ita ut*] ut ita ut, MS.
[7] *et*] Omitted in MS.
[8] *concilio*] concil, MS.

A.D. 1240. hostes,[1] aliquid contra eum statueret papa, qui ipsum persequebatur,[2] prohibuit prælatis et aliquibus magnatibus, causam eis manifestans, ne ad suspectum concilium convenirent, et paravit eis impedimenta; qui prohibitioni[3] ejus non obsecundarunt. Per idem tempus comes Ricardus prospere applicuit[4] cum sua classe in Terra Sancta, scilicet in portu Achonensi . . . præconia publice fecit . . . Christo strenue militaret. Beatus Edmundus . . . Pontiniacum aliquandiu moraretur, orans et plorans pro statu ecclesiæ Anglicanæ, quam vidit spiritu patere discrimini, cœpit graviter infirmari.[5] Et [ut][6] gratiori . . . quandam religiosorum, divertit, moram aliquantulam facturus ibidem; ubi gravius infirmatus[7] . . . ad Dominum. Dominica proxima . . . Herefordensem. Balænæ et aliæ beluæ marinæ in mari tam prodigialiter pugnaverunt, quod factum est, prout dicebatur, in triste pronosticum, ut earum pars maxima periit interempta; unde eo anno mare multas balænas evomuit ad mortem vulneratas. Obiit Johannes filius-Roberti, præcipuus baro in partibus borealibus.

[Margin: Henry forbids certain prelates to come to the General Council. — Earl Richard lands at Acre. — fol. 70. — Ibid. ii. 442. — Whales thrown up by the sea. — Death of John Fitz-Robert.]

M°.CC°.XLI°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxv°., tenuit curiam suam ad Natale apud Westmonasterium; ubi convenerat prælatorum numerosa multitudo, ut legatum, quem papa irrefragabiliter revocarat, ad mare conducerent. Et in crastino Epiphaniæ[8] transfretavit. Petrus de Sabaudia venit in Angliam; cui rex gaudenter occurrens, ilico contulit comitatum sive honorem de Richemund, cum multis aliis donativis. Anglia se sensit nimis gravatam per moram legati jam fere triennalem. Die vero sancti Edwardi rex prædictum Petrum balteo cinxit[9] militari. Magister Nicholaus de Fernham eligitur in episcopum Dunelmensem. Obierunt quidam Angliæ magnates deplorandi, scilicet Gilebertus Basset, et filius . . . Fulconem Basset, fratrem Gileberti, decanum scilicet Eboracensem, devoluta. Obiit et Johannes Biset, prothoforestarius. Multi magnates Angliæ arripiunt iter Jerosolimitanum, comes videlicet de Alba-marla Willelmus, Petrus de . . . . de Chandelers, bono exemplo Ricardi comitis provocati. Crux sancta die Paraceves a rege Francorum Ludowico deportatur ab ecclesia Sancti [Antonii][10] usque palatium ejus, quod est Parisius, cum corona spinea, clamide Christi, et spongia; ad

[Margin: Henry at Westminster. — Departure of the legate. 7 Jan. — Arrival of Peter of Savoy. 5 Jan. — Nich. de Fernham elected bp. of Durham. — Deaths of nobles. — H. A. ii. 446. — Holy reliques at Paris, and the Sainte]

[1] *hostes*] hostis, MS.
[2] *persequebatur*] persequabar, MS.
[3] *prohibitioni*] prohibucioni, MS.
[4] *applicuit*] aplicuit, MS.
[5] *infirmari*] imfirmari, MS.
[6] *ut*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*
[7] *infirmatus*] imfirmatus, MS.
[8] *Epiphaniæ*] Epif', MS.
[9] *cinxit*] cingsit, MS.
[10] *Antonii*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

quæ reponenda rex construxit miræ capellam pulchritudinis. A.D. 1241.
bid. ii. 47. Obiit Walterus de Lascy . . . eminentissimus. Obiit Æthelmarus,[1] rex Daciæ, ætate centenarius, cum jam circiter quinquaginta annis regnasset. Hic insidiabatur et comminabatur Angliæ, non veritus incidere in formidabilem ultionem sancti Edwardi regis et Christi confessoris. Undo eodem sancto Edwardo irato, duo filii dicti Athelmari, scilicet Abel et Christoforus, sese hostiliter infestantes, et pro regno decertantes paterno, tamdiu dimicarunt donec unus alterum interimisset. Apud Cateby, ubi duæ sorores beati Edmundi sanctimoniales existebant, choruscabant miracula. Monachi Cantuarienses, optento absolutionis beneficio, elegerunt, quia sic oportuit, Bonefacium, avunculum reginæ, licet insufficiens videretur, in archiepiscopum. Capti sunt in mari quamplures prælati ab Ensio, imperatoris F[retherici] filio, qui ad concilium, secundum mandatum papæ, properabant; quos tamen fol. 70 b. papa minime liberavit. Confirmatus est et consecratus electus Dunelmensis, magister Nicholaus de Fernham, apud Glovernìam, ab archiepiscopo Eboracensi Waltero. Obiit comes Marescallus Gilebertus, apud Hertford, in torneamento miserabiliter. Remanserunt in Anglia post recessum legati duo clerici, collectores pecuniæ ad opus papæ, scilicet Petrus Rubeus, et Petrus de Supino. Rex Francorum contulit comitatum Pictaviæ Andefulso, fratri suo. Captæ sunt treugæ inter Soldanum Babiloniæ et comitem Ricardum, liberatis et redemptis Christianis captivis, scilicet Francis et aliis captis apud[2] Gazam. Comes Ricardus fecit sepeliri omnia ossa occisorum Christianorum in cimiterio, quod fecit propriis sumptibus præparatum dedicari. Ascalonam firmavit. Die autem Inventionis [sanctæ Crucis][3] comes rediturus, navem ascendens, apud Trapes in Sicilia applicuit; ubi[4] malos rumores audivit de rege Francorum, mala pro bonis recompensante, quod videlicet ipsum comitem[5] a comitatu Pictaviæ spoliaverat. Similiter de captione prælatorum in mari. Occurrit ei gaudens imperator, et locutus est comes cum imperatrice bid. ii. 52. sorore. Missus est . . . pluries, sed frustra laboravit. Sitienter enim desideravit liberare captivos citra mare, sicut liberaverat ultramarinos; ubi etiam decennales treugas impetraverat. Episcopus Bangorensis nititur liberare Griffinum, quia sub ejus ducatu venerat pacifice ad parlamentum, ubi fraterno dolo captus fuerat; sed episcopus frustra laboravit. Divisis

Chapelle built.
Death of the king of Denmark, and war between his sons.
Miracles at Catesby.
Boniface elected abp. of Canterbury.
Capture of prelates coming to the General Council.
Consecration of the bishop of Durham.
Death of Gilbert, earl Mareschal.
Poitou given to Alphonse of France.
Truce between the Soldan and earl Richard.
Richard lands in Sicily.
The bp. of Bangor endeavours to release prince Griffin.

[1] *Æthelmarus*] A mistake for *Waldemarus*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 447.
[2] *apud*] a, MS.
[3] *sanctæ Crucis*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 452.
[4] *ubi*] ub, MS.
[5] *comitem*] comit, MS.

A.D. 1241.

Wales subdued.

cordibus magnatum Walliæ, subjugata est Wallia regi. Orta est discordia inter episcopum Lincolniensem et ejus capitulum, super visitatione facienda. Optinuit episcopus R[obertus].[1]

Shrine of St. Edward the Confessor.

Dominus rex fecit fabricari nobilissimum[2] feretrum ad opus sancti Edwardi, ex auro purissimo et gemmis pretiosis. Et quamvis materia pretiosissima fuerit, tamen materiam superabat opus. Walterus Marescallus adeptus est hereditatem suam,

Dispute between the king and bishop of Norwich.

precibus archiepiscopi Cantuariensis Edmundi. Orta est discordia inter regem et episcopum Norwicensem Willelmum; unde tam in Norwicensi ecclesia quam Wintoniensi, et tam in civitate Wintoniæ quam in conventu Wintoniensi, scandala sunt secuta.

Death of pope Gregory IX.

Obiit papa Gregorius IX[us]., ætate centenarius.
Obiit Alienora, filia . . . custodiæ reserata ac reservata. Im- Ibid.
pedita fuit electio papalis pro multiformi desolatione ecclesiæ 456.
Romanæ. Pridie kalendas[3] Octobris . . . eclipsim. Tertio vero Ibid.
. . . Londoniensis Rogerus, excellens theologus, vir . . . præ- 457.
dicatione et eloquentia perspicuus. Et . . . decanus, moribus,
scientia et genere clarissimus. Episcopus . . . sarcofagis[4] Ibid.
sunt sepulti; et miracula ad tumbam episcopi liquido clarue- 458.
runt. Unde, licet non canonizatus, sanctus a populo, sequen-

Fulk Basset, bp. of London.

tibus signis, est acclamatus.[5] Fulco Basset, decanus Eboracensis, loco ipsius subrogatur. Magister Henricus de Cornhulle in decanum[6] substituitur. Obiit episcopus Cestrensis, Hugo

Death of Hugh, bp. of Chester.

de Pateshulle, vii°. idus Septembris. Cardinales . . . dolore, licet dispersi cum difficultate convocati, elegerunt . . . . morte præoccupatus[7] est. Et sub . . . cardinalis. Eodemque anno
obierunt quidam Angliæ magnates, Hugo Wac . . . . . frater Ibid.
ejusdem comitis Ricardi, Johannes de . . . et alii quamplures 459.
nobiles et strenui, qui in comitatu comitis Ricardi peregrinantes, ab exilio hujus seculi, non sine martirii præmio, ad Chris-

Death of the emprss. Isabella.

tum migraverunt. Obiit quoque Ysabella, imperatrix Romano- fol. 7
rum, soror regis Anglorum, gloria et spes Anglorum, in partus discrimine.

Henry at Westminster. Hugh, count of March, applies for

M°.CC°.XLII°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxvi°., tenuit curiam suam apud Westmonasterium, in magno suo palatio, ad Natale Domini. Ortæ sunt graves inimicitiæ inter Hugonem, comitem de Marchia, regis Angliæ victricum, et regem Francorum, eo quod idem comes Andefulso, novo comiti Pictaviæ, ut dicitur, homagium facere dedignabatur.

---

[1] Cf. *ante*, p. 279.

[2] *nobilissimum*] nobilissum, MS.

[3] *kalendas*] An error for *nonas*. See note in *Hist. Angl.*

[4] *sarcofagis*] sacofagis, MS.

[5] *acclamatus*] aclamatus, MS.

[6] *Henricus . . . decanum*] On an erasure. See note in *Hist. Angl.*

[7] *præoccupatus*] preocupatus, MS.

A.D. 1242.

Unde regem Angliæ in adjutorium et ultionem per nuncios et epistolas urgentes vocavit, promittens ei omnia jura sua ultramarina potenter revocare. Applicat comes Ricardus prospere in Anglia, kalendis Februarii. Rex et regina et multi Angliæ magnates gaudenter occurrunt venienti. Quod cum cognovissent[1] Pictavenses, tunc demum magis ac magis stimulando exhortabantur tam comitem quam regem, ut in Pictaviam venire non pigritarent, comitatum Pictaviæ et omnia jura regem Anglorum contingentia continuo recepturi; unde rex a transfretatione[2] nullo fidelium suorum consilio poterat retardari. Rex pecuniam exegit a singulis prælatis non minimam, ad hæc sua jura requirenda. Eodem tempore, commisso regno Angliæ archiepiscopo Eboracensi Waltero ad custodiendum, disposita classe, idus Maii cum thesauro maximo, prout[3] comes de Marchia persuaserat, apud Portesmue rex naves

aid against France.

1 Feb.

Arrival of earl Richard.

The Poitevins urge Henry to come to them.

15 May.

He embarks at Portsmouth.

. ii. ascendit, comitantibus . . . . militibus. Quidam miles de Hibernia, Willelmus de Marisco, filius Galfridi de Marisco, qui exul acclamabatur, in insula de Lunde, non multum a Bristoldo distante, convocatis plurimis vispilionibus, latitans, more piratico prædis inhiat et rapinis. Tandem captus, ipse ad caudas equorum, cum xvi. sociis ejus, in vigilia sancti Jacobi tractus est [ad][4] patibulum, et ibidem miserabiliter omnes sunt suspensi. Rex Francorum, congregato[5] maximo exercitu, occurrit hostiliter regi Anglorum, cum jam prospere in partibus ulterioribus applicuisset. Et irruens primo in comitem de Marchia, castra ejus diruit[6] aut cepit violenter. Et cum vidisset comes partem suam infirmari, pœnituit eum, sed sero, regem Angliæ, jam in arcto constitutum, in suas partes attraxisse. Reversus est igitur, licet invitus, ad dominium regis Francorum, qui eum recepit corde suspecto et animo titubante. Videntes igitur Pictavenses quod fortissimus eorum versus est, stillatim ad regem Francorum sunt reversi. Interim, Deo sic volente, infirmatus[7] est graviter rex Francorum, et pestis et fames invasit exercitum ejus, ita quod in abissum desperationis quasi ultione divina præcipitabantur. Regina interim apud Burdegalim filiam peperit, et vocavit eam nomine matris reginæ Beatricem. Rex Francorum, quia sic feliciter oportuit, treugas cepit cum rege Anglorum, et in lectica in Franciam infirmus deportatus est. Nec unquam postea plene

Execution of William de Marisco.

24 July.

Success of Louis against the count of March.

Sickness of the king of France.

Birth of princess Beatrice.

[1] *cognovissent*] congnovissent, MS.

[2] *transfretatione*] transfratione, MS.

[3] *prout*] pro, MS.

[4] *ad*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[5] *congregato*] congreto, MS.

[6] *diruit*] dirruit, MS.

[7] *infirmatus*] imfirmatus, MS.

A.D. 1242.

Louis assumes the Cross.

sibi restauratus est, donec post multos dies mente alienatus crucem cepit; unde tota Francia, immo tota Christianitas, induit confusionem. Comes Ricardus et multi cum eo nobiles tædio affecti revertuntur, et in Cornubiam, post longa maris pericula, vix applicuerunt. Rex autem in illis adhuc partibus cum multis Angliæ magnatibus inutiliter commorabatur,
doneo, omnibus suis depauperatis, ipse, consumpto toto suo fol. 7
thesauro, et multo ære obligatus alieno, ad propria est reversus, anno tamen consequenti, ut dicetur.

Dedication of the church of Waltham.

Dedicatur ecclesia de Waltham conventualis ab episcopo Norwicensi Willelmo.
Scutagium . . . extorquetur. Adam, abbas Waredonæ, fit Ibid. ii
episcopus Cunerensis. Anno sub eodem inundaverunt undæ 466.
pluviales . . . sibi conterminos vendicaret. In magna . . . Ibid. ii
poterant, et homines equis pertransibant. 467.

Translation of the Testament of the 12 Patriarchs.

Episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus transtulit Testamenta xii. Patriarcharum de Græco in Latinum, quæ per invidiam Judæorum multis seculis fuerant occultata.

The Cistercian abbats forbidden to go to the General Chapter.

Abbates Cisterciensis Ordinis prohibiti sunt transfretare, ne ad eorum generale capitulum ex Anglia
valerent pervenire. Obierunt quidam nobiles, Gilebertus . . . Ibid. ii
Kime. In borealibus autem Angliæ partibus . . . . vices 468.
agens cancellarii Ricardi; episcopus [quoque][1] Bathoniensis Jocelinus. Apud Burdegalim sanctissima mulier Margarita Biset. Obiitque unus . . . . maceratus.

Henry at Bordeaux.

M°.CC°.XLIII°. Rex Henricus III., anno regni sui xxvii°., tenuit curiam suam ad Natale Domini apud Burdegalim. Et
ne penitus . . . . municipia; ubi jactu lapidis et spiculo arcuba- H. A.
listæ[2] læsus est dominus Johannes Mansel in femore. 469.

Election of bp. of Coventry cancelled.

Monachi Coventrenses elegerunt sibi in episcopum suum Willelmum de Monte-Pessulano, commonachum suum; sed quia non erat regi acceptus, cassatus est.

The prelates released by the emperor.

Prælati incarcerati postulabant instantissime, ut imperator liberos eos permitteret saltem per tantum tempus abire, donec providissent ecclesiæ de papæ substitutione; promittentes fideliter quod talem eligerent in
papam, qui paci profecto consentiret. Quibus . . . . impera- Ibid. ii
tor, ipsos liberos abire permisit. 470.

Truce between France and England.

Quinquennes treugæ firmatæ sunt inter reges Francorum et Anglorum.

Henry lands at Portsmouth. 25 Sept.

Et sic prospere rex Anglorum ad propria remeans, vii°. kalendas Octobris apud Portesmue applicuit; commissa custodia Wasconiæ Nicholao de Molis. Per idem tempus rex Francorum et regni ejus universitas . . . . rite eligentes universali ecclesiæ, diu pastorali solatio destitutæ maturius providerent, vel ipsi

---

[1] *quoque*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *arcubalistæ*] baliste, MS.

Franci negligentiam eorum supplentes,[1] privilegio uterentur beati Dionisii, qui a beato Clemente apostolatum accepit citra montes populum Deo acceptabilem adquirendi. Unde ipsi cardinales, licet adhuc ficti et desides, et cordibus divisi,[2] tam imperatoris quam regis supradicti stimulis agitati,[3] die Nativitatis sancti Johannis Baptistæ, Sinebaldum cardinalem in papam creaverunt, imperatori prorsus exosum, et eidem plane adversantem, postquam vacaverat sedes per annum et ix. menses. Die vero apostolorum . . . Innocentius IIII. Et ilico confirmavit . . . conversa. Et jamjam pœnituit eum graviter prælatos a carcere liberos dismisisse. Posuit igitur in exitibus et introitibus urbium et viarum arctas custodias, ne bullarum portitores libere transmearent, sciens quod exinde non minimum emolumentum tam papa quam cardinales reportarent. Templarii . . . graviter et hostiliter infestantes . . . . . imperatoris infestabant; unde ipsi etiam infideles gaudentes cachinnabant,[4] et eorum religionem deridebant. Confirmantur Bonefacius . . . Willelmus in episcopatum Wintoniensem, Romæ, a papa. Eligitur . . . de Sufeld. Quo regi præsentato, placuit eidem electus et electio. Comes Ricardus desponsavit Cinciam, sororem reginæ, die sancti Clementis, celebratis nuptiis apud Westmonasterium cum honore incomparabili. Rex . . . Beatricem, Provinciæ comitissam, matrem scilicet reginæ et Cornubiæ jam comitissæ Cinciæ, quæ cum eadem Cincia comiti [Ricardo],[5] ut dictum [est],[6] maritanda nuper venerat . . . donativis ditavit, et possessionibus ampliavit. Fama imperatoris etiam in fide vacillans, ut dicebatur, non mediocriter denigrata est. Suadente et urgenter stimulante papa, eligitur in regem Alemanniæ, quasi in arram culminis imperialis, Andegravius de Duringe, vir elegans et genere præclarus, et sanctissimæ Elizabeth sanguine propinquus. Unde libentius fecerunt ei homagium magnates Alemanniæ, et maxime prælati, instinctu papali; nomine Fretherici, quem jam nemo imperatorem ausus est dicere vel affirmare vel nominare, fœtente. Cui Conradus, Fretherici filius, potenter se opposuit. Et sic orta est guerra exitialis per totam Alemanniam, et effusus sanguis non modicus hinc inde Christianus. Tandem humiliatus imperator, pacem optulit, sed papa noluit assentire, nisi vellet absolute stare censuræ ecclesiasticæ. Imperator autem noluit inimici sui gratiam experiri. Et sic,

A.D. 1243.

24 June. Election of cardinal Sinebald as pope. [Innocent IV.]

ii. (beside "ses. Die vero apostolorum")

72 a. (beside "emolumentum tam papa")

ii. (beside ". . . Willelmus in episcopatum")

Marriage of earl Richard. 17 Nov.

ii. (beside "Westmonasterium")

Defamation of the emperor.

The landgrave of Thuringia elected king of Germany.

War in Germany.

[1] *supplentes*] suplentes, MS.
[2] *divisi*] On an erasure.
[3] *agitati*] agiti, MS.
[4] *cachinnabant*] cachinabant, MS.
[5] *Ricardo*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*
[6] *est*] Supplied from the same.

A.D. 1243. impediente humani generis inimico, ira et guerra gravius solito horruit rediviva. Otto, quondam legatus in Anglia, factus est episcopus Portuensis. Imperator fecit arctius omnes vias Transalpinas custodiri, ne papa ditatus xeniis et pretiosis muneribus Cisalpinorum, maxime Francorum et Anglorum, ut consuevit, abundaret.[1] Unde infinitam pecuniam, quam papa ab Anglia per diversas tallias extorserat, in suum imperator thesaurum accumulavit. Et scribens regi Anglorum, ipsum de talis ac tantæ pecuniæ collectis redarguit castigando. Rex autem dissimulans, obaudivit. Numerus quarundum mulierum, quas Beguinas vulgus nominat, in Alemannia præcipue, usque ad milia milium incredibiliter multiplicabatur,[2] quæ castitatem profituntur et sequuntur, de manuum suarum laboribus vitam exilem protrahentes. Nonas Maii obiit comes . . . . . prioratum ecclesiæ Sancti Albani pertinentem, cujus Ibid. i. patronus extitit, est sepultus. Eodem anno . . . . toleraverat 477. tribulationes, comes . . . laudabiliter apud Banstude, manerium suum, diem clausit extremum, et in domo fratrum Prædicatorum[3] Londoniis, quorum amicus erat et benefactor, veneranter est sepultus.

Otho, formerly legate, made bp. of Porto.

The papal supplies intercepted by the emperor.

Growth of the Beguines.

M°.CC°.XLIIII°.[4] Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxviii°., fol. 72 ad Natale Domini fuit apud Walingefordiam, conviva comitis Ricardi; ubi idem comes, convocatis quamplurimis regni nobilibus, nuptiarum suarum cum summo honore reliquias celebravit. Erant nempe ibidem comitissa Provinciæ Beatrix, cum filiabus suis, regina scilicet et Cornubiæ comitissa. Quibus rex . . . cui nobiles dominæ memoratæ interfuere, vo- H. A. ii lente sic rege, ipsa Provinciæ comitissa ad propria remeavit. 478. Magister Martinus a novo papa Innocentio IIII. mittitur in Angliam, ad colligendum pecuniam ad opus papæ, quem imperator F[rethericus] confundere nitebatur. Et sine difficultate concessa est ei licentia a rege, maxime quia idem imperator, quando postulavit sororem[5] regis Ysabellam in uxorem, et cum ipsa quadraginta milia marcarum accepit, promisit efficax auxilium se regi impensurum contra regem Francorum, ad jura sua ultramarina potenter readquisitura; nihil tamen fecit de promissis. Magister Rogerus, præcentor Saresbiriensis, confirmatur in episcopum Bathoniensem. Obiit episcopus

Henry at Wallingford.

Martin sent as papal nuncio to England.

Roger bp. of Bath.

[1] *abundaret*] habundaret, MS.

[2] *multiplicabatur*] multipli, MS.

[3] *fratrum Prædicatorum*] Predicatorum fratrum, MS., but marked to be transposed.

[4] *M°.CC°.XLIIII°.*] M°.CC°.LIIII°., MS.

[5] *sororem*] Repeated in MS. by error.

A.D. 1244.

Cicestrensis, Radulphus de Novilla, cancellarius. Rex capit in manu sua terras, quas Normanni habebant in Anglia. Mortuo episcopo Cicestrensi Radulpho, constituit dominus rex sibi[1] consiliarios,[2] dominum Paulinum, militem, et dominum Johannem de Lexintona, militem, et dominum Johannem Mansel, clericum, viros discretos et literatos et indigenas, suos
d. ii. principales consiliarios. Episcopus Wintoniensis . . . . præstolaretur. Griffinus, Leolini principis Northwalliæ filius primogenitus, dolo fratris sui David captus, et in turri Londoniarum incarceratus, dum de nocte evadere cupiebat, demissus per funem de pannis incaute factum, cecidit ab alto, et, fractis cervicibus, miserabiliter expiravit. Anno sub eodem confectum
d. ii. . . . prout moris est, in ecclesia conventuali. Chorosmini, videlicet gens infidelis et detestabilis de partibus orientis, per Tartaros de finibus suis expulsa, hostiliter venerunt in Terram Sanctam;[3] ubi magnum exterminium de Christianis exercuerunt. Episcopus Beritensis Walerannus literas de hoc infortunio detulit,[4] omnium magnatum Terræ Sanctæ sigillis roboratas. Quarum summa hæc est: Succubuerunt in bello cruentissimo
l. ii. de . . . Theutonicorum, xxxiii. Templarii, xxvi. Hospitalarii. De Teuthonicis, tantum tribus per fugam elapsis, pars electissima, omnibus aliis captivatis, præter stragem . . . infinitorum. Optimates vero terræ pro majori parte interempti ceciderunt. De archiepiscopo . . . . . non apparuissent, nescitur quo devenissent. Magister vero . . . abducti. Soldanus Babiloniæ misit istos Chorosminos, et eisdem prestitit patrocinium, in exterminium Christianorum, in Terram Sanctam. Et missus est memoratus episcopus in Europam, ut super hiis casum lugubrem nuncians, auxilium postularet. Disseminatur dedecus et infamia regis per fugam episcopi
l. 73 a. Wintoniensis inter Francos, qui de levi Anglos diffamant,
l. ii. qui cachinnando ad invicem dicebant, "Ecce . . . . nunc autem istum bonum virum, qui paulo ante ejus fuerat consiliarius specialis. Ecce militia ejus, ecce strenuitas!" Domino papa igitur super hoc sollicitante et scribente, rex, ut fama ejus restauraretur, mitior effectus, episcopum exulantem studuit revocare. Temporibus autem sub . . . . . apprehenderent. Papa igitur nimium attonitus in hora, ... assere-
l. ii. bant se esse affines vel consanguineos, Intravit igitur . . . . suis, quia ibi vel non procul natus fuit, et eadem civi-

Death of the bp. of Chichester. The lands held by the Normans seized. New councillors appointed. Death of prince Griffin. Palestine invaded by the Chorasmians, and slaughter of the Christians. The king is defamed by the French.

[1] *dominus rex sibi*] On an erasure.
[2] *consiliarios*] Superfluous here, because repeated at the end of the sentence.
[3] *Sanctam*] Scm̄, MS. and *m* afterwards erased, and a blank left.
[4] *infortunio detulit*] infornio detu, MS.

A.D. 1244. tate a primis annis educatus. Et tunc pro vicissitudine beneficii et servitii tanti promisit conferre illis et eorum consanguineis, affinibus et amicis multa ecclesiarum beneficia. Quo cognito,[1] obstupuit imperator, et dolens . . . argumenta. Fecit igitur vias custodiri et transitus, ne ad ipsum ferentes munera et habentes . . . occidentalibus, possent aliquatenus pervenire; perpendens quod non ob aliud applaudebant ei Januenses, nisi ut ab eodem ditarentur. Ex tunc igitur magis papa[2] læsus et provocatus fecit acclamari imperatorem esse manifestum ecclesiæ persecutorem. Animantibus papa . . . Andegravius Duringiæ multis papalibus ditatus thesauris, consilium habuit solito urgentius, ut regnum . . . assumeret citius adquirendum. Qui consilio papali fultus [est][3] et auxilio, adminiculantibus Alemanniæ prælatis, qui fere omnes, tanquam filii obedienti parti ecclesiæ faventes, imperatori ac Conrado, filio suo, et omnibus eorum complicibus viriliter restiterunt; magnatibus tamen adhuc aliquibus papæ resistentibus. Ipso quoque tempore, ut partem . . . . exoso et rebelli atque scismatico,[4] filiam suam speciosam, cum thesauro impretiabili. Anni quoque . . . Walenses, nolentes legibus . . . . juramentorum immemores, guerram moverunt cruentissimam. Quibus, de præcepto regis, pro terrarum suarum defensione, viriliter restiterunt comes Gloverniæ, comes de Hereford, Johannes de Munemue, Rogerus de Muhaut, et . . . . de aliquibus triumpharunt. Festo vero sancti Barnabæ fuit rex . . . . . specialis et consiliarii, quem promovere sitienter proposuerat, cassatione. Qui quidem ad episcopatum Cicestrensem [electus],[5] rege extiterat procurante, et eo . . . vir quidem sanctus et episcopatui idoneus . . . subrogatus. Rex igitur iratus, baronias episcopatuum Cicestriæ et Cestriæ, quia magister Rogerus, electus Cestrensis, simili causæ subjacebat, jussit scisiri in manu sua et retineri. Rex insuper Scociæ A[lexander] jura quædam in regno suo ad regem Angliæ spectantia recognoscere[6] procaciter renuebat. Eratque amicitia inter ipsos reges nimis attenuata, ex quo rex Scociæ per maritagium filiæ Engelrami, Francis, qui sunt regis Angliæ capitales, ut novit mundus, inimici, fuerat confœderatus. Ut igitur accinctus ad ultionem rex Angliæ ipsum regem Scociæ potentius . . . Thomam, reginæ avunculum. Qui mandatis regiis obtemperans, in Angliam cum militia venit

The emperor proclaimed an enemy to the church.

The Landgrave of Thuringia favoured by the German prelates.

11 June.

The king seizes the bprics. of Chichester and Chester.

War with Scotland.

Ibid. ii. 487.

fol. 77

Ibid. ii. 488.

Ibid. 489.

---

[1] *cognito*] congnito, MS.

[2] *papa*] Repeated after *fecit*, superfluously.

[3] *est*] Omitted in MS.

[4] *scismatico*] cismatico, MS.

[5] *electus*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[6] *recognoscere*] recongnoscere, MS.

congregata; et regem jam versus Scociam lora dirigentem et vexilla, pedetentim sequebatur. Per idem tempus pars regis Scotorum non mediocriter est infirmata;[1] unde pœnituit jam ipsum contra regem Anglorum recalcitrasse. Engelramus enim de Cuscy, socer ejus, qui eidem regi Scociæ, generi suo, militare præsidium promiserat per mare mittendum, in fata, Deo ultore, miserabiliter concesserat; antiquus enim Clarevallensium et omnium religiosorum persecutor indefessus. Revocatur episcopus Wintoniensis,[2] et sua dignitate et pace regia gratulatur; talium etenim indiguit[3] plus solito familiaritate et consilio. Convenit utriusque regni, scilicet Anglorum et Scotorum, universa nobilitas, cui intererant comes Flandriæ Thomas et alii consanguinei et amici reginæ in partibus regno Scociæ conterminis. Et sub forma pacis inter reges prælocutum est matrimonium contrahendum inter primogenitum regis Scotorum, filium Alexandrum, et filiam regis Anglorum Margaretam; sed quia pueri erant et tenelli, non fuit adhuc desponsatio solempniter per nuptias celebrata. Et sic uterque regum in pace remeavit. Convenerant autem Londoniis, regia submonitione, magnates. In quo concilio petiit rex ore proprio in propatulo, scilicet in . . . . . pecuniare. Cui responsum fuit, quod quia carta libertatum, quam pater suus rex J[ohannes] concesserat, et postmodum rex H[enricus] III., filius ejus, cum juramento multotiens concesserat, nec tamen adhuc observaverat, "istud negotium censemus debere merito capere dilationem." Postulabant insuper instantissime sibi constitui justiciarium et cancellarium, per quos status regni solidaretur, ut consuevit, et qui darent regi fidele consilium et utile reipublicæ. Hoc igitur consilium et negotium cepit dilationem usque in tres septimanas a Purificatione beatæ Mariæ; sed rege familiaribus respondente interim, quod servilis esset ejus conditio, et deterior alicujus baronis[4] vel militis, si non liceret de quo vellet, nunc de uno nunc de alio, illi facere vel cancellarium vel justiciarium, tanquam senescallum. Quod cum cognovissent[5] magnates, non curarunt venire, ut nihil aliud reportarent quam ambages. Tandem rex sperans . . . . hac forma: "Innocentius," etc. Summa fuit: "De vestris . . . . conferatis." Responsio autem, quia omnes tunc ibi prælati non fuerant, cepit dilationem. Magister Martinus interim, papæ clericus, de nuncio sibi injuncto sollicitus, convocatis . . . literas papales. Quarum summa ista fuit: "In ea . . . .

A.D. 1244.

Death of Engelram de Coucy.

The bp. of Winchester recalled.

Meeting of the English and Scottish nobles, and peace made.

Council held at London.

ii.

74 a.

Pecuniary aid to the king postponed.

2 Feb.

ii.

[1] *infirmata*] imfirmata, MS.

[2] *Wintoniensis*] After this word, *episcopus* is repeated.

[3] *etenim indiguit*] indiguit etenim, MS., but marked to be transposed.

[4] *baronis*] boronis, MS.

[5] *cognovissent*] congnovissent, MS.

A.D. 1244. exprimendam." Interim misit imperator . . . de Ocre, notum nuncium suum et consuetum . . . summa talis erat: "Supplicando, admonendo prohibemus . . . Anglicum in potestate sua inveniret, sive prælatum sive alium, gravi puniret ultione. Tandem ita procuratum est a magnatibus et prælatis vacillantibus et dissidentibus, quod tam papæ quam regi, non sine præcordialibus omnium suspiriis, est satisfactum; nec tantum carta cum libertatibus est propterea conservata, sed tam regnum quam ecclesia obsorduit, ultimæ conditionis servitutibus conculcata. Novi sancti clarent in Anglia, præter beatum Edmundum confessorem, quem, proh dolor! Anglia non meruit retinere. Sanctus Robertus de Knareburg . . . ad[1] cujus tumbam diversa miracula probantur celebrari . . . Edmundi, ad cujus sepulturam certissima miracula choruscabant. Et multi alii, licet non canonizati, Deo manifestante, claruerunt. Magister Willelmus de Burgo, domini regis clericus, fit episcopus Landavensis; sed cito postea lumine oculorum est privatus. Consecratur in episcopum Bathoniensem magister Rogerus, præcentor Saresbiriensis. In octavis sancti Martini episcopus Lincolniensis transfretavit, pro causa ventilata inter ipsum et canonicos suos; et decanus Lincolniensis cum quibusdam canonicis, contra ipsum. Multa pecunia extorquetur a miserrimis[2] Judæis. Nicholaus de Molis a rege Navariæ et aliis circumseptus hostibus in Wasconia, ubi senescallus nuper constituebatur, non tantum se defendit, sed gloriose triumphat. Rex Francorum Parisius graviter infirmatur.[3] Et dum jacuisset duobus diebus penitus, ut dicitur, exanimatus, tandem respirans postulavit crucem sibi dari. Episcopus autem Parisiensis signavit eum, dicens, "Domine, ut ne te conturbem, quod postulas, do, obsecundando Deo, eam tibi. Cum convalueris ad plenum, cum deliberatione et discretorum consilio actus tuos ordinabis." Rex autem nulla noluit illam ratione deponere, sed deosculans eam, imposuit humeri suo. Robertus Passelew, Wellensis[4] archidiaconus, domini regis clericus et consiliarius specialis, dedit regi consilium, in multorum exterminium, paupertatem et dolorem, ut, facta inquisitione per vicinos de regiæ forestæ occupatione, et[5] aliena quicunque invaserunt, gravi . . . invenirentur, sive justam sive injustam haberent excusationem, usque ad exinanitionem et mendicitatem puniti, regi thesaurum, utinam profecturum,[6] cumulabant. Obiit Mar-

Contributions raised for the pope and king.

New saints flourish in England.

William de Burgh, bishop of Llandaff.

Roger, bp. of Bath, consecrated.

The bp. and dean of Lincoln go abroad to plead their suit.

Defeat of the king of Navarre in Gascony.

The king of France assumes the Cross, when dangerously ill.

Oppressive counsel of Rob. Passelewe.

fol. 7.

Ibid. ii 497.

[1] *ad*] a, MS.

[2] *miserrimis*] miserimis, MS.

[3] *infirmatur*] imfirmatur, MS.

[4] *Wellensis*] An error for *Lewensis*, as in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 497.

[5] *et*] Appears superfluous here.

[6] *profecturum*] profectuturum, MS.

d. ii. gareta . . . Londoniis. Obiit episcopus Exoniensis Willelmus, cognomento[1] Briwere. Obiit comitissa Flandriæ, uxor comitis Thomæ, ratione cujus Flandriæ comes extiterat.

A.D. 1244. Deaths of notable personages.

M°.CC°.XLV°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxix°., fuit idem rex ad Natale Domini apud Westmonasterium, ubi Johannem de Gatesdene, clericum suum, opulentis redditibus[2] abundantem,[3] cum maluisset sub fœdere vivere matrimoniali quam curis animarum obligari,[4] balteo donavit militari. Cantuariensis electus B[onifacius], et Wigorniensis et Herefordensis episcopi, clanculo ob secretissimas causas transfretarunt. Rex postulavit orationes a viris religiosis literatorie, ut Dominus, ad robur regni et consolationem, prolem conferre dignaretur. Hoc prius factum est de Edwardo, regis primogenito,[5] sed non publice. Et quia preces effectu non caruerunt, spem bonam omnes conceperunt, quod Dominus vitæ seriem prolis regiæ in beneplacito suo prospere gubernabit. Die vero sancti Marcelli peperit Alienora regina regi filium, quem vocavit, rege sic jubente, Edmundum. Quadragesimali vero tempore sequenti apud Montem-Gomericum[6] interempti sunt . . . præerat dicti castri castellanus. Tempore sub eodem . . . et fecit ipsum publice[7] excommunicatum enunciari per universam Christianitatem. David, dux exercitus Walensium, cupiens . . . . strenuissimus de marchisiis, Herbertus scilicet filius-Mathæi, inter[8] prærupta montium incaute ambularet, a quodam immani saxo, per quendam Walensem in eminenti constitutum [dimisso],[9] obrutus interiit. Anno eodem, circa medium Quadragesimæ auditum est in Anglia mandatum papale de concilio generali convocando et celebrando apud Lugdunum, quo papa cum magna jam venerat difficultate. Eo tempore, dum minus caute ministri papales ignem . . . camera papæ. Ministri autem . . . et ebrietatem, dicebant incendiarios occultos missos ab imperatore ignem occulte domibus supposuisse, ut sic papam combussissent.[10] Fuerunt qui dicerent quædam domino papæ carissima ipso igne fuisse consumpta, et ipsam infelicem cartam, quæ confecta fuit de tributo Angliæ. Doluit enim papa supra modum, et ingemuit usque ad lacrimas super combustione memorata, cum tamen domus illæ suæ propriæ non fuissent. Die vero Pentecostes

Henry at Westminster. John de Gatesdene knighted. The abp. elect of Canterbury and other prelates go abroad. Prayers required by the king for progeny. 16 Jan. Birth of prince Edmund. Death of Herbert Fitz-Mathew. Mandate for a General Council at Lyons. The pope's chamber burnt. 4 June.

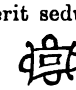
[1] *cognomento*] congnomento, MS.
[2] *redditibus*] reddibus, MS.
[3] *abundantem*] habundantem, MS.
[4] *obligari*] obgligari, MS.
[5] *primogenito*] primo, MS.
[6] *Gomericum*] Glomericum, MS.
[7] *publice*] At first written *enunciari*, but afterwards erased, and corr. in marg.
[8] *inter*] dum inter, MS.
[9] *dimisso*] Supplied to complete the sense. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*
[10] *combussissent*] combussisset, MS.

A.D. 1245. rex Londoniis Ricardum de Clare, comitantibus . . . militari. fol. 75 a

Amount of rents in England received by Italians.

Fecit eo tempore rex per . . . Romanorum et Ytalicorum, quos Romana auctoritas violenta ditaverat. Et inventa est ad plus ascendere quam redditus totius regni merus Anglicani, exceptis redditibus, donativis, et diversis Transalpinorum emolumentis, quæ recipiunt de cameris episcoporum et abbatum, quæ ad multa milia marcarum ascendere reperiuntur. Ibid. ii. 502.

Letter of complaint on this subject addressed to the General Council.

Confecta est igitur carta querimonialis[1] super talibus oppressionibus intolerabilibus, et precipue de carta tributi tempore belli extorta, ad concilium deferenda, et in propatulo relegenda. Franci quoque similiter pro injuriis et oppressionibus, quibus per papam et Transalpinos auctoritate papali opprimuntur, quandam conficiunt prolixam epistolam et elegantem, lugubres querimonias continentem, ad concilium transmittendam, papæ et toti concilio querimonialiter præsentandam. Quas epistolas alibi scriptas hic scribere prætermittimus propter earum prolixitatem, sed alibi illas poterit sedulus indagator[2] reperire, scilicet ad hæc signa . .[3] Hiis quoque diebus, . . . odio capta apud Luitonam, inter Ricardum de Clare et quosdam alienigenas, auctoritate regia prohibebantur, missus est . . . consentiente ipso rege, sed tacite et caute, ad . . . vultu ipsum intuens, sic affatur, "Recedens ilico exi . . . tibi per me mandat non rex, sed armatorum . . . ne hic moreris . . . frusta detrunceris." Et re vera . . . ipsum truculenter irruisset, sicut postea protestabatur, et pœnituit eum graviter de omissione. Ibid. ii. 503.

Departure of the papal nuncio.

Rege autem conductum concedente, recessit ab Anglia magister [Martinus][4] trepidus et festinus. Rex autem significavit papæ, quod vix magnates suos cohibere potuit, quin ipsum propter sui rapacitatem interfecissent.

He complains to the pope.

At magister Martinus Lugdunum perveniens, gravem super prædictis coram papam reposuit querimoniam; sed papa propter imminens[5] concilium conniventibus oculis omnia prudenter dissimulavit, tempora conquerenti promittens commodiora.[6] Rex nec valens . . . . . sequerentur. Ibid. ii. 504, 505.

Resignation of the bp. elect of Coventry.

Electus Coventrensis Willelmus, monachus, electionem suam sponte resignavit. Cujus loco . . . de Weseham, decanus ecclesiæ Lincolniensis. Consecrati sunt . . . . . in Cestrensem. Quod cum audisset rex, jussit baronias episcoporum . . . ilico confiscari. Ibid. ii. 505. Dominus rex . . . . Westmonasterii con- Ibid. ii. 506.

---

[1] *querimonialis*] At first written *querimonialibus*, and the last syllable afterwards erased.

[2] *indagator*] indegator, MS.

[3] See note in *Hist. Angl.*,

[4] *Martinus*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[5] *imminens*] iminens, MS.

[6] *commodiora*] comodiora, MS.

A.D. 1245.

ventualem veterem jussit funditus cum media turri solotenus dirui, et sumptibus propriis regaliter et magnifice reparari. fol. 75 b. In qua ecclesia decenter reparata, corpus beati Edwardi illibatum in feretro aureo proposuit collocare. Altius igitur . . . . . celebraturi. Cujus concilii acta, quæ[1] speciales exigunt tractatus, alibi annotantur.[2] Et cum petitum esset ab omnibus fere prælatis, ut solempniter canonizaretur beatus Edmundus confessor, cepit negotium, sub spe tamen ob occultas causas, ad tempus dilationem. Item, imperator F[rethericus] ab culmine imperii ignominiose præcipitatus est. Cujus rei series, quia autentica, alibi plenius enucleatur.[3] Item, per solempnes nuncios suos et procuratores, quos ad hoc dominus rex Angliæ destinaverat, videlicet comitem Rogerum Bigod,[4] Johannem filium-Galfridi, militem, Willelmum de Cantelupo, militem, Philippum Basset, militem, Radulphum filium-Nicholai, militem, et magistrum Willelmum Powic, domini regis clericum, conquestus est dominus rex Angliæ super innumerabilibus exactionibus, et ecclesiarum, quas fundaverunt progenitores ejus, et dotaverunt ex eorum liberis tenementis, servilibus oppressionibus domini papæ, per diversos nuncios, quorum enormitates et improbitates si quis plenius prosequeretur, lacrimas excuteret auditorum. Quasi enim ultimæ conditionis servi vel Judæi, jam annuatim talliantur prælati, et ecclesia, quam Christus liberavit, velut ancillaris pedissequa conculcatur. Item, Ibid. ii. 507. contradictum est . . . rex Angliæ Johannes, amaricatus spiritu, in tempore belli et discordiæ et odii indurati inter ipsum et nobiles de regno; cui obligationi non consensit universitas, immo contradixit Anglorum eminentissimus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis. Franci quoque, ut prætactum est, gravem de oppressionibus et frequentibus exactionibus, quibus ecclesia Gallicana vexabatur, lacrimabiliter sunt conquesti. Episcopus insuper Berithensis . . . sigilla, scilicet magnatum Terræ Sanctæ, primo patriarchæ, consequenter aliorum tam prælatorum quam principum Terræ Sanctæ, de infortunio[5] quod ibidem accidit per Chorosminos; occulte imponens causam hujus rei papæ, qui thesaurum a rege Francorum Philippo legatum, qui papam summum inde constituit executorem, nescitur qualiter alienavit, necnon crucesignatos ad succursum Terræ Sanctæ succinctos et eorum viatica laicis personis vendidit, et a succursu Terræ Sanctæ, in Christi contumeliam, alienavit. Et

Restoration of Westminster abbey.

Deposition of the emperor.

Messengers sent to the General Council to complain of the papal exactions.

Complaint of the French on the same subject.

The misfortunes attending the Crusaders attributed to the pope.

[1] *quæ*] que q̄, MS. Perhaps we should read *quia*.

[2] See note in *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 506.

[3] See the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, pp. 668–672.

[4] *Rogerum Bigod*] Bigod Rogerum, MS.

[5] *infortunio*] infornio, MS.

A.D. 1245. imperatorem F[rethericum], qui omnia certissime restituere promisit, quia hoc ipse solus potuit, quantum potuit, prout nunc apparet, ut solus regnaret et dominaretur, indefesse infestavit. Dominus rex Angliæ, dum apud Gannoc . . . . . ex Anglis milites strenui Alanus Bucel, Adam de Moia, et Reimundus Arcubalastarius; de Walensibus vero multo plures, sed vulgares. Misit igitur rex in Hiberniam, maxime in Engleseiam,[1] pro Hiberniensibus, quos novit esse Walensibus inimicissimos, ut Walliam depopularentur. Quod et ipsi feralius quam præceptum est[2] adimpleverunt. Rex vero post miserabile Walensium exterminium, præclusit eis omne genus victualium. Hostibus igitur ad votum subjugatis, firmavit apud Gannoc castrum elegantissimum, quod est omnibus Walensibus quasi spina in oculo, [et][3] reversus est in festo Symonis et Judæ apostolorum. Rege Francorum convalescente, immo potius resuscitato, multi de regno Francorum nobiles cruce similiter consignantur, videlicet . . . . comes Britanniæ, comes Barrensis, comes R. de Druis, Philippus de Curtenai, Walterus de Juvenni . . . de regno Francorum, quorum nomina non tenemus. Qui omnes votivo signo crucis signati, sui regis sequi vestigia cupiebant, ut tanti ducis tuti patrocinio crucesignati, Christi contererent[4] inimicos. Consecratus est . . . . literatus. Obierunt autem illo anno, Baldewinus [comes][5] Devoniæ, in crastino sancti Valentini, et quidam præclarus baro . . . . Simoni. Obiitque comes Marescallus . . . sui, scilicet Ricardus,[6] Willelmus et Gilebertus, ii. nonas Decembris. Et cito . . . frater eorum junior. Quibus . . . scutum illud Angliæ prostratum est. Et quia de hoc clipeo prostrato mentio recitatur lamentabilis, alienum a materia non arbitror, si de consimilibus prostratis, licet non paribus, faciam mentionem, ut sic ruina regni Anglicani, Deo offenso, pateat recitata. Marescalli, ut dictum est . . . . de Breaute. In Provincia, amici Angliæ, comitis Provinciæ Reimundi, qui eodem anno sublatus est de medio. Obiit quoque in crastino beatæ Virginis comitissa Oxoniæ Ysabella de Bolebec. Obiitque Galfridus de Marisco, exul et pauper, qui aliquando inter primates Hiberniæ non ultimus habebatur. Obiitque Galfridus de Trane, cardinalis papæ merito specialissimus. Obiit insuper apud Sanctum Albanum, ii. idus Octobris, episcopatu suo existente

[Margin notes: The king sends to Ireland for forces to ravage Wales. — Gannoc castle fortified. — 28 Oct. — fol. 76 a. — Many French nobles assume the Cross. — Ibid. ii. 508. — Deaths of English nobles. — Ibid. ii. 509. — 4 Dec. — Ibid. ii. 510. — Shields laid low in England. — Deaths of Reimund, count of Provence, and others. — 14 Oct.]

[1] *in Engleseiam*] This is an error, arising from carelessness in abbreviating the text of *Hist. Angl.*, ii. 507.

[2] *præceptum est*] preceptum est preceptum, MS.

[3] *et*] Omitted in MS.

[4] *contererent*] conterent, MS.

[5] *comes*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[6] *Ricardus*] Added on to the text.

in Hibernia, scilicet Hertfertensi, privatus, sed nequaquam pontificali dignitate, episcopus Johannes, et in ecclesia Sancti Albani est sepultus. Et xvi°. kalendas . . . Burgo. A.D. 1245. Death of John, bp. of Ardfert.

Ibid. ii. 511.

M°.CC°.XLVI°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui XXX°., fuit ad Natale Domini apud Westmonasterium, ubi . . . quibus et cara contulit donativa, una . . . et sorore sua, Cornubiæ comitissa, multisque aliis regni primatibus, qui cum eodem[1] rege in Wallia guerræ pondera . . . . exultatione. Per idem tempus . . . . . benedictionem. Summa[2] vero hæc est: "Damus " . . . . ecclesiæ memoratæ." In hujus . . . dici potest. Rex autem, ut videbatur, usque ad . . . regnum suum tot bonis suis et totiens viderat spoliari. Considerabat insuper, quod . . . inceperat ipse rex, redundare videbantur; quia sic imponebatur ei, quod dilapidator et extirpator substantiæ ecclesiæ Cantuariensis extitisset. Medio vero Quadragesimæ, edicto . . . . contrectarent. Angebat enim omnes gravamen . . . incessanter eisdem totiens irrogatum. Et eo[3] anxiabantur, quod . . . reponentes, minime exaudiebantur, sed tanto magis ac magis opprimebantur. Sed quia . . . sortita, nec se Angli mutuo patrocinabantur, nec a rege consolationem acceperunt, tædium . . . . cur urceus exit?" Sed, ut manifeste pateat, Dominum offensum fuisse, et, juxta illud Jeremiæ,[4] fieri Angliæ tanquam inimicum. Inviti igitur et obmurmurantes omnem illatam injuriam et cotidie tolerarunt multiplicatam. Et sic facta est servitus prælatorum æqualis servituti Judæorum, exsufflata[5] ecclesiæ libertate, qua Christus eam liberavit. Temporibus quoque . . . imperatorem nominare prohibemur, ut . . . exhalavit,[6] restauraret, præcipue quam de hæresi contraxerat, unam epistolam Anglis duxerat transmittendam: "Fretheriscus, etc. . . . . . præloquium," etc. Quere in libro Historiarum ○○○○○[7]. Papa vigili sollicitudine . . . . qui jam in regem Alemanniæ exaltabatur, multo ditaretur thesauro. Fretheriscus igitur, positis insidiis, omnia ei transmissa cepit, et suo ærario prudenter cumulavit. Et eo tenus odii venena processerunt, ut alter alteri procuraret mortiferas potiones. Donis autem[8] papalibus corrupti sunt multi de Alemanniæ optimatibus, ita ut in die

Henry at Westminster. H. A. iii. 3. fol. 76 b. Ibid. iii. 3, 4. Ibid. iii. 4. Ibid. iii. 5. Oppressions submitted to by the clergy. Ibid. iii. 6. Ibid. iii. 7. Mutual enmity of the emperor and pope.

[1] *eodem*] eo, MS.

[2] *Summa*] Suma, MS.

[3] *eo*] We should probably read *eo magis*.

[4] Lament. ii. 5.

[5] *exsufflata*] exuflata, MS.

[6] *exhalavit*] exalavit, MS.

[7] See note in *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 7.

[8] *autem*] autem corrupti, MS., but the last word is superfluous.

A.D. 1246. belli terga dantes facti sunt de amicis inimici; unde Conradus victus ad patrem inglorius remeavit. Reimundi . . . minor, maritata est . . . Provincia, quæ suæ cessit ditioni. Comes Sabaudiæ . . . . fecit homagium et fidelitatem domino regi Angliæ in manu archiepiscopi memorati, cum juramento et fidei interpositione. Dominus rex . . . . Manniæ, balteo . . . . rogitantes, exaudiri meruerunt. Rex precibus . . . in manu iratus tenuerat, restituit, et ipsum in gratiam recepit. Die vero apostolorum . . . . . . fugitivus. Beatus Edmundus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus et confessor gloriosus, clarescente signorum multitudine, canonizatur. Canonici Saresbirienses . . . in rege, si alium quam aulicum elegissent, Willelmum de Eboraco, regis clericum specialem et consiliarium Beverlaci . . . suarum, licet multos competentiores possent invenisse, pastorem elegerunt. Defuncto piæ memoriæ Ricardo, abbate . . . . archidiaconum, sibi elegit in abbatem. Eodemque anno plures magnates regni Angliæ ab hoc seculo . . . . clericus et consiliarius specialis. Item, comitissa Marchiæ, mater regis, quondam regina Angliæ, quæ moritura velum suscepit sanctimoniale, et desuper, quia regina, coronam. Et sepulta est apud Fontem-Ebraudi, extra ecclesiam. Obiit insuper comitissa . . . Galeweia.

[Margin: Ibid. iii. 8. fol. 77 a. — Ibid. iii. 9. — Canonization of St. Edmund. Ibid. iii. 11 — Ibid. iii. 14 — Death of the countess of March, and burial. — Ibid. iii. 15]

M°.CC°.XLVII°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui XXXI°., tenuit curiam suam . . . . episcopus ipsius civitatis Willelmus lætabundus . . . episcopo in festo imminenti[1] prandere dignaretur . . . . . . dominum ipsum regem . . . episcopum suum in præsentia . . . revocasse. In crastino vero Purificationis beatæ Mariæ, convenerat . . . . . ecclesiæ imperiosas postulationes pecuniæ violenter extorquendæ. Tandem de . . . gravamina regni domino papæ . . . . ex parte universitatis cleri et populi eminus ostensuri: "Sanctissimo . . . cleri per provinciam Cantuariensem constituta, devota . . . ecclesia," etc. Require .[2] In fine vero epistolæ: "Latores . . . . consignatas." Similiter et cardinalibus scriptum est, sed nihil remedii est consecutum, sed si prius virgis, modo scorpionibus nos cædere non cessabant. Rex fecit maritari quasdam puellas ultramarinas, quas Petrus de Sabaudia adduxit, nobilibus adolescentibus, quos rex in custodia sua educaverat. Mittuntur duo fratres de Ordine Minorum in Angliam, videlicet frater Johannes de Cantia cum socio suo A[lexandro], de

[Margin: H. A. iii. 15. — 3 Feb. — Ibid. iii. 16 — fol. 77 b. — Ibid. iii. 17. — Foreign ladies married to English nobles. — Two Minorites sent]

[1] *imminenti*] iminenti, MS. | [2] See note in *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 17.

Ibid. iii. 18. præcepto . . . suum exequendum de subventione pecuniari eidem facienda contra Fretheriovum, validum ecclesiæ persecutorem. Unde non minima facta est papæ contributio, et efficax collatum auxilium; fama enim referente, nitebatur idem F[rethericus] totius ecclesiæ statum concutere, et etiam fidei con-
Ibid. iii. 20. stantiam enervare. Anno sub eodem . . . . dampnosus extitit et terribilis, et eo magis, quia insolitus. Quapropter significativus credebatur. Mare etiam . . . dies, sed tertio . . . non minima finitimis irrogavit. Et iterum redivivus terræmotus, cum quodam . . . lingua *Erthdune* vocant, adjuncto ventorum violento turbine, structuras . . . . dissipavit et avulsit, et robora miræ magnitudinis conterens, radicitus extirpando præcipitavit. Unde comminatio evangelica[1] mundano statui evidenter convenire videbatur. Nam et tonitrus cum terribili fulgure præmissis adjungebantur. Sed miseri mortales nec evangelicis comminationibus, nec elementorum commotionibus perterriti vel castigati, impetus voluntarios avaritiæ et ambitionis cohibuerunt. Diebus sub eisdem missi sunt subdoli sicarii et potionatores ac jugulatores, more Assesinorum, et etiam, ut dicebatur, piper infectum ab institoribus inter papales et Frethericales, ut, aliquibus interemptis, alteruter triumpharet, papa scilicet vel Fretherieus. Unde dominus papa timens sibi, latuit inclusus in arcto conclavi, armatis custoditus, vix ausus in populo apparere, vel eidem verbum Dei prædicare, ut decuit,
Ibid. iii. 22. in publico et manifeste. Hoc quoque anno, facta est . . . visitatione facienda in . . . de Thynemue, ecclesiæ Sancti Albani pertinentis. Mota autem lis sic conquievit, quod in ipsa episcopus visitationis officium exercebit[2] sine onere procurationis.
fol. 78 *a*. Obiit Andegravius de Duringe, in cujus sinu reposita fuit spes papalis et confidentia. In cujus casu totius thesauri pecunia inæstimabilis, quam dominus papa undecunque adquisierat, in Caribdim perditionis irrestaurabiliter est submersa. Obiit et Fulco de Castro-novo, miles, domini regis consobrinus, Londoniis, in Purificatione beatæ Mariæ; et sepultus [est][3] in ecclesia Westmonasterii. Willelmus, comes Holandiæ, papa procurante, in regem Alemanniæ, ut sic in imperium promoveatur, eligitur. In cujus promotione papa thesauros impretiabiles, quos ab ecclesia emunxit[4] Anglicana præcipue et Gallicana, congessit. Sed omnia quasi in pelagi voratrum vel potius baratrum irrecuperabiliter sunt projecta, sicut sequens sermo plenius suo tempore declarabit; ut luce clarius pateat omnibus,

A.D. 1247. to England to collect money for the pope.

Emissaries sent to poison the emperor and pope.

The pope hides himself.

Deaths of the Landgrave of Thuringia, and Fulk of Newcastle. 2 Feb.

William, count of Holland, elected king of Germany.

---

[1] *evangelica*] euuangelica, MS., and *euuangelicis* further on.
[2] *exercebit*] excercebit, MS.
[3] *est*] Omitted in MS.
[4] *emunxit*] emuncsit, MS.

A.D. 1247. tam [illegible] guerræ et sanguinis [illegible] Domini
Arrival of the cardinal bishop of Sabina, on his way to Norway. [illegible] maxime [illegible]. [illegible] in Anglia episcopus
Sabinensis, apostolicæ sedis cardinalis, de [illegible] domini regis,
[illegible] in partes [illegible], videlicet Norwegiam et Sueciam, in
... [illegible]. Qui, sicut ejus progenitores, reges Ibid. ii. 1[illegible]
He exacts procurations from the clergy. Norwagiæ [illegible] per [illegible] sed non [illegible].
Cardinalis igitur [illegible] apud Len [illegible] procurationes,[1]
[illegible] legatus in Angliam destinatus, plurimis [illegible]
[illegible] vinum et aliis [illegible]
Mass celebrated on board ship at Lynn. [illegible]. Et cum ventus com-
modus[2] [illegible], fecit celebrari missam in navi apud Len,
cum staret [illegible] super [illegible] qui
[illegible] viderunt [illegible]. Et post missam, sumptis [velis],[3]
Angliam a tergo [illegible]
et [illegible]. Et cum in Norwegiam pervenisset, [illegible] sibi
Haco anointed king of Norway. [illegible] de rege [illegible]. Et cum ad se vocasset
[illegible] regionis Nigri Ordinis monachos, multos invenit habitu,
The monks of the Black Order assembled, with a view to their reform, and the abbot of Holm sent to Rome for that purpose. moribus et gestu [illegible] professis, nullum-
que [illegible] observantem, [illegible] visitatorem et in-
formatorem [illegible]. Quos rogabat
ut ipsum reciperent reverenter, et audirent obedienter. Et
missus est Romam ob hoc abbas de Holm, Nidrosiensis diœ-
cesis, et Herminius, monachus ejus, cum literis [illegible] legati
ad dominum papam, ut aliquem idoneum[4] visitatorem et in-
formatorem, monachum Nigri Ordinis, ad reformationem Nor-
wagensium monachorum Ordinem per negligentiam prælatorum
deformatum, illuc destinaret. Quod et factum est, prout in
The three uterine brothers of the king come to England. sequentibus dicetur. Tres domini regis fratres uterini vene-
runt in Angliam, a rege vocati, filii comitis de Marchia Hu-
gonis, amplos honores recepturi, videlicet Guido de Lis[illegible]um,
Willelmus de Walentia, et Æthelmarus clericus. Pater autem
eorum Hugo, et frater primogenitus Hugo, simul cum [illegible] regis
Francorum, sicut multi optimates de regno Francorum et
regionibus conterminis, cruce signabantur. Tempore quoque
sub ... [illegible] regio inhiantes, magnates ultramarini et lon- fol. 78
ginqui ... Constantinopolitanus, domini regis, ut asseruit, Ibid. iii.
consanguineus, cum quibusdam ... annis antea transactis,
omnibus reliquiis quas ... [illegible] aufugit spoliatus. Sed a
rege et comite Ricardo, ratione consanguinitatis licet longin-
quæ, meruit recipere de inopia consolationem. Unde, refertis
28 April. clitellis, ditior remeavit. Eodem anno ... festo beati Vitalis Ibid. iii.

---

[1] *procurancias*] et procuracias, MS., but *et* is superfluous.

[2] *commodus*] comodus, MS.

[3] *velis*] Omitted in MS. Cf. *ante*, p. 241.

[4] *idoneum*] ydoneum, MS.

. . . . quas, ut prætactum est, adduxerat . . . nobilibus, quos A.D. 1247.
rex . . . educaverat. Maritata est insuper Alesia, soror . . . de Warannia, futuro comiti de Warannia. Maritata insuper
ibid. iii. 26. Johanna, filia Warini de Montecheinsillo . . . cui contulit cito postea Hertfordiam, cum castro et honore. Fratri autem suo Æthelmaro procuravit . . . . viderentur ascendisse. Guidonique, fratri . . . contulit rex tantam esterlingorum renovatorum numerosam abundantiam,[1] ut equi sui eisdem recederent onerati. Episcopus Wigorniensis, Willelmus Longa-spata, Galfridus de Lucy, et multi alii nobiles in Anglia, exemplo regis Francorum Christianissimi, ut cum eo et sub eo Christo militantes peregrinarentur, cruce signantur. Eodemque anno, vii°. idus Julii, quo videlicet die . . . . nutu et providentia, translatum est . . . . . quod corpus ejus totaliter integrum inventum est et incorruptum, et instar balsami odoriferum; et quod . . . flexibile. Capilli ejus et vestimentum[2] colore et substantia

Many English nobles assume the Cross.

9 July.

ibid. iii. 27. inviolatum. Et cum vellent . . . respondit rex, "Avertat Dominus a me illa temeritas! Non placeat . . . peccatorem quomodolibet mutiletur." Eodem tempore moneta . . . . unde de remedio oportuit cogitare. Inventa est igitur novi cunei impressio talis, ut, manentibus pondere et materia, crucis brachia usque ad nummi exteriorem circulum extenderentur.[3] In cujus . . . de cruce violaretur, inacceptabilis haberetur, nec licuit, nisi [ad][4] mensam, cambiare. In cujus præcepti transgressione multi postea puniebantur. Anno quoque sub eodem Chorosminorum fortitudo pestifera divina ultione dissipata, et quasi vas figuli irrestaurabiliter deleta de sub cœlo, tam Sarracenorum quam Christianorum præliis enervata. Fre-

New coinage.

Destruction of the Chorasmians.

ibid. iii. 28. fol. 79 a. thericus cisalpinans . . . copioso, unde . . . papalem irrueret truculenter, tanquam propter induratum et inveteratum odium obstinatus, cum prudenter . . . . Fretherícum martialiter communire. Quod cum audisset F[rethericus], omnes vires suas in præparatione obsidionis contra Parmenses regressus [congregavit];[5] et obsidens eandem civitatem, aliam tanquam castrorum dispositionem ædificavit, quam Victoriam jussit appellari. Quæ postea, Thadeo interfecto, consiliario suo, dissipata est; unde quidam papalis inde ait,

Siege of Parma by the emperor.

"Ad nutum Christi Victoria victa fuisti."

---

[1] *abundantiam*] habundanciam, MS.

[2] *vestimentum*] vestimenta, MS.

[3] In the text is introduced a rude drawing of the coin, with an imperfect inscription. See note in *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 27.

[4] *ad*] Supplied to complete the sense.

[5] *congregavit*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.* A blank space is left in the MS.

A.D. 1247. 30 Sept. In crastino vero sancti Michaelis[1] magnates Alemanniæ electo . . . homagium, suadente papa, fecerunt et liganciam, . . . Ibid. iii. 29. Aquisgranum,[2] ubi reges Alemanniæ coronari consueverunt, solempniter coronaretur. Sed Fretthericales viriliter obstiterunt. Eodem anno, in festo Sancti . . . Christi apud Westmonasterium, et domino regi allatus, et diligenter examinatus, præsentibus magnatibus regni et prælatis quamplurimis. Et contulit ipsum sanguinem ecclesiæ Westmonasterii, quem cum summa devotione ipse rex in humili habitu pedes ab ecclesia Sancti Pauli cum processione magna bajulavit, ambobus brachiis et manibus reverenter elevatis. Et revera proposuit nudis pedibus tam tremendum, tam venerandum thesaurum supportasse,[3] nisi cespitationem et casum, dum quod portavit quandoque intueretur, formidasset. Revocavit enim ad memoriam historiam de imperatore Eraclio Crucem ad portas Jerusalem bajulante.[4] De memorati sanguinis veritate plenissime per domini patriarchæ Jerosolimitani literas testimoniales, et magistrorum militiæ Templi et Hospitalis, et aliorum magnatuum Terræ Sanctæ certificamur. Collata est . . . . . militari. Electus Karleolensis Silvester in episcopum consecratur. Die vero apostolorum . . . transmarinis. Electus est in episcopum Ibid. iii. 30. Menevensem magister Thomas, Walensis, Lincolniensis archidiaconus. Obiit die sanctæ Katerinæ comes de Ferrariis Willelmus, ætate fere centenarius. Obiitque uxor ejus M[argareta] comitissa . . . et civilitatis. Obiitque episcopus Menevensis, Ibid. iii. 31. natione Walensis. Obierunt insuper quidam nobiles, Ricardus de Burgo et Willelmus filius-Hamonis.

The blood of Christ carried to Westminster abbey by the king.

Authenticity of the relique.

Succession of bishops.

Deaths of noble personages.

Henry at Winchester.

Many nobles take the Cross.

Richard Suard dies.

M°.CC°.XLVIII°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxxii°., fuit ad Natale Domini apud Wintoniam; et in crastino cum . . . requisitus. Comes Legrecestriæ Symon et multi alii H. A. iii. 32. nobiles cruce signantur, regis Francorum sequi vestigia[5] cupientes. Ricardus Suard paralisi percussus, usque ad mortem infirmabatur.[6] Beatrix . . . Reimundi, mater scilicet reginæ, comitante . . . venit in Angliam, ante tempus vernale recessura. Circa festum . . . Robertus. Illo quoque anno, fol. 79 b. Ibid. iii. 33. 9 Feb. in octavis Purificationis beatæ Mariæ, edicto . . . . . exactione, et pecuniæ receptæ inutili dispersione, sine sui regni emendatione vel augmentatione.[7] Redargutus est insuper, eo quod,

---

[1] *Michaelis*] Micaelis, MS.

[2] *Aquisgranum*] Aquisgrani, MS.

[3] *supportasse*] supportasset, MS.

[4] The narrative of this event may be found in Cedrenus, *Histor. Compendium*, cap. 21, p. 410, ed. Paris, 1647.

[5] *vestigia*] vestia, MS.

[6] *infirmabatur*] imfirmatur, MS.

[7] *augmentatione*] aucmentacione, MS.

sicut magnifici[1] reges, progenitores ejus, non habet . . . per A.D. 1248.
commune regni fidele consilium, prout . . . et toti regno, ut non enormia brevia et consilia regem, ut consueverunt, depauperarent. Hæc autem . . . humilitate; unde omnium corda mitigavit. Cui respondit universitas . . . rex adversus nos, et nos ei in omnibus humiliter obtemperabimus." Dilata sunt
d. iii. 34. . . . Baptistæ. Sed et tunc res successu et effectu caruit adoptato, et[2] per dilationes inutiles languit enervata, secundum . . . noluit." Parmenses fortuitam et fortunatam comperientes Defeat of the emperor by the Parmese.
Fretherici absentiam, et quod ad horam, vocantibus arduis negotiis, in remotis agebat, cito tamen rediturus, in Victoriam civitatem sibi adversantem repentino impetu irruerunt; et, [ut][3] prætactum est, dissipatis omnibus, victores in suam receperunt civitatem. Quod cum audisset F[retherieus], non se capiens præ furore, nec se moderans præ dolore, obsidionem jussit acrius continuari. Universitas populi Anglicani pro Impoverishment of the people.
cambio captioso et sumptuoso nimium depauperatur. Comiti Ricardo conceditur cambii commoditas,[4] propter retributionem. Conradus, sicut et pater ejus F[retherieus], uxores ducunt potentum, ut partem roborent contra papam. Item F[retherieus] Marriage of the emperor and of his son Conrad.
filiam suam dat nuptui Thomæ de Sabaudia, quondam comiti Flandriæ, civitatem Taurinam cum quibusdam castris et honoribus conferendo, ut [non][5] tantum ipsum sed totum genus suum, quod est præclarum, sibi conciliet contra omnes in amicitiam. His daughter married to Thomas of Savoy.
Eodem anno, celebrato beati Edwardi festo, jussit dominus
d. iii. 35, rex publice denunciari . . . . a festo memorato, quod . . . suspensis interim mercaturis. Quo[6] audito, episcopus Elyensis The fair at Ely abolished.
doluit suas nundinas, scilicet Elyenses, contra antiquam regni consuetudinem approbatam, enormiter lædi, in ecclesiæ suæ dampnum et gravamen. Capitur [civitas][7] Aquisgrani, et Coronation of William, count of Holland.
Willelmus, novus electus, in regem ibidem, invito F[retherico], et omnibus Frethericalibus, coronatur, et rex in publico acclamatur[8] Alemanniæ, die Omnium Sanctorum. Mare viii. 1 Nov.
d. iii. 36. kalendas Decembris solitos . . . excedens,[9] ter[10] ascendit sine 24 Nov.
decremento notabili, luna existente quarta. Inundationesque pluviarum spem fructuum, maxime autem frugum, suspenderunt, et agriculturam impedierunt.[11] Advenientε quindena . . .
d. iii. 37.

---

[1] *magnifici*] magnifi, MS.
[2] *et*] sed, MS.
[3] *ut*] Supplied to complete the sense.
[4] *commoditas*] comoditas, MS.
[5] *non*] Omitted in MS.
[6] *Quo*] Quod, MS.
[7] *civitas*] Omitted in MS. Cf. *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 34.
[8] *acclamatur*] aclamatur, MS.
[9] *excedens*] excedens consueta, MS.
[10] *ter*] et ter, MS.
[11] *impedierunt*] impedivit, MS.

A.D. 1248. Londoniis barnagium, optatum responsum a domino rege audi-turum. Et cum asseruisset rex, se nullatenus jugum servitutis subire, quin ad placitum justiciarium, cancellarium et thesaurarium constitueret, postulavit in fine sermonis auxilium sibi fieri pecuniare, ad jura regni potenter requirenda. Cui cum negative respondissent, gravamina pristina pro excusatione[1] retexentes, quilibet tristis ad propria remeavit. Luna passa est . . . occasum. Capta est . . . Sibilla a victorio- Ibid. iii sissimo rege Hispaniæ A[lphonso]; unde rex Sibillæ intitulatur. Eodem tempore, in partibus . . . suis habitatoribus et eccle- fol. 80 siis, scilicet v., obrutæ sunt et absorptæ;[2] unde circiter vii. milia hominum cum tribus domibus religiosorum miserabiliter perierunt. In æstate illius anni venerunt . . . . multos latuit; verumtamen ex . . . baptismi postulabat . . . non pervenerunt. Papa autem serenissimum vultum eis ostendit et pretiosa contulit donativa, et [ipsos][3] escarleto cum penulis vestivit cisiminis. Eodemque anno frater Matheus Parisiensis, hujus opusculi compositor, monachus ecclesiæ Sancti Albani, ex præcepto domini papæ, prout legatus missus in Norwegiam eidem papæ, ut prætactum est,[4] suggesserat, missus est in Norwegiam, ad . . . auctentico: "Innocentius . . . . Ibid. iii 41. apostolicæ sedis reverentia, non postponas. Datum . . . anno v°." Sciendum quoque . . . . Edmundi, regis et martiris, Ibid. iii instauravit. Sciendum insuper . . . . prothomartire. Et tunc temporis scripsit dominus rex Francorum dicto fratri Matheo in Norwegiam profecturo, postulans ut talem literam regi Norwagiæ ex parte sua deferret patentem, peregrinari præparato; quod et ipse rex Norwagiæ antea postulaverat.

Pecuniary aid demanded by the king, and refused.

Earthquake in Savoy.

Mission of Matthew Paris to Norway.

Letter from the king of France to the king of Norway.

"Ludowicus, Dei gratia Francorum rex, universis amicis et fidelibus suis, ballivis, majoribus et præpositis suis, ad quos præsentes literæ pervenerint, salutem. Cum carissimus noster illustris[5] rex Norwagiæ in subsidium Terræ Sanctæ transfretare proponat, sicut nobis per suas literas intimavit, vobis mandamus, quatinus si eundem regem vel ipsius navigium per mare contiguum litoribus terræ nostræ transire contingat, vel in terram nostram vel in feoda nostra alicubi applicare, ipsum et fol. 80 suos benigne et honorifice recipiatis; permittentes eosdem in terra nostra victualia emere, et sibi per forum legitimum de sibi necessariis providere. Actum apud Sanctum Germanum in Laia, anno Domini M°.CC°. quadragesimo septimo. In cujus rei testimonium huic scripto patenti sigillum meum apposui."[6]

---

[1] *excusatione*] excusicōe, MS.
[2] *absorptæ*] absorte, MS.
[3] *ipsos*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*
[4] See *ante*, p. 300.
[5] *illustris*] illustristis, MS.
[6] This letter is taken from the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 741, but the last sentence is there omitted.

Dictus autem frater Matheus officium sibi injunctum perfecit. Eodemque anno . . . factus est iterum terræmotus in Anglia, ita ut, secundum assertionem domini episcopi Bathoniensis, in cujus diocesi evidentius apparuit, disjunctæ sunt maceriæ ædificiorum, et quarundam columpnarum summa et epistilia, sine earundem columpnarum inclinatione, quod mirabile fuit, diruta sunt et disjuncta. Et, quod notabile est, ille . . . . . inauditum. Hoc anno obiit in Anglia Robertus[1] Hylarii. Episcopus Dunelmensis Nicholaus episcopatui suo cessit, cui subrogatus est Walterus, decanus Eboracensis. Obiit quoque magister Symon de Langetuna, archidiaconus Cantuariensis, multimodæ excusator perversitatis. Obiit quoque abbas Walthamiæ Ricardus . . . expertæ religionis. Obiit que [comes][2] Patricius . . . cavillosus. Obierunt quoque duo theologi . . . . . de Fishacle, fratres de Ordine Prædicatorum, egregii prædicatores et lectores præelecti. — A.D. 1248. Earthquake in the diocese of Bath. — L. iii. 42. — L. iii. 39. Resignation of the bishop of Durham. Deaths of notable personages. — L. iii. 40.

M°.cc°.xlix°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxxiii°., fuit Londoniis, apud Westmonasterium. Et dum ibi moraretur, comes Legrecestriæ Symon rediens de partibus Wasconiæ, venit ibi ad eum, enarrans seriatim quomodo de Guastone[3] de Biarda, et aliis domini regis hostibus et rebellibus, post multa bellorum pericula, Deo triumphaverit protegente. Acceperat enim ipsius terræ custodiam ad defendendum, protegendum et pacificandum. Rex a civibus . . . termino solvendarum exegit . . . . salutem." In Rotulo Scaccarii. — Henry at Westminster. Return of Simon, earl of Leicester, from Gascony. — A. iii. 44.

L. iii. 44. Resignato[4] episcopatu Dunelmensi ab episcopo Nicholao, rex ilico episcopatum in manu sua suscepit . . . hominibus non minimam pecuniæ emunxit[5] quantitatem, ita ut episcopus, quia videbatur esse in causa, usque ad amaritudinem spiritus angebatur. Unde de suo[6] thesauro multis jacturas suas, tanquam vir pius et justus, restauravit. Rex autem, misso ad conventum Dunelmensem magistro Laurentio de Sancto Martino, clerico ac consiliario suo, petiit instantissime et elaboravit vigilantissime, tam per os dicti magistri L[aurentii], facundi et jurisperiti, quam per literas efficaces, ut Athelmarus, frater ejus, ibidem substitueretur. Sed conventus ejusdem simplicitatem et juventutem considerans, Walterum de Kirkeham, decanum Eboracensem, ut prætactum est sed breviter, optantes — The king endeavours to secure the election of his brother Athelmar as bp. of Durham.

---

[1] *Robertus*] This is an error. See note in *Hist. Angl.*

[2] *comes*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[3] *Guastone*] Gaustone, MS.

[4] *Resignato*] Resigno, MS.

[5] *emunxit*] emuncxit, MS.

[6] *suo*] Repeated superfluously after *thesauro*.

A.D. 1249. eligendi licentia, subito et prudenter elegerunt. Rex enim ipsum sibi dilectum et specialem ab antiquo Walterum, minime reprobum habere poterat vel displicentem. Assignata sunt igitur episcopo Nicholao tria de episcopatu Dunelmensi maneria, ad ejus honorabilem vitæ sustentationem, Hovedene, Scottona et Esendona. Consecrato autem et instituto episcopo Waltero plenario in episcopatu Dunelmensi, cessavit regalium tirannica dominatio. Illis quoque temporibus improbitas leonina Fretherici multis cum privavit[1] amicis et benevolis. Desævit enim in . . . nec etiam fratribus Prædicatoribus vel Minoribus. Inter quos suspendi [jussit] Marcellinum, Arethinum episcopum, titulis martirum ascribendum. Et quia ad patibulum fratres Minores venientes, ut tollerent corpus, et tanquam sanctum in ecclesia sua reverenter sepelirent, punivit eosdem. Et hoc ante exterminium Victoriæ tertia die evenit, non sine miraculo manifesto. Eisdem temporibus vispiliones et latrones adeo in civitate Wintoniæ et in villis finitimis abundabant[2] intolerabiliter, quod oportuit regem illuc venire, ut mundaret tam civitatem de consensu et receptatione, quam ipsos prædones de malefactorum temeraria præsumptione. Tandemque facta diligentissima[3] veritatis inquisitione, inventi sunt et convicti malefactores plusquam centum, in sempiternum civitatis et villarum vicinarum numerosarum[4] obprobrium indelebile. Quos omnes merito jussit dominus rex patibulis præsentari. Et ideo inexorabilius, quia civitatem Wintoniæ locum nativitatis suæ nequiter macularunt. Eodem tempore, levi nacta occasione, procurante humani generis inimico, sacro tempore Quadragesimali, orta est discordia apud Cantebrugiam inter burgenses et scolares, quod sæpe contingit, machinante diabolo, in Quadragesima. Ex qua post . . . domorum effractiones . . . secuta; unde post multa utrobique scandala et dampna, rege procurante et sontes puniente, totus tumultus cessavit pacificatus. Tunc quoque temporis cum Fretthericus infirmatus purgatione medicinali et balneo indiguisset, procurantibus Petro de Vineis, consiliario suo specialissimo, et ejusdem F[retherici] phisico, in quibus maxime confidebat anima ejus, intoxicata fuit medicina et balneum. Super quo præmunitus F[rethericus], fecit duos reos mortis et morti addictos potionem haurire et balneo ablui memorato; qui ilico expirarunt. Fecit igitur judicialiter erui oculos convictorum. Et tunc F[rethericus], præ spiritus

Manors assigned to the late bishop.

fol. 81 a

Unpopularity of the emperor.

Ibid. iii. 4

Marcellinus, bp. of Arezzo, hung.

Robbers at Winchester punished.

Quarrel at Cambridge between the burgesses and scholars.

Ibid. iii. 4

Attempt to poison the emperor.

[1] *privavit*] privivavit, MS.
[2] *abundabant*] habundabant, MS.
[3] *diligentissima*] diligentissim, MS.
[4] *numerosarum*] nemorosarum, MS.

amaritudine lacrimans præcordialiter, q[uod][1] se quis nunquam meminit prævidisse, ad seipsum reversus conqueri cœpit, et verba, querulis singultibus prorumpentibus et manibus complosis, ait: "O me miserum, immo miserrimum, quanta patior pro imperii juribus conservandis! O quam melior est pauperum vel mediocrium conditio, quam imperatorum, regum vel principum! Pugnant contra me viscera mea, et anima mea mihi insidiatur animato. Ecce Petrus de Vinea, in cujus sinu requievit anima mea; ecce medicus,[2] cujus custodiæ corpus meum commiseram, vitæ meæ laqueos tetenderunt! Quid adhuc protelatur anima mea, quia ab hoc misero non recedit domicilio!" Et desiderabat pro vehementia doloris exanimari.[3] Et tunc humiliatus optulit papæ humilitatem magnam, et jacturarum restaurationem plurimarum, et totam Terram Sanctam. Sed ejus peccata pristina et consuetæ fallaciæ ipsum reddiderunt incredibilem, nec meruit exaudiri; unde hinc inde induratis cordibus, solis intendebant ultionibus. Rex Francorum ad Ciprum navigaturus, valedicens suis navem ascendit, et remisit ad propria multos de media manu, non curans in exercitu suo numerum ampliorem; unde ipsi, venditis omnibus propter suam peregrinationem, pauperes et confusi sunt reversi. Et cum Ciprum pervenisset, ibidem, ut respiraret, hiemavit. Ibique missi fuerunt ad eum nuncii [Soldani][4] Babiloniæ pacifici, ea quæ pacis erant benigne rogitantes, et formam pacis offerentes Christianis utilem valde, honorabilem atque gratiosam. Obstitit autem magister Odo, frater de Ordine Prædicatorum, in cujus sinu totum consilium regis continebatur, credens uberiora recepisse. Misit igitur rex Francorum ad Venetos et ad insulas vicinas, petens ab eis subsidium victuale; qui et miserunt ampliora quam postulavit. Quia quæ venalia postulavit, gratuita destinarunt. Fretherieus autem, ne illis parcior vel inferior[5] videretur, transmisit eidem uberiora. Unde rex Francorum, ne ingratus videretur, ad supplicationem ejusdem[6] F[retherici], scripsit papæ humiliter et devote, ut paci consentiret competenti, ne peregrinatio sua assimilaretur medicinæ vulneris, in quo[7] jaculum infectum latitat intromissum. Sed papa tirannizanti noluit humiliari, nisi ecclesia ad

A.D. 1249.

Lamentation of Frederic.

fol. 81 b.

He makes overtures to the pope.

Louis IX. embarks and winters at Cyprus.

Messengers of peace come to him from the Soldan of Babylon.

Supplies are sent by the Venetians and the emperor.

Louis writes to the pope to make peace with Frederic.

[1] *quod*] qm̃, MS., but *m* afterwards erased.

[2] *medicus*] dicus, MS.

[3] *exanimari*] exaniamari, MS.

[4] *Soldani*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 49.

[5] *inferior*] imferior, MS.

[6] *ejusdem*] ejudem, MS.

[7] *quo*] In the text *qua*, but corrected in margin.

A.D. 1249. votum triumpharet. Per idem tempus Henricus, filius imperatoris, literatorie supplicavit humillime[1] regi Francorum, ut redderet regi Anglorum, avunculo suo, jura sua quæ in regno suo ipsum contingebant; quæ etsi pater suus propter suam contumaciam amiserat, ipse nunquam, ira traduce, non demeruit, sicut desideravit jura Jhesu Christi sibi ab infidelibus restitui Christianis. Indigne enim a Deo postulat quilibet Christianus, quod proximo denegat postulanti. Christianissimus autem rex Francorum precibus gratiosi pueri inclinasset, sed consilio procerum suorum obviasse videretur. Eodem anno venerunt in Angliam, [in][2] solempnitate Paschali,[3] archiepiscopus Rothomagensis, frater de Ordine Minorum, Riganus nomine, ut quædam jura ecclesiam suam contingentia reposceret et optinuit, et episcopus de Tortusa, quæ est in Terra Sancta, ut reliquias generis sui visitaret. Ad clausum vero Pascha . . . . . communiam regni pro commodo[4] regni et regis constituendis. Sed cum breve responsum reportarent ac frivolum, pœnituit eos illuc inaniter advenisse. Dictum est enim eisdem, quod nimis cupiebant subjecti dominum suum in servitutem redigere, si quod cuilibet . . . facere denegaretur; licet enim cuilibet domus suæ constituere procuratorem. Et sic quilibet suo frustratus desiderio, ad propria remeavit, consilium regis plusquam regem detestando. Fratres Prædicatores et Minores, necnon et alii, in peritia prædicandi theologi expediti et eruditi, in agro . . . . promittebant, minime frustrarentur, crucesignatis, secundum uniuscujusque possibilitatem, in pecunia solvenda redemptionem benigne susceperunt. Immo etiam laicis et penitus secularibus dominus papa, ex suæ plenitudine potestatis, sicut quondam columbæ et turtures in templo vendebantur,[5] ——————. Eodem anno, fabricato elegantissimo ex auro et argento feretro, translatum[6] est iterato . . . . . multitudine copiosa, videlicet v. idus Junii . . . Feliciani. Comes Legrecestriæ Simon, in omnibus studens patrissare . . . expugnavit, civitates et castra occupavit, hostium suorum multos capiens, multos cogens ad domini regis fidelitatem redire, et aliquos eidem domino regi captivos Londoniis fecit præsentari. Willelmus Longaspata, miles elegantissimus, annis pubescens juvenilibus, filio

Henry, son of the emperor, applies to Louis in behalf of the king of England.

Arrival of the abp. of Rouen and bishop of Tortosa.

11 April.

Ibid. iii.

Reply to the demands made by the nobles.

Preaching of the Mendicant Orders in aid of the crusade.

Ibid. iii.

fol. 82.

2 June.

Ibid. iii.

William Longespée

[1] *humillime*] humilime, MS.

[2] *in*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[3] *Paschali*] Pascali, MS.

[4] *commodo*] comodo, MS.

[5] *vendebantur*] The text breaks off here suddenly, at the bottom of the page, and no aid is afforded by the *Historia Anglorum* or the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 766.

[6] *translatum*] et translatum, MS.

A.D. 1249.

And other nobles go to the Holy Land.

suo suâ committens omnia, ad iter se accinxit Jerosolimitanum, pii regis Francorum sequens vestigia pedetentim, et multi nobiles de regno Angliæ, eidem W[illelmo] adhærentes; qui cum venissent ad partes ultramarinas, regis Francorum exercitui sunt adjuncti.

The Parmese and Bolognese defeat and capture the emperor's son Ensius.

Parmenses, ut partem suam contra Fretthericum[1] roborarent, Bononiensibus sunt confœderati. Qui, conjunctis Cremonensibus, dum iter agerent[2] per confinia Bononiæ, facto impetu in Ensium, filium Fretherici, regis Sardiniæ, et ejus exercitum, juxta quendam pontem, qui dicitur pons Sancti Ambrosii, per quem ipse E[nsius] erat transiturus,[3] captus est, et ejus exercitus dissipatus, et multi ex commilitonibus Ensii, præcipue de Cremonensibus, occupati, et cum suo Ensio Bononiam tracti, ad ipsorum Bononiensium arbitrium, interimendi,[4] incarcerandi, vel graviter redimendi. Unde Parmenses lætificati respirarunt, et Fretthericus doluit consternatus. Conradus insuper, alius filius suus,

Ibid. iii. 57. jam de regno . . . sibi senserat adversantem. Ipse insuper Fretthericus in proprio corpore particulari percussus paralisi, non . . . carpento.

Establishment of schools at Paris by the Cistercians.

Anno quoque sub eodem, abbas Clarevallensis,[5] vir per omnia laudabilis, Anglicus natione, nomine [Stephanus][6] de Lexintona, et alii cum eo abbates Cisterciensis Ordinis, perpendentes quod contemptui habebantur pro[7] defectu literaturæ, fratribus Prædicatoribus et Minoribus, impetrato a domino papa privilegio, Parisius nobile ædificium construxerunt, in quo fratres sui Ordinis convocatos manere fecerunt et studere, legere et disputare, necnon et prædicare, ita quod in brevi magnificis theologis æquipararentur. Rigor tamen Ordinis aliquantulum per hoc extitit enervatus, et claustralis pax et contemplatio mundi tumultibus perturbatus, prout legitur de beato Benedicto, quod relictis . . . decrevit, ut . . . contemplationi.

Return of the bps. of Lincoln and Norwich from Rome.

Redierunt a Romana curia episcopus Lincolniensis R[obertus] et episcopus Norwicensis W[alterus], qui Romam adierant, ut animum papalem rectificarent et mitigarent, et a solitis cessaret[8] intolerabilibus oppressionibus.

Oppression of the

Vix enim valebat aliquis in Anglia prælatus tutus jam latitare pro multiplicatis provisionibus, vel qui possit alicui suo clerico pauperi perito, et in Anglico idiomate

---

[1] *Fretthericum*] Frthericum, MS.

[2] *conjunctis . . . agerent*] This sentence refers to the forces of Ensius, but the construction is faulty.

[3] *transiturus*] transsiturus, MS.

[4] *interimendi*] interemendi, MS.

[5] *Clarevallensis*] Clerevallensis, MS.

[6] *Stephanus*] Left blank in the MS. See *Gallia Christiana*, iv. 806.

[7] *pro*] per, MS.

[8] *cessaret*] cessare, MS.

A.D. 1249. **clergy on account of the papal Provisions.**

expedito, et ad curas animarum idoneo[1] custodiendarum, in aliquo redditu,[2] licet exili, caritatis intuitu providere. Et cum humanum . . . aliquod conferre beneficium, non valebant; Romani omnia rapiebant. Sed nec propter Deum, nec[3] propter tantorum pontificum supplicationes,[4] prurientes manus e[5] rapinis consuetis[6] retrahere voluerunt. (fol. 82 *b*. Ibid. iii. 58)

Return of the abp. of Canterbury.

Rediit insuper a Romana curia archiepiscopus Cantuariensis. Qui etiam domino papæ humiliter supplicaverat, ut ecclesiæ parceret Anglicanæ, sed nec ille profecit, quin Romani, Italici, et maxime papæ consanguinei prorsus indigni, bona Angliæ irreverenter occuparent.

Capture of Damietta.

Eodem tempore rex Francorum in Terra Sancta prospere applicans, Damiatam civitatem munitissimam, pro qua tantus multotiens sanguis est effusus, sine difficultate et moræ dispendio capta est, et cultui Christiano, primo intrantibus Januensibus et Pisanis, mancipata.

Meeting to reform the Benedictine Order.

Abbates Nigri Ordinis auctoritate apostolica visitandi, maluerunt suos, si qui essent, excessus per se corrigere, quam per aliquem alium, maxime Ordinis et regulæ sancti Benedicti ignarum, apud Bermundesheiam[7] convenerunt, super reformatione Ordinis tractatum diligentem habituri.

Special collect for the king and queen established.

Ubi dominus rex impetravit quasdam preces fieri pro eo specialiter. Et statutum est apud Sanctum Albanum, ut in missa quæ cotidie de sancta Maria solempniter celebratur, una in perpetuum pro rege et regina dicatur collecta.[8]

Consecration of Walter, bp of Durham.

Walterus de Kirkeham in episcopum Dunelmensem consecratur.

Impression of the foot of Christ given to Westminster abbey.

Rex contulit ecclesiæ Westmonasterii quandam petram albi marmoris, in qua impressio pedis Salvatoris, cum in cœlum ascensurus suis benediceret, manifeste apparuit. Hanc utique petram quidam frater de Ordine Prædicatorum portavit in Angliam, et regi contulit, ut Angli Salvatoris vestigia veneranter adorarent.

Peace made between the abbat and convent.

Discordia orta inter R[icardum],[9] abbatem Westmonasterii, et ejus conventum, procurante domino rege, qui est illius domus amator specialis, feliciter est sopita. Eodemque tempore inter . . . orta est dissensio. Idem enim abbas, minus quam deceret aut expediret discretus, ac tribualiter inflatus, graviter (Ibid. iii. 6)

---

[1] *idoneo*] ydoneo, MS.

[2] *redditu*] reditu, MS.

[3] *nec*] ne, MS.

[4] *supplicationes*] supplicōs, MS.

[5] *e*] et, MS.

[6] *consuetis*] consuetas, MS.

[7] *Bermundesheiam*] After this word the text has *Lond'*, and we should, perhaps, read *prope Londonias.*

[8] In the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 768, the use of this collect, beginning "Deus, in cujus manu," is said to have been established at the general meeting of the Order, and so also in the *Flores Historiarum.*

[9] *Ricardum*] Richard de Crokesle. See *Monasticon*, i. 271.

A.D. 1249.

accusatus est et convictus[1] super dilapidatione, et de consanguineorum suorum, quibus abundabat,[2] in dampnum enorme suæ ecclesiæ, nimia ditatione. Procurante igitur episcopo Lincolniensi Roberto, qui domum de Burgo paulo ante visitaverat, depositus est. Cujus loco prior ecclesiæ Sancti Suithuni Wintoniæ, Johannes de Cadomo, sic rege volente, subrogatur. Per idem tempus quidam miles[3] de terra Sancti Albani domum ipsam nimium vexavit, et multipliciter dampnificavit, ope suffultus[4] domini Johannis Mansel, cujus extitit sororius. Quæ vexatio diffusos et speciales tractatus exigeret. Tandem, procurante dicto Johanne, feliciter est pax reformata inter eos, et de rebelli benevolus est effectus. Feria v[ta]. ante
iii. 63. festum . . . detestans, et fugiens ad . . . senuit, ad gradum promotus sacerdotii, convolavit. Abbas de Bello Loco . . . Johannes fundaverat, præsentibus . . . ejus, cum multis prælatis et magnatibus, sollempniter valde fecit dedicari.
83 a. Dedicata igitur illa ecclesia, ad instantiam comitis Ricardi dictus abbas quandam novam domum Cisterciensis Ordinis de
iii. 65. Hales, quam idem comes fundaverat, viginti monachis . . . instauravit. In qua domo construenda comes plusquam decem milia marcarum exposuerat. Sub ejusdem anni curriculo, v°.
iii. 66. . . . Scotorum. Obiit quoque Hugo . . . regis victricus, et ejus filius primogenitus, Hugo Brun nuncupatus, in Terram Sanctam peregrini. Obiit quoque quidam alienigena, Petrus de Geneure, quem rex in Hibernia multum locupletaverat.
iii. 67. Obiit insuper magister . . . regis clericus et consiliarius . . . vices supplens[5] cancellarii. In quo . . . de eo, [quem][6] in tantum exaltaverat, exulem et egenum. Obiitque magister Willelmus de Dunelmo, quondam electus Rothomagensis, vir literatissimus, transalpinans. Obiitque Rogerus, filius Johannis [de Bailloil],[7] baro borealis, cujus terræ custodiam rex contulit Willelmo de Valencia,[8] fratri suo, cum pertinentiis.

Deposition of the abbat of Peterborough.

Injury done to the abbey of St. Alban's by the aid of John Mansel.

The monastery of Hales receives monks from Beaulieu.

Deaths of noble personages.

M°.CC°.L°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxxiiii°., fuit ad Natale apud Wintoniam; et in crastino, scilicet die sancti Stephani, cum episcopo ipsius civitatis magnus conviva digna-
.. iii. batur epulari. Et infra dies Natalicios . . . . . infantis consanguineum; et quia comes amator fuit beati Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, vocatus est infans Edmundus.

Henry at Winchester.
26 Dec.

---

[1] *convictus*] con, MS.

[2] *abundabat*] habundabat, MS.

[3] *quidam miles*] Geoffrey de Childwike. See *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 62.

[4] *suffultus*] suffultus subfultus, MS.

[5] *supplens*] suplens, MS.

[6] *quem*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*

[7] *de Bailloil*] Supplied from the same.

[8] *Valencia*] Valncia, MS.

A.D. 1250. Episcopus Lincolniensis . . . . ut omnium religiosorum per . . . . effusione, et sui senilis corporis vexatione, impetraverat, sed inaniter, ut rei exitus comprobabat. Papa . . . dispensavit. Comes Ricardus[1] cum maxima gloria et honore transfretavit, et, comitante Henrico, filio suo primogenito, et familia multa, nimis regaliter in equis phaleratis[2] et carissimis vestimentis adornata, Franciam pertransiens Lugdunum pervenit, ubi tunc papa morabatur. Et venienti omnes fere cardinales reverenter occurrerunt. Episcopus autem Lincolniensis jam illuc advenerat; quia cum multi sese versus papam, ut pacem haberent, redemissent, querulus papam redarguit, dicens, "Domine, credidi, auxiliante præcepto vestro, omnes, de quibus conquestus [sum],[3] castigasse et ab eorum errore potenter revocasse; et ecce novissimus error factus est pejor priore. Omnes enim se redimunt, et panditis sinum omnibus præmia offerentibus; unde enervatur auctoritas mea et propositum irritatur." Cui papa, "Frater . . . . quia ego bonus sum?" Et sic recessit episcopus a suo proposito fraudatus, aliis tamen nimium vexatis propter hoc atque dampnificatis. Tempore sub eodem, devicto et affugato[4] Willelmo de Holandia, rege Alemanniæ, licet eum papa multum ditaverit, Fretherious in multos sibi rebelles desævit triumphando,[5] et ad tempus multos conterendo peremit, secundum illud, "Ante ruinam[6] exaltabitur cor."[7] Tempore sub eodem, cum venisset comes Ricardus Lugdunum, ut prædictum est, papa ipsum cum summo honore suscepit, supplicans ut cum eo pranderet; et refecti sunt in una mensa papa et comes Ricardus collateraliter. Hoc autem factum est ante dies Rogationum. Et eadem die, cum Soldanus Babiloniæ optimam pacem obtulisset, sed Francorum superbia ad pacem oblatam minime potuit inclinari, commissum est prœlium infelicissimum inter Christianos et Sarracenos, et captus est rex Francorum ab infidelibus, quod nunquam antea contigit. Et se reddiderunt

Ibid. iii. 69

Earl Richard goes abroad, and is honourably received at Lyons.

The bp. of Lincoln complains to the pope, but without effect.

fol. 83 *b*.

Ibid. iii. 70

The emperor triumphs over his enemies.

Earl Richard dines with the pope.

25 April.

Defeat of the French, and capture of Louis by the Saracens.

[1] *Comes Ricardus*] From these words the text of the *Flores Historiarum*, attributed improperly to Matthew of Westminster, is almost verbally transcribed in the Chetham MS. from the *Abbreviatio Chronicorum* printed above, and goes on to the close of the year 1255. A collation of the two texts has afforded some corrections of the original, and various readings, as indicated onwards in the foot-notes.

[2] *phaleratis*] feleratis, MS.

[3] *sum*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 70, and *Flores Hist.*

[4] *affugato*] affligato, MS. and *Flores Hist.*

[5] *triumphando*] triumfando, MS.

[6] *et ad . . ruinam*] These words and part of the next are on an erasure; and are also written with a plummet on the lower margin.

[7] Altered from Prov. xvi. 18.

Sarracenis multi nobiles Francorum sine conflictu vel vulnere, tanquam maledicti a Domino; et capti multi ultro apostatarunt, in ignominiam fidei Christianæ, et totius universalis ecclesiæ obprobrium[1] sempiternum. Et fugit frater regis Francorum, comes Atrabatensis, et submersus periit in quodam flumine, et dissipatus est totus Christianorum exercitus et confusus. Willelmus vero Longa-spata pugnavit usque ad mortem, et alii quamplures nobiles, natione Anglici, exemplo Willelmi provocati et in Domino feliciter animati, videlicet Robertus de Vair, et alii, quorum [nomina][2] in libro vitæ indelebiliter annotantur. Quod autem æterna dignum arbitror memoria, videbatur in nocte præcedenti matri suæ, abbatissæ scilicet de Lacoc, quondam comitissæ Saresbiriensi, quod dictus Willelmus, aperto cœlo, elevatus est totaliter armatus, cujus armatura bene novit, et, angelis eum gaudenter suscipientibus, intravit. Quo intrante, dixisse videbatur mater, "Quis est hic?" Et responsum est ei, "Nonne cognoscis[3] filium tuum Willelmum et ejus armaturam?" Et mater, "Cognosco utique." Ille est, quem tu, mater, contemplaris." Abbatissa vero materna sedulitate tempus notavit et visionem. Elapso autem dimidio anno sequente, cum omnes qui casum sciebant et diu celabant, ne mater pro filii funere plus æquo doleret, tandem proruperunt[4] in hæc verba, "Domina, non expedit diutius celare casum, qui accidit filio tuo W[illelmo]." Et addentes[5] qua die in frusta, prœlians contra infideles pro Christo, martir gloriosus detruncatur. At illa comperiens diem et visionem memoratam rei gestæ respondere, elevatis manibus, gratias egit Deo vultu alacri; dicens, "Gratias refero tibi ego ancilla tua, Domine, quod de carne mea peccatrice talem nasci præcepisti tuorum hostium expugnatorem." Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis B[onefacius] causa visitandi episcopum Londoniensem[6] et religiosos in civitate Londoniarum, tam contra episcopum quam viros religiosos civitatis, sicut et contra quosdam alios, licet æquitatis ductus ratione, tanta dicitur austeritate processisse, ut, ipsis instanter resistentibus, multi eum præcollaudantes, de ejus tunc mirarentur feritate.[7] Tandem, post multas hinc

A.D. 1250.

The count of Artois drowned.

William de Longespée and other nobles slain.

He appears in a vision to his mother the abbess of Lacock.

On being informed of her son's death, she returns thanks to God.

Visitation of London by the abp. of Canterbury.

[1] *obprobrium*] et obprobrium, MS.

[2] *nomina*] Supplied from *Flores. Hist.*

[3] *cognoscis*] congnoscis, MS.

[4] *proruperunt*] prorupit, MS. Corrected from *Flores Hist.*

[5] *addentes*] addens, MS. Corr. from *Flores Hist.*

[6] *Londoniensem*] Lund', MS.

[7] *quam viros . . feritate*] These lines are written over an erasure by the same contemporary hand, which has continued the text from the beginning of the year 1253. On the lower margin a portion of this correction appears traced with a plummet. The correction is followed in *Flores Hist.*

A.D. 1250. inde expensarum effusiones et laborum diversas vexationes, fol. 84 determinatum est, ut suam archiepiscopus, secundum jus commune, rationabilius et tolerabilius exerceret jurisdictionem, et sic visitationem[1] prosequeretur sub diffinita modificatione. Et sic cessavit mota tempestas. Diebus sub eisdem . . . . terris Ibid. iii. totius Christianitatis . . . domum eorum de Holeburne, quæ est Londiniis, ut ibidem de . . . diligenter, invocata Spiritus Sancti gratia, contrectarent, et si corrigenda[2] cernerent, reformarent. Et quia . . . prælati de partibus vicinis ex mera liberalitate[3] . . . invenerunt. Rex autem prima die capituli accessit illuc personaliter, orationum suffragia petiturus ab eisdem, procuransque[4] eos, pavit ut decuit regulariter. Sequenti die, regina, deinde episcopus Londoniensis, postea dominus Johannes [Mansel];[5] consequenter alii, utpote abbas Westmonasterii, abbas Sancti Albani, abbas de Waltham, et cives Londonienses, prout ipsi literatorie supplicaverant. Erant autem fratres quadringenti et amplius. Eodemque tempore commissum est sigillum regium magistro Willelmo . . . juris- Ibid. iii. perito. Eisdemque temporibus quidam miles, quondam socius [Roberti de Passelewe][6] et ejusdem in officio custodiæ forestarum successor, Galfridus nomine de Langeleia, boreales partes peragrans, et de forestarum ac venationum transgressionibus perscrutans, quoscunque poterat irretire tam graviter mulctavit, pecuniam extorquendo, ut quantitas thesauri ad opus regis collecti in auditorum cordibus stuporem generaret.

Provisions supplied to the chapter of the Friars Preachers.

Large sums exacted by Geoffrey de Langeley for forest fines.

1 Aug. Die vero beati Kenelmi pervenerunt rumores de captione regis Francorum, et totius exercitus Christiani confusione, quibus rumoribus nunquam, præcipue in Francia, auditi sunt flebiliores, ad notitiam Catholicorum. Unde tota Christianitas mœrore contabuit et dolore. Eodem anno, mense Octobris . . . . . prævidisse, dampna finitimis maxima irrogavit. Anno Ibid. iii. quoque sub eodem . . . terræmotus in Anglia. Et quod in Ibid. iii. Ciltria evenit, maxime constat admirandum, nec est hoc visum a tempore cujus non extat memoria. Ipsa enim patria solida est, et cretosa ac petrosa, et minime cavernosa. Factus in- Ibid. iii. super cum ipso . . . subterraneus. Quæ dicebantur vel futuram . . . . mortem famosi principis præsignare. Obiit igitur

News arrives of the capture of the king of France in Palestine.

Earthquake in the Chilterns.

[1] *tolerabilius . . . . visitationem*] Traced by the same contemporary pen over a correction made on an erasure of the original text; and so copied in *Flores Hist.*

[2] *corrigenda*] corrrigenda, MS.

[3] *liberalitate*] liberalite, MS.

[4] *procuransque*] procurasque, MS.

[5] *Mansel*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.* and *Flores Hist.*

[6] *Roberti de Passelewe*] Omitted in the MS. and *Flores Hist.*, but the name ought certainly to be supplied here, as appears from the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 786.

A.D. 1250.

Death of the emperor Frederic.

eadem[1] die maximus principum, mundi stupor, Fretherieus.
Obiitque eodem anno episcopus Wintoniensis Willelmus de
Rale in partibus transmarinis, videlicet apud Turonim, ubi
circiter xi. mensibus moram continuaverat. Monachi Winto-
nienses coacti sunt, rege instantius urgente, eligere sibi Æthel-
84 b. marum, fratrem suum uterinum, in suarum pastorem anima-
rum, licet insufficiens multis videretur. Qui onus suscipiens
cum honore, contra omnium prædecessorum suorum sanctorum,[2]
non pontifex, sed esse electus et sic permanere cogitavit.[3] Et
hæc abusio incepit primo in ipso, in hiis partibus occidentali-
bus. Obiit insuper episcopus Rofensis, circa festum sancti
Michaelis. Et quia sanctus habebatur, procurante rege, sepul-
tum est corpus ejus apud Westmonasterium. Eodem anno,
iiii°. kalendas Junii, obiit Robertus de Lexintona, domini regis
clericus et consiliarius specialis. Qui etiam in justiciariæ
officio diu commorans, amplas sibi cumulavit possessiones, et
regis thesauros ampliavit.

Athelmar elected bp. of Winchester.

29 Sept. Deaths of the bishop of Rochester and Robert de Lexingtone.

ii. 88. Completo igitur hoc anno, jam fluxerant[4] ex . . . . autem
est, nec est leviter . . . . novitates, quod evenerunt in hac
iii. 89. ultima quinquagena, videlicet vicesima quinta. Et sunt . . .
quinquagenis tot prodigia et novitates admirandæ evenerunt,
sicut in hac jam terminata. Et si [non][5] omnia, aliqua tamen
huic libello duximus annectenda. In hac enim . . . et in-
vestigabilibus sedibus erumpentes, climata Orientalium tam
. . . vastaverunt. Admiralius[6] Murmelinus, quem Miramu-
meli[7] vocant,[8] Affricanorum . . . incredulorum, fines Christia-
norum invadit; sed ipse cum universo exercitu suo victus
retrocedit. Prædicante . . . apparuit toti populo manifeste
. . . . Battacio, Græcorum potentissimo, scismatizante.[9] Da-
miata, civitas in introitu Ægypti opulentissima et munitissima
atque famosissima . . . amissa. In Anglia pluries terræmotus,
et pluries mare prodigaliter terminos suos consuetos trans-
grediens, finitimis inaudita dampna irrogavit. Anglia insuper

Memorable events in the preceding half-century.

---

[1] *eadem*] eodem, MS.; eodem anno et die, *Flores Hist.*

[2] A word is wanting, probably *exemplum*. In the MS. *electus* was originally written, but afterwards partially erased. The Chetham MS. affords us no aid, as an erasure of five lines occurs here, made after the MS. came into the hands of the monks of Westminster. Cf. MS. Laud. 572, in Bodl. Library.

[3] *cogitavit*] cogitabit, MS., but the last two letters half erased.

[4] *fluxerant*] fluerant, MS.

[5] *non*] Omitted in MS.

[6] *Admiralius*] The initial letter has been left out in the MS.

[7] *Miramumeli*] At first written *Miramumelim*, but the final *m* erased and so copied in *Flores Hist.*

[8] *vocant*] vocat, MS.

[9] *scismatizante*] cismatizante, MS.

A.D. 1250. Memorable events in the preceding half-century.

interdictum passa est per fere septennium;[1] et per tantundem temporis guerram intestinam toleravit. Tandemque per inertiam regis Johannes, tunc regnantis, facta est tributaria. Idem rex Johannes Normanniam et multas alias terras ultramarinas amisit; Angliam et Hiberniam Innocentio III. papæ jure tributario subjugavit. Facta est ecclesiæ conditio æqualis conditioni Judæorum, ut annuatim tallietur; et hoc per avaritiam papalis curiæ et regum inertiam.[2] Privilegia etiam sanctorum patrum Romanorum suo robore privantur et auctoritate,[3] per hanc adjectionem "Non obstante," non sine eorum injuria et contemptu. Prohibitum est judicium, quod fieri consuevit per ignem et aquam. Permissum est alicui personæ episcopatum habere et episcopum non esse, ut Athelmaro, fratri regis uterino, qui primus erat talis in episcopatu Wintoniensi.[4] Permissumque [est][5] alicui in episcopatum promoto, pristinos redditus retinere. Permissum est in Anglia jam quasi licite, ut habitent Christiani usurarii inter Christianos, papa protegente, cum sit usura in utroque Testamento condempnata; quos usurarios vulgus [Caursinos][6] appellat, et ipsi se mercatores papæ palam esse profitentur. Prohibitum est, ne quis ecclesiæ [rector][7] patri immediate succedat, sine papali dispensatione, vel illegitimus ad dignitatem promoveatur. Moneta per tonsuram corrupta renovatur. Electus est in dominum et tanquam regem Ludowicus, primogenitus Philippi, regis Francorum,[8] propter intolerabiles regis Johannis[9] oppressiones. Tandem idem Ludovicus, fidei transgressor et promissorum, mortuo læsore[10] rege Johanne, inglorius ad patrem remeavit. Otto et Fretherieus, papæ rebelles imperatores, confunduntur; quibus prostratis, culmen emarcuit imperiale. Papa duos in apicem imperii promovere conabatur, sed antequam elevarentur, elisit eos Dominus, videlicet Andegravium[11] de Duringe, et Willelmum, comitem de Holandia. Willelmus tamen cœpit infra memoratam quinquagenam elevari, sed cito

fol. 8

[1] *septennium*] septennia, MS., but *a* erased.

[2] *Facta est . . inertiam*] Erased in the Chetham MS. of *Flores Hist.*

[3] *auctoritate*] auctorita, MS.

[4] *Permissum est . . Wintoniensi*] Erased in the Chetham MS.

[5] *est*] Supplied from the *Flores Hist.*

[6] *Caursinos*] Omitted also in *Flores Hist.*, but supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 90.

[7] *rector*] Supplied from the same.

[8] *Francorum*] Franc℈, MS., and so MS. Arund. 96.

[9] *regis Johannis*] These words have been partially erased, but can still be deciphered, and are copied in *Flores Hist.*

[10] *læsore*] Omitted in *Flores Hist.*

[11] *Andegravium*] In the margin is the following note, "qui vocabatur Henricus Raspe," and so copied in the margin of the Chetham MS.

post periit interfectus. Captus est, et totus exercitus ejus dissipatus, rex Francorum Ludowicus, et multarum magnates regionum cum eo; et conventus Templi, Hospitalis, Theutonicorum et Sancti Lazari. Et civitas Jerusalem cum suis eccle- A.D. 1250. Memorable events in the preceding half-century.
iii. 90. siis et locis sanctis Christi . . . . exterminata. Eclipsis . . . triennium. Terræmotus in Anglia pluries, et maris insolita dilatatio. Rex Angliæ J[ohannes], die sanctorum vii. Dormientium, 27 July.
dupliciter victus, amotus fuit per Ludowicum ab obsidione Rupis-Monachorum violenter. Et imperator Otto, et omnes qui cum dicto rege J[ohanne] erant, ad pontem de Bovines victi
iii. 91. fuerunt,[1] capti, vel per fugam elapsi. Concilium . . . ultimo, imperator Fretherieus excommunicatus et cassatus. Non procul a Janua, videlicet in mari, multi prælati capti sunt et nonnulli submersi. Wallia quoque . . . suis David et Griffino cito [morte][2] præventis, legibus . . . incurvatur. Wasconia per comitem Simonem edomatur; postea recalcitrans regi inclinatur, et a vendicatione regis Hispaniæ liberatur. Maxima pars Hispaniæ Christiano cultui restituitur per regem Castellæ strenuissimum; et nobilissimæ civitates, scilicet Corduba, Sibilla, et magna Valentia, et aliæ quamplures, et insulæ opulentissimæ dicto regi mancipantur, et fide Catholica feliciter illustrantur. Papa, velut exul et profugus, et ab urbe expulsus, fugit a civitate in civitatem, locis plurimis latitando, persequente Fretherico ipsum[3] Innocentium[4] IIII. Qui tandem Lugdunum veniens, ibi tutius latitavit. Iste tamen nullatenus flagellum Domini castigantis recognoscens,[5] ecclesiam plus gravabat quam antecessores ejus universi. Tres apostolici sederunt infra duos
iii. 92. annos; vacavit . . . ix. menses. Suspenduntur . . . . scribit, ut eis provideatur. Multiplicantur diatim provisiones, et scribit papa, ut aliquibus provideatur in quantum duxerint acceptan-
iii. 93. dum. Fratres Prædicatores . . . urgente obedientia, fiunt
85 b. domini papæ thelonarii, nuncii, et quasi legati, seduli pecuniæ papalis collectores, prædicando, crucesignando, et iterum, facto fine, resumendo;[5] infirmis,[6] morituris, et testamenta conditoris assistendo, omnia ad commodum[8] domini papæ diligentes negotiatores multimodis armati potestatibus convertebant. Ordines multiplicantur in Anglia præter Ordines Prædicatorum

---

[1] *fuerunt*] fuerant, MS.

[2] *morte*] Omitted in the MS. and in *Flores Hist.*, but evidently required here.

[3] *persequente . . . ipsum*] On an erasure.

[4] *Innocentium*] Innocium, MS.

[5] *recognoscens*] recongnoscens, MS.

[6] *resumendo*] rusumendo, MS.

[7] *infirmis*] imfirmis, MS., and so again below.

[8] *commodum*] comodum, MS.

A.D. 1250. Memorable events in the preceding half-century.

et Minorum, videlicet fratres de Monte Carmeli, fratres Cruciferorum, et quidam qui se appellant fratres de Ordine sancti Augustini, et multi alii. Item in Alemannia et Francia mulieres, quæ se Beguinas nominant. Multi sancti in Anglia florent, in Anglia vel de Anglia, beatus scilicet Edmundus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, apud Pontiniacum jacens choruscat miraculis, ejusdemque frater, magister Robertus. Sanctus Robertus . . . Londoniensis Rogerus, ad cujus tumbam signa appenduntur quamplurima beneficiorum collatorum infirmis testimonialia. Item in Alemannia, sancta Elizabeth, Andegravia de Duringe, sanctus Augustinus in Norwegia, claris probatis et approbatis miraculis illustrantur. Et extra istam quinquagenam,[1] cito tamen post, apud Lincolniam, sanctus ejus civitatis episcopus Robertus II., examinatis miraculis, glorioso nimis honoratur. Unde in eadem ecclesia alii pristini sancti, scilicet sanctus Remigius et sanctus Hugo, quasi congaudentes et applaudentes novo confratri suo, sancto Roberto, licet non canonizato, sua Christi fidelibus beneficia miraculorum quasi certatim impenderunt, ut eorum testimonium canonizationi æquipolleret. Et non post multos dies quidam puer circiter [trium][2] annorum, quem Judæi circumciderunt, crucifixerunt, et post excogitata tormenta in cruce occiderunt, in ecclesia Lincolniensi sepultus, multis sanitatis suffragia dicitur contulisse, ita ut ecclesia Lincolniensis beatissima prædicaretur, et a peregrinaliter eam adeuntibus honoraretur. Ipse quoque Cicestrensis Ricardus adeo claruit miraculis, ut viderentur apostolorum tempora renovari. Reædificatur ecclesia Westmonasterialis sumptibus . . . Edwardi, de ejusdem regis thesauro fabricatur. Ibid. ii
Vasa insuper carissima impretiabilia et admiratione digna, cum gemmis olosericis, campanis[3] præelectis, et novis libertatibus eidem domui a rege conferuntur; ædificavitque ibidem[4] dominus rex capitulum incomparabile.[5] Albigensium, Jovinianorum, Bugororum et aliorum errantium hæreses diligentia prædicatorum exsufflantur.[6] In Terra Sancta[7] pars Christianorum, Sarracenis ad votum sæpe triumphantibus, non mediocriter infirmatur; sed in Hispania jactura talis feliciter

[1] *extra istam quinquagenam*] On an erasure, and written *quinquagimam*.

[2] *trium*] A blank space is left for this word in the MS., which is supplied from *Flores Hist.*

[3] *olosericis, campanis*] et sericis pannis, *Flores Hist.*

[4] *ibidem*] At first written *eisdem*, but erased and corr. in marg. Omitted in *Flores Hist.*

[5] *incomparabile*] imcomparabile, MS.

[6] *exsufflantur*] exuflantur, MS.

[7] *In Terra Sancta*] Interea sancta, *Flores Hist.*

instauratur. Antiochia Turcis insurgentibus artatur, et usque A.D. 1250.
ad civium vineas et agriculturas, et usque quandoque ad muros ab eisdem appetitur et impugnatur. Pascha hoc anno suo loco debito, scilicet vi°. kalendas Aprilis, evenit; quod nunquam ea die evenit, anno videlicet quinquagesimo. Omnia vero elementa, quod est notabile et significativum, hac ultima annorum quinquagena insolitum et irregulare detrimentum tolerarunt. Ignis, quia[1] fulgur temporibus hyemalibus frequenter reboavit, et terribiliter cecidit et emicuit, contra naturæ cursum consuetum. Aër, quia[1] pregnans, prænotato tonitru, fulgure et pluviarum inundatione, caligavit perturbatum. Aqua, quia[1] mare solitas metas transgrediens, et in mari, ubi profunditas esse consuevit, arida apparuit, loca conterminia devastavit. Terra, quia[1] in Anglia, et etiam in Cilteria, terræmotus insolitus pluries perhorruit. Et in Sabaudia,
86 a. civitatum, villarum, montium, castrorum, ecclesiarum, et multorum milium hominum absorptio[2] terribilis et inaudita.

27 March.

iii. 97.
Virginis a partu . . . .
. . . . terminus hic est.
Nec quinquagenis aliis tot digna[3] stupore,
Sicut in hac, vidit quis natus sive renatus.

Hic quoque proposuit frater Matheus Cronica sua terminare,[4] propter imminentia[5] quædam pericula. Si enim de potentibus vera dicantur et scripturæ commendentur,[6] bella parantur ei; si taceantur, vel bona pro malis annotentur, mutilabitur, et de blandimentis, adulationibus et falsitatibus graviter opus totale condempnabitur et redarguetur. Libellus iste auctori suo ager sterilis potest merito appellari. Nam sudor in cultura laboriosus, in colligendæ messis tempore, commoditatis[7] omnimodæ carentia, filix,[8] spinæ et tribuli, pro fructibus colliguntur. Et, "quid juvat in sterili spargere semen humo?" Sperandum tamen est, quod bona quæ homo non remunerat ingratus, Dei largitas plenius recompensabit. Bonum quippe est ad Dei laudem eventus rerum notabilium scribendo perpetuare, ut subsequentes legendo castigentur, mala quæ digna sunt ultione devitando, et bona[9] quæ Dominus plene remunerat operando. Dictus autem frater Matheus, dum in proposito fuisset historialem librum suum terminare, sic ait,

Proposed termination of the Chronicles of Matthew Paris.

[1] *quia*] quasi, *Flores Hist.*
[2] *absorptio*] absorcio, MS.
[3] *digna*] dingna, MS.
[4] *Hic . . terminare*] Written at first closer to the preceding verses, but afterwards erased, and rewritten lower down.
[5] *imminentia*] iminentia, MS.
[6] *commendentur*] comendentur, MS.
[7] *commoditatis*] comoditatis, MS.
[8] *filix*] filex, MS.
[9] *bona*] bo, MS.

A.D. 1251.

Terminantur hic . . . Ibid. iii.
. . . . cœli solio.
Siste tui . . . .
. . . . proferet ætas.

Henry at Winchester.

M°.CC°.LI°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui XXXV°., fuit ad Natale Domini Wintoniæ. Nocte autem Natalis Domini

Thunder at Christmas.

tonitrus est auditus et visa choruscatio.[1] Rex, quia speraverat

The king collects gold coin.

in partes proficisci Orientalium peregrinus, ubi aurum cedit in monetam, aureos cœpit desiderare et colligere; ut qui negotia expedire in curia regis desideraret, aurum potius quam

The prisoners captured by the late emperor are sent to Sicily.

argentum ipsi regi largiretur. Mortuo, ut prædictum [est],[2] Fretherico, omnes captivos quos idem Fretherieus in vinculis tenuerat, fecit filius[3] Conradus ad ulteriora terræ transferri, et ad Palermam vel alias Siciliæ civitates, ut securior esset de illis, transmitti. Aliqui tamen eorum concessi Henrico, filio imperatoris F[retherici], et nepoti regis Anglorum redimendi, vel aliter ad arbitrium suum tractandi.

Discord between the Soldans of Aleppo and Babylon.

Diebus autem sub eisdem mota est discordia[4] inter Saracenorum potentissimos[5] Soldanos, sed maxime inter Alapensium et Babiloniorum Soldanos et magistratus. Indignabantur et invidebant, eo quod ipse Babiloniorum Soldanus acceperat in fol. 86 bello regem Francorum, Christianorum famosissimum ac potentissimum. Immo plus commovebantur, eo quod[6] ipsum jam redemptum[7] liberum abire permiserat, et jam tutus apud Achon

Ransom paid for the king of France.

cum Christianis commorabatur. Summa autem redemptionis[8] regis Francorum erat sexaginta milia librarum auri primi et purissimi, absque aliis denariis communibus, videlicet Esterlingis, Turonensibus et Parisiensibus, qui ad infinitum numerum ascenderunt. Numerus autem interfectorum sexaginta milia et viginti milia et amplius . . . reddiderunt, et illi H. A. iii. 103.

The Jews forbidden to eat meat on a Friday, or in Lent.

apostatarunt, qui plus aliis nobis nocuerunt.[9] Prohibiti sunt Judæi per regem et regales, sub magna pœna, ne carnes comederent sexta feria, vel in Quadragesima. Odiosiores enim facti sunt regi Anglorum, quia improperatum fuit regi Francorum, quasi pro obprobio et redargutione, quod Christiani sustinent Judæos habitare inter se, qui Dominum eorum et Deum[10] tot lacessitum injuriis tandem crucifixerunt. Memfre-

---

[1] *choruscatio*] coruscacio, MS.

[2] *est*] Supplied from *Flores Hist.*

[3] *filius*] After this word is an erasure. In Edd. *filius illius.*

[4] *est discordia*] Repeated, by error, in the MS.

[5] *potentissimos*] potentissimo, MS.

[6] *eo quod*] eo quia, MS. and *Flores Hist.*

[7] *redemptum*] redeptum, MS.

[8] *redemptionis*] redepcionis, MS.

[9] *Summa autem . . . nocuerunt*] See, in regard to these paragraphs, the note in *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 102.

[10] *eorum et Deum*] On an erasure.

dus, filius F[retherici] imperatoris naturalis, respirans, insurgit contra papam. Nuchera civitas, in qua plusquam xxx^a. milia Sarracenorum habitant, quam construxit F[rethericus] imperator, non destruitur, sed a Memfrido protegitur. Guido, frater regis, vocatus ut ditetur, venit in Angliam; aliis fratribus præditatis. Angli vilescunt et depauperantur, præcipue cives Londonienses. Prælati et viri religiosi, papa jubente et rege spoliante, in ultimam servitutem detruduntur. Papa venit Perusium vix. Rediit comes Legrecestriæ S[imon] de Wasconia, sed multiplicatis[1] viribus iterum remeavit. Hæc detestabilis adjectio, "Non obstante," enervat sanctorum scripta et facta. Cedit episcopus Dunelmensis Nicholaus; assignatur[2] ei proportio competens, videlicet Stoctona, Hovedene et Esentona.[3] Henricus de Bathonia,[4] miles et domini [regis][5] justiciarius,[6] graviter accusatus et diffamatus coram rege, vix mortem evadit. Comitissa Harundelliæ fundat unam ecclesiam sanctimonialium, non procul a Len, quæ Marham dicitur. Rumor increbuit in partibus occidentalibus, quod F[rethericus] imperator obierat die sanctæ Luciæ. Archiepiscopus Cantuariensis canonicos Londonienses, eo quod eos visitare vellet cum maximo gravamine, potenter conatur confundere. Tandem visitavit, sed cum moderamine. Comes Legrecestriæ redit de Wasconia.[7] Obiit Willelmus de Cantelupo, regis consiliarius; succedit Willelmus, filius ejus. Wallia incurvatur legibus Angliæ. Confirmantur Wintoniensis et Rofensis electi. Papa recessit a Lugduno, venit sed vix Mediolanum. Obiit Paulinus Piper, regis dapifer et conciliarius. Obiit Gaufridus dispensator, miles strenuus. Mirabilis pestis oritur in Francia de quibusdam nebulonibus, videlicet pastoribus, ad xxx. milia multiplicatis; omnes tamen evanuerunt. Damiata civitas[8] a Sarracenis solo tenus complanatur. Papa novas condit Decretales. Æquinoctiali tempore mare metas suas longo spatio transgressum est. Regina Scociæ, scilicet relicta Alexandri, repatriat. Acceptis torneamentis, apparet odium et invidia inter alienigenas et Anglos, et formidabile suscipit incrementum.

A.D. 1251.
Frethicales recalcitrant.
Arrival of Guy, brother of the king.
The English laity and clergy are impoverished.
Return of the earl of Leicester.
The odious clause "Non obstante."
Accusation of Henry de Bath.
Nunnery of Marham founded.
Visitation of the canons of London.
Death of William de Cantelupe.
Subjection of Wales.
Deaths of notable personages.
The Pastoreaux in France.
Damietta destroyed.
Inundation of the sea.
Return of the queen of Scotland.

M^o.CC^o.LII°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxxvi^o., fuit idem rex[9] apud Eboracum; ubi Alexander, jam rex Scociæ,

Henry at York.

---

[1] *multiplicatis*] multiplatis, MS.

[2] *assignatur*] assignantur, MS.

[3] See previously under 1249, p. 305.

[4] *Bathonia*] Both', MS.

[5] *regis*] Supplied from *Flores Hist.*

[6] *justiciarius*] justiarius, MS.

[7] *Comes . . Wasconia*] A mere repetition of what has been stated shortly before, and omitted in *Flores Hist.*

[8] *civitas*] On an erasure.

[9] *idem rex*] These words are superfluous, but they occur also in *Flores Hist.*

A.D. 1252. desponsavit filiam regis Angliæ Margaretam, ad Natale Domini, et rex Angliæ regem Scotorum baltheo ibidem donavit militari. Et rex Scociæ fecit homagium regi Anglorum. Committitur custodia regis Scotorum et reginæ ac regni Roberto de Ros et Johanni de Bailloil. Judæi graviter talliantur. Accusatus gravissime comes Legrecestriæ S[imon], resignat custodiam Wasconiæ regi. Ariditas iiii^{or}. mensibus maxima. Beneficiati in episcopatu Lincolniensi promoventur ad sacerdotium inviti. Conradus prosperatur in guerra contra papam, fol. 87 nec prosunt papæ rapinæ consuetæ. Obiit Robertus Passelewe, vetus aulicus et inveteratus, quo machinante, amiserat abbas Rameseiæ potissimam partem nundinarum sancti Yvonis. Multorum autem sicut et ejus pacem perturbaverat, et minuit possessionem De ipsius moribus non moralibus multa in hoc libro præscribuntur. Sopita est discordia, quæ fuerat [inter] [1] abbatem Westmonasterii et ejus conventum, rege procurante. Obiit victoriosissimus rex Hispaniæ Andefulsus. Dolet inde rex Angliæ, sed plus Blanchia. Confertur Wasconia Edwardo; nec fit mentio de comite, cui quondam fuerat concessa et incartata; et ipse in possessione constitutus. Æstus et ariditas maxima et diuturna in æstate. Factum est hastiludium, quod Tabula Rotunda vocatur; ubi periit strenuissimus miles Hernaldus de Munteynni. Obiit Willelmus de Haverhulle, clericus, regis thesaurarius. Ecclesia Elyensis nobiliter per episcopum Hugonem reparata, dedicatur. Obiit comitissa de Ripariis,[2] Margareta de Ripariis. Festo sancti Edwardi fuit magnum concilium Londoniis, ubi rex auxilium pecuniare postulavit. Episcopus autem Lincolniensis Robertus primo contradixit; postea alii animati per eum, restiterunt. Talliantur cives Londonienses, quos barones consuevimus appellare,[3] quasi servi ultimæ conditionis. Galfridus de Langeleia, qui miles [et] [4] justiciarius de foresta supra modum nobiles [5] boreales fictis de causis pro captura ferinæ depauperarat, deponitur a balliva, et unus de custodibus reginæ Scotorum constitutus, ibi [6] tantum tirannizavit, ut ipsius impetus nobiles Scociæ non poterant tolerare, et amoverunt eum. Ipse autem ad servitium Edwardi se transtulit, in quo servitio multos regi et Edwardo, sicut dicetur in sequentibus, suscitavit inimicos. Hunc nutrierat et exaltaverat Robertus Passelewe, sed postea, more cuculi, nutritus nutrientem supplantavit. Eodemque anno

Marriage of his daughter to the king of Scotland, and guardians appointed.
The earl of Leicester resigns the government of Gascony.
Beneficed persons compelled to take orders.
Success of Conrad against the pope.
Death of Robert Passelewe.
Peace made between the abbat of Westminster and his convent.
Death of king Alphonso.
Gascony given to prince Edward.
Deaths of notable persons.
Church of Ely dedicated.
Great council held at London.
The citizens taxed.
Geoffrey de Langeley appointed one of the guardians of the queen of Scots.

[1] *inter*] Supplied from *Hist. Angl.*, iii. 121.

[2] *de Ripariis*] In *Hist. Angl.* the reading is *de Insula*, and so in the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 848. These words are omitted in *Flores Historiarum*, as superfluous.

[3] *appellare*] apellare, MS.

[4] *et*] Supplied from *Flores Hist.*

[5] *nobiles*] nobile, MS.

[6] *ibi*] et ibi, MS.

venit magister Albertus, domini papæ clericus specialis et notarius, offerre comiti Ricardo regnum Apuliæ. Sed cum comes exigisset securitatem, videlicet quædam castra domini papæ et obsides, ut esset in possessione et aliqua saltem securitate de papali promisso, respondit Albertus se papam super hoc convenire. Albertus interim multa sibi beneficia adquisivit,[1] quibus adquisitis, transalpinavit. Et audita dominus papa comitis responsione, noluit aliquod[2] propositum continuare de præmissis. Eodem tempore venit in Angliam archiepiscopus Cantuariensis B[onifacius], cujus adventus paucos prælatos et multo pauciores laicos, quod inviti dicimus, lætificavit. Ortum est grave scandalum et discordia hostilis inter archiepiscopum Cantuariensem et electum Wintoniensem, eo quod electus officialem archiepiscopi, magistrum videlicet Eustachium, fecit capi violenter in ecclesia de Lamhet, cum quodam capellano, et indecenter nimis tractari et abduci. Vigilanter igitur procurantibus rege pro fratre suo Æ[thelmaro], et regina pro avunculo suo archiepiscopo, vix tandem tanta est sedata perturbatio. Eodemque anno, prima Dominica Adventus Domini, obiit dominarum domina secularium Blanchia, post multas quas pro filiis suis sustinuerat tribulationes. Johannes Mansel, domini regis clericus et consiliarius specialis, industria sua promerente, ad inæstimabiles redditus provehitur et possessiones. Ipso quoque anno episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus fecit diligenter computari alienorum redditus in Anglia, per istum papam, videlicet Innocentium IIII. promotorum; et inventum est, quod[3] nunquam aliquis prædecessorum suorum in triplo aliquos sui generis vel patriæ tot ditaverit. Temporibus quoque sub eisdem permisit rex astute nimis viros religiosos affligi a nobilibus viris, qui canibus venaticis utebantur, eorum vicinis, adeo ut eorum libertates enervarentur, et culturæ conculcarentur.[4]

A.D. 1252. Offer of the kingdom of Apulia to earl Richard.

Return of the abp. of Canterbury.

Quarrel between him and the bp. elect of Winchester.

1 Dec. Death of queen Blanche of France.

Wealth of John Mansel.

Estimate made of the benefices bestowed on foreigners.

The clergy oppressed by the nobles.

Fol. 87 b. *Facta magnatum et casus varii breviter compositi de anno isto, scilicet* M°.CC°.LIII°.

M°.CC°.LIII°. Rex H[enricus] III., anno regni sui xxxvii°., fuit in Natali Domini apud Wyntoniam; cui, juxta ritum tantæ solempnitatis, cives fecerunt Wyntonienses xenium nobilissimum. Quos idem rex nuper obligaverat ad ducentas marcas

Henry at Winchester.

[1] *adquisivit*] adquisit, MS.

[2] *aliquod*] On an erasure.

[3] *et . . quod*] Interlined.

[4] Here ends the handwriting of Matthew Paris; and the Continuation is written by the same contemporary hand which has completed the *Historia Anglorum*. See Preface, vol. i. p. li.

A.D. 1253. eidem in brevi persolvendas. Quod quidem festum non modicum obscuraverat discordia præmota inter archiepiscopum Cantuariensem et electum Wyntoniensem, regem tunc procurantem, pro injuria quadam magistro Eustachio de Len, officiali suo, facta per eundem electum, et ob hoc excommunicationis sententia innodatum. Quam tamen commotionem, rege et regina procurantibus, in brevi commutaverunt in pacem. Convocati tunc temporis in præsentia regis prælati Angliæ, et instanter petentes cartas suorum custodiri prædecessorum, regis super hoc quamcitius optinuerunt assensum; et, data super hoc sententia, candelis accensis, hoc manifestarunt in publicum. Unde gratanter annuerunt contributionem, quam ab eis rex petierat, non modicam. Frater quidam de Ordine Prædicatorum, Petrus nomine, a Mediolanensibus, pro assertione veritatis et fidei defensione, eorum vitia, errores et hæreses redarguens, latenter interemptus est. Quem dominus papa A[lexander] miraculorum indiciis manifestatum, martirem duxit magnifice canonizandum. Civis quidam Bononiensis, Brancaleo nomine, creatus est in senatorem Romanum. Qui, potestate suscepta, justitiam in omnibus terribilem exercuit, et, suspensis malefactoribus, commissam sibi urbem et populum laudabiliter gubernavit. Judæi non pauci effugantur a Francia, transmisso super hoc a Terra Sancta regis Francorum mandato. Improperabant enim eidem Sarraceni, quod injuste eos Christiani impugnant, cum falsos Judæos, Christi sui peremptores, inter se degere permittant; justum enim esset eos prius ejicere,[1] et postea ad alios sibi rebelles festinare. Obiit abbas Sancti Augustini,[2] et eorum præcentor eidem eligitur subrogari. Comitis vero Gloverniæ Ricardi filius primogenitus desponsavit neptem regis Angliæ, filiam scilicet Guidonis, comitis Engolismi, de Pictavia oriundam, ætate puerilem[3] immo infantulam, procurante hoc rege, et pro maritagio usque ad v^que. M̃. marcarum regaliter largiente. Comes Legrecestriæ S[imon] resignavit custodiam Wasconiæ, et eam sibi proposuit rex Hispaniæ vendicare, habens de donatione ejus antiquam cartam regis H[enrici] II. sufficientem, ac regum Ricardi et Johannis confirmationem. Hoc cum audisset rex, vehementer doluit prædictum comitem S[imonem] ab hujusmodi custodia summotum, quippe quia vir potens est et martius, sapiens, et defensor tutissimus, eumque studuit admonere restituendum;[4] unde comes clam secessit in Fran-

The king promises to observe the ancient charters, and receives an aid from the clergy.

Peter, Friar Preacher of Milan, canonized.

Brancaleo, senator of Rome.

The Jews expelled from France.

Death of the abbat of St. Augustine.

Marriage of the king's niece.

Gascony claimed by the king of Spain.

The earl of Leicester retires to France.

[1] *ejicere*] eicere, MS.

[2] Robert de Battel. In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier, reversed.

[3] *puerilem*] puerulam, *Flores Hist.*; parvulam, MS. Arund. 96.

[4] *admonere restituendum*] admotum restituere, *Flores Hist.*

ciam, onus hujus declinans iterum resumendum. Quem Franci non modice affectabant senescallum Franciæ habere, sed minime valuerunt eum ad consensum inflectere. Comes Glovernise Ricardus et Willelmus de Valencia transfretarunt,[1] principaliter ut matrimonium prædictum ad effectum perducerent, secundario, ut in quodam hastiludio tunc temporis acclamato[2] trans mare, se suasque vires et audaciam, et equorum suorum ausu probarent temerario celeritatem. Qui prostrati, spoliati et baculati, fomentis et balneis indiguerunt diuturnis. Tunc temporis, quarta die visa est luna, antequam esset pronunciata.[3] Juvenes Londonienses, statuto pavone pro bravio, ad quintenam vires suas et equorum cursus sunt experti. Quidam autem tirones de familia regis super hoc indignantes, conviciabantur eisdem, eis se in certamine opponentes; quos ipsi Londonienses cum fragmentis[4] hastarum rubricatos[5] et liventes[6] ab equis suis dederunt præcipites, et fugaverunt fugientes. Querelis igitur super hoc regi multiplicatis, rex ad solitam se convertens ultionem, magnam a Lundonensibus petivit pecuniam. Post paucos dies auditum est, quod Regula in Wasconia, cum Sancto Milione et multa alia castra capta sunt et amissa, et strages hominum est non minima. Rex igitur non mediocriter formidans, ne per tales amissiones tota Wasconia pateret discrimini, constituit, ut missis brevibus per singulos comitatus clamaretur, ut cujuslibet arma debita et consueta censerentur, et, si sufficientia essent, monstrarentur, ut scilicet, si necesse incumberet, quilibet ad prœliandum paratus existeret; præterea,[7] ut quicunque xv. libratas terræ haberet, miles fieret.[8] Similiter, ut
fol. 88 *a*. excubantes . . . . custodirent. Providit insuper, ut si quis a
H. A. iii. 134. latrone vel ab aliis obiter dampnificaretur . . . satisfacerent,[9] et malefactores insequentes, ab eisdem patriam mundarent. Quæ quia sine communi barnagii assensu provisa sunt, constitui generaliter minime valuerunt. Obiit magister Ricardus
H. A. iii. 135. de Wiz, episcopus Cicestrensis,[10] iiii°. nonas Aprilis, vir . . . sanctitatis, et quandoque beati Edmundi . . . specialis. Hujus autem Ricardi assertionibus et fratris Roberti Bacun, de

Marginal notes: A.D. 1258. — The earl of Gloucester and Will. de Valence are worsted in a tournament. — The citizens of London fined, on account of indignities offered to the royal household. — Affairs in Gascony. — Writs issued for a return of persons capable of bearing arms. — 2 April. Death of the bp. of Chichester.

---

[1] *transfretarunt*] transfetarunt, MS.

[2] *acclamato*] acclamatum, MS.

[3] *pronunciata*] prima pronunciata, *Flores Hist.*

[4] *fragmentis*] fracmentis, MS.

[5] *rubricatos*] Originally written *rubricantes*, and so in *Flores Hist.*

[6] *liventes*] laniantes, *Flores Hist.*

[7] *præterea*] videret præterea, *Flores Hist.*

[8] *fieret*] efficeretur, *Flores Hist.*

[9] *satisfacerent*] sat'facerent, MS.

[10] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier, reversed.

A.D. 1253.

The Life of St. Edmund written by Matthew Paris.

Disturbances in Gascony.

Ordine Prædicatorum, certificatus frater Matheus Parisiensis, memorati sancti Edmundi vitam a fidedignis sibi relatam diligenter perscripsit. Post recessum comitis S[imonis] de Wasconia, cœperunt Wasconenses bella ad invicem movere, alter alterius castra invadere, homines captivare, ædificia in favillas redigere. Ex quibus primus fuit Gasto, dominus Biarre et Peregoti, qui se transtulit ad regem Hispaniæ, ut inde plus regem Angliæ infestaret. Et sic hostes regis in Wasconia animavit, ita ut Burdegalis, quæ toti Wasconiæ victualia consuevit ministrare, cœpit egere.

Privileges granted to Waltham abbey.

Dominus rex concessit ecclesiæ de Wautham, et confirmavit, ut quotiescunque domum illam contigerit vacare, conventus tam de baronia quam de possessionibus ecclesiæ liberam habeat pro voluntate sua disponendi facultatem. Duo insuper mercata et alia bona eidem contulit, et super hiis cartam suam, licet prius optentam, iterum confecit.

The pope returns to Rome.

Cum ecclesia Romana sui præsulis et pastoris diutius viduaretur præsentia, rogatus est dominus papa solempniter a Romanis ut Romam rediret, gregem suum more pastoris minaturus.[1] Qui tamen retardans, iterum vocatus est et solempnius, hoc adjuncto, ut scilicet tunc veniret aut nunquam. Quo audito, dominus papa de mora timens trahere periculum, a Perusio recedens, Romam usque properavit. Et licet in multa tenebatur pecunia eisdem, quam pro eo contra Fredericum expenderant, gaudenter tamen et reverenter ab omnibus susceptus est.

Parliament assembled, and the observance of the charters and liberties demanded.

In quindena Paschæ, adunato magno parlamento, petierunt prælati fere omnes insimul congregati, ut dominus rex cartas conservans et libertates, quas sæpius promiserat, sanctam insuper ecclesiam permitteret suis gaudere libertatibus, maxime de electionibus prælatorum tam cathedralium ecclesiarum quam conventualium. Quæ omnia rex se indempniter observaturum protestans, eorumdem una cum aliis magnatibus, ad suæ præcipue peregrinationis subsidium, postulatum de contributione reportavit assensum.

Grant of a tenth, and scutage.

Concessa est igitur regi decima pars proventuum ecclesiasticorum per triennium. A militibus vero scutagium illo anno, scilicet ad scutum tres marcæ. Rex autem bona fide promisit se omnia inviolabiliter observaturum, quæ et alias multotiens juraverat, et pater suus Johannes primo affirmabat. Et ut certiores fierent de promisso, præcepit super hoc in præsentia sua sententiam proferri in publico.[2] Quod et factum est, hoc modo.

---

[1] *minaturus*] gubernaturus, *Flores Hist.*

[2] *publico*] publicum, *Hist. Angl.* and *Flores*

A.D. 1253.

Magnates tunc præsentes.[1]

H. A. iii. 137. Tertio igitur die Maii, in majori aula . . . . tulimus, sub hac forma:

Forma sententiæ tunc prolatæ.

fol. 88 *b*. H. A. iii. 137, 138. Auctoritate Dei omnipotentis . . . . præsentibus duximus apponenda.

Quo facto, prolata fuit in medium carta patris sui J[ohannis], in qua iterum concessit idem J[ohannes] rex, mera voluntate; unde recitari fecerunt libertates prædictas. Dum autem rex memoratam sententiam audisset, tenuit manum suam ad pectus suum sereno vultu et voluntario; et in fine, projectis candelis et fumigantibus, dixerunt singuli, "Sic extinguantur[2] et fœteant in inferno omnes hujus sententiæ incursores." Et respondit rex cum omnibus astantibus, "Amen! Amen!" Episcopus autem Lincolniensis Robertus, hujus rei suspicans instabilitatem, fecit ilico per totam diocesim Lincolniensem memoratam renovari sententiam. Tunc temporis Burdegalenses significarunt regi, quod nisi festinanter . . . amissurus; addentes, quod per tirannidem . . . perdidisset. Quod falsum est, quia multo[3] plures rebelles et fortiores edomitos regis subdiderat dominationi. Fecit igitur rex acclamari voce præconia in Wasconia, quod . . . obediret; addens, quod propter oppressiones et querelas eorum deposuit prædictum comitem, et cartam, quam de optinenda Wasconia per triennium sequens præfecerat eidem, pretio redemit. Quæ Wasconibus quamplurimum placuerant, volentibus ex quo sciebant ejus dominationem expirasse, se regi inimicos facilius exhibere. Ernaldus de Bosco miles constitutus est prothoforestarius, loco Roberti Passelewe,[4] scilicet in partibus australibus Angliæ, usque ad fluvium qui dicitur Trenta; Johannes vero de Lexintona miles, a dicto flumine usque ad regnum Scociæ, loco Galfridi de Langeleia. Miracula manifesta celebrantur ad tumbam Ricardi, episcopi Cicestrensis, cujus corpus exanimatum inventum . . . constrictum. Eligitur magister Johannes Clippinge in episcopum Cicestrensem, ejusdem ecclesiæ canonicus. Emanarunt apostolica mandata per circuitum, ut quilibet episcopus, tam transmarinus quam cismarinus, districte visitaret monachos omnes, tam exemptos

[Margin: Behaviour of the king when the sentence of excommunication was pronounced.]
[Margin: The bp. of Lincoln causes it to be read in his diocese.]
[Margin: H. A. iii. 139.]
[Margin: Ibid. iii. 138.]
[Margin: Ernald de Bosco and John de Lexintone made Grand-Foresters.]
[Margin: Miracles at the tomb of Richard, bishop of Chichester.]
[Margin: Ibid. iii. 139.]
[Margin: Election of John Clippinge as bp.]
[Margin: Papal mandate for the]

[1] *Magnates . . . præsentes*] Instead of these words, in *Flores Hist.* the following rubric is inserted: *Sententia excommunicationis lata contra transgressores libertatis ecclesiæ.*

[2] *extinguantur*] extingantur, MS.

[3] *multo*] multotiens, *Flores Hist.*

[4] *Passelewe*] Passeue, MS.

A.D. 1253. quam non exemptos, in sua diocesi constitutos, et eosdem compelleret ad quosdam articulos observandos, qui nec regulæ sancti Benedicti pertinent, nec de ejus substantia existunt. Unde Franciæ monachi pacem sibi cogitantes prævidere, datis iiii. milibus librarum Turonensium domino papæ, hujusmodi impetum compescuerunt. Abbas similiter Sancti Albani, cum ceteris paribus suis et eorum conventibus, ad præsentiam domini papæ appellarunt quamcitius. Circa kalendas Junii, rex certificatus de desolatione Wasconiæ, milites omnes per Angliam sibi servitium militare debentes fecit summoneri, ut in octavis Trinitatis parati essent apud Portesmue, in Wasconiam cum rege transfretaturi, et eam ad dominium suum et pacem potenter revocaturi. Captis interim usque ad mille navibus, earum custodes vento carentes per tres ibi menses moram protraxerunt, et rex, thesauro pro magna parte jam consumpto, a proposito est præpeditus, ita quod transitus ille Dei videretur favore destitutus. Obiit episcopus Landavensis Willelmus, cujus obitum cæcitas septennis subarravit. Comes Rogerus Bigot, marescallus Angliæ, filiam regis Scociæ, quam antea spreverat, judicio ecclesiæ salubriter eruditus, ad matrimonium libens accedens et tutus, reaccepit in uxorem. Rex autem, vento diu desiderato sibi prosperante, viij°. idus Augusti valedicens Angliæ, Neptuno se commisit, constitutis regni sui[1] custodibus Ricardo comite, fratre suo,[2] et regina; commisso eorum custodiæ Edwardo primogenito suo. Circa Assumptionem vero beatæ Mariæ applicuit rex in Wasconiam, apud Burdegalim. Occurrentes autem cives ipsum, ut decuit, reverenter susceperunt. Jussit igitur ilico . . . . confugiente, cujus se fecerat amicum, et Wasconiæ, eum, ut dicebat, contingentis, eidem promisit dominium. Audientes Franci quod rex Angliæ in Wasconiam adventasset, timentesque Pictavenses transfugium facere ad regem Angliæ, dominum eorum frugalem, manum illuc militarem destinaverunt, non permittentes eos habere custodiam vel dominium castrorum vel civitatum. Et sic, licet inviti, fideles effecti, nec Francis nocuerunt, nec Anglis prodesse potuerunt. Obiit Thomas de Hertfordia, archidiaconus Northamhumbriæ,[3] in octavis sancti Laurentii, fine sancto et beato. Hic quandoque beati Edmundi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, discipulus in scola, et socius extitit familiaris; unde factus ei usque ad mortem simillimus,[4] sicut et magis-

Visitation of the Benedictine monasteries.

Summons issued to the military retainers, to embark for Gascony.

Death of the bp. of Llandaff.

Marriage of Roger Bigod to the daughter of the king of Scotland.

fol. 89 *a*.

The king, embarks, and lands at Bordeaux.

H. A. iii. 140.

The French send forces to Poitou.

Death of Thomas of Hertford, archdeacon of Northumberland.

[1] *sui*] su, MS.

[2] *suo*] sue, MS.

[3] *Northamhumbriæ*] Northambrie, MS.

[4] *simillimus*] similimus, MS.

ter Ricardus, postea factus episcopus Cicestrensis, ejusdem sequi nitebatur vestigia. Hic quia pauperum fuerat amator, cuidam pauperrimæ domui fratrum, scilicet de Monte Carmeli, corpus suum delegavit. Hunc sanctum archidiaconum Thomam, sicut et episcopum Cicestrensem Ricardum, licet non Romæ canonizentur, sancti Edmundi contubernio credimus indubitanter sociari. Hos igitur tres beátos, Edmundum, Ricardum et Thomam, Dei confessores, Anglia in præsenti produxit gloriosos. Miles quidam de electioribus regis Francorum, existentis tunc in Terra Sancta, non mediocriter accensus de filio suo, milite strenuissimo, quem idem rex, ipso nesciente, fecit suspendi pro transgressione quadam, de quo etiam idem rex fideliter promisit patri suo præbere remedium, cuidam se Soldano, Christianis derelictis, transtulit, et de amico factus est eis inimicus, et paganis additus factus est apostata formidabilis. Cum dominus papa Innocentius IIII. significasset per apostolica scripta episcopo Lincolniensi Roberto, sicut et multis aliis pluries fecerat, præcipiens ut aliquid faceret, quod eidem episcopo videbatur injustum et rationi dissonum, rescripsit idem episcopus domino papæ in hæc verba:

A.D. 1253.

Story of a French knight, who deserted to the Soldan.

Letter of Robert, bp. of Lincoln, to the pope, refusing to comply with the papal requisitions.

Litteræ episcopi Lincolniensis Roberti missæ Innocentio papæ.

[. A. iii. 40–144. fol. 89 *b*.]

Salutem. Noverit discretio vestra . . . .
. . . . qui est in cœlis."

Cum hæc epistola ad notitiam papalem pervenisset, ipse dominus papa valde commotus, ipsum proposuit mittentem in tantam præcipitare confusionem, ut toti mundo foret stupor et tremoris exemplum. Tandem tamen consilio saniori emollitus, sub dissimulatione permisit transire, ne majorem videretur super hoc tumultum excitare. In vigilia Assumptionis obiit venerabilis vir Ranulphus, abbas Rameseiæ, domum suum et gregem tam in spiritualibus quam temporalibus relinquens abundantem. Rex nuncios suos solempnes destinavit ad regem Hispaniæ, scilicet episcopum Bathoniensem et Johannem Mansel, clericum suum specialem, postulans sororem suam Edwardo, filio suo primogenito et heredi regni Angliæ legitimo matrimonialiter copulari; et ut ipse rex eundem E[dwardum] cingulo donaret militari. Episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus ægritudinis lecto detentus, in spiritu cognoscens tribulationes ecclesiæ in proximo imminere, recitansque coram clericis suis quædam facta Romanæ curiæ, graviter redarguit tam fratres Prædicatores quam Minores, dicens quod eorum Ordo ideo in

Wrath of the pope, on the receipt of the letter.

14 Aug. Death of the abbat of Ramsey.

The sister of the king of Spain demanded in marriage for prince Edward.

The bp. of Lincoln on his death-bed throws blame on

A.D. 1253. the Mendicant Orders.

paupertate voluntaria, id est, spiritus constituitur, ut liberius magnatum error ab eisdem reprehendatur. Quia,

"Cantabit vacuus coram latrone viator." [1]

In hoc autem, quod ipsi peccata magnatum audacter non redarguunt, eosdem hæreticos dixit manifestos. Et addidit, "Hæresis est sententia . . . . . electio est Latine. Dare autem curam . . . . . sigillata vel bullata. Et est pertinaciter . . . . . fautor esse erroris, secundum . . . obviare." Cum hæc et alia multa lugubria querula voce de statu ecclesiæ proposuisset episcopus memoratus, ab hujus mundi exilio, quem semper exosum habuit, in nocte sancti Dionisii apud Bugedene, manerium suum, feliciter migravit.[2] In eadem vero nocte, ut dicitur, episcopus Londoniensis Fulco, cum esset prope illud manerium, audivit signum dulcissimum in sullimi pulsari. Fratres etiam quidam Minores versus illum locum properantes, illius mortis ignari, classicum melicum in sullimi audierunt campanarum, inter quas unum signum dulcissimum articulatim audierunt præelectum. Tandem vero cognoverunt utrique illam visionis seu auditionis horam extitisse, in qua idem sanctus episcopus feliciter migravit a corpore. Obiit Willelmus de Wescy, miles quidam de nobilioribus baronibus borealium partium Angliæ, rege tunc in Wasconia existente, et eandem custodiam alienigenæ cuidam committente. Defuncto, ut prædictum est, episcopo Lincolniensi Roberto, orta est discordia inter archiepiscopum Cantuariensem et canonicos Lincolnienses. Vendicabat . . . in eodem episcopatu tunc vacante. Canonici vero cum multis clericis, jus hujusmodi non ignorantibus, contradixerunt; unde . . . excommunicavit. Sed magister Willelmus Lupus ei in faciem contradicens, pro omnibus ad sedem apostolicam appellavit. Alienora, regina Angliæ, peperit filiam Londoniis, die sanctæ Katerinæ; quæ ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi baptizata, a die nativitatis suæ nomen sortita est Katerina. Parisius orta est discordia sumptuosa inter scolares et fratres Prædicatores. Noluerunt enim ipsi fratres approbatis consuetudinibus et juribus universitatis subjacere, sed pro voluntate propria regere et cessare, aliaque communitati contraria perpetrare. Unde utrobique Roma petita, consumpta pecunia et labore, vix est pax reformata. In ecclesia vero Lincolniensi cumulantur diatim miracula miraculis. Operante enim Domino pro præ-

Margin notes: *Diffinitio hæresis extracta a Græco.* — H. A. ii 145. — Ibid. iii. 146. — fol. 90. — 9 Oct. Miraculous signs attending his death. — Death of William de Vescy. — Dispute between the abp. of Canterbury and canons of Lincoln. — Ibid. iii. 147. — Ibid. iii. 148. — 25 Nov. Birth of the princess Katherine. — Quarrel between the University of Paris and the Friars Preachers.

[1] Juv. Sat. x. 22.

[2] A mitre and crosier reversed are drawn in the margin.

dicto sancto Roberto . . . . ad beneficia fidelibus impendenda suscitantur. Hic vero Robertus, bonum habens zelum ad Deum et proximum, licet canonicos suos multum vexaverit, et in religiosos terribiliter, religiosas vero terribilius fulguraverit, confidenter tamen dico . . . excessus. Quod nunc per miracula ad tumbam ejus manifestatur choruscantia.[1]

A.D. 1253. Religious zeal of Robert, bp. of Lincoln. Miracles at his tomb.

id. iii. 9.

Incipit annus gratiæ M^us^.CC^us^.LIIII^us^. *qui est annus regni regis Henrici Tertii* XXXVIII^us^.

M°.CC°.LIIII°. Rex Henricus III., anno regni sui xxxviii°., fuit ad Natale Domini in Wasconia, apud Besaceam; ubi Wasconensibus, in vestibus duplicibus et aliis rebus desiderabilibus, pretiosa contulit donativa. Regina autem surgens a puerperio, domino suo regi de suis redditibus quingentas marcas transmisit. In crastino vero beati Thomæ martiris, Lincolnienses canonici elegerunt sibi in episcopum magistrum Henricum de Lexintona, ejusdem ecclesiæ decanum. Qui transfretans, ut regi præsentaretur, coram eo formidabat apparere, quia ipsum et totum capitulum rex precibus sollicitaverat ut episcopum Herefordensem eligerent, quod tamen omnes renuebant; verumtamen rex non inveniens in dicto electo causam reprobationis, ipsum admisit. Circa idem tempus vocaverat rex reginam et primogenitum suum et heredem Edwardum, ut ad eum venire quamtocius non omittant, ut ad effectum duceretur, quod prælocutum est de matrimonio inter ipsum et regem Hispaniæ contrahendo. Venerunt in Franciam quidam Sarraceni ad fidem Christi conversi, quorum quidam erant baptizati, quidam vero baptizandi. Et hoc fuit eorum causa conversionis. Viderant enim quondam regem miraculose a manibus potentissimi Babiloniæ Soldani liberatum, maximam insuper regis in adversitate patientiam, in proposito inflexibilem constantiam, et quod, post captionem suam, moram continuavit, castra firmavit, civitates contra Dei sui hostes communivit; quod pro amore Dei sui regnum suum deseruerit, se maris, bellorum et alienorum regnorum periculis expositurus, pro animabus infidelium
fol. 90 *b.* lucrandis laboravit. Orthodoxorum insuper informatione didicerant, quod Machometi lex spurcissima animarum est intoxicativa. Attulerant autem regis Francorum litteras patentes, ut de elemosinis regis sustentarentur, donec ipse veniret in propias partes, eis plenius provisurus. In Septuagesima vero 8 Feb.

Henry at Bazas, and distributes gifts to the Gascons.

Henry de Lexingtone elected bp. of Lincoln.

The queen and prince Edward are sent for by the king.

Arrival of some converted Saracens in France.

[1] With this year ends the text of the *Historia Anglorum.*

A.D. 1254.

Some ships come to Berwick, from an unknown country.

applicuerunt naves quædam barbarorum, rabie ventorum agitatæ, magnæ quidem et elegantes, quibus non sunt visæ penes nos consimiles, armamentis navalibus et bellicis, victualibusque omnimodis communitæ. Et appulsæ sunt non longe a Berewico. Et cum interrogarentur, quinam essent? noluerunt vel forte nescierunt intelligibiliter intimare, qui, cur, unde, vel qualiter advenissent. Nec linguam eorum aliquis ex ballivis intellexit, unde permissæ sunt in pace recedere. Visæ sunt etiam aliæ tales naves supra mare.

Attempt of Gaston of Bearn to occupy Bayonne.

Gasto de Biarre, congregata hostium regis multitudine, temere attemptavit civitatem Baoniæ seditiose et hostiliter intrare, eamque sibi occupare. Est autem Baonia [civitas][1] sita supra mare, secunda in tota Wasconia. Sed plerique de civibus quosdam admittentes de hostibus regis, quia et ipsi eum oderant, comprehensi sunt per regis fideles, et cum aliis proditoribus puniti.

Death of John Hansard.

Johannes Hansard, non ultimus inter partium aquilonarium optimates, obiit in expeditione, funere geneali.[2]

Murrain among the flocks and game.

Cessante autem frigoris asperitate, quæ fere tota illa hyeme inhorruerat continuata, tanta ovium et ferarum pestis sequebatur mortifera, ut ovilia ovibus, forestæ feris vacuarentur. In copiosis autem gregibus vix pars dimidia remaneret.

Letter of pope Innocent IV. against the study of secular law and science.

Dominus papa considerans liberales artes jam in mechanicas[3] fuisse pæne conversas propter lucrum, adolescentesque ætate et scientia satis simplices cathedras ascendere indigne magistrales, ut elevati tumeant, et facti venerabiliores sine fundamento ad culmina scandant celsiora, scripsit elegantem super hoc epistolam ad omnes prælatos in regnis Franciæ, Angliæ, Scociæ, Walliæ, Hispaniæ, et Hungariæ constitutos, salubre providens consilium et conveniens[4] contra hujusmodi indiscretam præsumptionem. Quam alibi sedulus poterit indagator reperire.[5]

Robert, bp. of Lincoln, appears to pope Innocent in a vision.

Cogitante papa Innocentio, ut generaliter dicitur, ossa episcopi Lincolniensis Roberti extra ecclesiam projicere,[6] nocte sequenti apparuit ei idem episcopus, ut dicitur, pontificalibus redimitus, vultuque severo et intuitu austero ac voce terribili ipsum papam affatur, pungens ipsum in latere cuspide baculi pastoralis. Et dixit, "Senebalde papa, proposuistine ossa mea, in

[1] *civitas*] Supplied from the Greater Chronicle, p. 882.

[2] *geneali*] So also in the Greater Chronicle, and *Flores Hist.*, but corrected by the editors to *generali*, and so reads MS. Cott. Claud. E. VIII.

[3] *mechanicas*] mecanicas, MS.

[4] *conveniens*] cōnue, MS.

[5] This letter is printed by Wats, p. 190, from the "Liber Additamentorum" [MS. Cott. Nero D. I., fol. 123].

[6] *projicere*] proicere, MS., here and further on.

mei et ecclesiæ Lincolniensis opprobrium, extra ecclesiam projicere? Unde hæc tibi temeritas? Nullam potestatem in me habere te Dominus amodo patietur. Scripsi tibi in spiritu humilitatis, ut errores tuos corriges, sed tu monita salubria contempsisti. Væ qui spernis, nonne et tu sperneris?" Et sic recedens, ipsum papam quasi lancea transverberatum dereliquit, cum suspiriis ingemiscentem. Quinto kalendas Aprilis confirmatus est electus Lincolniensis, videlicet dominus Henricus de Lexintona, decanus ejusdem, ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi B[onefacio]. Mense autem sub eodem, videlicet iii°. idus Maii,[1] obiit episcopus Karleolensis Silvester,[2] supinus corruens de equo, et ossium dissolutis compagibus expirans. Eodem tempore, scilicet ix°. kalendas Aprilis, obiit comes de Ferrariis Willelmus, filius Willelmi,[3] vir discretus, et legum terræ peritus. Hic in carpento vel lectica vehi solebat, et dum quadam die vehiculum suum super quendam pontem, scilicet apud Sanctum Neotum, caderet evolutum, ipse, contritis membris, ad mortem tendebat velocius. Anno eodem confectum est crisma in ecclesia Sancti Albani a venerabili episcopo Bangorensi Ricardo. Commissum est tunc temporis bellum cruentissimum in confinio Flandriæ et Brabanciæ inter Francos et Flandrenses, ex una parte, et comitissam Flandriæ et ejus complices, videlicet Willelmum de Hoilande, regem Alemanniæ, et multos alios magnates Braibanciæ et Alemanniæ ex altera; pro duobus filiis dictæ comitissæ de viris duobus progenitis. In quo certamine lamentabili oeciderunt bellatores strenuissimi, ita ut de una civitate Flandriæ jacerunt ad decem milia interempti. Tandem cessit victoria Willelmo de Hoilande, regi memorato, et Alemannis. Franci autem victi, vulnerati, et pro majori parte trucidati, deteriorem calculum subierunt. In abissum igitur desperationis et desolationis Franci præcipitati, significabant domino regi Francorum, in partibus adhuc transmarinis commoranti post redemptionem suam, ut ad propria quamtocius rediro properaret.

A.D. 1254.

28 March. Confirmation of the bp. elect of Lincoln.

Deaths of the bp. of Carlisle, and of the earl of Ferrers.

Chrism made at St. Alban's by the bp. of Bangor.

Great battle in Flanders.

The French send to Louis to return quickly

[1] *iii. idus Maii*] So also the Greater Chronicle, p. 884, and *Flores Hist.*, but since they all agree in stating the bishop's death "mense sub eodem," there is probably some error in the date. The Annals of Burton, p. 317, ed. Luard, date his death ". . . . kal. Aprilis," which would authorize us also to place the bishop's decease in March.

[2] In the margin is drawn a crosier reversed.

[3] In the lower margin is drawn a shield of arms reversed, *viz.*, vaire or and gules; and beneath is written, "¶ *Scutum comitis de Ferrariis.*"

A.D. 1254. from Palestine. John, prior of Newburgh, writes an account of these events.

Addentes, qualiter corona Franciæ titubaret[1] per superbiam muliebrem, comitissæ scilicet Flandriæ, quæ duobus innitens filiis et duobus viris, totum regnum Galliæ replevit angustiis. Ipso tempore missus erat pro negotiis regis Angliæ ad partes illas dominus J[ohannes], prior de Neuburgo. Qui super hiis casibus certificatus, hæc scripturæ plenius et processive commendabat. Captorum autem et occisorum magnatum, militum, servientium,[2] et de communiis armatorum in illo prœlio, ad plus quam centum milia dicitur numerus ascendisse. In fol. 91 a

Parliament held at London, and pecuniary aid to the king refused.

quindena Paschæ congregati magnates Angliæ ad parlamentum Londoniis, per tres fere septimanas adventum comitis Ricardi inaniter expectarunt. Quibus rex significavit, quod pecunia et viribus indigebat amplioribus. Responderunt autem omnes, quod nequaquam ad succursum domini sui regis corporaliter venire omitterent, si de hostili adventu regis Hispaniæ hoc comminantis, ut dicebant, plenius certificarentur. Mirabanturque, quod idem rex nunquam tempore quo comes Legrecestriæ Symon Wasconiæ præfuit, eam vendicavit. Unde argumentis hujusmodi, sed et per eundem comitem, qui tunc de partibus rediit transmarinis, veritatem nuncians, super hoc magnates edocti, falsum intelligentes hujusmodi esse mandatum, cum indignatione redierunt.

Money demanded from the Jews, who ask permission to leave the kingdom.

Exigente comite Ricardo non modicam pecuniam ab Judæis, ad opus regis quamplurimum indigentis, Helias de Londonia, pontifex Judæorum, respondit pro omnibus, "O domini, videmus quod dominus rex nos delere proponit de sub cœlo. Det nobis, petimus, licentiam; ecce parati sumus de regno suo exire, et recedemus irredituri." Hæc cum singultibus et lacrimis dicebat amarissimis. Unde magistratus eorum miserti, eos non permiserunt recedere.

Another battle between the French and Germans.

Irruptio alia hostilis facta est inter Francos et Alemannos. Frisones, qui neutraliter se habebant, a Willelmo de Holande hostiliter impetuntur.

17 May. Consecration of the bishop of Lincoln.

Tunc temporis, scilicet xvi. kalendas Junii, consecratus est in episcopum Lincolniensem electus Henricus de Lexintona[3] ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi B[onefacio], in partibus transmarinis.

Disturbance in the king's army, on

Cum in exercitu regis in Wasconia Walenses quidam punirentur a fratribus regis et Pictavensibus, nulla prius mota querela super hoc coram comite Herefordiæ, qui, secundum antiquum jus, constabularius esse dinoscitur regii exercitus; et super hoc idem comes querimoniam [reponens][4] coram rege, nil nisi sannas reporta-

---

[1] *titubaret*] tutubaret, MS.

[2] *servientium*] On an erasure.

[3] A crosier is drawn in the margin.

[4] *reponens*] Supplied from the Greater Chronicle, p. 887.

ret, indignantes super hoc Angli, proposuerunt in Pictavenses irruere. Rex autem pavescens, veniamque humiliter postulans, vix furorem eorum compescuit, quin sanguis latius inundaret; unde quidam magnatum videntes pacis firmitatem elongari, de regis tamen licentia, quamcitius redierunt ad propria. Revocatum est et cassatum judicium injustum, quo Henricus de la Mare, itinerans justiciarius, fecit amerciari domum Sancti Albani ad centum libras, eo quod homines abbatis non venerunt coram eo extra libertatem Sancti Albani, sicut nec debuerunt. Unde impetravit idem abbas litteras regis super hoc, regina et comite Ricardo existentibus regni custodibus, regeque agente in Wasconia. Concessum est eodem anno a rege H[enrico] III., quod monachi de Westmonasterio et eorum successores coram quibuscunque justiciariis regis habeant extractas rotulorum de amerciamentis et omnimodis finibus hominum suorum, et de catallis fugitivorum et dampnatorum eorumdem. Inde autem fuit prius carta confecta et illis concessa, anno gratiæ M°.CC°.LII°. Quo etiam anno concessum est eis, quod conventus habebit quæcunque eos contingunt, tempore vacationis. Cum Wincheliensee reginæ transfretaturæ navem paravissent sufficientem, Jeremuenses vero Edwardo multo pulcriorem, mota est inter eos discordia, ita ut, nave pulcriore confracta, nautas invadentes quosdam vulneraverunt, quosdam interemerunt. Unde querela super hoc reposita non modica, ad tantæ transgressionis ultionem unanimiter omnes intenderunt. Regina autem, hujusmodi perturbata contentione, cum ad transfretandum, paratis omnibus, et ipsa pararetur, ecce aliud mandatum regis priori contrarium advenit, ne regina transfretaret. Læsa igitur utrobique et angustiata, quid ageret, excogitat. Ad se autem conversa, a proposito statuit non differre se,[1] sed cum filiis suis et familia nobili, sub ducatu avunculi sui Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, iiii°. kalendas Junii apud Portesmue navem ascendit. Pridie autem [kalendas][2] Junii applicuit apud Burdegalim. Loco autem ipsius reginæ substitutus est regni custos Walterus de Gray, archiepiscopus Eboracensis. Illo autem anno ventus borealis continuo perflans, vernos flores et fructus per tres menses et amplius suffocavit. Circa kalendas Julii, tempore solstitiali, subita prorupit inundatio pluvialis cum grandine, qualem non prævidimus, durans per unam horam

A.D. 1254.
account of the punishment of some Welshmen.
The fine imposed on St. Alban's is remitted.
Privileges granted to the monks of Westminster.
Quarrel between the inhabitants of Winchelsea and Yarmouth.
The queen embarks at Portsmouth.
29 May.
Walter de Gray, abp. of York, appointed guardian of the kingdom.
Storms of

[1] *differre se*] se differre, MS., but marked to be transposed.

[2] *kalendas*] Omitted in MS., as also in *Flores Hist.* and Greater Chronicle, but inserted in margin of MS. Cott. Claud. E. VIII. In the Chetham MS. a later hand has inserted *nonas*, *i.e.* 4 June.

A.D. 1254. Wind and rain. Death of Henry, son of the emperor Frederic.

et amplius, abradens coopertoria domorum, et ramos dilacerans arborum. Mense Maii obiit spes Anglorum et gloria, adolescens miræ speciei et desideriorum, Henricus,[1] filius imperatoris Fretherici. Interiit autem, ut asseritur, ipso rege Conrado procurante. Quod non est credibile, nec videtur, cum idem rex post prædictum mortem nunquam ut ante vultum ostendit serenum. Sed revera quidam flagitiosus, Johannes Maurus, ipsum potionatum, et adhuc sub morte palpitantem, quodam manutergio suffocavit. Orta est gravissima dissensio inter dominum papam et Conradum, regem Siculorum. Accusavit enim eum papa in multis, de hæresi scilicet et homicidio; ille autem singulis respondit constanter inficiando. Missus est Edwardus, filius regis primogenitus, in magna pompa et apparatu ad regem Hispaniæ Amfulsum; ubi Alienoram, juvenculam, sororem ipsius regis, apud Bures desponsavit, et ab eodem cingulo donatur militari. Rediens autem Edwardus cum nuru sua ad patrem, detulit secum cartam domini regis Hispaniæ, quod quietam clamavit totam Wasconiam pro se et heredibus suis domino regi Angliæ et heredibus suis, auro bullatam. Contulit autem ilico dominus rex Angliæ filio suo prædicto et ejus uxori, Wasconiam, Hiberniam, Walliam, Bristoldum, Stanfordiam, Grantham,[2] cum aliis. Ex ipso tempore cœpit rex reditum in Angliam maturare. Compertumque est certis ratiociniis, regem per ipsam in Wasconiam transmigrationem consumpsisse in expensis vicesies et septies centum milia librarum et amplius, exceptis terris, gardis et redditibus, quos contulit alienis, et triginta milibus marcarum in fratribus suis uterinis consumptis. In Translatione sancti Benedicti venit episcopus Norwicensis ad Sanctum Albanum, ex præcepto tam papæ quam regis, ut bona omnia ecclesiæ illius, excepta baronia, decimaret, secundum quod concessum fuit regi per triennium, conditionaliter tamen ad Terræ Sanctæ subventionem peregrinanti. Convocavit igitur omnes ecclesiarum rectores et vicarios, et custodes ecclesiarum de terra Sancti Albani, ut bona eorum præstito taxerentur sacramento. Omnesque obedientiarios ejusdem monasterii fecit bona sua districte et fideliter taxare, asserens quod postmodum fieret super eandem taxationem inquisitio, cum diligenti et districta

fol. 91 *b*.

Quarrel between the pope and Conrad, king of Sicily.

Prince Edward sent to Spain to marry the king's sister.

Gascony, Ireland, and Wales granted to prince Edward.

11 July. Arrival of the bp. of Norwich at St. Alban's, to tax the property of that church.

---

[1] In the margin of the previous page is drawn his shield of arms, reversed, *viz.* gules, 3 leopards (or lions) or, impaling, or, a double-headed eagle displayed sable, both dimidiated. Beneath is written, "¶ *Scutum Henrici, filii imperatoris.*"

[2] *Grantham*] Graham, MS. and *Flores Hist.*, but corrected from the instrument in Rymer, *Fœdera*, i. 297, ed. 1816.

excussione. Monstraverat insuper autentica sua, tam papalia quam regalia, et quod invitus illa subierat gravamina. Unde novitas excrevit inaudita. Consueverunt hactenus populares prælatis decimas exhibere; nunc, ordine retrogrado et perverso, coguntur prælati decimas persolvere laicis et inviti. Circa Translationem vero prædictam, scilicet sancti Benedicti, venit dominus rex Francorum de Terra Sancta, vocantibus eum urgentissime magnatibus sui regni, ut prædictum est. Qui cum prospere applicuisset in partibus Marsiliæ, quæ non multum distant a Monte-Pessulano, ibidem paulisper quiescens commorabatur; sed, suis stimulantibus proceribus, ad Franciam venire festinabat. Quia vix breves treugas rex Alemanniæ, Willelmus prædictus, Francis concessit seu tenuit. Veniens igitur rex memoratus in propria, ilico tractavit qualiter præfatam[1] dissensionem, advocationis suæ causam, mediante justitia, pacificaret. Quinto idus Augusti obiit episcopus Elyensis Hugo,[2] quandoque abbas Sancti Edmundi, qui in utraque ecclesia circiter xl. annis Deo laudabiliter militaverat. Cujus corpus cum magna sepultum est veneratione in Eliensi ecclesia, in presbiterio nobilissimo, quod a fundamentis sumptibus propriis magnifice construxerat. In cujus obitu flos Nigrorum obiit Monachorum, quia sicut abbas abbatum in Anglia extiterat, ita et episcopus episcoporum choruscavit. In vigilia Assumptionis, circa horam primam, comitante inundatione pluviali, insonuit ictus tonitrui cum fulgure, quod cadens super turrim ecclesiæ Sancti Petri in villa Sancti Albani, et eam penetrans cum horribili fragore, materiem quernam quasi plectam[3] contorsit, et quasi in fila minuta dissipando contrivit. Eligitur magister Thomas de Veteri-Ponte in episcopum Karleolensem, licet dominus rex pro alio, scilicet priore de Neuburgo, urgentissime supplicasset. Venerunt in æstate quidam nobiles de imperio Græcorum, examito vestiti, cum equis, summariis, et familia copiosa ad curiam Romanum. Qui dominum papam aggredientes, verbis asperrimis imposuerunt ei, quod enormiter erravit in fide, et per eum omnes Latini, qui dicunt Spiritum[4] procedere a Patre et Filio. Qui tantum a Patre procedere asseritur,

A.D. 1254.

The king of France returns from Palestine.

9 Aug. Death of Hugh, bp. of Ely.

24 Aug. St. Peter's church at St. Alban's struck by lightning.

Election of the bishop of Carlisle.

Certain Greek nobles accuse the pope of false doctrine.

[1] *præfatam*] prefata, MS.

[2] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier, reversed.

[3] *materiem quernam quasi plectam*] So also in the Greater Chronicle, p. 892, and in *Flores Hist.*, but the Edd. of the latter read *maximam quercum quasi plicam*, which seems to be an arbitrary alteration of the editor.

[4] *Spiritum*] Filium, MS., but corrected from *Flores Hist.*

A.D. 1254. secundum Græcorum probationem et approbationem; et hic est error antiquus Græcorum. Aliaque inconvenientia redarguebant, quæ curia eadem evidentius exercebat. Papa autem pretiosa eis munera contulit, et sane instructos remisit. Cum magister Albertus, ad Romam reversus, responsum comitis fol. 92 a Ricardi domino papæ nunciasset, missis iterum [a][1] papa secretis nunciis ad regem Angliæ, optulit ei et concessit regnum Siciliæ et Apuliæ ad opus Edmundi, filii sui; ut videlicet ipse eas adquirere festinaret regaliter,[2] et[3] juvamen præstare, quale sine gravamine posset. Rex autem de promisso adeo exhilaratus est, ut prædictum Edmundum jam regem Siciliæ palam vocaret, credens profecto se jam subarratum de regno. Rex igitur quicquid pecuniæ habere poterat misit domino papæ, ut Conradum et omnes suos Siculos et Appulos expugnaret. Papa autem non modicum congregans[4] exercitum, et eis necessaria copiose distribuit; cumque defecissent expensæ, regi significavit. Qui mittens ei litteras patentes obligatorias, omnia promisit adquietare. Papa autem mandatis hujusmodi adquiescens, recepto ab usurariis infinito thesauro, innumeros ad exercitum suum congregavit, quorum multitudo parum papali commodo[5] vel regali profecit. Rex igitur Conradus irruptiones perpessus hostiles, comminationes, obprobria, et diffamationes, gravi cœpit dolore contabescere, et letali lecto decumbere. Dicebatque, "Væ mihi misero! ut quid me genuit pater meus? Imperium quod usque nunc floruit, modo marcescit." Maledicens igitur diei nativitatis suæ, miser migravit a corpore.[6] Papa autem hoc audiens, et ad ulteriores partes Apuliæ se transferens, totum fere regnum usurpavit. Quod videntes optimates regionis, indignati sunt; et suscitantes quendam filium Fretherici naturalem, nomine Memfredum, adhæserunt ei, facientes ei homagium.[7] Et sic factus est novissimus error pejor priore. In crastino vero Assumptionis arripuerunt iter duo monachi ecclesiæ Sancti Albani versus Romam, ad repellendum insolentiam episco-

Offer of the kingdom of Sicily made to prince Edmund.

Money is sent to the pope to assist him against Conrad.

Papal forces raised.

Death of Conrad.

The pope takes possession of Apulia, but the nobles adhere to Manfred.

26 Aug. Two monks of

[1] *a*] Omitted in MS.

[2] *regaliter*] On an erasure.

[3] *et*] Omitted in MS.

[4] *congregans*] So also in *Flores Hist.*, but we should read *congregavit*, or else omit *et* after *exercitum*.

[5] *commodo*] comodo, MS.

[6] In the lower margin of the preceding page is drawn his shield of arms and crown, both reversed, *viz.*, or, a double-headed eagle displayed sable; in the middle chief point a crescent gules for difference. Beneath is written, "¶ *Scutum Conradi, regis Siculorum.*"

[7] His shield of arms is drawn below, *viz.*, or, a double-headed eagle displayed sable, over all a fess, argent. Above is written, "¶ *Memfredus creatus est.*"

porum, qui visitationem nitebantur facere in eadem ecclesia secundum apostolica mandata, contra suorum tenorem privilegiorum, videlicet dominus W[illelmus] de Hunteduna,[1] et dominus J[ohannes] de Bolum. Eodem anno, cum hyemali tempore mare omnes terras sibi vicinas occupasset, ita quod nec fruges poterant apparere, nec arbores virere aut frondescere, adveniente tempore autumpnali, inventæ sunt omnes terræ illæ, licet diligenter cultæ, omni frugum genere carentes, salsugine maris debriatæ. Ligna quoque tam silvestria quam fructifera arefacta, solis patuerunt securibus excidenda. Unde nautæ in aquis operantes veraciter sunt experti, quod mare in illa fluctuatione, quasi de alveo suo exiens, arenas[2] in medio sui, ubi solet esse altitudo, patefecit.

A.D. 1254. St. Alban's proceed to Rome, to oppose episcopal visitation. Sterility caused by inundations of the sea.

Cum comes de Warewic, Johannes de Pleysiz, et Gilebertus de Segrave, et alii nobiles Angliæ cum eisdem, per terram proposuissent a Wasconia repatriare, venissentque ad quandam civitatem in Pictavia, quæ Pontes dicitur, occurrentibus civibus et applaudentibus, honorifice suscepti sunt. Quibus in securitate, ut putabant, epulantibus, ecce currentes cives, celata proditione inter eos composita, dixerunt eisdem, "Ecce comites vestri et familia vestra moverunt jam seditionem in civitate." Erant namque in civitate hospitati præter eos viri præclari de regno Angliæ quamplurimi. Et cum clamatum esset ad arma, reposcebant arma sua, hospitibus prius tradita, sibi liberari. Ipsi noluerunt, sed, ut provisum fuit, ipsa retinuerunt. Irruerunt igitur in eos cives armati, et immisericorditer captos custodiæ manciparunt carcerali, nec eis valuerunt litteræ regis Francorum de salvo progressu. Rex autem, hoc audiens, scripsit pro eis civibus eisdem, sed ejus contempserunt mandatum. Obiit Willelmus de Cantilupo,[3] juvenis elegans et dives, qui jam tertius fuit Canteluporum qui infra paucos annos de medio sunt sublati. In festo sancti Edwardi emanavit breve inauditum a cancellaria regis, ut inquiratur in maneriis religiosorum, quot sint carucæ propriæ, et quot consuetudinariæ; et si possint unam carucam facere, vel majus vel minus; similiter de precariis. Item, cujus æstimationis sint[4] quælibet per se communibus annis, deductis expensis. Item, cujus æstimationis sint servitia rusticorum. Item, qui et quanti sint redditus eorum. Et ut hæc inquisitio fiat per

Some English nobles seized and imprisoned at Pons, in Poitou.

Death of William de Cantelupe. 13 Oct.

Writs issued for inquiry into the manors of the Religious Orders.

---

[1] *Hunteduna*] In the Greater Chronicle, p. 894, is added, "prior de Haethfeld."

[2] *arenas*] harenas, MS.

[3] In the margin is drawn his shield of arms reversed, *viz.*, gules, 3 fleurs-de-lis or, and beneath is written, "¶ *Obiit Willelmus de Ca[ntelupo]*."

[4] *sint*] sit, MS.

A.D. 1254. iiii^or^. viros religiosorum fideles, et præpositum loci in singulis maneriis. Supplevit[1] autem tunc officium cancellarii magister Willelmus de Kilkenny modeste et laudabiliter, qui et cancellarius appellatus est. Non multo post electus est idem magister Willelmus in episcopum Elyensem.[2] Circa eosdem dies obierunt tres abbates in Marisco, videlicet de Croylande, de Thorney, et bonus abbas de Rameysey, scilicet Willelmus de Hacholt, xvi. kalendas Novembris.[3] Rex Francorum, ad propria reversus, nullam admittere voluit consolationem, sed, oculis in terram defixis, cum summa tristitia et crebris suspiriis imaginabatur[4] captionem suam, et per eam Christianitatis generalem confusionem. Tandem quidam episcopus sanctus consolans eum, ait, "Cave, domine, ne in tale tædium et tristitiam præcipiteris; maximum est enim peccatum, quia Sancto Spiritui procedit in præjudicium. Reduc ante oculos patientiam Job, tolerantiam Eustachii, et sic de aliis." Cui rex, "Si solus obprobrium paterer et adversitatem, et non redundarent peccata mea in ecclesiam[5] universalem, æquanimiter[6] sustinerem." Decantata igitur missa in honore Sancti Spiritus, per Dei gratiam monita admisit rex consolationis. Rex quoque Angliæ, omnimoda pace composita cum rege Hispaniæ, reditum[7] suum in Angliam maturavit. Qui, licentia de rege Francorum optenta, per terram magis elegit remeare. Cupiens insuper regnum visitare Francorum, missis nunciis ad regem, licentiam impetravit transeundi. Quod audiens comitissa Cornubiæ, quod rex Angliæ simul cum regina, sorore sua, foret transiturus per regnum Franciæ, et quod regina Francorum, altera soror ejus, venientibus occurseret, ex indultu viri sui, scilicet comitis Ricardi, ut sorores[8] visitaret, multo stipata comitatu transfretavit. Electus interim Wintoniensis Æthelmarus monachos suos miserabiliter oppressit, ita ut aliqui eorum, mentis amaritudine fatigati, nunquam postea respirarent. Conventus igitur diverticula quærens tutiora, dispersus est ad diversas domus Nigri Ordinis, gratia perendinandi; rex autem improperans ei super hoc, quod ingratus dedecus reddidit pro honore, pro beneficio malitiam rependendo. Electus autem, mandatis hujusmodi non obtemperans, loco eorum qui recesserant, indignos cucullavit.[9] Priore autem Romam adeunte,

William de Kilkenny, elected bp. of Ely.

Deaths of three abbats.

17 Oct.

The king of France on his return refuses all consolation.

Henry obtains leave to return home through France.

The countess of Cornwall crosses over to meet her sisters.

Oppression of the monks of Winchester by the bp. elect.

fol. 92 *b*

[1] *Supplevit*] Suplevit, MS.

[2] A mitre and crosier are drawn below.

[3] In the margin are drawn three crosiers joined, reversed.

[4] *imaginabatur*] ymaginabatur, MS.

[5] *ecclesiam*] Repeated superfluously after *universalem*.

[6] *æquanimiter*] hæc æquanimiter, *Flores Hist.*

[7] *reditum*] riditum, MS.

[8] *sorores*] sororet, MS.

[9] *cucullavit*] cuculavit, MS.

prior novus per electum intruditur, qui omni perturbatione in eos, pro electi voluntate, fruebatur. Circa festum sancti Nicholai obiit papa Innocentius IIII^us.[1] apud Neapolim, duplici dolore sauciatus. Postquam enim eum episcopus Lincolniensis Robertus cuspide baculi pupugerat, languore continuo laborabat; et postquam exercitus suus dissipatus est et victus, ipse vix postea remanserat semivivus. Eadem vero septimana facta est visio quædam in sompnis cuidam cardinali de eo, quod coram quodam judice[2] sedente pro tribunali incurvatus idem papa, graviter accusatus est a quadam matrona nobilissima; unde ipse, veniam super hoc deprecans, villicationis suæ mercedem sortitus est finalem. Hanc vero visitationem[3] plenius narravit evigilans, et publica facta est in partibus illis. Successit autem ei alius vir, satis benignus et bene religiosus, episcopus videlicet Hostiensis, nepos Gregorii papæ; vocatus est autem Alexander IIII^us.[4] In principio autem creationis suæ scripsit cunctis ecclesiarum prælatis, postulans humiliter ut orarent pro ipso, ut Dominus daret ei potestatem, gratiam, et voluntatem ecclesiam Dei congrue gubernare, et vicarius Dei et Petri successor competenter appellari. Hic nempe, quorumdam consilio et persuasu, prædecessoris sui Innocentii guerram inchoatam contra Frethericales, et præcipue Memfredum, filium Fretherici naturalem, continuavit; et ne rex Angliæ de spe fraudaretur concepta, de promissione sibi facta de regno Siciliæ. Tunc temporis veniens rex Angliæ ad nobilem domum sanctimonialium, videlicet Fontem-Ebraudi, fecit transferri corpus matris suæ Isabellæ in ecclesiam, et ibi sepeliri. Similiter veniens apud Pontiniacum infirmatus, ad feretrum beati Edmundi oravit, et sanitatem recepit. Quo in Franciam properante, jussit rex Francorum magnatibus terræ et civibus civitatum, per quas idem rex foret transiturus, ut, omnibus semotis offendiculis, omnia ornamentis redimirent, et ei obviantes et obsequentes reverenter susciperent. Rex autem idem occurrit ei apud Carnotum. Jussit insuper idem rex, omnia[5] mensæ necessaria de sumptibus suis dicto regi, dum esset in regno suo, exhiberi; quod rex Angliæ in parte acceptavit. Habuit enim in comitatu suo M̄. equos pulcherrimos,[6] exceptis

A.D. 1254. 6 Dec. Death of pope Innocent IV.

Vision respecting him.

Alexander IV. pope.

He continues the war against Manfred.

Henry causes his mother's remains to be transferred to the church at Fontevraud.

He recovers from sickness at Pontiguy.

His honourable reception in France.

[1] In the lower margin are drawn a papal tiara and cross, reversed, with these words, "*Obiit papa Innocentius IIIIus.*"

[2] *coram quodam judice*] In the Greater Chronicle, p. 897, we read, *coram Majestate Domini.*

[3] *visitationem*] visionem, Greater Chronicle and *Flores Hist.*

[4] Beneath are drawn a papal tiara and cross, erect, with the words, "*Creatus est Alexander IIIIus.*"

[5] *omnia*] ut omnia, MS.

[6] *pulcherrimos*] pulcherimos, MS.

A.D. 1254. bigis et summariis, et exceptis propriis assessoribus. Advenerunt etiam ei obviam regina Francorum et sorores suæ, comitissæ Andegaviæ et Provinciæ,[1] ut sororibus suis, scilicet reginæ Angliæ et comitissæ Cornubiæ, simul cum rege advenientibus, occursarent. Fuerat autem mater earumdem ibi præsens, nomine Beatrix, quæ et Provinciæ comitissa vocatur. fol. 93 a

Preparations made by the scholars at Paris to receive him.

Scolares autem Parisienses, maxime nationis Anglicanæ, suspensis ad horam lectionibus, cereos emerunt vestesque festivas, et diversa quæ gaudium poterant attestari; et, præparatis cantantibus, florigeris, cum sertis et coronis et musicis instrumentis processerunt obviam venientibus. Sicque transegerunt totum diem illum et crastinum, civitate tota Parisius mirabiliter adornata, in gaudio et canticis, luminaribus et exultationibus.

Henry is lodged at the Old Temple.

Rex autem Angliæ, oblato sibi palatio regis Francorum ad hospitandum, apud Vetus Templum hospitatus est; præcipiens ilico, ut in crastino summo mane omnes domus ejusdem curiæ pauperibus replerentur reficiendis. Visitatis in crastino honorabilibus locis Parisius, epulabatur rex Francorum cum rege Angliæ.

He distributes gifts to the French nobles, and sleeps in the king's palace.

Post prandium vero transmisit idem rex Angliæ magnatibus Francigenis cuppas nobiles, et alia pretiosa donativa. Interfuerunt eidem convivio reges ii., reginæ ii., duces xxv., episcopi xii.; militum autem præclarorum numerus inæstimabilis, comitissæ vero xviii. Nocte vero illa hospitatus est rex Angliæ in palatio regis, in medio civitatis; voluit enim ita rex Francorum. Sicque fuerunt duo reges sese simul colloquiis recreantes per viii. dies.

Amount of his expenses at Paris.

Quo recedente, compertum est eum mille libras exposuisse in expensis Parisius, exceptis donativis impretiabilibus.

He comes to Boulogne. Death of Peter Chaseporc.

Veniens autem rex ad mare, nec ventum habens prosperum, apud Boloniam moratus est invitus. Ubi obiit Petrus Chaceporc, Pictavensis natione, reginæ thesaurarius, et regis clericus et consiliarius specialis.

Incipit annus gratiæ M°.CC°.LV°., *qui est annus regni regis Henrici Tertii xxxix*ᵘˢ*., in quo fuit idem rex ad Natale Domini ultra mare.*

Henry keeps Christmas at Boulogne.

M°.CC°.LV°.. Rex H[enricus] III., cum rediret de Wasconia, fuit apud Sanctam Mariam de Bolonia ad Natale Domini, anno videlicet regni sui xxxix°., ventum expectans prosperum

[1] This error occurs also in the Greater Chronicle, pp. 898, 900, and is copied in *Flores Hist.* There were only *four* sisters, and Beatrice, wife of Charles, count of Anjou, was also countess of Provence. See *ante*, p. 8, and cf. Ann. of Dunstable, p. 194.

ad transfretandum in Angliam. Fecitque honorifice sepeliri corpus prædicti Petri Chaseporc, qui in vigilia Natalis Domini interiit. Hic sescentas marcas legavit ad comparandam terram in Anglia, ut ibi ecclesia religiosorum canonicorum, de Mertuna electorum, ædificetur, et pro anima ejus et omnium fidelium ibidem Deo inperpetuum serviatur. Die vero Dominica rex transfretans, apud Doveram prospere applicuit. Cui adventanti occurrerunt comes Ricardus, frater ejus, et alii nobiles, ad hoc de longe advocati. Qui simul cum aliis prælatis munera ei optulerunt pretiosa. Cum dominus rex electionem de magistro Willelmo de Kilkenny acceptasset, de fidelitate domini Henrici de Wengham confisus, eidem commisit sigilli sui custodiam, quam dictus magister W[illelmus] electus præhabuit. Londonienses autem regi, quem sitienter desideraverant, adventanti optulerunt centum libras; nec tamen rex hoc pro gratuito reputavit, dicens hoc tanquam pensum sibi debitum persolvi. Qui cum hoc agnoscerent, vas quoddam pretiosissimum ei superaddiderunt, et sic grates reportarunt. Non diu post rex quæstionem movens de Londoniensibus, pro quodam clerico, reo mortis, et incarcerato apud Neugate et elapso, exegit ab eisdem tria milia marcarum, nomine punitionis. Qui responderunt, quod rex ipsum incarceratum concesserat episcopo, eo quod clericus esset; sed quia episcopus idoneum carcerem non habuit, supplicavit civibus, ut eidem carcerem prædictum accommodarent[1] ad præfatum clericum. Qui ibidem impositus, evasit; "unde talis evasio, deceptis custodibus episcopi, nobis non fuerat imputanda." Cumque sic se juste excusarent, remedium impetrare a rege non poterant. Obiit Hernaldus de Bosco, unus de prothoforestariis Angliæ, viii. idus Februarii. Sepultus est autem apud Bethelisdene, ante majus altare. Exegit insuper rex a Judæis viii. milia marcarum, sub pœna suspendii in brevi solvenda. Ipsi vero, petita a rege licentia, voluerunt, ut prius tactum est,[2] exire de Anglia irredituri. Quos tamen rex tradidit comiti Ricardo, ad pecuniam extorquendam puniendos; unde idem comes regi accommodavit[3] non minimam pecuniam, sub pignore auri pretioso. A festo vero sancti Valentini usque in mensem sequentem ventus vehemens cum pluviarum infusionibus diebus ac noctibus inauditam excitavit perturbationem. Ejecitque mare in episcopatu Norwicensi quandam beluam monstruosam nimis, turbinibus fluctuum exagitatam

A.D. 1255. 24 Dec. Legacy of Peter Chaseporc to build a church in England. The king lands at Dover. Henry de Wengham made Keeper of the Seal.

Gift from the citizens of London to the king.

They are fined 3,000 marks, on account of the escape of a prisoner from Newgate.

Death of Ernald de Bosco. 6 Feb.

Money extorted from the Jews.

14 Feb. Storms of wind and rain.

Marine monster thrown up.

[1] *accommodarent*] accomodarent, MS.

[2] See *ante*, p. 334.

[3] *accommodavit*] accomodavit, MS.

A.D. 1255. et interfectam. Quæ multo major balæna extitit, verumptamen non balæna sed monstrum dicebatur, quæ totam patriam vicinam ditavit. Missus est in Angliam quidam elephas, quem rex Francorum pro magno munere dedit regi Angliæ, cum in partibus esset Gallicanis. Nec credimus alium unquam visum fuisse in Anglia. Dedit insuper regina Francorum regi Anglorum unum pavonem, scilicet lavacrum lapideum[1] mirabile, quod similitudem pavonis in forma ostendebat. Et erat lapis pretiosus, qui Perla dicitur, ex auro et argento et saphiris, sicut verus pavo, orbiculatus. Qui [rex][2] ad Sanctum Albanum veniens, per vi. dies moratus est ibidem, die qualibet et nocte cum magno luminari beatum visitans martirem, et pallas offerens pretiosas, et unam capam choralem. Sub diebus autem Dominicæ Passionis, filius cujusdam militis, Johannis nomine de Sceldforde, de militia Sancti Albani, ut ejusdem patris sui hereditatem citius consequeretur, illius mortem procuravit, nec canonicum[3] quendam cum prædicto patre inventum vivum dimisit; unde convictus super hoc, Londoniis tractus,[4] cum alio consanguineo suo, sibi consentiente, suspensus est. Eodem anno, in Quadragesima, ut pro vero accepimus, visio quædam nocturna contigit papæ Alexandro de novo creato, eadem fere quæ prius contigit cuidam cardinali, ut præscriptum est,[5] de Innocentio papa nuper defuncto. Jussit igitur pius papa A[lexander] elemosinas pro ipso erogari, et missas celebrari. In quindena vero Paschæ convenerunt Londoniis ad parlamentum omnes nobiles Angliæ; ubi dominus rex multis se debitis conquestus est implicatum, nec se posse sine eorum auxilio liberari. Postulans, ut de baroniis, sine quibus decimæ sibi fuerant concessæ, plenam reciperet portionem. Inito igitur inter eos consilio, consensum est, quod multum sese gravarent pro Magnæ Cartæ observatione, ex tunc et deinceps. Exigebant igitur, ut de communi consilio regni sibi justiciarium, cancellarium, et thesaurarium eligerent, sicut ab antiquo consuetum est; qui etiam non amoverentur, nisi de communi regni consilio et deliberatione. Quibus responsum est, quod nullo modo hoc faceret. Tandem dilationem sumpsit negotium hoc usque ad festum sancti Michaelis, ut interim fidelitatem regis experirentur versus eos in Cartæ observatione totiens promissæ et redemptæ, et ipsi pro possibilitate ei

Margin: An elephant sent to England by the king of France. fol. 93 b. Gift from his queen. Visit of Henry to St. Alban's. Execution of [Will.] de Sceldforde. Vision of pope Alexander relative to Innocent IV. Parliament held, and the king's demands for a tenth from the baronies postponed.

[1] *lapideum*] Omitted in the Greater Chronicle, p. 903.

[2] *rex*] Supplied from *Flores Hist.*

[3] *canonicum*] cononicum, MS.

[4] *tractus*] equis ad furcas tractus, *Flores Hist.*

[5] See *ante*, p. 341.

studerent subvenire. Tunc temporis tantum erat aer intempestivus per totum fere tempus vernale, floribus et arboribus inimicissimus, quod toto mense Aprilis nec imber nec ros terram arentem imbuens vel modicum præstitit refrigerium. Archiepiscopus Eboracensis, Walterus de Gray, in prædicto parlamento cerebrum habens pro cotidianis jejuniis et sollicitudinibus infirmatum, ita ut, amisso penitus appetitu comedendi, supra modum debilitaretur, apud Fulcham, manerium episcopi Londoniensis, divertit, ubi tertia die post adventum suum feliciter expiravit.[1] Hic xl. fere annis ecclesiam suam Eboracensem strenue rexit, exceptis tribus mensibus et tribus septimanis; et sic circa kalendas Maii viam universæ carnis est ingressus. Cujus corpus honorifice delatum est Eboracum, in ducatu episcopi Dunelmensis Walteri, suffraganei[2] sui, et in ecclesia Eboracensi condignæ traditur sepulturæ. Significatum est capitulo Lincolniensi a magistro Hugone de Mortuo-Mari, domini Cantuariensis officiali, ut, cassato W[illelmo] Lupo, quandoque archidiacono Lincolniensi, alium sine dilatione loco ipsius subrogarent; vel ipse magister Hugo, auctoritate apostolica et domini sui Cantuariensis, illud faceret, et canonicos de inobedientia puniret. Canonici[3] igitur novum sibi archidiaconum creaverunt, magistro W[illelmo] prædicto omnia hæc patienter tolerante,[4] et pro ecclesiæ suæ libertate viriliter laborante. Dominus papa Alexander Octovianum cardinalem destinavit cum maximo[5] exercitu ad destruendam civitatem Nucheram, cum Memfredo rege ibi latitante. Cum igitur Octovianus, dispositis agminibus, cum quodam ingenioso et potente bellatore marchisio ad civitatem fere pervenisset, irruit terror super hos et illos, ita ut nec cives advenientes nec advenientes cives auderent hostiliter impetere. Tandem autem ille marchisius dixit Octoviano, "Domine, recedat tertia pars nostri exercitus. Sunt enim quasi obsessi et inclusi Memfredus et ejus exercitus; non enim audent exire." Iterum autem idem marchisius exercitum minuit, ita quod vix xii. milia de lx. milibus remanerent. Quo facto, proditor ille marchisius prædictum Memfredum secrete adivit, et omnia hæc per se facta, quasi per amicum Fretherici fidelissimum, intimavit. Exiit igitur Memfredus et ejus exercitus,

A.D. 1255.

Unseasonable weather in the spring.

Death of the abp. of York.

1 May.

He is buried at York.

An archdeacon appointed at Lincoln, in the place of William Lupus.

Papal forces sent to destroy Nocera.

Treacherous advice of a certain marquis.

Manfred destroys the papal army.

[1] In the lower margin are drawn a mitre and archiepiscopal cross, reversed, and below is written, "¶ *Obiit archiepiscopus Eboracensis.*"

[2] *suffraganei*] suffranei, MS.

[3] *Canonici*] Cononici, MS.

[4] *tolerante*] tollerante, MS.

[5] *maximo*] magno, *Flores Hist.*

A.D. 1255.

The observance of Magna Carta is publicly proclaimed.

et exercitui papali appropinquantes, Octoviano vix evadente, omnes quasi aviculas illaqueaverunt, præter familiam marchisii omnibus trucidatis. Acclamatum est in comitatibus, et annunciatum est in ecclesiis, ut Magna Carta inviolabiliter teneretur, quam rex Johannes concessit, et iste rex præsens multotiens confirmavit; et lata est sententia solempniter in omnes ejusdem violatores. Quam tamen rex minime observat, bona ecclesiæ Eboracensis vacantis inhumane distrahens, dicensque, "Quare non observant ipsi episcopi et magnates erga subjectos suos cartam illam, quam tantum clamitant observari?" Cui responsum est, "Domine, deceret vos primitus observare, et alii vos sequerentur." Accusantur Robertus de Ros et Johannes de Baillol, quod regnum Scociæ, regem et reginam, quorum tutela eisdem fuit commissa, infideliter et inhoneste contrectarent. Seminarium autem hujus accusationis initium sumpsit a magistro Reginaldo de Bathonia, phisico, qui in Scociam destinatus, ut regi et reginæ curam suam apponeret, eorumdem cognoscens gravamina, regi Angliæ totum significavit; unde dictus magister eorumdem custodes super hoc redarguens, ibidem, ut dicitur, non diu post potionatus, lectulo decubuit quamcitius moriturus. Ecclesiæ quædam nobiles in Anglia debitis prægravantur innumeris: videlicet Cantuariensis, in iiii^or^. milibus marcarum; unde tradiderunt sex maneria sua Johanni de Gatesdene, militi, ut eos a debitis liberaret, et ea, sub bonis conditionibus, donec debita evacuarentur, retineret. Similiter et Rofensis prioratus, inæstimabilibus debitis illaqueatus, se in manus prædicti Johannis et aliorum creditorum obligavit. Nobilis insuper Wintoniensis prioratus, irrestaurabilibus jacturis prægravatus, suas merito sensit cicatrices, ut prædictum est. Quid ecclesiæ Beatæ Mariæ Eboraci cœnobialis et aliarum nobilium ecclesiarum enarrem confusionem? Sed ut hominibus manifestetur Dei indignatio, in statu corporum supracelestium fit discordiæ manifestatio. Luna etenim passa est eclipsim insolitam mense Julio in nocte, post festum sanctæ Margaretæ, quæ fere per iiii^or^. horas perduravit. Obiit nobilis baro, et inter omnes Angliæ nobiles nobilissimus et sapientissimus, Warinus de Muncheinsil;[1] cujus testamentum ad cc. milia marcarum dicitur ascendisse. Heredis[2] autem illius

fol. 94 a.

Rob. de Ros and John de Baillol accused of traitorous conduct in Scotland.

Death of Reginald de Bath, their accuser.

The church of Canterbury and priories of Rochester and Winchester burthened with debts.

Eclipse of the moon. 13 July.

Death of Warin de Muncheinsil.

[1] *Muncheinsil*] Muntcheisil, MS.; Munchenesy, *Flores Hist.* In the lower margin is drawn his shield of arms, *viz.*, or, 3 inescutcheons vaire, argent and azure. Beneath is written, "¶ *Scutum Warini de Muncheysil.*"

[2] *Heredis*] His name was William. See the Greater Chronicle, p. 908.

custodiam contulit dominus rex fratri suo, Willelmo de Valencia, qui filiam ejusdem Warini desponsavit. Johannes Franciscus, domini regis clericus præcipuus, paralisi percussus, a monachis Sanctæ Mariæ Eboraci et de Seleby siccis est lacrimis deplorandus. Johannes de Grey, miles modestus et discretus, a curia se subtrahit regis, feliciter edoctus. Dominus rex, convocato exercitu, versus Scociam lora direxit et vexilla, gravem de Roberto de Ros et Johanne de Baillol movens quæstionem. Qui regno Scociæ appropinquans, præmisit comitem Gloverniæ et Johannem Mansel, ut veritatem super præmissis inquirerent. Qui Castro Puellarum, quo rex et regina fuerant, appropinquantes, seposito comitatu sequente, caute intraverunt; deinde eorum comitatus stillatim subsequitur. Accersita igitur a regina veritate super statu suo, et præmissis gravaminibus, eam civiliter et modeste consolabantur, vocantes districte Robertum de Ros, ut veniret responsurus in curia regis Angliæ ad sibi objecta. Qui tandem veniens, sub certa forma spopondit domino suo regi Angliæ de omnibus respondere; verumtamen rex, de consilio suorum, fecit seisiri terras prædicti Roberti, et arctæ custodiæ deputari. Johannes vero de Baillol, qui graviter, sicut et Robertus, accusabatur, de pecunia, qua abundavit,[1] regi satisfaciendo pacem sibi comparavit. Cunctis igitur pacificatis, cum dominus rex Angliæ et regina sufficienter cum rege Scotorum et regina, eorum filia, colloquium mutuum habuissent, rex versus partes australes Angliæ reditum maturavit. Et cum Dunelmum venisset, quorumdam consilio susurronum est certificatus de pecunia non minima in ecclesia eadem deposita, videlicet episcopi Nicholai de Farnham, et episcopi Elyensis Willelmi de Kilkemy, et quorumdam clericorum. Præcepit igitur rex, ut, seris et sigillis confractis, licet invitis monachis, pecuniam inventam ad opus suum tollerent ministri sui, non quasi ablatam aut raptam, sed accommodatam,[2] et bene eisdem persolvendam. Consecratus est magister W[illelmus] de Kilkenny in episcopum Elyensem[3] in partibus transmarinis, scilicet apud Belesium, die Assumptionis beatæ Mariæ, ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi B[onefacio]. Episcopi vero ceteri Angliæ, similiter et conventus Cantuariensis, super hoc doluerunt, ne in consequenciam traheretur; quia semper

A.D. 1255.

John de Grey withdraws from the court.

The king marches towards Scotland.

Robert de Ros summoned to reply to the charges against him, and his lands seized.

John de Baillol, similarly accused, pays a fine to the king.

Henry seizes a sum of money deposited in the church of Durham.

Consecration of the bp. of Ely. 25 Aug.

---

[1] *abundavit*] habundavit, MS.

[2] *accommodatam*] accomodatam, MS.

[3] In the margin are drawn a mitre and crosier, erect, and beneath is written, "*Consecratus est episcopus Elyensis.*"

A.D. 1255. in Anglia consueverunt episcopi consecrari. Infra octavas vero

8 Sept. Arrival of the archbp. elect of Toledo and a Spanish grandee.

Nativitatis beatæ Mariæ venit Londonias electus Tholetanus, frater regis Castellæ, Synchius nomine, ætate xx. annorum, et cum eo quidam potens de Hispania, Garsias Martinus nomine; qua de causa nesciebatur, sed videndi causa terrarum et gentium diversitatem. Quos dominus rex honorifice præcepit suscipi, et nullum eisdem vel suis offendiculum opponi. fol. 94 *b.*

The king of France asks the daughter of the king of Castille in marriage for his son.

Audiens rex Francorum regem Angliæ prædictum fœdus matrimonii inisse cum rege Castellæ, suspectam habens hujusmodi copulationem, postulavit filiam ejusdem regis Castellæ filio suo in uxorem exhiberi; ut tanto plus conditionem suam melioraret, quo ipse filiam, rex vero Angliæ sororem, optineret. Quod ad votum impetravit.

Proposal of the bp. of Hereford to raise money by means of the bishops' seals. He communicates his plan to the pope.

Episcopus Herefordensis, Petrus de Egeblanche, regis auribus instillavit, ut tria vel quatuor sigilla de aliquibus autenticis Angliæ prælatis habere se faceret, et ipse industria sua ceteros prælatos una cum eis ita obligaret, ut regis indigentia, quam noverat, quamcitius respiraret. Unde, inclinato rege ad consensum, Romam adiens, dominum papam invenit mœstum, et debitis non modicis irretitum. Cui episcopus, "Pater sancte, ne sollicitetur paternitas vestra de quantitate debitorum, quia ante recessum nostrum ab Anglia, de solutione vestra forma providebatur certissima, dummodo de favore et licentia vestra liceat mihi prosequi, quod corde concepi." Quo annuente,[1] * * *

* * * * * *

[1] The text here is left unfinished (and so also in the *Flores Historiarum*), and the remaining portion of the page, and two leaves which follow, are blank. At the edge of the lower margin is written with a plummet, "Hic scribatur hæc cedula," which seems to refer to the papal bull obtained by the bishop of Hereford, printed in the Greater Chronicle, ed. Wats, p. 914.

GLOSSARY.

GLOSSARY.

A.

Accidia, sadness of mind, melancholy (Gr. ἀκηδία), i. 436.

Adletha for **Athleta**, i. 359, 407.

Admiralis, **Admiralius**, an Emir, Oriental chief (hence the modern "Admiral"), i. 122; ii. 231, 409; iii. 315.

Admiratus, the Podestà or chief magistrate of Genoa, ii. 485.

Admiravisius, Emir-vizir, i. 154, 155.

Adquietare, to acquit, redeem, ii. 44.

Adulterinus, false, spurious, in reference to a gate at Antioch, i. 108; and to the castles erected in the reign of Stephen, i. 296, 300.

Æditus, officer of the king's household, i. 271; ii. 131.

Ægrotativus, sickly, ii. 383.

Affirmari, to be fastened (with nails), iii. 114.

Afforestatus, afforested, subjected to the forest laws, ii. 269.

Affugare, **Aufugare**, to drive away, i. 43, 255; iii. 105, 112; **Affugatus**, **Aufugatus**, iii. 45, 71, 116, 281.

Agger, a rick of wheat, ii. 190.

Alcato, a light cuirass, ii. 18; perhaps the same as Fr. *hoqueton* or *haketon*, used by Chaucer, *Cant. T.*, l. 13,789.

Alchad, the Cadi or chief magistrate, i. 462.

Amaricatio, bitterness of mind, i. 378.

Amaricatus, embittered, i. 378; iii. 295.

Amerciamentum, a lesser pecuniary fine, iii. 335.

Amphibologicus, ambiguous, ii. 233.

Ampulosus, boasting, turgid, i. 203, 206; ii. 30, 260, &c.

Anathematio, **Anathematisatio**, excommunication with curses, i. 366.

Anathematizare, to excommunicate, iii. 138.

Anathomia, dissection or opening of the body after death, ii. 193, 451.

Ancillatio, servitude, ii. 176.

Andegravius, Landgrave, ii. 475; iii. 7, 23, 92; **Andegravia**, Landgravine, iii. 318.

Angaria, exaction, oppression by taxation, i. 8, 164; iii. 78; also anguish of mind, suffering, ii. 235, 464.

Angariare, to oppress grievously, i. 97; iii. 249.

Angarialis, grievous, oppressive, iii. 149.

Anguina, cable or rope, rigging, iii. 241.

Angustia, oppression, grievance, iii. 109; **Angustiatus**, ii. 178.

Antemurale, outer wall, i. 139.

Antonomasice, a figure in rhetoric, by the substitution of one form of speech for another, ii. 416.

Apices, papal letters, i. 376; ii. 491.

Apostolicus, the Pope, i. 243; **Apostolatus**, the popedom, i. 414; ii. 471.

Apoteca, shop, warehouse, i. 109.

Appares, compeers, equals in rank, ii. 27.

Apparitor, officer of the Crown, to confiscate the goods of offenders, i. 52.

Appodium, support or prop of wood, i. 82.

Apporriare, to impoverish, i. 13; iii. 12.

Apporiator, one who impoverishes, i. 182.

Appropians, approaching, i. 71.

Archipræsul, archbishop, i. 52; ii. 377; **Archipræsulatus**, i. 14.

Arcubajulus, bow-bearer, iii. 178.

Arcubalistarius, crossbow-man, Fr. *arbalestrier*, i. 260; ii. 197. Written **Arcubalastarius**, ii. 399, 507; iii. 296; hence probably the name of *Arblaster*.

Area, deck of a ship, ii. 23.

Argumentose, cunningly, skilfully, i. 22, 199; ii. 103, 118, 383; iii. 34, &c.

Argumentosus, cunning, skilful, i. 123; ii. 91, 103, 317; iii. 82.

Arietes, warlike machines for battering the walls, i. 140.

Arra, earnest, pledge, security, i. 30, 148, 354; ii. 487; iii. 287.

Articulus, situation of danger. difficulty, i. 166, 188; ii. 423; **in Articulo**, i. 378; ii. 64, 179, 235; iii. 221.

Asinarius, forming a load for an ass, i. 143.

Assarta, assarts, the grubbing up of trees to clear the ground; ii. 273.

Assessini, a people or sect of Syria, referred to as practising secret murder; hence the term "Assassin," i. 288; ii. 43; iii. 21.

Assessor, rider, i. 227; ii. 36; iii. 173.

Assisus, assessed, ii. 380.

Aureus, a gold coin, i. 89, 138; iii. 118.

Aurifrigiaria, embroideress in gold, ii. 380.

Aurifrigiatus, embroidered in gold, or adorned with gold fringe (*see* Du Cange *in v.*), i. 409.

Aurisia, blindness (Gr. ἀορασία), ii. 234.

Autenticum, **Auctenticum**, an authentic instrument; generally applied to papal letters or bulls, ii. 281, 500; iii. 13, 40, 337.

Autenticus, having authority by office or position, ii. 476; iii. 26, 63, 348. In i. 168, it means *customary*, in reference to an oath.

Avitæ, ancestral; the term applied to the laws of Henry I. in the reign of his grandson, i. 331, 338; used improperly, i. 164.

B.

Baculus igneus, a meteor, i. 44.

Baculus pastoralis, pastoral staff or crosier of bishops and abbats, Fr. *crosse*, i. 47, 207, &c.

Baculatus, beaten with staves, ii. 9.

Bajulare, to carry, bear, i. 353, 446; ii. 110, 313; iii. 70.

Bajulus, bearer (of the king's seal), ii. 440; iii. 67, 281; (of money), iii. 7.

Bajulator, bearer (of the Cross), i. 442.

Balcanus. *See* Baucan.

Balista, an engine to throw darts, i. 142; ii. 94, 287; a cross-bow, Fr. *arbaleste*, i. 90, 123; ii. 50, 197.

Balistarius, a cross-bow man, i. 92; ii. 35; iii. 236, &c.

Balliva, jurisdiction of the sheriff, bailywick, i. 332; ii. 11, 22.

Ballivus, an officer or bailiff, Fr. *bailli*, 122.

Banera, a banner, iii. 112.

Barbecana, barbican, outer fortification, Fr. *barbacane*, i. 461.

Barnagium, the baronage, ii. 267, 337, &c.

Baro, a title given to the principal citizens of London, iii. 322. See the *Chronica Majora*, pp. 863, 974, ed. Wats.

Baronia, the barony or land held *in capite* of the crown by bishops and abbats, i. 13; ii. 279, 436, 488; iii. 135, &c.

Baselard, Baseling, base or deteriorated coin, so called in 1158, i. 309 *n.*; iii. 194.

Baucan, Balcanus, the Standard of the Templars, ii. 399, 433. The blason of *gules and argent*, in p. 433, is false, as it should be *argent and sable* (as in MS. B.). *See* Jac. de Vitriaco, *Hist. Hierosol.*, p. 1084. The name is derived from the Fr. *Bauçeant.*

Beguini, Beguinæ, Begewini, a religious sect, chiefly of women, in Germany, ii. 476; iii. 93 *n.*

Beneficium, ecclesiastical benefice or living, i. 317, 328; ii. 183; Beneficiatus, ii. 292, 335.

Biblioteca, the Bible, ii. 110.

Biga, a cart or chariot, with two wheels, i. 171, 309; ii. 94, 190; iii. 342.

Bisancius, Bisantius, a gold coin called bezant, from having been struck at Byzantium, i. 155, 430; ii. 24, 234, &c.

Bladum, crop of wheat, Fr. *bléd*, ii. 190, 243, 338.

Braccæ, drawers, Fr. *braies*, ii. 7; Braccatus, ii. 28.

Bravium, prize given at games, iii. 325.

Broidum, broth, ii. 407.

Bubalus, a buffalo, iii. 119.

Buccella, small piece of meat, i. 166, 362.

Bulgares, a term applied to the Albigeois heretics, otherwise called *Paterini*, ii. 388.

Bulla, the gold seal affixed to imperial documents, ii. 44; also the papal bull, ii. 258, 472; Bullatus, i. 314; ii. 146, 312, 378.

Buza, a large ship or transport, Fr. *busse*, ii. 21; iii. 210.

C.

CADIUS (written incorrectly *Cadmis*), a magistrate, judge, *Cadi*, i. 194.

CALUMNIA, suit, action, i. 324.

CAMBIARE, to exchange money, iii. 301. *See* ESCAMBIARE.

CAMBIUM, exchange of money, iii. 303. *See* ESCAMBIUM.

CAMERA, chamber or treasury to contain money and muniments, ii. 35, 501, 502; iii. 26.

CAMERARIUS, chamberlain, i. 230.

CAMPANA, a bell, i. 370; ii. 330.

CANCELLARIA, chancellorship, i. 317, 329; Court of Chancery, iii. 339.

CANCELLARIUS, chancellor, i. 43, 231, &c.; of a church, ii. 310.

CANTHATHUR, chanter, Fr., from the Lat. *cantator*, ii. 59.

CAPA, CAPPA, cope for the choir, i. 409; ii. 6, 407; iii. 344; hood, i. 248; ii. 126.

CAPITANEUS, leader, chief, ii. 155, 249; iii. 72.

CAPITULUM, chapter-house, i. 291; ii. 105, 205, &c.; chapter, i. 318; ii. 10, 467.

CAPUCIUM, hood of a robe, i. 248; ii. 109.

CARAVANA, caravan, ii. 30; iii. 212.

CARAVANARIUS, a person in charge of the caravan, ii. 30.

CARBONATOR, charcoal-burner, i. 170.

CARROCHIUM, the *Carrochio*, or Standard of the Milanese, captured by the emperor Frederic II. at the battle of Corte Nuova, ii. 401; iii. 275. When this Standard was captured, it could not by custom of the Italians be replaced, except by re-conquest, or by grace of the emperor. Du Cange has a long article on this word.

CARUCA, plough, i. 180; ii. 317; iii. 339. In the survey made in 1254 of the manors of the Religious Orders, a return was ordered of the number of ploughs which were *propriæ, i.e.* belonged to the land; *consuetudinariæ*, customary, which owed service; and *precariæ*, borrowed or hired.

CARUCAGIUM, tax on plough-lands, Fr. *charruage*, ii. 87, 344.

CARUCATA, plough-land, or hide of land, containing sixty acres, i. 340; ii. 75, 85.

CASALIA, villages, ii. 373.

CASSATIO, annulling, ii. 166, 418, 488.

CASTELLANIA, castellany, the lordship belonging to a castle, i. 329.

CASTELLANUS, castellan, custodian or constable of a castle, i. 19; ii. 99, 158, 208, &c.

CATALLA, goods, chattels, i. 326; ii. 48; iii. 335.

CAURSINI, CAHURSINI, Caorsins, usurers, money-changers or bankers, said to have derived their name from Cahors in Quercy; ii. 382, 383; iii. 90, 272, 316.

CELLERARIUS, cellerar of a monastery, i. 361.

CELIA, ale made from wheat; ii. 65, 299 *n.*; iii. 216. *See* Orosius, lib. v. c. 7, as quoted by Du Cange.

CERVISIA, ale or beer made from barley, Fr. *cervoise*, ii. 299.

Cervicosus, stiff-necked, i. 66; **Cervicose**, ii. 95.

Cespitatio, a stumbling, iii. 302.

Choricus, composer of verse? ii. 240.

Chorus, the choir, ii. 8.

Cicera, for **Sicera**, cider, ii. 191.

Cilicium, hair cloth, i. 364, 367; **Cilicinus**, i. 364; **Ciliciatus**, iii. 139.

Cinctorium, sword-belt, ii. 249.

Cisalpinare, to cross to this side of the Alps, i. 59.

Cismarinus, on this side of the channel, ii. 137, 242.

Cisimus, **Cisiminus**, fur called ermine, iii. 39, 304. Du Cange refers to a Gloss. Lat. Gall. in which it is explained, *vers et gris*.

Classicum, peal of bells, i. 8, 358; ii. 149; iii. 147.

Clerigaster, a term of contempt applied to an ecclesiastic, iii. 228.

Cliens, an attendant on a knight, an esquire, ii. 221.

Clientela, office or duty, ii. 71, 391.

Cloera is stated in the text, i. 269, to be the popular term for *uter*, and appears to be equivalent to *carcer*, as expressed in the words "Cloere Brien" in Wendover and the *Chronica Majora*. There seems also to be an equivoque (in reference to the name of *Martel*, *i.e.* marteau) between the Norman Fr. *clouere*, an anvil, and *cloure*, a place inclosed within walls, a prison.

Cnipulus, a short knife, i. 394. It is borrowed from Diceto, col. 587. Du Cange has *Canipulus*.

Coctanus, i. 234. The sense seems uncertain. According to some it means a measure of grain, but Barthius *ap.* Ludewig *Reliq. Manuscr.* interprets it quince, Fr. *coin*, Germ. *quitten*. *See* Du Cange *in v.* The word is borrowed from Olivarius Scholasticus *De captione Damiettæ*, p. 1190, but is printed *coitanum* by Bongars.

Coga, **Cogo**, a long sailing ship, cog, Fr. *coquet*, i. 12; ii. 178, 227, 228.

Collectæ, taxes, tribute, ii. 499 *n.*

Colloquium, conference, parliament, Fr. *colloque*, i. 457; ii. 100, 153, 253, 329.

Comitatus, earldom, i. 21; ii. 3, 296, 417, 428.

Commensalis, dinner companion, i. 362.

Commessatio for **Comissatio**, feasting, revel, i. 65, 94.

Communa, community, iii. 51.

Concanonicus, canon of the same church, ii. 458.

Concubinarius, keeping a concubine, i. 191, 234.

Conductus, safe-conduct, i. 100; ii. 431, 504.

Constabularius, constable (of Chester), ii. 124; (of Dover castle), ii. 504; (of the royal army), iii. 334.

Consul, count, earl, i. 45, 48, 167, 207, &c.; once used for duke, iii. 159.

Convicaneus, neighbour, inhabitant of the same place, i. 401.

Convictor, fellow-conqueror, ii. 221.

Coopertorium, roof, iii. 336.

Cortina, hangings, curtain, ii. 109.

Crepundia, an infant's toys (?), i. 187. In a passage quoted by Du Cange from D'Achery's *Spicileg.* tom. ii. p. 341, we read of "novi partus *crepundia*."

Crisma, the oil consecrated by a bishop for anointment, i. 337; ii. 398; iii. 196.

Cruciferi, an order of monks who bore crosses in their hands, Crutched Friars, ii. 496; iii. 318.

Crucesignatio, crusade, ii. 54, 259.

Cucullare, to make a monk, iii. 340.

Culcitra, pillow, mattrass, i. 142, 144.

Culvertagium, cowardice, from Fr. *cul verter*, ii. 133.

Cumera is used as equivalent to *acervus*, a heap, ii. 225. In Du Cange it is explained only as "vas frumentarium."

Cuneus, coining-irons, iii. 27.

Cuppa, a cup, ii. 47; iii. 342.

Curialitas, courtesy, i. 316.

Custodia, wardship, charge, i. 334; ii. 260, 330, 342, 344; retinue (?), ii. 337; garrison, iii. 81.

D.

Dalmatica, royal mantle, worn at coronations, ii. 7.

Dapifer, butler of the king's household, i. 230, 353.

Deafforestare, to reduce laud from forest into culture or pasture, ii. 269, 273.

Debriatus, inebriated, i. 448; soaked, iii. 339.

Deceptatio for **Disceptatio**, ii. 203, 289, &c.

Decretista, a student in decretals or canon law, iii. 57.

Dedicius, Deditícius, one who has submitted, or surrendered, without conditions, i. 14.

Deforciare, to deny justice, i. 326.

Degradare, to degrade, i. 191.

Deliberatio, delivery, release, ii. 54.

Deordinare, to deprive of holy orders, ii. 254.

Deprædativus, Deprædatorius, hurtful, ii. 511; iii. 43.

Detrimen, perhaps an error for **Detrimentum**, ii. 326.

Detunicare, to reveal, ii. 32, 314; **Detunicatus**, iii. 112.

Dextrarius, a charger used in battle, ii. 211.

Dieta, journey of one day, i. 171, 282, 339; a journey in general, ii. 40.

Diffidare, ii., 358; iii. 269, is usually explained "to defy," but the simpler sense, to declare the fealty of a person void, seems here preferable; and is confirmed by the text of the *Chronica Majora*, p. 398, ed. Wats. Du Cange says, "proprie est a fide, quam quis alicui debet, per litteras deficere, nostris *deffier, desafier*. Utuntur passim scriptores hoc significatu."

Diffidatio, voidance of fealty, ii. 358.

Diffiduciare, the same as **Diffidare**, ii. 137; **Diffiduciatus**, i. 5.

Diffiguratus, disguised, ii. 161, 220.

Diffinitivus for **Definitivus**, ii. 300.

Disconsulere, to dissuade, ii. 103.

Discrasia, distemper, bad temperament (Gr. δυσκρασία), ii. 444.

Dispersonatus, dishonoured, i. 353. In ed. Wats, p. 705, the form is **Depersonatus**.

Dissinteria, dysentery, i. 28; **Dissintericus**, ii. 288.

Distringere, to distrain, ii. 158.

Dolabrum, an axe, ii. 53.

Dominationes, demesnes (?), ii. 11.

Dominicus, demesne, i. 180, 319; ii. 258, 343.

Domicella, damsel, i. 236.

Dracena, a rudder, called in the vernacular *lofa* or *loof*, ii. 219; iii. 241. *See* my Glossarial Remarks on Layamon, iii. 476.

Draco, dragon, a meteor so termed, ii. 424.

Dromundus, **Dromunda**, a large transport ship, Fr. *dromon*, i. 429; ii. 23.

Ducatus, safeguard, ii. 504.

Duellum, combat by duel, i. 40, 134, 320; ii. 325.

E.

Ecclesiola, small church, chapel, i. 241, 271, 303.

Effectuose, for **Affectuose**, effectually, i. 316.

Effigiatus, figured, portrayed, ii. 448.

Effossor, a miner, i. 460.

Elefantinus, leprous, i. 429.

Ementulari, to be emasculated, i. 235; **Ementulatus**, ii. 52, 381. *See* **Mentula**.

Emungere, to extort money, i. 21; ii. 121, &c.

Emunctio, extortion of money, iii. 256; **Emunctivus**, ii. 498.

Emyr, Oriental prince, governor of a city, i. 194.

Equitatura, horses, ii. 304, 479 *n.*; iii. 229.

Erhdune, **Erthdune**, earthquake, a rumbling noise in the earth, iii. 20, 299.

Escambiator, money-changer, banker, ii. 382; iii. 274. *See* **Cambiare**.

Escambium, market, ii. 40; exchange, ii. 62. *See* **Cambium**.

Escarletum, scarlet cloth, iii. 39, 394. *See* **Scarletum**.

Eschaeta, escheats, ii. 28.

Esclavus, slave, ii. 250. *See* **Sclavus**.

Esterlingi, sterlings, money of approved weight, i. 458; ii. 136, 224, 462; iii. 57. In the *Chronica Majora* of Matthew Paris, p. 418, the sterling is taken as equivalent to a penny, and by the stat. 3 Edw. I., "denarius Angliæ, qui vocatur *Sterlingus*, ponderabit 32 grana frumenti." *See* **Sterlingus**.

Eulogium, good news, ii. 441; discourse or hymn (?), ii. 474. In the plural, i. 369, **Eulogia** are, apparently, the anthems or lessons used on the 10th December and following days. *See* the Glossary

at the end of the Rev. R. Littledale's "Offices of the Eastern Church," *v.* Εὐλογητάρια.

Examitum, cloth of gold, or silk worked with gold, Fr. *samit*, iii. 338. *See* Samitum.

Excusatorius, excusatory, ii. 264.

Exenium, gift, present, i. 299; ii. 18, 44. *See* Xenium.

Exheredator, disinheritor, ii. 229.

Expedienter, quickly, i. 180.

Expeditari, to be lawed, or have the ball of the foot cut out, according to the forest laws regarding dogs, ii. 273.

Expoliaturus, about to despoil, i. 164.

Exsufflare, to destroy, extirpate, i. 330; iii. 94, 318.

F.

Fabricare, to beat, knock, iii. 116. In Du Cange the meaning is, "clavis figere."

Falesia, a hill, Fr. *Falaise*, ii. 217; iii. 240.

Fastigiosus, stately, sumptuous, ii. 400; Fastigiose, ii. 478.

Femoralia, drawers, ii. 280, 346.

Feodarius, Feudarius, a feudatory vassal, holding of a superior lord, ii. 135.

Feodum, Feudum, a fee or fief, i. 28, 322; Feodum laicum, ii. 279.

Feoffamentum, feoffment, ii. 380.

Feretrum, shrine, i. 13, 214; ii. 63; iii. 94. *See* the *Gesta Abbat.*, vol. i. p. 69, ed. Riley.

Fidelitas, fealty, i. 25, 28, 40, &c.

Filiastra, step-daughter, ii. 428.

Finis, a fine, ii. 201; iii. 335.

Firmitas, a stronghold, fortress, i. 255, 264, 299.

Fiscus, exchequer, revenue, ii. 65, 106, 342.

Fleubotomia, blood-letting (Gr. φλεβοτομία), i. 169.

Focaria, a priest's concubine, i. 243.

Forestaruis, forester, one of the king's officers, ii. 141; iii. 228.

Forisfacere, to forfeit, i. 179; ii. 9; Forisfactum, a forfeit, i. 326.

Forisfactura, forfeiture, i. 179.

Foris-banniatus, an outlaw, ii. 494.

Formidolositas, fear, i. 80, 442.

Frontose, arrogantly, i. 203.

Frontosus (apparently for Fructuosus), beneficial (?), ii. 250.

Fratrissare, to take after the brother, i. 181, 196; formed in the same manner as *Matrissare* and *Patrissare.*

Frustatorius, for Frustratorius, putting-off, nugatory, ii. 31.

Fugatio, chace, hunting, iii. 129, 263.

Fundibalarius, a slinger, iii. 241.

G.

Galea, Galeia, a galley, i. 83, 199; ii. 73; (*triremis*) ii. 21; (*rostrata*) ii. 23.

Galeatus, a seaman on board a galley, i. 83; helmeted soldier, i. 227; ii. 73.

Garcio, groom, horse-boy, Fr. *garçon*, ii. 145.

Garda, ward, custody, iii. 336.

Gelda, tax, i. 173, 180.

Genialis (*homo*), natural-born subject, ii. 142; (*funus*) native, iii. 332.

Genimina, sprouts, roots, i. 224. Used in Bibl. Vulg., Matth. xxvi. 29.

Geomanticus, one who practices geomancy, ii. 240.

Gesa, a long heavy javelin, i. 14. In Cæsar, *de Bello Gall.* iii. 4. 1. *gæsum*.

Girivagus, stroller, i. 366.

Grossus, thick, Fr. *gros*, ii. 227.

Guerra, war, ii. 64, 171, 343, &c. *See* Werra.

Gulerun, French term for hood, i. 248; from Lat. *galerum*.

Gulositas, gluttony, i. 436.

H.

Hanelacius, a dagger or knife worn at the girdle, ii. 368; *anelace* in Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, l. 359.

Hastiludium, tournament, joust, i. 409, 436; ii. 175; iii. 124, 234; applied to a tilt with reeds, ii. 26.

Hida, hide of land, as much as suffices to one plough, i. 210, 252. *See* Carucata.

Homagium, homage, fealty, i. 8, 16, 25, &c.

Homullulus, small man, manikin, iii. 60.

Honor, lordship, territorial dignity, Fr. *seigneurie*, ii. 5, 258, 274, &c.; iii. 26. *See* Hen. Hunt. Epist. ad Walterum, *ap.* Wharton, *Anglia Sacra*, ii. 697.

Horæ canonicæ, services of the church at certain hours, i. 31; ii. 143.

Hospitare, to lodge, dwell, ii. 407.

Hospitium, house, lodging, Fr. *hospice*, i. 57; ii. 30, 120, 407; iii. 212; household, ii. 389.

Hostagium, hostage, ii. 250.

Hussar, transport ship for cavalry, Fr. *Huissier*, iii. 232. *See* Du Cange, in v. *Huisserium*.

I.

Ictericia, jaundice (Gr. ἰκτεριάω), ii. 429.

Ignis Græcus, Greek fire, used in warfare, ii. 23, 228. *See* the *Additamenta*, p. 167, ed. Wats.

Implacitare, to implead, i. 252.

Imprisius, associate, adherent, ii. 222, 237; iii. 247.

Incartare, to grant by charter, ii. 270; iii. 25; **Incartatus**, iii. 232.

Incuba, female demon, i. 288; iii. 61.

Incubator, intruder, i. 362.

Indistanter, immediately, i. 283, 359; ii. 63.

Infeodari, to be enfeoffed, iii. 63; **Infeodatus**, iii. 62.

Impignorare, to pledge, iii. 70, 73.

Infiscare, to take to the use of the exchequer, i. 464.

Inforestatus, land converted into forest, ii., 497.

Infrunitus, foolish, senseless, i. 66; ii. 245.

Inhibitoriæ (*literæ*), prohibitory, Fr. *lettres de defence*, ii. 285.

Insellatus, seated in the saddle, iii. 91.

Instaurum, stock, store, iii. 250. *See* Staurum.

Insultus, assault, i. 83, 461; ii. 72, &c.

Interbajulus, go-between, messenger, i. 105.

Intoxicare, to poison, i. 140; ii. 407; iii. 272; Intoxicatus, ii. 443; iii. 48. *See* Toxicatus.

Investire, to invest in an earldom, ii. 417.

Investitura, ecclesiastical investiture, i. 52, 191.

J.

Joculator, juggler, i. 117; iii. 277.

Justiciare, to do justice to, i. 326.

Justiciaria, office of justiciary, ii. 69; iii. 83, 126.

Justiciarius, justiciary, i. 27; ii. 11, 22; Justiciarius itinerans, ii. 263; iii. 335.

L.

Laga, law, i. 180.

Lapicida, a mason, ii. 318.

Lavacrum, iii. 344; presented by the queen of France in 1255 to king Henry III. It was in the form of a peacock, and said to be "lapis pretiosus, qui *Perla* dicitur, ex auro et argento et saphiris, sicut verus pavo, orbiculatus." The meaning of *lavacrum* here is doubtful. Dr. Giles translates it "washing-basin," and Mr. Yonge (*Matth. Westm.*) "a stone bath;" but the French translator renders it "aiguière," and thinks it is the same "qu'on montre encore à Windsor parmi les joyaux de la couronne," valued at 30,000*l.*, tom. viii. p. 98.

Lectica, a litter, i. 190, 286, 465.

Leotisternium, mattrass, cushion, i. 364; ii. 191, 214.

Leopardus, leopard, an animal said to resemble a hunting dog or mastiff, and to be the offspring of a pard and lioness, ii. 380, 392. Three of these animals were sent by the emperor Frederic II. to Henry III., because he bore three leopards on his shield of arms.

Leporarius, a hunting-dog, greyhound (?) ii. 380.

Librata, a librate of land, containing 52 acres, ii. 125, 194, 349; iii. 134.

Lienteria, looseness, diarrhœa (Gr. λιεντερία), i. 436; iii. 206.

Ligancia, allegiance, i. 288, 392; ii. 13, 460.

Ligius (*dominus*), sovereign lord, i. 325; ii. 368; (*homo*) liegeman, vassal, i. 392; ii. 64.

Lintheamina, cloths, napkins, sheets, i. 250, 408; ii. 283, 482.

Lisura, border or hem of woollen cloth, ii. 65.

Lofa, Loof. *See* Dracena.

Losinga, flatterer, gloser, i. 147; an epithet applied to Herbert, bishop of Hereford.

Lucius, a pike, Fr. *luce*, i. 275.

Lupus, a disease called "le mal de Saint Loup," or "sacer ignis;" paralysis, iii. 57.

M.

Maceria, a low wall (?), iii. 42, 305.

Macerinus, cup made of the maple tree, a mazer, ii. 330; *maselin*, in Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, l. 13,781.

Magnates, nobles, i. 8, 23, 177, &c.

Mahomaria, mosque, i. 462.

Maleveisine, French name of an engine to throw stones, meaning "ill-neighbour," i. 48; ii. 183.

Mancipium, slave, of base position, ii. 272.

Mangonellus, catapult, a warlike engine for throwing stones, i. 92.

Mantea, mantle, ii. 7.

Marbotinus, a Spanish gold coin, a maravedi, i. 397.

Marca, a denomination of money (in gold or silver), and estimated in value at 160 pence or 13*s.* 4*d.*, i. 153, 192, 424. See *Gesta Abbat.*, vol. i. p. 204.

Marchia, the March of Wales, ii. 131.

Marchio, **Marchisius**, marquis, marchese, i. 30, 429, 431, 4[illegible]0; ii. 25, 43, 474; iii. 100, 335; the Lords Marchers of Wales, ii. 487.

Marescalcia, office of marshal, the marshalsea, ii. 371; iii. 271.

Marescallus, marshal of the camp, harbinger, ii. 16, 30, 150; of the army, ii. 150, 156; of the king's household, ii. 504; iii. 256; Magnus **Marescallus**, ii. 196, 206, 216, &c.

Margalerius, churchwarden, an official of the church of St. Geneviève at Paris, Fr. *marguillier*, i. 278.

Marinellus, mariner, ii. 138.

Mariscus, the marshlands of Lincolnshire, Huntingdonshire, and Isle of Ely, ii. 189; iii. 340.

Maritagium, dowry, i. 178; ii. 84; iii. 133; right of disposing of minors in marriage, ii. 344; marriage, ii. 87.

Marlera, a marl-pit, ii. 214.

Martellus, a hammer, Fr. *marteau*, i. 269. Of Geoffrey, earl of Anjou, father of Henry II., it was said, "merito *Martellus* nominatus est, quasi suos conterens hostes." *Hist. Andegav. Consul.*

Mastinus, a mastiff, Fr. *mastin*, ii. 488.

Mategrifun, French name of a castle built by Richard I., and signifying "subduer of the Greeks," ii. 17; iii. 210.

Matrissare, to take after the mother, i. 188; iii. 178.

Mensa Rotunda or **Tabula Rotunda**, a military sport, differing from a tournament, in the greater number, apparently, engaged at once in a *melée*, iii. 124, 322.

Mersor, a diver, i. 429; ii. 23.

Militia, cavalry, i. 274; military tenants of St. Alban's abbey, iii. 344.

Minare, to lead or guide, i. 120; iii. 112; **Minaturus**, iii. 136, 326.

Mitratus, wearing a mitre, i. 162.

Modius, cask of wine, Fr. *muid*, i. 411.

Monetagium, coinage, i. 179.

Monetarius, moneyer, coiner, i. 235.

Monocubitalis, of the size of a cubit, ii. 33.

Monstrari, to be mustered, iii. 134, 325.

Montanarius, a mountaineer, i. 450.

Montisgaudium, Montjoie! the battle-cry of the French, and used by Constantine Fitz-Olaf, in the disturbance at London, ii. 251; iii. 230. *See* Roquefort, in v. *Mont-joe.*

Morosus, tardy, procrastinated, i. 35, 165; iii. 244; **Morosius**, i. 72.

Mortalissime, grievously, mortally, ii. 273.

Municeps, castellan or constable, ii. 44.

Municipium, fortress, i. 71, 99, 110, 191, &c.

Murdrum, **Murthra**, murder, i. 180; ii. 322.

Muscipulare, to entrap, i. 225.

N.

Nundinæ, fair or market, i. 406; ii. 75, 199.

O.

Obedientiarius, sub-officer of a monastery, i. 240; iii. 336. See *Gesta Abbat.*, vol. i. p. 298.

Obgrunnire, to murmur, ii. 24, 361 *n.*; iii. 111.

Obnoxius for **Obnixius**, i. 35, 41, 361; ii. 93, 206.

Obrizum, pure gold, ii. 18, 241.

Obsequium, divine service, obsequies, i. 98, 247, 314; iii. 271; service (to the king), ii. 265.

Ocularium, eye-hole (of a helmet), ii. 212.

Officina, offices attached to a monastery, i. 23, 37, 222.

Oloserica, robes of silk, silk stuffs, i. 78, 103, 109, &c.

Omnipotentatus, widely spread dominion, i. 207; ii. 342 *n.*; iii. 170.

Onerifer, transport (ship), i. 461.

Ordinari, to be ordained, i. 326; **Ordinati**, the clergy in orders, ii. 241.

Ordinarius, the ordinary, bishop, iii. 138.

O Sapientia, introit of the anthem for 10 December, i. 359.

P.

Paagium, road-tax or toll, Fr. *péage*, iii. 63.

Pacitator, probably for **Placitator**, pleader, i. 168.

Palefridus, a palfrey, hack, i. 213; ii. 479 *n.*; iii. 57, 99 *n.*

Palla, hangings, curtain, iii. 344. *See* the *Chronica Majora*, p. 903, ed. Wats.

Pallium, pall of an archbishop, i. 49, 219, &c.; bequeathed by St. Edmund to his sister, ii. 448; a woman's robe, i. 201.

PARAPSIS, a small oval dish (Gr. παροψίς), i. 194.

PARDUS, a pard, panther, ii. 392.

PARES, the twelve peers of France, ii. 64; PARES LITERARUM, pairs of legal writs, ii. 263.

PARLAMENTUM, conference, ii. 197; parliament, ii. 393, 397, 453; iii. 5, 16, 33, 125, 136, 344. This term is first used in the latter sense in 1237 (not in 1239, as stated by the French translator of Matthew Paris). It is equivalent to *colloquium* in ii. 397; and so in Joan. de Janua, "colloquium, quod vulgo dicitur *parlamentum*."

PASCHA CLAUSUM, the first Sunday after Easter, or "Quasimodo," ii. 154; iii. 51.

PASSAGIUM, passage (of the Cross) crusade, ii. 229, 403.

PATERINI, a sect of heretics, so called, ii. 388. *See* Du Cange, *in v.*

PAX, the vessel containing the Holy Sacrament, ii. 8. [The passage is so understood by Wats.]

PECIATUS, pieced, patched (garments), ii. 109.

PENSUS, sum of money due at a fixed period, iii. 343.

PENULA, tippet (?) (of ermine), iii. 304.

PEPLUM, wimple or covering for the head, ii. 28.

PERENDINARE, PERHENDINARE, to tarry, dwell, i. 190, 234, 281.

PERLA, a pearl, iii. 344.

PERSICUS, a peach, ii. 191.

PERSONA, beneficed clerk, incumbent, ii. 204.

PETRARIA, warlike engine to throw stones, i. 81, 92, 140; ii. 24, 94, &c.

PICARDI, scholars from Flanders so called, ii. 308.

PILLEUM, cap, i. 364; (royal), ii. 7.

PINCERNA, butler, cup-bearer, i. 230.

PITANCIA, pittance, the portion of food allotted to monks, iii. 115 *n.*

PLACITA, pleas, i. 21, 326; ii. 156.

PLECTA, plait, tress (of twigs or reeds), iii. 20, 337.

PLEGGAGIUM, pledge, surety, iii. 231.

PLEGIUS, PLEGIUM, pledge, i. 323, 332.

POMACIUM, cider, ii. 191; iii. 236.

POMERIUM, orchard, i. 18, 29; ii. 186, 213.

POSTULARE, to demand or elect as archbishop or bishop, ii. 337, 412 *n.*; iii. 86, 181; POSTULATUS, i. 320; ii. 29, 418.

POSTULATIO, the demanding or election of a bishop, ii. 146, 337, 455.

POTESTAS, chief magistrate or governor of Milan and Genoa, Ital. *Podestà*, ii. 401, 485; iii. 275.

POTIONARE, to poison, i. 237; POTIONATUS, i. 445; ii. 280, 398, 427; iii. 92.

PRÆAMBULUS, fore-goer, predecessor, i. 182; iii. 111.

PRÆCEPTOR, Provincial Head of the Order of Templars, ii. 399. *See* Jac. de Vitriaco, *Hist. Hieros.*, cap. 65.

PRÆCIRCINATUS, a report previously circulated, iii. 249.

PRÆLACIA, PRÆLATIO, ecclesiastical dignity, prelacy, i. 335 ; ii. 100, 382.

PRÆLATUS, chief magistrate, i. 350. *See* Du Cange *in v.*

PRÆLOQUIUM, previous report, iii. 7.

PRÆMUNITIO for PRÆMONITIO, forewarning, i. 170 ; ii. 128.

PRÆNOSTICUM for PRONOSTICUM, presage, prophecy, i. 164, 205 ; iii. 90.

PRÆPECTUS, a cuirass, i. 85.

PRÆPOSITUS, provost, ii. 308 ; iii. 14, 340.

PRÆSENTIA, a present, i. 360.

PRÆSENTIALITER, personally, ii. 412.

PRÆSTIGIUM, trick, wile, iii. 258.

PRESBITERIUM, the chancel or choir, destined for the reception of vestments, sacred vessels, and books, i. 363 ; ii. 330 ; iii. 125, 337.

PRIMAS, primatial, i. 46 ; ii. 409.

PRIMATES, chiefs, i. 65, 397, &c.

PRISÆ, fines, ii. 343 ; tax on merchandise or provisions, iii. 72.

PRISO, a prisoner, ii. 221, 452.

PROCURATIA, PROCURANCIA, PROCURATIO, procuration, the sum paid to the bishop or archdeacon on his visitation, ii. 183, 276, 282, 430 ; iii. 300.

PRODIGIALIS, wonderful, ii. 109, 387 ; PRODIGIALITER, ii. 220, 482.

PRONOSTICUM, a prognostic, presage, i. 243, 252, 286, &c.

PROPUGNACULUM, battlement, parapet, i. 127, 145 ; ii. 17, 228, 359 ; iii. 42 ; PROPUGNACULATUS, ii. 23 ; iii. 183.

PROTHOFORESTARIUS, chief forester, ii. 446 ; iii. 282.

PROVISIO, a benefice to be provided for a foreigner by papal mandate, ii. 495 ; iii. 58, 113, 144. Du Cange refers the word to the papal mandate itself.

Q

QUADRIVIUM, the mathematical course of learning, including arithmetic, geometry, music, and astronomy, ii. 376 ; iii. 119.

QUARTENARIUS, quartan fever, ague, ii. 403.

QUINTENA, game of quintain, iii. 325.

R.

RATI, RATONES, rats, i. 37.

RATIOCINIUM, a reckoning, accompt, i. 329 ; ii. 342, 366.

RATO (*literæ de*), authentic, determined, ii. 104, 110, 310.

RECIDIVARE, to fall back, relapse into, ii. 394.

REFECTORIUM, refectory, ii. 330, 491 ; iii. 45 *n.*

REGALES ! the battle-cry of the English royalists, i. 85 ; ii. 71 ; iii. 230. It is noticed also by Ordericus Vitalis, at the battle of Bovines, in 1119, lib. xii. c. 11.

REGERE, to exercise the office of regent in the schools ; a scholastic term, iii. 330.

REGIA, the king's palace, ii. 445; iii. 25, 99; REGIA SOLIS, palace so named at Rome, ii. 457; iii. 92. The French translator of Matthew Paris suggests the true reading to be *Septa Solis*, a corruption of *Septigonium*. See his note, tom. v. pp. 533, 537.

REGRATIARE, to return thanks, i. 354, 360.

RELEVIUM, the payment or relief due from a vassal to the superior lord, ii. 334.

RELIQUIÆ, property left by an intestate bishop, ii. 6.

RESPONDETHUR, the person who makes the responses in chanting, ii. 59.

REVESTITUS, explained in Du Cange, "sacris vestibus indutus," i. 358.

RIBALDUS, ribald, low person, i. 103.

RIVERA, river, ii. 82.

ROBA, royal mantle or robe, i. 213, 248.

ROMESCOT, payment made to the pope, under the title of St. Peter's pence, iii. 163.

ROSULA, rosette, small rose, ii. 79.

ROTULI, apparently has the same meaning as *Annales* or *Historiæ*, ii. 131, 135, 452; ROTULI ANNALIUM, i. 301; iii. 33, 65; ROTULI VICECOMITUM, pipe-rolls (?), ii. 351.

RUPTARIUS, free-rider, mounted mercenary, of Brabant and Flanders, Fr. *routier*, Germ. *reuter*, i. 382, 412; ii. 59, 84, 170, &c.

S.

SAISIRE, to take in possession, i. 332; SAISITUS, i. 325.

SAISINA, seisin, possession, i. 325.

SARCOFAGUS, a marble tomb, i. 53; ii. 261, 458.

SCACCARIUM, the exchequer, ii. 118, 156, 335; a chequered cloth, or board, borne at the coronation of Richard I., ii. 7.

SCAMBIATOR. *See* ESCAMBIATOR.

SCLAVA, SCLAVUS, a slave, i. 83, 430. *See* ESCLAVUS.

SCOTTALIA, interpreted by Marwood and Wats to mean taverns for the sale of beer, but Spelman thinks it refers to tallage or toll, ii. 141.

SCRINIUM, sepulchral chest, i. 404.

SCROFA, a warlike engine, used to undermine the walls of a fortress, i. 140.

SCUTAGIUM, scutage, a tax levied on the military tenants of the crown, Fr. *escuage*, ii. 329, 344, 380, 466; iii. 136.

SELDA, a shop, ii. 65; iii. 216.

SENESCALCIA, office of seneschal, iii. 115.

SENESCALLUS, seneschal of the king's household, whose duty it was to wait at table, i. 251, 353; ii. 389; of Anjou, ii. 3; of Normandy, ii. 372; of Gascony, ii. 471; of France, iii. 134.

SEQUELA, suite, retinue, followers, ii. 120, 163, 230; the men attached to some mills at Rouen, ii. 62.

SERPENS IGNITUS, a firework used in war to ignite the enemy's engines, ii. 23.

SERVIENS, a foot-soldier, used in distinction to *miles*, a horseman or knight, Fr. *sergent*, ii. 72, 166, 181, 302, 328; "servientes equites, qui vices poterant equitum adimplere," ii. 209.

SEXTARIUS, a measure of wheat, ii. 23. According to Hen. Hunt., it was a horse-load. *See* Du Cange, *in v.*

SIGNUM, a small bell, ii. 251, 346; iii. 147.

SIGNIPOTENS, worker of miracles, iii. 13; SIGNIPOTENTISSIMA, ii. 233.

SILENTIARIUS, special secretary of the pope, i. 367.

SIMPLICITAS, illiteracy, i. 53.

SMARAGDINUS, made of emerald, i. 194.

SOLDANUS, soldan, sultan, i. 104, 134, 151, &c.; SOLDANATUS, ii. 311.

SOLDARIUS, a soldier, Fr. *soudoier*, i. 450.

SOLARIUM, an upper chamber, a soler, Fr. *solier*, i. 312.

SOPHISTICUS, an impostor, iii. 250.

SORORIUS, brother-in-law, i. 233; ii. 434; iii. 63.

SPECIES, spices, i. 250.

STANDARDUM, standard, great military banner, i. 154, 258; ii. 401.

STAPHA, a stirrup, i. 354.

STAURUM, store, stock, ii. 6. *See* INSTAURUM.

STAGNUM, tin, ii. 453; STAGNIFODINA, tin-mine, ii. 453.

STERLINGUS, penny sterling (of Tours and Paris), iii. 103, 320. *See* ESTERLINGUS.

STRATA, highway, i. 287, 402.

STREPA, a stirrup, 451, 490.

SUBARRARE, to take earnest of, to be assured of, i. 129; iii. 328; SUBARRATUS, i. 79, 106, 153, 350; ii. 66, 191, 357; iii. 338. *See* ARRA.

SUBARRATIO, earnest, i. 351.

SUBPEDITARE, SUPPEDITARE, to put under foot, iii. 73, 83.

SUBSANNARE, to jest, speak in mockery, ii. 145, 383.

SUBSANNATIO, jesting, mockery, ii. 11, 463.

SUBVENTIO, subsidy, i. 340.

SUCCURSUS, succour, i. 211; ii. 36, 91; iii. 85.

SUFFATOR, iii. 4; perhaps a mistake for SUFFOSSOR.

SUFFOSSOR, one who undermines, sapper, ii. 101.

SUMMA, a measure of corn, containing eight bushels; in 1205 it sold for 14*s.*; in 1244 and 1248 for 2*s.*; in 1245 for 20*d.*, and in 1253 for 30*d.*, ii. 103, 498, 511; iii. 42, 149.

SUMMARIUS, a sumpter-horse, i. 287; ii. 190, 210, 271; iii. 337.

SUPRA, used in the sense of INFRA, i. 278, 362, 365; iii. 181; SUPERIUS, i. 430.

SUSTENTAMENTUM, sustenance, ii. 363.

T.

Tabula Rotunda. *See* Mensa Rotunda.

Tabella, tablet (of silver, on which was figured the Passion of Christ), ii. 448.

Taberculum, small tambour, i. 85; for which Taburcinum is the equivalent in Hen. Hunt. and Rog. Wend.

Talares, socks (?), Fr. *talaire*, ii. 109.

Tallia, tax, toll, Fr. *taille*, ii. 499 *n.*; iii. 72, 247.

Talliare, to tax, iii. 232, 280, 295.

Tallagium, tallage, tax, i. 173; iii. 10.

Targia, targe, large shield for defence, i. 142.

Tapecium, a carpet, tapestry, i. 142.

Tenseria, tax or tribute, Fr. *tenserie*, ii. 182. *See* the *Gesta Abbat.*, vol. i. p. 296.

Terratus, banked with earth, ii. 31.

Theca, a shrine, i. 428; ii. 241, 242.

Thelonarius, Thelonearius, Theloneus, a tax-collector, ii. 322 *n.*; iii. 93 *n.*, 317.

Thisis, for Phthisis, consumption, ii. 436.

Tolus, round ball of gold on the top of the vizir's standard, i. 154; vaulted roof or dome (Gr. θόλος), iii. 42.

Torneare, to take part in a tournament, ii. 451.

Torneamentum, tournament, i. 409, 413; ii. 51, 175, &c.

Toxicatus, poisoned, i. 242; iii. 124, 130. *See* Intoxicare.

Tractatus, conference, i. 73, 347.

Transalpinare, to pass the Alps, i. 51; ii. 272.

Trebuculus, Trebunculus, a warlike machine to throw large stones, Fr. *trebuchet*, i. 92, 140, 142.

Treuga, truce, i. 55; ii. 51, 74, &c.

Tribualiter, in regard to kindred (?), iii. 310.

Tridens, a harrow, i. 420.

Triellum, combat of three persons, i. 134.

Tristegus, upper room or cabin of a ship, i. 301. Used in Bibl. Vulg. Gen. vi. 16; and *see* the *Chronica Majora*, p. 731, ed. Wats.

Trista, hunting station, iii. 178. In Chaucer, *triste*, Tr. and Cr. ii. 1534.

Trivium, the course of learning including grammar, rhetoric, and dialectics, ii. 376; iii. 119.

Turbaria, turbary, turf-pit, ii. 252.

U.

Ulmetum, ad Ulmos, the Elms at Smithfield, where malefactors were hung, ii. 57, 251.

Umbraculum, canopy, ii. 7.

Umbratilis, delusive, unsatisfactory, i. 374; ii. 204, 342, 381; iii. 230.

Uncea, the animal named ounce, said in the text to be "lea notha," i. 37. Malmesbury, from whom the legend is borrowed, has *leopardus*, vol. ii. p. 469.

Utlagari, to be outlawed, ii. 131.

V.

Vadium, a pledge, i. 323.

Vassallus, a vassal, liegeman, ii. 162, 167, 307; iii. 62.

Veredarius, a carriage or carrier's horse, ii. 191; iii. 46. See *Gesta Abbat.* vol. i. p. 259.

Victricus, a father-in-law, ii. 460; iii. 66.

Virga, pastoral staff, i. 216; sceptre, ii. 6; wand of office, ii. 371.

Visio, view, survey; the same as *Visus*, ii. 273.

Visnetum, vicinity, i. 324.

Vispilio, a robber, iii. 285, 306.

Voratrum, whirlpool, abyss, iii. 299.

Vapintakium, wapentake, hundred, ii. 11.

W.

Warantizare, to warrant, iii. 129.

Warenna, warren, ii. 343, iii. 129.

Warentum, warrant, ii. 343.

Werra, war, i. 215, 270, 396, &c. *See* Guerra.

X.

Xenium, gift, present, i. 358, 360; ii. 47; iii. 99, 131. *See* Exenium.

Xenodochium, a hospital (Gr. ξενοδοχεῖον), i. 37.

Y.

Yry! Yry! a term of reproach used to the Scots, "lingua sua patria," after the battle of the Standard, i. 260. Perhaps connected with the Gaelic, *earadh*, fear. *See* Jamieson's Dict. *in v.* Ery.

Z.

Zelotipare, to covet what belongs to another (Gr. ζηλοτυπέω), i. 189; ii. 114.

Zelotipia, a coveting of another's property, i. 188.

INDEX.

INDEX.

A.

B.

E.

F.

G.

H.

I.

K.

L.

M.

N.

O.

P.

Q.

R.

S.

T.

U.

V.

W.

Y.

Z.

ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS.

[In making up the Index, the text has been again thoroughly revised, and several more errors in it (chiefly derived from Wendover) noted.]

VOL. I.

Preface, page xxiv., foot-note, col. 2, the first line has slipped from its place at the bottom of the column.

ib., page xxv., foot-note. The authority of Widmore for his assertion of the identity of *John of London* and *John Bevere* was doubtless a document still existing in the Muniment room at Westminster, for the discovery of which I am indebted to Mr. Jos. Burtt. In this document, dated 28 March 1310, the commissary of the archdeacon of London [Reginald of St. Alban's] writes to the archdeacon of Westminster, to inform him that, on account of certain "contumacia," he had excommunicated "fratrem *Johannem de Londonia dictum le Bevere.*" This would seem sufficient to *prove* the identity of the names in question.

Page 7, line 6 (in some copies), *for* Romanorum *read* Normannorum.

,, 9, line 3. So also in Wendover, but *Mercherus* is probably the same person as *Morcardus*, earl of Northumbria, mentioned in the previous line. Cf. Will. Malmesb. ii. 426, ed. Hardy, and Hen. Hunt. p. 369.

,, 11, line 6, foot-note, *add*, This statement is incorrect, since it was not *Robert Comyn*, but *Robert de Moubray*, who, at a later period, restored Tynemouth priory. *See* p. 41.

,, 23, line 25, *add foot-note*, *See* the "Gesta Abbatum S. Albani," vol. i. pp. 53-64, ed. Riley.

,, 25, line 15, *for* episcopum (as in Wendover) *read* archiepiscopum. Cf. p. 27.

,, 45, line 12. Instead of reading *Normannia* (as suggested in the "Corrigenda"), we might supply [adduxit], from W.A.C.D., before *in*, and *for* sollicitavit *read* sollicitans.

,, 52, lines 10, 11, *add* inverted commas before *factus* and after *redargutionis*, and subjoin reference to Ps. xxxvii. 15; and so again at page 359, lines 18, 19.

Page 62, line 31, *for* Cinitoth (as in MS.) *read* Civitoth.

„ 71, line 10. The name of Tancred's father is derived from William of Tyre, lib. ii. c. 13; but according to Ordericus Vitalis, lib. ix. c. 4, his name was *Odo*. He married Emma, sister of Robert Guiscard. *See* the note in "Rec. des Hist. de France," tom. xii. p. 218. The text would be correct if *for* filius we *read* frater.

„ 88, line 10, *for* comitis (as in MS.) *read* ducis, from W.A.C.D.F.

„ *ib.*, line 19, *for* Adama (as in MS.) *read* Adana.

„ 89, line 7. The form *Samosatum* is also in Wendover and William of Tyre.

„ 94, line 19, *for* multiplicarenter *read* multiplicarentur.

„ 98, line 16, *for* Haman (as in Wendover) *we should read* Hamah. Cf. Will. Tyr. p. 697.

„ 120, line 6. There is an error here, due to Wendover, from misunderstanding William of Tyre, p. 723, who writes, "Secundæ præficiunt dominum *Robertum*, qui cognominatus est *Friso*, *Flandrensem comitem*." This, however, includes another mistake, for it was the father of this Robert who was surnamed *Friso*.

„ *ib.*, line 11. Another error, also from Wendover. The count of Toulouse was left in the city, as stated, p. 121.

„ 132, line 3. A mistake, from Wendover. Earl Hugh was killed by king Magnus III. of Norway. *See* Sax. Chron. *sub anno*, and Ord. Vital. lib. x. c. 6.

„ 135, line 22, *for* Valentiam (as in Wendover) *we should read* Valeniam, now *Banias*.

„ 136, line 18. William of Tyre, p. 742, has *Maus*, and places it "supra ripam fluminis." By Spruner it is named *Ain-Makus*, or *Mau*, and by Van de Velde, *Ain-Mahûs*.

„ *ib.*, lines 27–31. This passage is not in William of Tyre, but occurs in Baldric, p. 129, and Robert of St. Remi, p. 73. The latter *reads* Bethelon, like the text, but the former Bethoron, evidently *for* Batroun.

„ *ib.*, line 29. *Arram* is also in Wendover, but is an error for *Acram*, as in Robert of St. Remi, Ord. Vital. lib. ix. c. 14, and Hen. Hunt. p. 377.

„ 137, line 4. *Elyopolis* is an error, due to Wendover. The ancient name of Lydda was *Diospolis*. *See* p. 158.

„ 145, line 6. Another mistake, also from Wendover, who has misunderstood his authority, William of Tyre, p. 758, who writes, "quem continue subsecuti sunt Ludolfus et Gilebertus, *uterini fratres*, viri nobiles, ortum habentes ex civitate Tornaco."

„ 150, line 2, *for* candalem *read* candelam.

„ 158, line 2, foot-note, *add*, This is incorrect, since *Neapolis* is the present *Nablus*.

„ 159, line 3, *before* habet *insert* [Jericho], from W.A.C.D.

„ 166, line 32. According to Ordericus Vitalis, lib. x. c. 9, *Robert de Montfort* was leader of the royal forces.

„ 167, line 33, *for* frustra *read* frusta.

Page 168, side-note, *for* Ralph *substitute* Ranulph, and this correction is required also in pp. 182, 231, 275.

„ *ib.*, foot-note, col. 1, line 18, *for* dua *read* duo.

„ 193, line 5, *after* habuerunt *insert* [Willelmum, Aquitaniæ ducem], from W.A.C.D.

„ 196, line 15, *for* Hac *read* Hoc.

„ 200, line 23, *for* Infelici (as in MS.) *read* Infelices.

„ 201, line 27, *for* præferendas (as in MS.) *read* præferendos.

„ 214, line 7, *for* Gaufridus (as in Wendover) *read* Fulco.

„ 227, line 22. Another error, from Wendover. William Crispin was not *count of Evreux*, but nephew of Amauri II., count of Evreux, by his sister Eva. *See* Ordericus Vitalis, lib. xii. c. 27, and Hen. Hunt. pp. 380, 381, ed. Savile. The side note should be corrected.

„ 228, line 23, *add* reference to "Gesta Abbatum S. Albani," vol. i. pp. 66-72.

„ 229, lines 15, 21, *for* Cereptum (as in MS.) *read* Cerepum. *See* Will. Tyr. p. 821.

„ 232, line 11, *for* Robertus (as in Wendover) *we should read* Walerannus. *See* Ord. Vit. lib. xii. c. 33, 36, and "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 693. The same correction is needed in pp. 233, 265, and vol. iii. p. 183.

„ 233, line 20. An error, due to Wendover, since Richard de Beumais, bishop of London, did not die till 1227. Cf. *postea*, p. 239.

„ 242, line 14. It was not at *Eu*, but at *Alost*, that count William of Flanders died. *See* Ord. Vit., lib. xii. c. 45.

„ 243, line 10, foot-note. *Porretanus* is probably equivalent to the Fr. *Betun*.

„ 245, line 21, foot-note, *for* successit, MS., *read* sucessit, MS.

„ 246, line 13, side-note, *for* Lincoln *substitute* Coventry.

„ 251, line 6. An error, from Wendover. Stephen, count of Boulogne (in right of his wife) was son of Stephen, count of Blois, and grandson of Theobald III. The MS. F. reads *Stephani Theobaldi*.

„ 254, line 14, *for* castellam *read* castellum.

„ 255, line 13, *after* quas *insert* [rex], from W.A.C.D.

„ 256, line 27. *Flandrensis* is an error, from Wendover, for which we should substitute *Blesensis*. *See* "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," i. 616.

„ 258, line 4, *for* Hertfordense (as in MS.) *read* Herefordense, from W.A.C.D.F.

„ 260, line 2, *for* architenentes (as in MS.) *read* arcitenentes.

„ 262, line 11, side-note, *for* castle *read* castles, *and for* town of Salisbury taken, *read* Shirburne given up.

„ *ib.*, line 15. The reading *oppidum* is also in W.A.C.D., but should be corrected *castellum*, from Hen. Hunt.

„ *ib.*, line 27, *after* reginam *insert* [duxerat], from W.A.C.D.

„ 273, line 6, foot-note, *dele the words*, An error . . . . Wendover.

„ 277, line 12, *for* Turstanum (as in Wendover) *we should read* Willelmum. Cf. p. 264.

Page, 287 line 7, *for* Lery (as in Wendover) *we should probably read* Leir, as in pp. 461, 463. It is the Château du Loir, on the Seine. Robert de Monte has *Ledi*, which the editor, in "Mon. Germ. Hist." vi. 299, has mistaken for St. Germain-en-Laie.

" 289, line 23, *for* Robertus (as in Wendover) *read* Rotrodus; as again in vol. ii. pp. 20.

" 290, line 19, *for* municipum *read* municipium.

" 291, line 17, foot-note, *add* reference to "Gesta Abbatum S. Albani," vol. i. pp. 106–110.

" 296, line 28, *after* dilexit et, *the words* dux regem *would seem to be wanting.*

" 306, line 10, side-note, *for* Normandy *substitute* Touraine.

" 319, line 30, side-note, *for* Baldwin II. *read* Baldwin III.

" 322, line 11. This Robert de Clare was never earl of Gloucester, but his grandson Richard, in right of his mother. *See* Dugdale, Baron. i. 211.

" 337, line 17, *for* Ciciliæ *read* Ciliciæ. The epithet *præsul* is a careless error, copied from Wendover. In William of Tyre, p. 760, he is styled *præses.*

" 346, line 21, *add side-note,* Consolatory letter of the king to the bishop of London.

" 351, line 15. A mistake, due to Wendover. The parents of the archbishop had died long previously.

" 356, line 4, *for* exibuerant (as in MS.) *read* exhibuerant.

" 363, last line, *for* assertioni *read* assertione.

" 373, line 13, *for* Huberti (as in Wendover) *read* Humberti.

" 374, line 20, side-note, *for* benefices *substitute* churches.

" 375, line 6, *for* Cirecestrensem (as in MS.) *read* Cicestrensem.

" 377, line 11. In Robert de Monte, Benedictus Abbas, and other writers, this invasion is ascribed to Philip, count of Flanders.

" *ib.*, line 15. This count Simon [de Montfort] was count of Evreux. *See* Robert de Monte, Append. to Sigebert, in "Rec. des Hist. de France," tom. xiii. p. 316.

" 382, line 11. *Ranulphus* is an error, from Wendover. The earl of Chester at this time was *Hugh Cyvelioc. See* Dugdale, Baron. i. 40.

" 391, line 18, *for* belii *read* belli.

" 394, line 17, foot-note, *for* 1157 *read* 1175.

" 396, line 16, the comma after *Legionum* should be placed after *terras.*

" 397, line 22. The name of the archbishop was *Arnulph*, according to "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," iii. 298, but by other authorities he is called *Arnold.*

" 399, line 25, *for* Minantcurt (as in Wendover) *read* Nunantcurt.

" 407, line 13, the note of interrogation after *protestatur* should have been a full stop.

" 421, line 9, side-note, *for* Louis *substitute* Philip.

" 428, line 10, *for* defunctorem *read* defunctorum.

" 445, line 23, side-margin, *for* 1118 *read* 1188.

" 446, line 7, *for* Jeroslimitanum *read* Jerosolimitanum.

Page 452, line 7, *for* D.lxxx°.iii°. *read* D.lxxx°.iiij°.
„ *ib.*, line 21, *for* Regem *read* Rege.
„ *ib.*, line 31. This is an error (copied from Wendover), since Conrad of Montferrat was not assassinated till 1192.
„ 457, line 11, *for* Saladinis *read* Saladinus.
„ 460, line 26, *for* Turonim (as in Wendover and Diceto), Benedictus Abbas, ii. 68, and Hoveden, *read* Chinonem.
„ *ib.*, line 29, side-note, *for* town *substitute* citadel.
„ 461, line 6, side-note, *for* Seville *substitute* Silves.
„ 462, line 13, *for* Dic *read* Dei.
„ *ib.*, line 18, side-note, *for* Meeting of the kings of England and France at, *substitute* Conference to make peace, held at.

VOL. II.

Page 5, line 26, *for* Roberti (taken from Wendover) *we should read* Willelmi. *See* Dugdale, Baron. i. 586.
„ 20, line 7, foot-note, *add*, The name, however, of *Conradus* is a mistake for *Fredericus*. *See* "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 24.
„ 26, line 5, *for* Cannarum *read* cannarum. *See* Benedictus Abbas, vol. ii. p. 155, ed. Stubbs.
„ 37, lines 2, 5. This story is given in nearly the same words in the *Chronica Majora*, p. 813, ed. Wats, but there seems to be some error. The prince of Antioch put to death by Saladin was Reginald de Châtillon, after the battle of Hittin, in 1187, and previous to the arrival of Richard in Palestine. *See* "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," i. 447.
„ *ib.*, line 15. Allusion is here made to the legend respecting the treasure of Octovian in William of Malmesbury, vol. i. p. 277.
„ 38, line 4, foot-note, *for* infra, MS., *read* imfra, MS.
„ 47, line 13, *for* qui *read* quia.
„ 48, line 15. Hoveden, p. 740, has *Barbeflet* instead of *Bruis*, for which the French translator of Paris proposes to read *Bure*.
„ 49, line 13, side-note, *for* captures *substitute* destroys.
„ 50, last line, *for* Ricardi *read* Ricardo.
„ 51, line 19. An error, copied from Wendover and Diceto, by whom *Alexius Angelus*, who dethroned his brother Isaac in 1195, is confounded with *Alexius II. Comnenus*, son of Manuel, who was strangled in 1183 by Andronicus.
„ 58, line 5, *for* facto *read* facta.
„ 61, line 11, *for* Barum *read* Burum.
„ 63, line 1, *for* eum *read* cum.
„ 71, line 3, *for* inutilum *read* inutilem.
„ 78, line 22, side-note, *for* Mans *substitute* Maine.
„ 80, line 1, *for* coronatiene *read* coronatione.

Page 82, line 9, and page 84, line 17, *for* Waillun *or* Wailun (borrowed from Wendover) *we should read* Guletune. Cf. Hoveden, pp. 795, 799, but in the second instance he substitutes *Andeli* for *Butavant.*

„ 83, line 20, *for* subsanna (as in MS.) *read* subsannans. Cf. p. 145.

„ 91, line 1, *for* dilectioniis *read* dilectionis.

„ 92, line 14, side-note, *for* Butovant *read* Butavant.

„ 96, line 11, *add side-note,* Pope Innocent proposes to extort money from the Cistercians.

„ 106, last line, foot-note, *for* copiosissimus *read* copiosissimas.

„ 108, line 3, *for* regis *read* reges.

„ 113, line 6, *for* Falco *read* Fulco.

„ *ib.*, line 12, *for* reddisset (as in MS.) *read* reddidisset.

„ 117, lines 24—27. The construction is faulty, and we should read, *non modico pecuniæ thesauro . . . . . . recepto.* The comma after *extorserat* should be placed after *Johannes.*

„ 122, line 19, side-note, *for* Will. de Brause, with his wife and son, *substitute* the wife of Will. de Brause, with her son and his wife.

„ 123, line 26, side-note, *for* Will. Brause, his wife and son, *substitute* Matilda de Brause, her son and his wife.

„ 126, line 17, foot-note, *add,* Wendover calls him "archidiaconus Norwicensis," iii. 229; perhaps erroneously. *See* Fasti, ii. 478.

„ 128, line 25. In Wendover and the *Chronica Majora*, p. 232, Eustace de Vesci is said (more correctly) to have retired to Scotland.

„ 130, line 29, *for* subdiaconem *read* subdiaconum.

„ 139, last line, *for* H[ubertus] *read* H[ugo].

„ 144, line 5. This is an error. Raymond Roger was viscount of Carcassonne, and was taken prisoner, with the city, subsequent to the capture of Beziers. These events took place in 1209. *See* "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 310.

„ 146, line 19, side-note, *for* benefices *substitute* sees and abbeys.

„ 147, 13, *for* [Johannes] *read* J[ohannes].

„ 150, line 10, side-note, *substitute* Proceedings of *before* John's, *and dele the words* carry the war into France.

„ *ib.*, line 22. The anonymous Continuator of Robert de Monte calls him "*Pellucus*, comes Theutonicus." *See* "Rec. des Hist. de France," xviii. 344. The editors remark that William Brito speaks of a *Comes Pilosus*, xvii. 249, and that under that epithet *William of Holland* is intended.

„ 154, line 16, *insert* [quam] *before* manu, to complete the sense.

„ 160, line 16. This is a mistake (copied from Wendover), for John de Gray, bishop of Norwich, died 18 Oct. 1214. Cf. *ante,* p. 153.

„ 172, line 13, *for* Ranulpho (as in Wendover) *we should read* Waleranno. Cf. *postea*, p. 296.

„ 174, line 11, *for* supensionis *read* suspensionis.

„ 181, line 7, side-note, *for* forces abroad *substitute* foreign mercenaries.

„ 189, line 12, *for* W[alteri] *read* W[illelmi].

Page 190, line 19, *for* irrecuperaliter (as in MS.) *read* irrecuperabiliter.

" 191, last line, foot-note, *add*, In a MS. in the University library, Cambridge, Hh. vi. 11, these lines are given more fully:

" Li plus beaus [Henry] à Martheus;
Le Marchis [Geoffrey] à Paris;
Li Petevin [Richard] à Limozin;
Li Sanz-tere [John] mora en Bere."

" 194, line 8, foot-note, *for* W.B.I. *read* W.B.C.I.

" 208, line 6, side-note, *for* Ralph *substitute* Ranulph, and again in pages 239, 327, 342, 422.

" 215, line 5, foot-note, *for* Poetica *read* Poetria, and so also in foot-note, p. 276.

" 220, line 7, foot-note, *for* cruicandi *read* cruciandi.

" 221, line 10, foot-note, *add*, Richard Poore, bishop of Chichester, was translated to Salisbury in May or June 1217, but had the custody of the previous bishopric till the election of his successor, Ralph de Wareham, in December. The only bishops of the name of *Hugh* at this time were Hugh de Mapenore, of Hereford, and Hugh de Welles, of Lincoln. Hugh (abbat of Beaulieu) was not elected to Carlisle till 1218. *See* Fasti, i. 239; ii. 595; iii. 231.

" 232, line 5, *for* Londiniis *read* Londoniis.

" 233, line 14. The queen alluded to was Gertrude, wife of Andrew II., who was strangled by an Hungarian noble, in consequence of the ambiguous counsel given by John, bishop of Strigonia. *See* " L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 54.

" 240, line 10. Gui, seigneur de la Ferté-Alais, brother of earl Simon of Montfort, was killed in 1228 at the siege of Vareilles. *See* " L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 806.

" *ib.*, line 13, side-note, *for* raises the siege *substitute* returns to France.

" 245, line 23, *for* querelem *read* querelam.

" 247, line 20, *for* singula *read* singuli.

" 254, line 26, *for* cum *read* eum.

" 268, line 15, *dele the comma after* Angliæ.

" 269, line 1, foot-note, *for* in vol. i. *read* antea.

" 270, line 6, side-note, *insert* Cornwall *before* Poitou.

" 286, line 8, insert the reference [5] to foot-note.

" 296, line 9, *insert* [Johannes] *after* rex, from W.B.C.

" *ib.*, lines 17, 18, *for* Henricus (copied from Wendover) *we should read* Humfridus; and *for* Willelmus (also from Wendover) *read* Henricus. *See* Dugdale, Baron. i. 72, 180.

" 300, line 8, side-note, *add* of Coventry *after* bishop.

" 322, line 16, foot-note, *read* Cessante [causa, cessa]ret et effectus.

" 325, line 4, *for* regis (as in MS.) *read* rege.

" 327, line 26, *for* Johannem (as also in Wendover) *we should read* Jacobum. *See* " Rec. des Hist. de France," xvii. 579; xx. 312.

" 334, line 2, side-note, *insert* Richard earl *before* Mareschal.

" 336, line 2, *for* Sanctam Gemmam (copied from Wendover) *we should probably read* Sanctum Geminum. *See* note in vol. iii. p. 263.

Page 337, line 6. The correction of *Novilla* is unnecessary. Cf. p. 480.

„ 342, line 7, side-note, *for* sheriff *substitute* sheriffs.

„ 346, line 15. The mayor of London at this date was *Andrew Bokerelle*. *See* MS. Harl. 565, fol. 17*b*.

„ 347, line 23, side-note, *for* Geoffrey *substitute* Godfrey.

„ 349, line 15. The nephew of the earl of Chester here alluded to was John de Laci, by marriage with Margaret de Quinci, daughter of Hawise, fourth sister of the earl. *See* Dugdale, Baron. i. 45, 102.

„ 360, line 19, side-note, *for* threatens to excommunicate *substitute* excommunicates, *and for* violaters *read* violators.

„ 362, line 3, side-note, *for* besieges *substitute* retires to.

„ 372, line 12, *for* Walterus *we should read* Petrus. Cf. *ante*, p. 319. The side-note should be corrected.

„ 387, line 6. This plea of youth could hardly have been advanced, for Richard was born in 1208 (cf. *ante*, p. 117). He was now above twenty-six years old, and had previously been sent with forces to Gascony, in 1225.

„ 388, line 25, side-note, *for* Valentia *substitute* Valence; and so again at p. 395 and elsewhere.

„ 392. The reference numbers in the text are erroneous, and should correspond with those in the foot-notes.

„ 397, line 10, *for* Vaucular *read* Vauculur.

„ 398, line 6. There is a mistake here, which occurs also in the *Chronica Majora*, p. 439. John earl of Chester was not earl of Lincoln. Cf. *ante*, p. 349, and additional note. In Dugdale, i. 45, his death is erroneously assigned to 1244.

„ *ib.*, line 15, *insert the words* [sancti Nicholai] *before* in carcere, from B.C.

„ 409, line 11, *for* rediit *read* redit.

„ 413, line 19, *for* festimanter *read* festinanter.

„ 415, line 9. The word *multos* is repeated superfluously.

„ 419, side-margin, *for* 1293 *read* 1239.

„ *ib.*, line 16. Walter de Cantelupe was consecrated bishop of Worcester at Viterbo, in 1237. *See* Stubbs, "Registr. Sacr. Anglicanum," p. 40; and cf. *ante*, p. 398.

„ 422, line 12, *for* W[altero] *read* W[illelmo].

„ *ib.*, last line. In MS. B. the name of *Girarde Bat* is added in the margin, as the name of the mayor. His name in MS. Harl. 565, fol. 17*b*., is given as William *Joynour*.

„ 425, line 9, *for* inundationes (as in MS.) *we should read* inundatio, *or change the verb to the plural.* Similar solecisms occur in p. 490, and in vol. iii. p. 54.

„ 431, line 2, side-note, *for* David *substitute* Griffin.

„ 432, line 7, *for* augustiis *read* angustiis.

„ 436, lines 2–5. A careless error, and so again in vol. iii. p. 281. The death of *John Scot*, earl of Chester, has already been noticed in 1237, p. 398 *ante*, and the person here meant was *John de Laci*, earl of *Lincoln*, referred to in p. 349. He was never earl of *Chester*.

Page 437, last line. Another error. Hamelin, earl of Warren, was the natural son of Geoffrey of Anjou, the father of Henry II. *See* Dugdale, Baron. i. 76.

„ 438, line 6, foot-note, *add*, The name is not given in B.C., but he is there designated " Canonicus Lichefeldensis."

„ 443, line 12. The *unus* referred to was Almaric, count of Montfort.

„ 447, line 17. An error, since the eldest son of Waldemar II. (also named Waldemar) died before his father, in 1231. *See* " L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 89.

„ *ib.*, line 18, side-note, *for* brothers *substitute* sons.

„ *ib.*, line 24, *for* Æthelmarus (as in MS.) *read* Waldemarus.

„ 450, line 3. In the *Chronica Majora*, p. 564, he is falsely called *Henricus*, and hence confounded here with *Ensius*, the person meant. Henry was then in prison, where he died. *See* p. 468.

„ 457, line 2. James, bishop of Palestrina, really died 26 June 1244. *See* Ciacconius, " Vit. Pontif." ii. 87.

„ 458, line 9, foot-note, *add*, Henry de Cornhulle succeeded William of St. Mary Church as dean of St. Paul's, from 1243 to 1254. *See* Fasti, ii. 309.

„ 469, line 12, foot-note, *for* quoniam *read* quem.

„ *ib.*, line 23, side-note, *for* select *substitute* elect.

„ 473, line 26, side-note, *for* excommunicates the city *substitute* lays the city under an interdict.

„ 490, line 12. This is not correct. On the death of Engelram III. de Coucy, his eldest son *Raoul* succeeded, on whose death, in 1250, his brother Engelram IV. succeeded. *John*, the third son, was Seigneur de Chimai. *See* " L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 719.

„ 495, line 19, side-note, *for* Rome *substitute* the Roman court; and again, p. 498.

„ 497, line 16, *for* spiritualis *read* specialis.

„ 500, line 14, side-note, *for* Matthew Fitz-Herbert *substitute* Herbert Fitz-Matthew.

„ 503, line 11, side-note, *for* legate *substitute* nuncio.

„ 507, line 19. Perhaps the comma after *Arcubalastarius* should be placed after *Reimundus*. *See* the *Chronica Majora*, p. 683, and cf. vol. iii. p. 296.

„ 509, line 12. No cardinal of this name occurs in Ciacconius. Perhaps *Galfridus de Trano*, the author of the compilation on the Decretals is meant, who is designated by Fabricius, " subdiaconus ecclesiæ Romanæ et capellanus Pontificis."

„ *ib.*, last line, foot-note, *add*, The blason is false, as appears by previous instances at pp. 232, 331, &c.; and in the Chetham MS. of the *Flores Historiarum*, the same shields are coloured by Matthew Paris, *or* and *vert*, a lion rampant *gules*.

„ 510, line 19, *supply the name* W[alteri], from Dugdale, Baron. i. 98.

VOL. III.

Page 6, line 7, a phrase taken from Terence, *Phormio*, act i. sc. 4, 9.

" 9, line 20. This John de *Hotoft* is the same person as John de *Hou-tune*, previously archdeacon of Bedford. *See* vol. ii. pp. 279, 309, and Fasti, ii. 55, 72.

" 20, note. Here, and in p. 31, *for* Newcastle *read* de Castro-Novo. It is probable that his name was *Châteauneuf* or *Castelnau*, but I have not succeeded in identifying him.

" 22, line 20, *for* visitationem *read* visitatione, and *add side note*, "Composition between Durham and St. Alban's, relative to Tyne-mouth."

" 27, line 6, *supply* commas " *after* mutiletur.

" 31, line 18, *M*[*argareta*] is an error (repeated in p. 302). Her name was *Agnes*, daughter of Ranulph, earl of Chester. *See* Dugdale, Baron, i. 261.

" *ib.*, line 21. The bishop did not die till 11 July 1255. *See* Fasti, i. 292.

" 35, line 13. This projected marriage with a daughter of the duke of Saxony never took place. *See* Kington, "History of Frederick the Second," ii. 427.

" 36, line 25, side-note. Here, and in pp. 58, 77, 82, 87, 309, *for* Rome *read* the court of Rome. The pope was at Lyons from 1245 to 1250 inclusive.

" 40, line 11. This Patrick was earl of Dunbar, and grandson of William the Lion by his natural daughter Ada. He died at Damietta. *See* Gibson, "History of Tynemouth," i. 88.

" 45, line 10, *for* Arethimum *read* Arethinum.

" 51, line 21, foot-note, *for* postularetur *read* postularentur.

" *ib.*, line 25, *add side-note*, Preaching of the Mendicant Orders in behalf of the Crusade.

" 53, line 22. I cannot identify *Volsa*. The French translator of Matthew Paris conjectures *Zwetfalt*.

" 58, line 5. The sense would be clearer if *papæ* was supplied before *suggesserat*.

" 63, line 3, *for* Johannis (as in MS.) *read* Galfridi.

" 66, line 17, *supply* [rex] *after* dominus, from B.C.

" 68, line 19, *for* filiam *read* filium.

" 69, line 18, *for* Wigorniensis (as in MS.) *we should probably read* Wintoniensis. Cf. p. 75.

" *ib.*, line 19, *for* Oxoniensi et Bedefordensi *read* Oxoniensis et Bedefordensis.

" 84, note, line 18, *for* bend *read* label. In regard to the inscription, "*Engelrami* de Cusci," it was *Raoul*, the eldest son of Engelram, who was killed at Mansourah. *See* "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," i. 719.

" 88, line 13. The side-note should be brought down to this line.

" *ib.*, line 14, *for* amorum *read* annorum.

" 89, line 16. This event happened in 1213. *See* the *Chronica Majora*, p. 245.

Page 92, line 6, *for* Æthelmarum (as in MS.) *read* Waldemarum. Cf. vol. ii. p. 447.

" 100, line 6, side-note, *for* is exchanged *substitute* proposed to be exchanged.

" 102, 103, *add side-notes*, Number of the slain in the French army, *and* Amount of ransom paid for Louis IX.

" 103, line 33. In the *Chronica Majora*, p. 861, this event is entered under 1253, and so *postea*, p. 133.

" 108, line 15, *for* Romæ (as in MS.) *we should probably read* Lugduni. The word is omitted in B. *See* "Registr. Sacr. Anglic." p. 42.

" 114, line 1. The first portion of the rubric does not apply to the present text, on account of the omission of a passage, which occurs in the *Chronica Majora*, p. 826. In the side-note, *for* council *substitute* chapter.

" 117, line 20, side-note, *for* Alexander II. *substitute* Alexander III.

" 118, line 5, side-note, *for* le Noreys *substitute* de Ros. Cf. *postea*, p. 322, and Dugdale, Baron. i. 554.

" 119, line 26, side-note, *add* of Gloucester *after* Richard.

" 122, line 4, *for* Andefulsus (as in MS.) *we should read* Ferdinandus. The same error occurs in vol. ii. p. 390, and vol. iii. pp. 304, 322. The side-notes should be corrected.

" 130, line 23. In B. is added, "Petrus nomine."

" 134, line 13, side-note, *for* for Gascony *substitute* for raising forces for Gascony, and other purposes.

" 140, line 14, *for* confugente (as in MS.) *read* confugiente.

" 144, line 21, side-note, *for* Ralph *substitute* Ranulph, and again in pp. 177, 265.

" 147, line 19. The *alienigena* was, probably, Peter of Savoy. *See* Dugdale, Baron. i. 93.

" 154, foot-note, col. 1, line 10, *for* mana *read* manu.

" 160, line 16. An error, copied from Wendover. The children alluded to were sons of Ælfhelm, earl of Deira. *See* Flor. Wig. i. 158.

" 164, line 14. Another error, also from Wendover. Alfred was the younger of the two Æthelings.

" 167, line 18. This is a mistake. It was Leovigar, who was killed by Griffith, king of Wales. Cf. Wendover, i. 496.

" 168, line 5, foot-note, *add*, The sense, however, of the passage, requires us to read *Haroldus* instead of *Godwinus*.

" 175, line 19, *for* Lamfrancus (as in MS., but partially erased,) *read* Anselmus, *and correct the side-note.*

" 176, line 3. So in MS., but *for* Maniæ *we should probably read* Viromandiæ. Cf. vol. i. p. 193.

" 182, line 38, *for* Radulphus (as in MS.) *read* Johannes, *and correct the side-note.* Cf. *Hist. Angl.* i. 231.

" 183, lines 15, 27, *for* Robertus (as in MS.) *read* Walerannus.

" 184, line 13, side-note, *for* bishop *substitute* archbishop.

" 187, line 23, foot-note. The words wanting may be thus supplied, "[xi. milia] Scotorum [ibi ceci]derunt."

" 188, line 20, side-note, *for* Albert *substitute* Alberic.

Page 204, line 26, *for* Rogerus (as in MS.) *read* Walterus. Cf. *Hist. Angl.* i. 424.
,, 224, line 5, *for* Cicestrensis (as in MS.) *read* Cestrensis.
,, 225, line 36, side-note, *for* Reginald *substitute* Roger.
,, 231, lines 14, 15, *for* Thomas *and* Galfridus (as in MS.) *read* Johannes *and* Gilebertus.
,, 242, line 4. *Hugo* is an error. *See* addit. note on vol. ii. p. 221 *n.*
,, 248, line 11, foot-note, *for* quem *read* qui eum. Cf. p. 231.
,, 256, line 26, *for* Marescalli *read* marescalli.
,, 268, line 31. After *conabatur* a verb is wanting; perhaps *ordinare.*
,, 269, line 35, *for* mortificarenter *read* mortificarentur.
,, 279, line 21, *for* Conventrensi *read* Coventrensi.
,, 280, lines 30, 31. The statement here is erroneous. The General Council was summoned at Rome, and the pope did not take refuge at Lyons till 1245. Cf. *postea*, p. 298.
,, 283, line 3, for *Abel et Christoforus* it would be more correct to read *Ericus et Abel.* Cf. *Hist. Angl.* ii. 447.
,, 296, line 18. It was John I., count of Dreux (son of Robert III.) who took the cross, and died at Nicosia in 1248. *See* "L'Art de Vérifier les Dates," ii. 673.
,, 304, line 29, side-note, *for* Letter from *substitute* Letters patent of *and for* to *substitute* in behalf of.
,, 305, line 9, *supply dots . . . before* Hylarii.
,, 306, line 6, *for* Scottona (as in MS.) *read* Stoctona. Cf. pp. 44, 321.
,, 309, line 9, *for* regis (as in MS.) *read* regem.
,, 314, line 20, *dele* de *before* Passelewe, *and so also in the note.*
,, 328, line 19, side-note, *for* Marriage of Roger Bigod *substitute* Roger Bigod takes back his wife.
,, 345, line 28. The person alluded to is probably Berthold, margrave of Hohenburg. *See* Rymer, *Fœdera*, vol. i., *sub anno* 1254, and cf. 1256, p. 339, ed. 1816.
,, 348, line 5. This mission was in reference to the projected marriage of the king's daughter Beatrice to the brother of Alfonso of Castille. *See* Rymer, vol. i. pp. 325, 340.

INDEX.

Page 392, col. 2, line 2, *after* Bresnes *insert* John de.
,, 399, col. 1, line 24, *dele* earl.

LONDON:
Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
[.—750.—9/68.]

CATALOGUE

OF

RECORD PUBLICATIONS

ON SALE

BY

Messrs. Longman & Co., London;
Messrs. James Parker & Co., Oxford and London;
Messrs. Macmillan & Co., Cambridge and London;
Messrs. A. & C. Black, Edinburgh;
and Mr. A. Thom, Dublin.

CONTENTS.

..S OF STATE PAPERS, &c.

..L 8vo., cloth. *Price* 15*s*. each Volume or Part.]

---

back as the year 1800, a Committee of the House of Commons ..nded that Indexes and Calendars should be made to the Public ..s, and thirty-six years afterwards another Committee of the House of ..ons reiterated that recommendation in more forcible words; but it not until the incorporation of the State Paper Office with the Public ..cord Office that the present Master of the Rolls found himself in a position .. take the necessary steps for carrying out the wishes of the House of Commons.

On 7 December 1855, he stated to the Lords of the Treasury that although "the Records, State Papers, and Documents in his charge constitute the most "complete and perfect series of their kind in the civilized world," and although "they are of the greatest value in a historical and constitutional "point of view, yet they are comparatively useless to the public, from the "want of proper Calendars and Indexes."

Acting upon the recommendations of the Committees of the House of Commons above referred to, he suggested to the Lords of the Treasury that to effect the object he had in view it would be necessary for him to employ a few persons fully qualified to perform the work which he contemplated.

Their Lordships assented to the necessity of having Calendars prepared and printed, and empowered the Master of the Rolls to take such steps as might be necessary for this purpose.

The following Works have been already published under the direction of the Master of the Rolls:—

CALENDARIUM GENEALOGICUM; for the Reigns of Henry III. and Edward I. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 2 Vols. 1865.

> This is a work of great value for elucidating the early history of our nobility and landed gentry.

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reigns of Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* Robert Lemon, Esq., F.S.A. 1856–1865.

Vol. I.—1547–1580. | Vol. II.—1581–1590.

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth (continued), preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* Mary Anne Everett Green. 1867–1869.

Vol. III.—1591–1594. | Vol. IV.—1595–1597.

The first, second, third, and fourth volumes are published, extending from 1547 to 1597.

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reign of James I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* Mary Anne Everett Green. 1857–1859.

Vol. I.—1603–1610. | Vol. III.—1619–1623.
Vol. II.—1611–1618. | Vol. IV.—1623–1625, with Addenda.

Mrs. Everett Green has completed a Calendar of the Domestic State Papers of the reign of James I. in four volumes. The mass of historical matter thus rendered accessible to investigation is large and important. It throws new light on the Gunpowder-plot; the rise and fall of Somerset; the particulars connected with the Overbury murder; the disgrace of Sir Edward Coke; and other matters connected with the reign.

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reign of Charles I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* John Bruce, Esq., F.S.A. 1858–1868.

Vol. I.—1625–1626. | Vol. VII.—1634–1635.
Vol. II.—1627–1628. | Vol. VIII.—1635.
Vol. III.—1628–1629. | Vol. IX.—1635–1636.
Vol. IV.—1629–1631. | Vol. X.—1636–1637.
Vol. V.—1631–1633. | Vol. XI.—1637.
Vol. VI.—1633–1634.

This Calendar is in continuation of that of the Domestic State Papers of the reign of James I., and will extend to the Restoration of Charles II. At present it comprises the first thirteen years of the reign of Charles I., but is in active progress towards completion. It presents notices of a large number of original documents of great value to all inquirers into the history of the period to which it relates. Many of these documents have been hitherto unknown.

Calendar of State Papers, Domestic Series, of the Reign of Charles II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* Mary Anne Everett Green. 1860–1866.

Vol. I.—1660–1661. | Vol. V.—1665–1666.
Vol. II.—1661–1662. | Vol. VI.—1666–1667.
Vol. III.—1663–1664. | Vol. VII.—1667.
Vol. IV.—1664–1665.

Seven volumes, of the period between 1660 and 1667, have been published.

Calendar of State Papers relating to Scotland, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* Markham John Thorpe, Esq., of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 1858.

Vol. I., the Scottish Series, of the Reigns of Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, 1509–1589.

Vol. II., the Scottish Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth, 1589–1603; an Appendix to the Scottish Series, 1543–1592; and the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots during her Detention in England, 1568–1587.

The above two volumes of State Papers relate to Scotland, and embrace the period between 1509 and 1603. In the second volume are notices of the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots.

Calendar of State Papers relating to Ireland, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* Hans Claude Hamilton, Esq., F.S.A. 1860–1867.

Vol. I.—1509–1573. | Vol. II.—1574–1585.

The above two volumes of Irish State Papers, between 1509 and 1585, have been published under the editorship of Mr. Hans Claude Hamilton; and another volume is in progress.

Calendar of State Papers, Colonial Series, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. Noel Sainsbury, Esq. 1860–1862.

Vol. I.—America and West Indies, 1574–1660.
Vol. II.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1513–1616.

The first volume is a Calendar of Colonial Papers relating to America and the West Indies, from 1574 to 1660. The second volume relates to the East Indies, China, and Japan, from 1513 to 1616. They include an analysis of all Papers from the three great archives of the Public Record Office, the India Office, and the British Museum. The third volume is in the press. The regular series of the East India Papers in the Public Record Office are calendared to the year 1623; those relating to the same subject in the Domestic Correspondence to 1625; and in the Foreign Correspondence to 1621; the Court Minutes of the East India Company to 1621; and the Original Correspondence in the India Office to 1621. Many undated Papers have been dated and arranged.

Calendar of Letters and Papers, Foreign and Domestic, of the Reign of Henry VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1862–1867.

Vol. I.—1509–1514.
Vol. II. (in Two Parts)—1515–1518.
Vol. III. (in Two Parts)—1519–1523.

These volumes contain summaries of all State Papers and Correspondence relating to the reign of Henry VIII., in the Public Record Office, of those formerly in the State Paper Office, in the British Museum, the Libraries of Oxford and Cambridge, and other Public Libraries; and of all letters that have appeared in print in the works of Burnet, Strype, and others. Whatever authentic original material exists in England relative to the religious, political, parliamentary, or social history of the country during the reign of Henry VIII., whether despatches of ambassadors, or proceedings of the army, navy, treasury, or ordnance, or records of Parliament, appointments of officers, grants from the Crown, &c., will be found calendared in these volumes.

Calendar of State Papers, Foreign Series, of the Reign of Edward VI., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1547–1553. *Edited by* W. B. Turnbull, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

Calendar of State Papers, Foreign Series, of the Reign of Mary, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1553–1558. *Edited by* W. B. Turnbull, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

The two preceding volumes exhibit the negotiations of the English ambassadors with the courts of the Emperor Charles V. of Germany, of Henry II. of France, and of Philip II. of Spain. The affairs of several of the minor continental states also find various incidental illustrations of much interest.

A valuable series of Papers descriptive of the circumstances which attended the loss of Calais merits a special notice; while the progress of the wars in the north of France, into which England was dragged by her union with Spain, is narrated at some length. The domestic affairs of England are of course passed over in these volumes, which treat only of its relations with foreign powers.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, &c. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham. 1863–1867.

Vol. I.—1558–1559.
Vol. II.—1559–1560.
Vol. III.—1560–1561.
Vol. IV.—1561–1562.
Vol. V.—1562.

These five volumes contain a calendar of the Foreign Correspondence of Queen Elizabeth, from her accession in 1558, to 1562, of which the originals, drafts, or contemporary copies, are deposited in the Public Record Office, &c. These documents are of the greatest value as exhibiting the position of England at one of the most interesting periods of history, in regard to its relations with France, Scotland, Spain, and Germany. They are of especial importance as illustrating not only the external but also the domestic affairs of France during the period which immediately preceded the outbreak of the first great war of religion under the Prince of Condé and the Duke of Guise.

CALENDAR OF TREASURY PAPERS, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1557–1696. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq. 1868.

The Papers connected with the administration of the affairs of the Treasury, from 1556–7 to 1696, comprising petitions, reports, and other documents relating to services rendered to the State, grants of money and pensions, appointments to offices, remissions of fines and duties, &c., are calendared in this volume. They illustrate civil and military events, financial and other matters, the administration in Ireland and the Colonies, &c., and afford information nowhere else recorded.

CALENDAR OF THE CAREW PAPERS, preserved in Lambeth Library. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London; and WILLIAM BULLEN, Esq. 1867–1869.

Vol. I.—1515–1574.
Vol. II.—1575–1588.
Vol. III.—1589–1600.

The Carew Papers relating to Ireland deposited in the Lambeth Library are not only unique in themselves, but are of great importance. Three volumes of the Calendar of these valuable Papers have been published, extending from 1515 to 1600, which cannot fail to be welcome to all students of Irish history. Another volume is in the press.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. BERGENROTH. 1862–1868.

Vol. I.—Hen. VII.—1485–1509.
Vol. II.—Hen. VIII.—1509–1525.
Supplement to Vol. I. and Vol. II.

Mr. Bergenroth was engaged in compiling a Calendar of the Papers relating to England preserved in the archives of Simancas in Spain, and the corresponding portion removed from Simancas to Paris. It was deemed essential that Mr. Bergenroth should also visit Madrid, and examine the Papers there, bearing on the reign of Henry VIII. The first volume contains the Spanish Papers of the reign of Henry VII.; the second volume, those of the first portion of the reign of Henry VIII. The Supplement to Vols. I. and II. contains new information relating to the private life of Queen Katharine of England; and to the projected marriage of Henry VII. with Queen Juana, widow of King Philip of Castile, and mother of the Emperor Charles V.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. 1864–1867.
Vol. I.—1202–1509.
Vol. II.—1509–1519.

Of the Papers in the Venetian archives, Mr. Rawdon Brown has published two volumes of his Calendar, extending from 1202 to 1519, and has made considerable progress in the third volume. Mr. Brown's researches have brought to light a number of important documents relating to the various periods of English history, and his contributions to historical literature are of the most interesting and important character.

REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS AND THE REV. J. S. BREWER TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS, upon the Carte and Carew Papers in the Bodleian and Lambeth Libraries. 1864. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS, upon the Documents in the Archives and Public Libraries of Venice. 1866. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

In the Press.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. Vol. III.—East Indies, China, and Japan. 1617, &c.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham. Vol. VI.—1563.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vol. IV.—1524, &c.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. Vol. III.—1520–1526.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. XII.—1637–1638.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH (continued), preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. Vol. V.—1598–1600.

CALENDAR OF THE CAREW PAPERS, preserved in Lambeth Library. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London; and WILLIAM BULLEN, Esq. Vol. IV.—1601, &c.

SYLLABUS, IN ENGLISH, OF RYMER'S FŒDERA; with Index. Vol. I.

In Progress.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. III.—1586, &c.

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

[ROYAL 8vo., half-bound. *Price* 10*s.* each Volume or Part.]

On 25 July 1822, the House of Commons presented an address to the Crown, stating that the editions of the works of our ancient historians were inconvenient and defective; that many of their writings still remained in manuscript, and, in some cases, in a single copy only. They added, "that an "uniform and convenient edition of the whole, published under His Majesty's "royal sanction, would be an undertaking honourable to His Majesty's reign, "and conducive to the advancement of historical and constitutional know-"ledge; that the House therefore humbly besought His Majesty, that He "would be graciously pleased to give such directions as His Majesty, in His "wisdom, might think fit, for the publication of a complete edition of the "ancient historians of this realm, and assured His Majesty that whatever "expense might be necessary for this purpose would be made good."

The Master of the Rolls, being very desirous that effect should be given to the resolution of the House of Commons, submitted to Her Majesty's Treasury in 1857 a plan for the publication of the ancient chronicles and memorials of the United Kingdom, and it was adopted accordingly. In selecting these works, it was considered right, in the first instance, to give preference to those of which the manuscripts were unique, or the materials of which would help to fill up blanks in English history for which no satisfactory and authentic information hitherto existed in any accessible form. One great object the Master of the Rolls had in view was to form a *corpus historicum* within reasonable limits, and which should be as complete as possible. In a subject of so vast a range, it was important that the historical student should be able to select such volumes as conformed with his own peculiar tastes and studies, and not be put to the expense of purchasing the whole collection; an inconvenience inseparable from any other plan than that which has been in this instance adopted.

Of the Chronicles and Memorials, the following volumes have been published. They embrace the period from the earliest time of British history down to the end of the reign of Henry VII.

1. The Chronicle of England, by John Capgrave. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.

John Capgrave was prior of Lynn, in Norfolk, and provincial of the order of the Friars Hermits of England shortly before the year 1464. His Chronicle extends from the creation of the world to the year 1417. As a record of the language spoken in Norfolk (being written in English), it is of considerable value.

2. Chronicon Monasterii de Abingdon. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1858.

This Chronicle traces the history of the great Benedictine monastery of Abingdon in Berkshire, from its foundation by King Ina of Wessex, to the reign of Richard I., shortly after which period the present narrative was drawn up by an inmate of the establishment. The author had access to the title-deeds of the house, and incorporates into his history various charters of the Saxon kings, which are of great importance as illustrating not only the history of the locality but that of the kingdom. The work is now printed for the first time.

3. Lives of Edward the Confessor. I.—La Estoire de Seint Aedward le Rei. II.—Vita Beati Edvardi Regis et Confessoris. III.—Vita Æduuardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1858.

The first is a poem in Norman French, containing 4,686 lines. It is addressed to Alianor, Queen of Henry III., and was probably written in the year 1245, on the occasion of the restoration of the church of Westminster. Nothing is known of the author.

The second is an anonymous poem, containing 536 lines, written between the years 1440 and 1450, by command of Henry VI., to whom it is dedicated. Though it does not throw any new light on the reign of Edward the Confessor, yet it is valuable as a specimen of the Latin poetry of the time.

The third, also by an anonymous author, was apparently written for Queen Edith, between the years 1066 and 1074, during the pressure of the suffering brought on the Saxons by the Norman conquest. It notices many facts not found in other writers, and some which differ considerably from the usual accounts.

4. Monumenta Franciscana; scilicet, I.—Thomas de Eccleston de Adventu Fratrum Minorum in Angliam. II.—Adæ de Marisco Epistolæ. III.—Registrum Fratrum Minorum Londoniæ. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1858.

This volume contains original materials for the history of the settlement of the order of Saint Francis in England, the letters of Adam de Marisco, and other papers connected with the foundation and diffusion of this great body. It has been the aim of the editor to collect whatever historical information could be found in this country, in the British Museum, or elsewhere, towards illustrating a period of the national history for which only scanty materials exist. None of these have been before printed.

5. Fasciculi Zizaniorum Magistri Johannis Wyclif cum Tritico. Ascribed to Thomas Netter, of Walden, Provincial of the Carmelite Order in England, and Confessor to King Henry the Fifth. *Edited by* the Rev. W. W. Shirley, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. 1858.

This work derives its principal value from the fact that it is the only contemporaneous account of the rise of the Lollards. At the time when it was written, the disputes of the schoolmen had been extended to the field of theology, and they appear both in the writings of Wycliff and in those of his adversaries.

Wycliff's little bundles of tares are not less metaphysical than theological, and the conflict between Nominalists and Realists rages side by side with the conflict between the different interpreters of Scripture. The "Fasciculi Zizaniorum" gives a good idea of the controversies which were carried on at the end of the 14th and the beginning of the 15th centuries.

6. The Buik of the Croniclis of Scotland; or, A Metrical Version of the History of Hector Boece; by William Stewart. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. B. Turnbull, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law. 1858.

This is a metrical translation of a Latin Prose Chronicle, and was written in the first half of the 16th century. The narrative begins with the earliest legends, and ends with the death of James I. of Scotland, and the "evil ending of the traitors that slew him." Strict accuracy of statement is not to be looked for in such a work as this; but the stories of the colonization of Spain, Ireland, and Scotland are interesting if not true; and the chronicle is valuable as a reflection of the manners, sentiments, and character of the age in which it was composed.

The peculiarities of the Scottish dialect are well illustrated in this metrical version of Boece's work, and the student of language will here find ample materials for comparison with the English dialects of the same period, and with modern lowland Scotch.

7. Johannis Capgrave Liber de Illustribus Henricis. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.

This work is dedicated to Henry VI. of England, who appears to have been, in the author's estimation, the greatest of all the Henries. It is divided into three distinct parts, each having its own separate dedication. The first part relates only to the history of the Empire, and extends from the election of Henry I., the Fowler, to the end of the reign of the Emperor Henry VI. The second part is devoted to English history, and extends from the accession of Henry I. in the year 1100, to the year 1446 which was the twenty-fourth year of the reign of King Henry VI. The third part contains the lives of illustrious men who have borne the name of Henry in various parts of the world.

Capgrave was born in 1393, in the reign of Richard II., and lived during the Wars of the Roses, for the history of which period his work is of some value.

8. Historia Monasterii S. Augustini Cantuariensis, by Thomas of Elmham, formerly Monk and Treasurer of that Foundation. *Edited by* Charles Hardwick, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's Hall, and Christian Advocate in the University of Cambridge. 1858.

This history extends from the arrival of St. Augustine in Kent until 1191. Prefixed is a chronology as far as 1418, which shows in outline what was to have been the character of the work when completed. The only copy known is in the possession of Trinity Hall, Cambridge. The author was connected with Norfolk, and most probably with Elmham, whence he derived his name.

9. Eulogium (Historiarum sive Temporis): Chronicon ab Orbe condito usque ad Annum Domini 1366; a Monacho quodam Malmesbiriensi exaratum. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* F. S. Haydon, Esq., B.A. 1858–1863.

This is a Latin Chronicle extending from the Creation to the latter part of the reign of Edward III., and written by a monk of the Abbey of Malmesbury, in Wiltshire, about the year 1367. A continuation, carrying the history of England

down to the year 1413, was added in the former half of the fifteenth century by an author whose name is not known. The original Chronicle is divided into five books, and contains a history of the world generally, but more especially of England to the year 1366. The continuation extends the history down to the coronation of Henry V. The Eulogium itself is chiefly valuable as containing a history, by a contemporary, of the period between 1356 and 1366. The notices of events appear to have been written very soon after their occurrence. Among other interesting matter, the Chronicle contains a diary of the Poitiers campaign, evidently furnished by some person who accompanied the army of the Black Prince. The continuation of the Chronicle is also the work of a contemporary, and gives a very interesting account of the reigns of Richard II. and Henry IV. It is believed to be the earliest authority for the statement that the latter monarch died in the Jerusalem Chamber at Westminster.

10. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE SEVENTH: Bernardi Andreæ Tholosatis Vita Regis Henrici Septimi; necnon alia quædam ad eundem Regem spectantia. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1858.

The contents of these volumes are—(1) a life of Henry VII., by his poet laureate and historiographer, Bernard André, of Toulouse, with some compositions in verse, of which he is supposed to have been the author; (2) the journals of Roger Machado during certain embassies on which he was sent by Henry VII. to Spain and Brittany, the first of which had reference to the marriage of the King's son, Arthur, with Catharine of Arragon; (3) two curious reports by envoys sent to Spain in the year 1505 touching the succession to the Crown of Castile, and a project of marriage between Henry VII. and the Queen of Naples; and (4) an account of Philip of Castile's reception in England in 1506. Other documents of interest in connexion with the period are given in an appendix.

11. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE FIFTH. I.—Vita Henrici Quinti, Roberto Redmanno auctore. II.—Versus Rhythmici in laudem Regis Henrici Quinti. III.—Elmhami Liber Metricus de Henrico V. *Edited by* CHARLES A. COLE, Esq. 1858.

This volume contains three treatises which more or less illustrate the history of the reign of Henry V., viz.: A Life by Robert Redman; a Metrical Chronicle by Thomas Elmham, prior of Lenton, a contemporary author; Versus Rhythmici, written apparently by a monk of Westminster Abbey, who was also a contemporary of Henry V. These works are printed for the first time.

12. MUNIMENTA GILDHALLÆ LONDONIENSIS; Liber Albus, Liber Custumarum, et Liber Horn, in archivis Gildhallæ asservati. Vol. I., Liber Albus. Vol. II. (in Two Parts), Liber Custumarum. Vol. III., Translation of the Anglo-Norman Passages in Liber Albus, Glossaries, Appendices, and Index. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1859–1862.

The manuscript of the *Liber Albus*, compiled by John Carpenter, Common Clerk of the City of London in the year 1419, a large folio volume, is preserved in the Record Room of the City of London. It gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of that City in the twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, and early part of the fifteenth centuries.

The *Liber Custumarum* was compiled probably by various hands in the early part of the fourteenth century during the reign of Edward II. The manuscript, a folio volume, is also preserved in the Record Room of the City of London, though some portion in its original state, borrowed from the City in the reign of Queen Elizabeth and never returned, forms part of the Cottonian MS. Claudius D. II. in the British Museum. It also gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of the City of London in the twelfth, thirteenth, and early part of the fourteenth centuries.

13. Chronica Johannis de Oxenedes. *Edited by* Sir Henry Ellis, K.H. 1859.

Although this Chronicle tells of the arrival of Hengist and Horsa in England in the year 449, yet it substantially begins with the reign of King Alfred, and comes down to the year 1292, where it ends abruptly. The history is particularly valuable for notices of events in the eastern portions of the kingdom, which are not to be elsewhere obtained, and some curious facts are mentioned relative to the floods in that part of England, which are confirmed in the Friesland Chronicle of Anthony Heinrich, pastor of the Island of Mohr.

14. A Collection of Political Poems and Songs relating to English History, from the Accession of Edward III. to the Reign of Henry VIII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* Thomas Wright, Esq., M.A. 1859-1861.

These Poems are perhaps the most interesting of all the historical writings of the period, though they cannot be relied on for accuracy of statement. They are various in character; some of them are upon religious subjects, some may be called satires, and some give no more than a court scandal; but as a whole they present a very fair picture of society, and of the relations of the different classes to one another.

The period comprised is in itself interesting, and brings us, through the decline of the feudal system, to what may be considered the beginning of our modern history. The songs in old English are of considerable interest to the philologist.

15. The "Opus Tertium," "Opus Minus," &c., of Roger Bacon. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1859.

This is the celebrated treatise—which, up to this time, had never been printed—so frequently referred to by the great philosopher in his works. It contains the fullest details we possess of the life and labours of Roger Bacon. The volume also contains a fragment by the same author, supposed to be unique, the "*Compendium Studii Theologiæ.*"

16. Bartholomæi de Cotton, Monachi Norwicensis, Historia Anglicana; 449–1298: necnon ejusdem Liber de Archiepiscopis et Episcopis Angliæ. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1859.

The author, a monk of Norwich, has here given us a Chronicle of England from the arrival of the Saxons in 449 to the year 1298, in or about which year it appears that he died. The latter portion of this history (the whole of the reign of Edward I. more especially) is of great value, as the writer was contemporary with the events which he records. An Appendix contains several illustrative documents connected with the previous narrative.

17. Brut y Tywysogion; or, The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales. *Edited by* the Rev. John Williams ab Ithel, M.A. 1860.

This work, which is also known as "The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales," has been attributed to Caradoc of Llancarvan, who flourished about the middle of the twelfth century. It is written in the ancient Welsh language, begins with the abdication and death of Caedwala at Rome, in the year 681, and continues the history down to the subjugation of Wales by Edward I., about the year 1282.

18. A Collection of Royal and Historical Letters during the Reign of Henry IV. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. Hingeston, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1860.

This volume, like all the others in the series containing a miscellaneous selection of letters, is valuable on account of the light it throws upon biographical history, and the familiar view it presents of characters, manners, and events of ... The period (1399 to 1404) required much elucidation; to which the ...naterially contribute.

19. The Repressor of over much Blaming of the Clergy. By Reginald Pecock, sometime Bishop of Chichester. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* Churchill Babington, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1860.

The "Repressor" may be considered the earliest piece of good theological disquisition of which our English prose literature can boast. The author was born about the end of the fourteenth century, was consecrated Bishop of St. Asaph in the year 1444, and translated to the see of Chichester in 1450. While Bishop of St. Asaph, he zealously defended his brother prelates from the attacks of those who censured the bishops for their neglect of duty. He maintained that it was no part of a bishop's functions to appear in the pulpit, and that his time might be more profitably spent, and his dignity better maintained, in the performance of works of a higher character. Among those who thought differently were the Lollards, and it is against their general doctrines that the "Repressor" is directed. Pecock took up a position midway between that of the Roman Church and that of the modern Anglican Church; but his work is interesting chiefly because it gives a full account of the views of the Lollards and of the arguments by which they were supported, and because it assists us to ascertain the state of feeling which ultimately led to the Reformation. Apart from religious matters, the light thrown upon contemporaneous history is very small, but the "Repressor" has great value for the philologist, as it tells us what were the characteristics of the language in use among the cultivated Englishmen of the fifteenth century. Pecock, though an opponent of the Lollards, showed a certain spirit of toleration, for which he received, towards the end of his life, the usual mediæval reward —persecution.

20. Annales Cambriæ. *Edited by* the Rev. John Williams ab Ithel, M.A. 1860.

These annals, which are in Latin, commence in the year 447, and come down to the year 1288. The earlier portion appears to be taken from an Irish Chronicle, which was also used by Tigernach, and by the compiler of the Annals of Ulster. During its first century it contains scarcely anything relating to Britain, the earliest direct concurrence with English history is relative to the mission of Augustine. Its notices throughout though brief, are valuable. The annals were probably written at St. Davids, by Blegewryd, Archdeacon of Llandaff, the most learned man in his day in all Cymru.

21. The Works of Giraldus Cambrensis. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* J. S. Brewer, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vols. V. and VI. *Edited by* the Rev. James F. Dimock, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1861–1868.

The first three volumes contain the historical works of Gerald du Barry, who lived in the reigns of Henry II., Richard I., and John, and attempted to re-establish the independence of Wales by restoring the see of St. Davids to its ancient primacy. His works are of a very miscellaneous nature, both in prose and verse, and are remarkable chiefly for the racy and original anecdotes which they contain relating to contemporaries. He is the only Welsh writer of any importance who has contributed so much to the mediæval literature of this country, or assumed, in consequence of his nationality, so free and independent a tone. His frequent travels in Italy, in France, in Ireland, and in Wales, gave him opportunities for observation which did not generally fall to the lot of mediæval writers in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, and of these observations Giraldus has made due use.

Only extracts from these treatises have been printed before, and almost all of them are taken from unique manuscripts.

The Topographia Hibernica (in Vol. V.) is the result of Giraldus' two visits to Ireland. The first in the year 1183, the second in 1185–6, when he accompanied Prince John into that country. Curious as this treatise is, Mr. Dimock is of opinion that it ought not to be accepted as sober truthful history, for Giraldus himself states that truth was not his main object, and that he compiled the work for the purpose of sounding the praises of Henry the Second. Elsewhere, however, he declares that he had stated nothing in the Topographia of the truth of which he was not well assured, either by his own eyesight or by the testimony,

with all diligence elicited, of the most trustworthy and authentic men in the country; that though he did not put just the same full faith in their reports as in what he had himself seen, yet, as they only related what they had themselves seen, he could not but believe such credible witnesses. A very interesting portion of this treatise is devoted to the animals of Ireland. It shows that he was a very accurate and acute observer, and his descriptions are given in a way that a scientific naturalist of the present day could hardly improve upon.

The Expugnatio Hibernica was written about the year 1188, and may be regarded rather as a great epic than a sober relation of facts occurring in his own days. No one can peruse it without coming to the conclusion that it is rather a poetical fiction than a prosaic truthful history.

Vol. VI. contains the Itinerarium Kambriæ et Descriptio Kambriæ.

22. LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE WARS OF THE ENGLISH IN FRANCE DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE SIXTH, KING OF ENGLAND. Vol. I., and Vol. II. (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1861–1864.

The letters and papers contained in these volumes are derived chiefly from originals or contemporary copies extant in the Bibliothèque Impérial, and the Depôt des Archives, in Paris. They illustrate the line of policy adopted by John Duke of Bedford and his successors during their government of Normandy, and such other provinces of France as had been acquired by Henry V. We may here trace, step by step, the gradual declension of the English power, until we are prepared to read of its final overthrow.

23. THE ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE, ACCORDING TO THE SEVERAL ORIGINAL AUTHORITIES. Vol. I., Original Texts. Vol. II., Translation. *Edited and translated by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq., Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Munich, and of the Society of Netherlandish Literature at Leyden. 1861.

This Chronicle, extending from the earliest history of Britain to the year 1154, is justly the boast of England; for no other nation can produce any history, written in its own vernacular, at all approaching it, either in antiquity, truthfulness, or extent, the historical books of the Bible alone excepted. There are at present six independent manuscripts of the Saxon Chronicle, ending in different years, and written in different parts of the country. In the present edition, the text of each manuscript is printed in columns on the same page, so that the student may see at a glance the various changes which occur in orthography, whether arising from locality or age.

24. LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGNS OF RICHARD III. AND HENRY VII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1861–1863.

The Papers are derived from MSS. in the Public Record Office, the British Museum, and other repositories. The period to which they refer is unusually destitute of chronicles and other sources of historical information, so that the light obtained from these documents is of special importance. The principal contents of the volumes are some diplomatic Papers of Richard III.; correspondence between Henry VII. and Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain; documents relating to Edmund de la Pole, Earl of Suffolk; and a portion of the correspondence of James IV. of Scotland.

25. LETTERS OF BISHOP GROSSETESTE, illustrative of the Social Condition of his Time. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1861.

The Letters of Robert Grosseteste (131 in number) are here collected from various sources. They range in date from about 1210 to 1253, and relate to various matters connected not only with the political history of England during the reign of Henry III., but with its ecclesiastical condition. They refer especially to the diocese of Lincoln, of which Grosseteste was bishop. These Letters have not hitherto been collected, and a large portion of them is printed for the first time.

26. Descriptive Catalogue of Manuscripts relating to the History of Great Britain and Ireland. Vol. I. (in Two Parts); Anterior to the Norman Invasion. Vol. II.; 1066–1200. *By* Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1862–1865.

The object of this work is to publish notices of all known sources of British history, both printed and unprinted, in one continued sequence. The materials, when historical (as distinguished from biographical), are arranged under the year in which the latest event is recorded in the chronicle or history, and not under the period in which its author, real or supposed, flourished. Biographies are enumerated under the year in which the person commemorated died, and not under the year in which the life was written. This arrangement has two advantages: the materials for any given period may be seen at a glance; and if the reader knows the time when an author wrote, and the number of years that had elapsed between the date of the events and the time the writer flourished, he will generally be enabled to form a fair estimate of the comparative value of the narrative itself. A brief analysis of each work has been added when deserving it, in which the original portions are distinguished from those which are mere compilations. When possible, the sources are indicated from which such compilations have been derived. A biographical sketch of the author of each piece has been added, and a brief notice has also been given of such British authors as have written on historical subjects.

27. Royal and other Historical Letters illustrative of the Reign of Henry III. From the Originals in the Public Record Office. Vol. I., 1216–1235. Vol. II., 1236–1272. *Selected and edited by* the Rev. W. W. Shirley, D.D., Regius Professor in Ecclesiastical History, and Canon of Christ Church, Oxford. 1862–1866.

The letters contained in these volumes are derived chiefly from the ancient correspondence formerly preserved in the Tower of London, and now in the Public Record Office. They illustrate the political history of England during the growth of its liberties, and throw considerable light upon the personal history of Simon de Montfort. The affairs of France form the subject of many of these letters, more especially in regard to the province of Gascony. The entire collection consists of nearly 700 documents, the greater portion of which is printed for the first time.

28. Chronica Monasterii S. Albani.—1. Thomæ Walsingham Historia Anglicana; Vol. I., 1272–1381: Vol. II., 1381–1422. 2. Willelmi Rishanger Chronica et Annales, 1259–1307. 3. Johannis de Trokelowe et Henrici de Blaneforde Chronica et Annales, 1259–1296; 1307–1324; 1392–1406. 4. Gesta Abbatum Monasterii S. Albani, a Thoma Walsingham, regnante Ricardo Secundo, ejusdem Ecclesiæ Præcentore, compilata; Vol. I., 793–1290: Vol. II., 1290–1349. *Edited by* Henry Thomas Riley, Esq., M.A., of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863–1867.

In the first two volumes is a history of England, from the death of Henry III. to the death of Henry V., written by Thomas Walsingham, precentor of St. Albans and prior of the Cell of Wymundham, belonging to that abbey. Walsingham's work is printed from MS. VII. in the Arundel Collection in the College of Arms, London, a manuscript of the fifteenth century, collated with MS. 13 E. IX. in the King's Library in the British Museum, and MS. VII. in the Parker Collection of Manuscripts at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

In the third volume is a Chronicle of English History, from 1259 to 1306, attributed to William Rishanger, monk of Saint Albans, who lived in the reign of Edward I., printed from the Cottonian Manuscript, Faustina B. IX. (of the fourteenth century) in the British Museum, collated with MS. 14 C. VII. (fols. 219–231) in the King's Library, British Museum, and the Cottonian Manuscript Claudius E. III., fols. 306–331: Also an account of transactions attending the award of the kingdom of Scotland to John Balliol by King Edward I., 1291–1292,

from MS. Cotton. Claudius, D. VI., attributed to William Rishanger above mentioned, but on no sufficient ground: A short Chronicle of English History, from 1292 to 1300, by an unknown hand, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: A short Chronicle from 1297 to 1307, Willelmi Rishanger Gesta Edwardi Primi Regis Angliæ, from MS. 14 C. I. in the Royal Library, and MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI., with an addition of Annales Regum Angliæ, probably by the same hand: A fragment of a Chronicle of English History, 1299, 1300, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: A fragment of a Chronicle of English History, 1295 to 1300, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: and a fragment of a Chronicle of English History, 1285 to 1307, from MS. 14 C. I. in the Royal Library.

In the fourth volume is a Chronicle of English History, by an anonymous writer, 1259 to 1296, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: Also Annals of King Edward II., 1307 to 1323, by John de Trokelowe, a monk of St. Albans, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: A continuation of Trokelowe's Annals, 1323, 1324, by Henricus de Blaneforde, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: Also a full Chronicle of English History, by an anonymous writer of St. Albans, 1392 to 1406, from MS. VII. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge: and an account of the past benefactors of St. Albans, written in the early part of the fifteenth century, from MS. VI. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

In the fifth volume begins a history of the abbots of St. Albans, from 793 to the close of the fourteenth century, compiled by Thomas Walsingham, præcentor of St. Albans, from MS. Cotton. Claudius E. IV., in the British Museum. This is continued in the sixth volume.

29. Chronicon Abbatiæ Eveshamensis, Auctoribus Dominico Priore Eveshamiæ et Thoma de Marleberge Abbate, a Fundatione ad Annum 1213, una cum Continuatione ad Annum 1418. *Edited by* the Rev. W. D. Macray, M.A., Bodleian Library, Oxford. 1863.

The Chronicle of Evesham illustrates the history of that important monastery from its foundation by Egwin, about 690, to the year 1418. Its chief feature is an autobiography, which makes us acquainted with the inner daily life of a great abbey, such as but rarely has been recorded. Interspersed are many notices of general, personal, and local history which will be read with much interest. This work exists in a single MS., and is for the first time printed.

30. Ricardi de Cirencestria Speculum Historiale de Gestis Regum Angliæ. Vol. I., 447–871. *Edited by* John E. B. Mayor, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1863.

Of the compiler of this work, which is in four parts, very little is known. In the prologue he calls himself Richard, a monk of Westminster, and at the end of the first part, Richard of Cirencester, a monk of St. Peter's, Westminster. One volume only, containing the first three books, has been published, the remainder is in the press, and will shortly appear. There is a continuation of the work down to the year 1348, which in due time will also be printed.

31. Year Books of the Reign of Edward the First. Years 20–21, 30–31, and 32–33. *Edited and translated by* Alfred John Horwood, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863–1866.

The volumes known as the "Year Books" contain reports in Norman-French of cases argued and decided in the Courts of Common Law. They may be considered to a great extent as the "lex non scripta" of England, and have been held in the highest veneration by the ancient sages of the law, and were received by them as the repositories of the first recorded judgments and dicta of the great legal luminaries of past ages. They are also worthy of the attention of the general reader on account of the historical information and the notices of public and private persons which they contain, as well as the light which they throw on ancient manners and customs.

32. Narratives of the Expulsion of the English from Normandy; 1449–1450.—Robertus Blondelli de Reductione Normanniæ: Le Recouvrement de Normendie, par Berry, Hérault du Roy: Conferences between the Ambassadors of France and England. *Edited, from MSS. in the Imperial Library at Paris, by* the Rev. Joseph Stevenson, M.A., of University College, Durham. 1863.

This volume contains the narrative of an eye-witness who details with considerable power and minuteness the circumstances which attended the final expulsion of the English from Normandy in the year 1450. The history commences with the infringement of the truce by the capture of Fougères, and ends with the battle of Formigny and the embarkation of the Duke of Somerset. The whole period embraced is less than two years.

33. Historia et Cartularium Monasterii S. Petri Gloucestriæ. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. H. Hart, Esq., F.S.A., Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie. 1863–1867.

This work consists of two parts, the History and the Cartulary of the Monastery of St. Peter, Gloucester.

The history furnishes an account of the monastery from its foundation, in the year 681, to the early part of the reign of Richard II., together with a calendar of donations and benefactions. It treats principally of the affairs of the monastery, but occasionally matters of general history are introduced. Its authorship has generally been assigned to Walter Froucester, the twentieth abbot, but without any foundation.

34. Alexandri Neckam de Naturis Rerum libri duo; with Neckam's Poem, De Laudibus Divinæ Sapientiæ. *Edited by* Thomas Wright, Esq., M.A. 1863.

Neckam was a man who devoted himself to science, such as it was in the twelfth century.

In the "De Naturis Rerum" are to be found what may be called the rudiments of many sciences mixed up with much error and ignorance. Neckam was not thought infallible, even by his contemporaries, for Roger Bacon remarks of him, "this Alexander in many things wrote what was true and useful; but he neither "can nor ought by just title to be reckoned among authorities."

Neckam, however, had sufficient independence of thought to differ from some of the schoolmen who in his time considered themselves the only judges of literature. He had his own views in morals, and in giving us a glimpse of them, as well as of his other opinions, he throws much light upon the manners, customs, and general tone of thought prevalent in the twelfth century.

The poem entitled "De Laudibus Divinæ Sapientiæ" appears to be a metrical paraphrase or abridgment of the "De Naturis Rerum." It is written in the elegiac metre; and though there are in it many lines which violate classical rules, it is, as a whole, above the ordinary standard of mediæval Latin.

35. Leechdoms, Wortcunning, and Starcraft of Early England; being a Collection of Documents illustrating the History of Science in this Country before the Norman Conquest. Vols. I., II., and III. *Collected and edited by* the Rev. T. Oswald Cockayne, M.A., of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1864–1866.

This work illustrates not only the history of science, but the history of superstition. In addition to the information bearing directly upon the medical skill and medical faith of the times, there are many passages which incidentally throw light upon the general mode of life and ordinary diet. The volumes are interesting not only in their scientific, but also in their social aspect. The manuscripts from which they have been printed are valuable to the Anglo-Saxon scholar for the illustrations they afford of Anglo-Saxon orthography.

36. Annales Monastici. Vol. I.:—Annales de Margan, 1066–1232; Annales de Theokesberia, 1066–1263; Annales de Burton, 1004–1263. Vol. II.:—Annales Monasterii de Wintonia, 519–1277; Annales Monasterii de Waverleia, 1–1291. Vol. III.:—Annales Prioratus de Dunstaplia, 1–1297; Annales Monasterii de Bermundeseia, 1042–1432. *Edited by* Henry Richards Luard, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registrary of the University, Cambridge. 1864–1866.

The present collection of Monastic Annals embraces all the more important chronicles compiled in the different religious houses in England during the thirteenth century. These distinct works are seven in number, and the extreme period which they embrace ranges from the year 1 to 1432, although they refer more especially to the reigns of John, Henry III., and Edward I. Some of these narratives have already appeared in print, but others are printed for the first time.

37. Magna Vita S. Hugonis Episcopi Lincolniensis. From Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and the Imperial Library, Paris. *Edited by* the Rev. James F. Dimock, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1864.

This work contains a number of very curious and interesting incidents, and, being the work of a contemporary, is very valuable, not only as a truthful biography of a celebrated ecclesiastic, but as the work of a man, who, from personal knowledge, gives notices of passing events, as well as of individuals who were then taking active part in public affairs.]

The author, in all probability, was Adam Abbot of Evesham. He was domestic chaplain and private confessor of Bishop Hugh, and in these capacities he was admitted to the closest intimacy. Bishop Hugh was Prior of Witham for 11 years before he became Bishop of Lincoln. His consecration took place on the 21st September 1186; he died on the 16th of November 1200; and was canonized in 1220.

38. Chronicles and Memorials of the Reign of Richard the First. Vol. I.:—Itinerarium Peregrinorum et Gesta Regis Ricardi. Vol. II.:—Epistolæ Cantuarienses; the Letters of the Prior and Convent of Christ Church, Canterbury; 1187 to 1199. *Edited by* William Stubbs, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian. 1864–1865.

The authorship of the Chronicle in Vol. I., hitherto ascribed to Geoffrey Vinesauf, is now more correctly ascribed to Richard, Canon of the Holy Trinity of London. The narrative extends from 1187 to 1199; but its chief interest consists in the minute and authentic narrative which it furnishes of the exploits of Richard I., from his departure from England in December 1189 to his death in 1199. The author states in his prologue that he was an eye-witness of much that he records; and various incidental circumstances which occur in the course of the narrative confirm this assertion.

The letters in Vol. II., written between 1187 and 1199, are of value as furnishing authentic materials for the history of the ecclesiastical condition of England during the reign of Richard I. They had their origin in a dispute which arose from the attempts of Baldwin and Hubert, archbishops of Canterbury, to found a college of secular canons, a project which gave great umbrage to the monks of Canterbury, who saw in it a design to supplant them in their function [...]tropolitan chapter. These letters are printed, for the first time, from a MS. [...]g to the archiepiscopal library at Lambeth.

39. Recueil des Croniques et anchiennes Istories de la Grant Bretaigne a present nomme Engleterre, par Jehan de Waurin. Vol. I., Albina to 688. Vol. II., 1399–1422. *Edited by* William Hardy, Esq., F.S.A. 1864–1868.

40. A Collection of the Chronicles and ancient Histories of Great Britain, now called England, by John de Wavrin. Albina to 688. (Translation of the preceding Vol. I.) *Edited and translated by* William Hardy, Esq., F.S.A. 1864.

This curious chronicle extends from the fabulous period of history down to the return of Edward IV. to England in the year 1471, after the second deposition of Henry VI. The manuscript from which the text of the work is taken is preserved in the Imperial Library at Paris, and is believed to be the only complete and nearly contemporary copy in existence. The work, as originally bound, was comprised in six volumes, since rebound in morocco in 12 volumes, folio maximo, vellum, and is illustrated with exquisite miniatures, vignettes, and initial letters. It was written towards the end of the fifteenth century, having been expressly executed for Louis de Bruges, Seigneur de la Gruthuyse and Earl of Winchester, from whose cabinet it passed into the library of Louis XII. at Blois.

41. Polychronicon Ranulphi Higden, with Trevisa's Translation. Vol. I. *Edited by* Churchill Babington, B.D., Senior Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1865.

This is one of the many mediæval chronicles which assume the character of a history of the world. It begins with the creation and is brought down to the author's own time, the reign of Edward III. Prefixed to the historical portion of the work is a chapter devoted to geography, in which is given a description of every known land.

To say that the Polychronicon was written in the fourteenth century is to say that it is not free from inaccuracies. It has, however, a value apart from its intrinsic merits. It enables us to form a very fair estimate of the knowledge of history and geography which well-informed readers of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries possessed, for it was then the standard work on general history.

The two English translations, which are printed with the original Latin, afford interesting illustrations of the gradual change of our language, for one was made in the fourteenth century, the other in the fifteenth. The differences between Trevisa's version and that of the unknown writer are often considerable.

42. Le Livere de Reis de Brittanie e Le Livere de Reis de Engletere. *Edited by* John Glover, M.A., Vicar of Brading, Isle of Wight, formerly Librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1865.

These two treatises, though they cannot rank as independent narratives, are nevertheless valuable as careful abstracts of previous historians, especially "Le Livere de Reis de Engletere." Some various readings are given which are interesting to the philologist as instances of semi-Saxonized French.

It is supposed that Peter of Ickham must have been the author, but no certain conclusion on that point has been arrived at.

43. Chronica Monasterii de Melsa, ab Anno 1150 usque ad Annum 1406. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* Edward Augustus Bond, Esq., Assistant Keeper of the Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum. 1866–1868.

The Abbey of Meaux was a Cistercian house, and the work of its abbot is both curious and valuable. It is a faithful and often minute record of the establishment of a religious community, of its progress in forming an ample revenue, of its struggles to maintain its acquisitions, and of its relations to the governing institutions of the country. In addition to the private affairs of the monastery, some light is thrown upon the public events of the time, which are however kept distinct, and appear at the end of the history of each abbot's administration. The text has been printed from what is said to be the autograph of the original compiler, Thomas de Burton, the nineteenth abbot.

44. Matthæi Parisiensis Historia Anglorum, sive, ut vulgo dicitur, Historia Minor. Vols. I., II., and III. 1067–1245. *Edited by* Sir Frederic Madden, K.H., Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum. 1866–1869.

The exact date at which this work was written is, according to the chronicler, 1250. The history is of considerable value as an illustration of the period during which the author lived, and contains a good summary of the events which followed the Conquest. This minor chronicle is, however, based on another work (also written by Matthew Paris), giving fuller details, which has been called the 'Historia Major.' The chronicle here published, nevertheless, gives some information not to be found in the greater history.

45. Liber Monasterii de Hyda: a Chronicle and Chartulary of Hyde Abbey, Winchester, 455–1023. *Edited, from a Manuscript in the Library of the Earl of Macclesfield, by* Edward Edwards, Esq. 1866.

The "Book of Hyde" is a compilation from much earlier sources, which are usually indicated with considerable care and precision. In many cases, however, the Hyde chronicler appears to correct, to qualify, or to amplify—either from tradition or from sources of information not now discoverable—the statements which, in substance, he adopts. He also mentions, and frequently quotes from, writers whose works are either entirely lost or at present known only by fragments.

There is to be found, in the "Book of Hyde," much information relating to the reign of King Alfred which is not known to exist elsewhere. The volume contains some curious specimens of Anglo-Saxon and Mediæval English.

46. Chronicon Scotorum: a Chronicle of Irish Affairs, from the Earliest Times to 1135; with a Supplement, containing the Events from 1141 to 1150. *Edited, with a Translation, by* William Maunsell Hennessy, Esq., M.R.I.A. 1866.

There is, in this volume, a legendary account of the peopling of Ireland and of the adventures which befell the various heroes who are said to have been connected with Irish history. The details are, however, very meagre both for this period and for the time when history becomes more authentic. The plan adopted in the chronicle gives the appearance of an accuracy to which the earlier portions of the work cannot have any claim. The succession of events is marked, year by year, from A.M. 1599 to A.D. 1150. The principal events narrated in the later portion of the work are the invasions of foreigners and the wars of the Irish among themselves. The text has been printed from a MS. preserved in the library of Trinity College, Dublin, written partly in Latin, partly in Irish.

47. The Chronicle of Pierre de Langtoft, in French Verse, from the earliest Period to the Death of Edward I. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* Thomas Wright, Esq., M.A. 1866–1868.

It is probable that Pierre de Langtoft was a canon of Bridlington, in Yorkshire, and that he lived in the reign of Edward I., and during a portion of the reign of Edward II. This chronicle is divided into three parts; in the first is an abridgment of Geoffrey of Monmouth's "Historia Britonum," in the second, a history of the Anglo-Saxon and Norman kings, down to the death of Henry III., and in the third a history of the reign of Edward I. The principal object of the work was apparently to show the justice of Edward's Scottish wars.

The language of the chronicle is singularly corrupt, and a curious specimen of the French of Yorkshire.

48. The War of the Gaedhil with the Gaill, or, The Invasions of Ireland by the Danes and other Norsemen. *Edited, with a Translation, by* James Henthorn Todd, D.D., Senior Fellow of Trinity College, and Regius Professor of Hebrew in the University, Dublin. 1867.

The work in its present form, in the editor's opinion, is a comparatively modern version of an undoubtedly ancient original. That it was compiled from contemporary materials has been proved by curious incidental evidence. It is stated in the account given of the battle of Clontarf that the full tide in Dublin Bay on the day of the battle (23 April 1014) coincided with sunrise; and that the returning tide in the evening aided considerably in the defeat of the Danes. The fact has been verified by astronomical calculations, and the inference is that the author of the chronicle, if not himself an eye-witness, must have derived his information from those who were eye-witnesses.

The contents of the work are sufficiently described in its title. The story is told after the manner of the Scandinavian Sagas, with poems and fragments of poems introduced into the prose narrative.

49. GESTA REGIS HENRICI SECUNDI BENEDICTI ABBATIS. THE CHRONICLE OF THE REIGNS OF HENRY II. AND RICHARD I., 1169–1192; known under the name of BENEDICT OF PETERBOROUGH. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, Oxford, and Lambeth Librarian. 1867.

This is a chronicle of the reigns of Henry II. and Richard I., known commonly under the name of Benedict of Peterborough, and is one of the best existing specimens of a class of historical compositions of the first importance to the genuine student.

50. MUNIMENTA ACADEMICA, OR, DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ACADEMICAL LIFE AND STUDIES AT OXFORD (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. HENRY ANSTEY, M.A., Vicar of St. Wendron, Cornwall, and lately Vice-Principal of St. Mary Hall, Oxford. 1868.

The purpose of this work is to supply materials for a History of Academical Life and Studies in the University of Oxford during the 13th, 14th, and 15th centuries.

51. CHRONICA MAGISTRI ROGERI DE HOUEDENE. Vol. I. *Edited by* WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1868.

This work has long been justly celebrated, but not thoroughly understood until Mr. Stubbs' edition. The earlier portion, extending from 732 to 1148, appears to be a copy of a compilation made in Northumbria about 1161, to which Hoveden added little. From 1148 to 1169—a very valuable portion of this work—the matter is derived from another source, to which Hoveden appears to have supplied little, and not always judiciously.

From 1170 to 1192 is the portion of the work which corresponds with the Chronicle known under the name of Benedict of Peterborough (*see* No. 49); but it is not a copy, being sometimes an abridgment, at others a paraphrase of it; occasionally the two works entirely agree, showing that both writers had access to the same materials, but dealt with them differently. From 1192 to 1201 may be said to be wholly Hoveden's work; it is extremely valuable, and an authority of the first importance.

In the Press.

A COLLECTION OF SAGAS AND OTHER HISTORICAL DOCUMENTS relating to the Settlements and Descents of the Northmen on the British Isles. *Edited by* GEORGE WEBBE DASENT, Esq., D.C.L., Oxon.

OFFICIAL CORRESPONDENCE OF THOMAS BEKYNTON, SECRETARY TO HENRY VI., with other LETTERS and DOCUMENTS. *Edited by* the Rev. GEORGE WILLIAMS, B.D., Senior Fellow of King's College, Cambridge.

ROLL OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF IRELAND, 16 RICHARD II. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES GRAVES, A.B., Treasurer of St. Canice, Ireland.

RICARDI DE CIRENCESTRIA SPECULUM HISTORIALE DE GESTIS REGUM ANGLIÆ. Vol. II., 872–1066. *Edited by* JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

THE WORKS OF GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS. Vol. IV. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London.

CHRONICON RADULPHI ABBATIS COGGESHALENSIS MAJUS; and, CHRONICON TERRÆ SANCTÆ ET DE CAPTIS A SALADINO HIEROSOLYMIS. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham.

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN, with Trevisa's Translation. Vol. II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Senior Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

ITER BRITANNIARUM: THE PORTION OF THE ANTONINE ITINERARY OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE RELATING TO GREAT BRITAIN. *Edited by* WILLIAM HENRY BLACK, Esq., F.S.A.

ANNALES MONASTICI. Vols. IV. and V. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registrary of the University, Cambridge.

WILLELMI MALMESBIRIENSIS DE GESTIS PONTIFICUM ANGLORUM LIBRI V. *Edited, from William of Malmesbury's Autograph MS., by* N. E. S. A. HAMILTON, Esq., of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum.

YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIRST. Years 21–22. *Edited and translated by* ALFRED JOHN HORWOOD, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law.

HISTORICAL MUNIMENTS IN THE ARCHIVES OF THE CITY OF DUBLIN. *Edited by* JOHN T. GILBERT, Esq., M.R.I.A., Secretary of the Public Record Office of Ireland.

THE ANNALS OF LOCH CÉ. *Edited by* WILLIAM MAUNSELL HENNESSY, Esq., M.R.I.A.

CHRONICLE OF ROBERT OF BRUNNE. *Edited by* FREDERICK JAMES FURNIVALL, Esq., M.A., of Trinity Hall, Cambridge, Barrister-at-Law.

CHRONICA MAGISTRI ROGERI DE HOUEDENE. Vol. II. *Edited by* WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford.

CHRONICA MONASTERII S. ALBANI.—4. GESTA ABBATUM MONASTERII S. ALBANI, A THOMA WALSINGHAM, REGNANTE RICARDO SECUNDO, EJUSDEM ECCLESIÆ PRÆCENTORE, COMPILATA. Vol. III. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law.

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND. Vol. III.; 1201, &c. *By* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records.

In Progress.

DOCUMENTS RELATING TO ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND, FROM THE NORTHERN REGISTERS. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES RAINE, M.A., Canon of York, and late Fellow of the University, Durham.

LIBER NIGER ADMIRALITATIS. *Edited by* Sir TRAVERS TWISS, D.C.L., Queen's Advocate-General.

THE METRICAL CHRONICLE OF ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER. *Edited by* WILLIAM ALDIS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A., Librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge.

ORIGINAL LETTERS AND DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF GENERAL AND DOMESTIC HISTORY. *Edited by* the Rev. WILLIAM CAMPBELL, M.A.

RECUEIL DES CRONIQUES ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAIGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE, par JEHAN DE WAURIN. Vol. III. *Edited by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A.

PUBLICATIONS
OF
THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, &c.

ROTULORUM ORIGINALIUM IN CURIÂ SCACCARII ABBREVIATIO. Henry III.—Edward III. *Edited by* HENRY PLAYFORD, Esq. 2 vols. folio (1805—1810). *Price* 25*s.* boards, or 12*s.* 6*d.* each.

CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM SIVE ESCAETARUM. Henry III.—Richard III. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and JOHN BAYLEY, Esqrs. Vols. 3 and 4, folio (1821—1828), boards: vol. 3, *price* 21*s.*; vol. 4, *price* 24*s.*

LIBRORUM MANUSCRIPTORUM BIBLIOTHECÆ HARLEIANÆ CATALOGUS. Vol. 4. *Edited by* the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. Folio (1812), boards. *Price* 18*s.*

ABBREVIATIO PLACITORUM. Richard I.—Edward II. *Edited by* the Right Hon. GEORGE ROSE and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1811), boards. *Price* 18*s.*

LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, INDICES. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards, (Domesday-Book, vol. 3). *Price* 21*s.*

LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, ADDITAMENTA EX CODIC. ANTIQUISS. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards, (Domesday-Book, vol. 4). *Price* 21*s.*

STATUTES OF THE REALM. *Edited by* Sir T. E. TOMLINS, JOHN RAITHBY, JOHN CALEY, and WM. ELLIOTT, Esqrs. Vols. 4 (in 2 parts), 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, including 2 vols. of Indices, large folio (1819—1828). *Price* 31*s.* 6*d.* each; except the Alphabetical and Chronological Indices, *price* 30*s.* each.

VALOR ECCLESIASTICUS, temp. Hen. VIII., Auctoritate Regia institutus. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY, Esq., and the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. Vols. 3 to 6, folio (1817–1834), boards. *Price* 25*s.* each.

*** The Introduction, separately, 8vo., cloth. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

ROTULI SCOTIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ET IN DOMO CAPITULARI WESTMONASTERIENSI ASSERVATI. 19 Edward I.—Henry VIII. *Edited by* DAVID MACPHERSON, JOHN CALEY, and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esqrs., and the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. 2 vols. folio (1814—1819), boards. *Price* 42*s.*

FŒDERA, CONVENTIONES, LITTERÆ, &c.; or, RYMER'S FŒDERA, New Edition, 1066—1377. Vol. 3, Parts 1 and 2, folio (1825—1830). *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and FRED. HOLBROOKE, Esqrs. *Price* 21*s.* each Part.

DUCATUS LANCASTRIÆ CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM, &c. Part 3, Calendar to the Pleadings, &c., Henry VII.—Ph. and Mary; and Calendar to the Pleadings, 1—13 Elizabeth. Part 4, Calendar to the Pleadings to end of Elizabeth. (1827—1834.) *Edited by* R. J. HARPER, JOHN CALEY, and WM. MINCHIN, Esqrs. Folio, boards, Part 3 (or Vol. 2), *price* 31*s*. 6*d*.; and Part 4 (or Vol. 3), *price* 21*s*.

CALENDARS OF THE PROCEEDINGS IN CHANCERY, IN THE REIGN OF QUEEN ELIZABETH; to which are prefixed, Examples of earlier Proceedings in that Court from Richard II. to Elizabeth, from the Originals in the Tower. *Edited by* JOHN BAYLEY, Esq. Vols. 2 and 3 (1830—1832), folio, boards, *price* 21*s*. each.

PARLIAMENTARY WRITS AND WRITS OF MILITARY SUMMONS, together with the Records and Muniments relating to the Suit and Service due and performed to the King's High Court of Parliament and the Councils of the Realm. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. (1830—1834.) Folio, boards, Vol. 2, Division 1, Edward II., *price* 21*s*.; Vol. 2, Division 2, *price* 21*s*.; Vol. 2, Division 3, *price* 42*s*.

ROTULI LITTERARUM CLAUSARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 2 vols. folio (1833—1844). Vol. 1, 1204—1224. Vol. 2, 1224—1227. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. *Price* 81*s*., cloth; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 63*s*.; Vol. 2, *price* 18*s*.

PROCEEDINGS AND ORDINANCES OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND. 10 Richard II.—33 Henry VIII. *Edited by* Sir NICHOLAS HARRIS NICOLAS. 7 vols. royal 8vo. (1834—1837), cloth. *Price* 98*s*.; or separately, 14*s*. each.

ROTULI LITTERARUM PATENTIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1201—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1835), cloth. *Price* 31*s*. 6*d*.

*** The Introduction, separately, 8vo., cloth. *Price* 9*s*.

ROTULI CURIÆ REGIS. Rolls and Records of the Court held before the King's Justiciars or Justices. 6 Richard I.—1 John. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 28*s*.

ROTULI NORMANNIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1200—1205; also, 1417 to 1418. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 12*s*. 6*d*.

ROTULI DE OBLATIS ET FINIBUS IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, tempore Regis Johannis. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 18*s*.

EXCERPTA E ROTULIS FINIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATIS. Henry III., 1216—1272. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835, 1836), cloth, *price* 32*s*.; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 14*s*.; Vol. 2, *price* 18*s*.

FINES, SIVE PEDES FINIUM; SIVE FINALES CONCORDIÆ IN CURIÂ DOMINI REGIS. 7 Richard I.—16 John, 1195—1214. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. In Counties. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835—1844), cloth, *price* 11*s*.; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 8*s*. 6*d*.; Vol. 2, *price* 2*s*. 6*d*.

Ancient Kalendars and Inventories of the Treasury of His Majesty's Exchequer; together with Documents illustrating the History of that Repository. *Edited by* Sir Francis Palgrave. 3 vols. royal 8vo. (1836), cloth. *Price* 42*s.*

Documents and Records illustrating the History of Scotland, and the Transactions between the Crowns of Scotland and England; preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer. *Edited by* Sir Francis Palgrave. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1837), cloth. *Price* 18*s.*

Rotuli Chartarum in Turri Londinensi asservati. 1199—1216. *Edited by* Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1837), cloth. *Price* 30*s.*

Report of the Proceedings of the Record Commissioners, 1831—1837. 1 vol. folio (1837), boards. *Price* 8*s.*

Registrum vulgariter nuncupatum "The Record of Caernarvon," e codice MS. Harleiano, 696, descriptum. *Edited by* Sir Henry Ellis. 1 vol. folio (1838), cloth. *Price* 31*s.* 6*d.*

Ancient Laws and Institutes of England; comprising Laws enacted under the Anglo-Saxon Kings, from Æthelbirht to Cnut, with an English Translation of the Saxon; the Laws called Edward the Confessor's; the Laws of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry the First; also, Monumenta Ecclesiastica Anglicana, from the 7th to the 10th century; and the Ancient Latin Version of the Anglo-Saxon Laws; with a compendious Glossary, &c. *Edited by* Benjamin Thorpe, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1840), cloth. *Price* 40*s.* Or, 2 vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30*s.*

Ancient Laws and Institutes of Wales; comprising Laws supposed to be enacted by Howel the Good; modified by subsequent Regulations under the Native Princes, prior to the Conquest by Edward the First; and anomalous Laws, consisting principally of Institutions which, by the Statute of Ruddlan, were admitted to continue in force. With an English Translation of the Welsh Text. To which are added, a few Latin Transcripts, containing Digests of the Welsh Laws, principally of the Dimetian Code. With Indices and Glossary. *Edited by* Aneurin Owen, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1841), cloth. *Price* 44*s.* Or, 2 vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 36*s.*

Rotuli de Liberate ac de Misis et Præstitis, Regnante Johanne. *Edited by* Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6*s.*

The Great Rolls of the Pipe for the Second, Third, and Fourth Years of the Reign of King Henry the Second, 1155—1158. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Hunter. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 4*s.* 6*d.*

The Great Roll of the Pipe for the First Year of the Reign of King Richard the First, 1189—1190. *Edited by* the Rev. Joseph Hunter. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6*s.*

Documents Illustrative of English History in the 13th and 14th centuries, selected from the Records of the Department of the Queen's Remembrancer in the Exchequer. *Edited by* Henry Cole, Esq. 1 vol. fcp. folio (1844), cloth. *Price* 45*s.* 6*d.*

Modus Tenendi Parliamentum. An Ancient Treatise on the Mode of holding the Parliament in England. *Edited by* Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq. 1 vol. 8vo. (1846), cloth. *Price* 2*s.* 6*d.*

Monumenta Historica Britannica, or, Materials for the History of Britain from the earliest period. Vol. 1, extending to the Norman Conquest. Prepared, and illustrated with Notes, by the late Henry Petrie, Esq., F.S.A., Keeper of the Records in the Tower of London, assisted by the Rev. John Sharpe, Rector of Castle Eaton, Wilts. Finally completed for publication, and with an Introduction, by Thomas Duffus Hardy, Esq., Assistant Keeper of Records. (Printed by command of Her Majesty.) Folio (1848). *Price* 42*s.*

Registrum Magni Sigilli Regum Scotorum in Archivis Publicis asservatum. 1306—1424. *Edited by* Thomas Thomson, Esq. Folio (1814). *Price* 15*s.*

The Acts of the Parliaments of Scotland. 11 vols. folio (1814—1844). Vol. I. *Edited by* Thomas Thomson and Cosmo Innes, Esqrs. *Price* 42*s.* Also, Vols. 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11; *price* 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

The Acts of the Lords Auditors of Causes and Complaints (Acta Dominorum Auditorum). 1466—1494. *Edited by* Thomas Thomson, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10*s.* 6*d.*

The Acts of the Lords of Council in Civil Causes (Acta Dominorum Concilii). 1478—1495. *Edited by* Thomas Thomson, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10*s.* 6*d.*

Issue Roll of Thomas de Brantingham, Bishop of Exeter, Lord High Treasurer of England, containing Payments out of His Majesty's Revenue, 44 Edward III., 1370. *Edited by* Frederick Devon, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1835), cloth. *Price* 35*s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 25*s.*

Issues of the Exchequer, containing similar matter to the above; James I.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* Frederick Devon, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1836), cloth. *Price* 30*s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 21*s.*

Issues of the Exchequer, containing similar matter to the above; Henry III.—Henry VI.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* Frederick Devon, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1837), cloth. *Price* 40*s.* Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30*s.*

Handbook to the Public Records. *By* F. S. Thomas, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1853), cloth. *Price* 12*s.*

Historical Notes relative to the History of England; from the Accession of Henry VIII. to the Death of Queen Anne (1509—1714). Designed as a Book of instant Reference for ascertaining the Dates of Events mentioned in History and Manuscripts. The Name of every Person and Event mentioned in History within the above period is

placed in Alphabetical and Chronological Order, and the Authority whence taken is given in each case, whether from Printed History or from Manuscripts. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq. 3 vols. 8vo. (1856), cloth. *Price* 40*s*.

STATE PAPERS, DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE EIGHTH: with Indices of Persons and Places. 11 vols., 4to. (1830—1852), cloth. *Price* 5*l*. 15*s*. 6*d*.; or separately, *price* 10*s*. 6*d*. each.

Vol. I.—Domestic Correspondence.
Vols. II. & III.—Correspondence relating to Ireland.
Vols. IV. & V.—Correspondence relating to Scotland.
Vols. VI. to XI.—Correspondence between England and Foreign Courts.

WORKS PUBLISHED IN PHOTOZINCOGRAPHY.

DOMESDAY BOOK, or the GREAT SURVEY OF ENGLAND OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR, 1086; fac-simile of the part relating to each county, separately (with a few exceptions of double counties). Photozincographed, by Her Majesty's Command, at the Ordnance Survey Office, Southampton, Colonel SIR HENRY JAMES, R.E., F.R.S., &c., Director. 35 parts, imperial quarto and demy quarto (1861–1863) boards. *Price* 4*s.* 6*d.* to 1*l.* 1*s.* each part, according to size; or, bound in 2 vols., 18*l.*

This important and unique survey of the greater portion of England* is the oldest and most valuable record in the national archives. It was commenced about the year 1084 and finished in 1086. Its compilation was determined upon at Gloucester by William the Conqueror, in council, in order that he might know what was due to him, in the way of tax, from his subjects, and that each at the same time might know what he had to pay. It was compiled as much for their protection as for the benefit of the sovereign. The nobility and people had been grievously distressed at the time by the king bringing over large numbers of French and Bretons, and quartering them on his subjects, "each according to the measure of his land," for the purpose of resisting the invasion of Cnut, King of Denmark, which was apprehended. The commissioners appointed to make the survey were to inquire the name of each place; who held it in the time of King Edward the Confessor; the present possessor; how many hides were in the manor; how many ploughs were in demesne; how many homagers; how many villeins; how many cottars; how many serving men; how many free tenants; how many tenants in soccage; how much wood, meadow, and pasture; the number of mills and fish-ponds; what had been added or taken away from the place; what was the gross value in the time of Edward the Confessor; the present value; and how much each free man or soc-man had, and whether any advance could be made in the value. Thus could be ascertained who held the estate in the time of King Edward; who then held it; its value in the time of the late king; and its value as it stood at the formation of the survey. So minute was the survey, that the writer of the contemporary portion of the Saxon Chronicle records, with some asperity—"So very narrowly he caused it to be traced out, that there was not a single hide, nor one virgate of land, nor even, it is shame to tell, though it seemed to him no shame to do, an ox, nor a cow, nor a swine was left, that was not set down."

Domesday Survey is in two parts or volumes. The first, in folio, contains the counties of Bedford, Berks, Bucks, Cambridge, Chester and Lancaster, Cornwall, Derby, Devon, Dorset, Gloucester, Hants, Hereford, Herts, Huntingdon, Kent, Leicester and Rutland, Lincoln, Middlesex, Northampton, Nottingham, Oxford, Salop, Somerset, Stafford, Surrey, Sussex, Warwick, Wilts, Worcester, and York. The second volume, in quarto, contains the counties of Essex, Norfolk, and Suffolk.

Domesday Book was printed *verbatim et literatim* during the last century, in consequence of an address of the House of Lords to King George III. in 1767. It was not, however, commenced until 1773, and was completed early in 1783. In 1860, Her Majesty's Government, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls, determined to apply the art of photozincography to the production of a fac-simile of Domesday Book, under the superintendence of Colonel Sir Henry James, R.E., director of the Ordnance Survey, Southampton. The fac-simile was completed in 1863.

---

*For some reason left unexplained, many parts were left unsurveyed; Northumberland, Cumberland, Westmoreland, and Durham, are not described in the survey; nor does Lancashire appear under its proper name; but Furness, and the northern part of Lancashire, as well as the south of Westmoreland, with a part of Cumberland, are included within the West Riding of Yorkshire. That part of Lancashire which lies between the Ribble and Mersey, and which at the time of the survey comprehended 688 manors, is joined to Cheshire. Part of Rutland is described in the counties of Northampton and Lincoln.
